



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

RIES



909 7





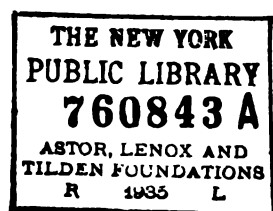


INTERNATIONAL CORRESPONDENCE SCHOOLS
SCRANTON, PA.

GRAMMAR

1729

SCRANTON
INTERNATIONAL TEXTBOOK COMPANY
A-3



Copyright, 1903, by INTERNATIONAL TEXTBOOK COMPANY

Entered at Stationers' Hall, London

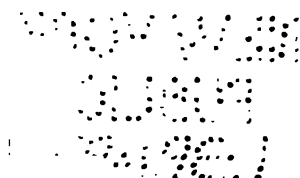
German Grammar, Parts 1-4: Copyright, 1902, by INTERNATIONAL TEXTBOOK COMPANY. Entered at Stationers' Hall, London.

German Grammar, Parts 5-12: Copyright, 1903, by INTERNATIONAL TEXTBOOK COMPANY. Entered at Stationers' Hall, London.

All rights reserved

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES

b11



CONTENTS

GERMAN GRAMMAR	<i>Section</i>	<i>Page</i>
Introduction	16	1
Originality of the German Language . . .	16	1
Language in General	16	1
History of the German Language	16	4
Grammar in General	16	9
Orthography	16	11
Alphabet	16	11
Pronunciation	16	11
Accentuation	16	19
Accidence	16	20
Classes of Words	16	20
The Noun and the Article	17	1
Division of Nouns	17	1
Inflection of Nouns	17	3
Gender in Nouns	17	6
Person in Nouns	17	7
Declension	17	8
Declension of the Article	17	8
Declension of the Noun	17	9
The Pronoun	17	24
Personal Pronouns	17	25
The Reflexive, Reciprocal, and Intensive Pronouns	17	30
Endings for the Declension of the Pro- nouns and Pronominal Adjectives . . .	18	1
Possessive Pronouns and Adjectives . . .	18	3
Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives .	18	9
Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives .	18	14
Relative Pronouns and Adjectives . . .	18	17

GERMAN GRAMMAR— <i>Continued</i>	Section	Page
Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives . . .	18	22
The Adjective	19	1
Different Uses of the Adjectives . . .	19	1
Inflection of Adjectives	19	3
Declension of Adjectives	19	3
Comparison of Adjectives	19	15
The Numeral	19	24
Cardinal Numerals	19	24
Ordinal Numerals	19	24
The Verb	20	1
Inflection of the Verb	20	5
Mode	20	6
Tense	20	9
Conjugation	20	13
Auxiliary Verbs	20	16
Uses of the Auxiliary Verbs	20	24
Weak or Regular Conjugation	21	1
The Modal Auxiliaries	21	12
Mixed Conjugation	21	24
Strong or Irregular Conjugation . . .	21	24
The Passive	22	1
Reflexive Verbs	22	7
Impersonal Verbs	22	11
Compound Verbs	22	13
The Preposition	23	1
The Conjunction	23	5
The Interjection	23	9
Word Formation	23	11
Derivation of German Words	23	11
Composition of German Words	23	23
Compound Nouns	23	24
Compound Adjectives	23	26
Compound Verbs	23	26
Syntax	24	1
The Sentence	24	1
Sentential Elements	24	3
Subject and Predicate	24	3

CONTENTS

v

GERMAN GRAMMAR—Continued	<i>Section</i>	<i>Page</i>
Predicate Nouns and Adjectives	24	5
Object of a Verb	24	6
Attributive and Appositive Adjective and Noun	24	9
The Adverb and Adverbial Phrases	24	12
Summary of Syntactic Combination	24	13
Compound and Complex Sentences	24	14
Order of Words	24	18
The Normal Order	24	19
The Inverted Order	24	21
The Transposed Order	24	25
Position of Adjuncts	24	27
Punctuation	24	32
Syntax of the Article	25	1
The Definite Article	25	1
The Indefinite Article	25	5
Syntax of the Noun	25	6
Gender of Nouns	25	6
Number of the Noun	25	13
Declension of Nouns	25	16
Syntax of the Cases	25	18
Syntax of the Adjective	25	33
Use of the Adjective	25	33
Inflection of Adjectives	25	34
Syntax of the Pronoun	25	36
Personal Pronouns	25	36
Reflexive Pronouns	25	37
Possessive Pronouns	25	38
Demonstrative Pronouns	25	39
Interrogative Pronouns	25	41
Indefinite Pronouns	25	43
Syntax of the Verb	26	1
Number of the Verb	26	1
Person of the Verb	26	3
Use of the Indicative Tenses	26	4
The Indicative Mode	26	8
The Subjunctive Mode	26	8

GERMAN GRAMMAR— <i>Continued</i>	Section	Page
The Conditional Mode	26	18
The Imperative Mode	26	19
The Infinitive	26	20
The Participle	26	25
Syntax of the Adverb	26	29
Syntax of the Preposition	27	1
Prepositions Governing the Genitive	27	2
Prepositions Governing the Dative	27	4
Prepositions Governing the Accusative	27	8
Prepositions Governing the Dative or Accusative	27	9
Prepositional Phrases	27	13
Verbs in Connection With Prepositions	27	14
Adjectives and Participles in Connection With Prepositions	27	19
Syntax of the Conjunction	27	22
Idiomatic Phrases	27	23
List of the Most Usual Abbreviations	27	25
Spelling	27	29
Prosody	27	35
German Verse	27	37

INDEX

All items in this index refer first to the section number,—which is printed on the inside edges of the headlines and is preceded by the printers' section mark ‡,—and then to the page number. Thus, Abstract nouns 17 2, means find the paper having ‡17 on the headlines and then find page 2.

A		Sec.	Page			Sec.	Page
a, Pronunciation of	16	14		Adjective		19	1
ä, Pronunciation of	16	15		“ after a personal pronoun,			
Abbreviations, List of the	27	25		“ used substantively		19	14
aber, Conjunction	23	6		“ and noun, Compounds			
“ Meanings of	26	30		“ formed of		23	25
“ sonbern, Difference between . .	1	13		“ Appositive		24	9
Absolute accusative	25	33		“ “		24	11
“ use of comparative	19	21		“ Attributive		24	9
Abstract nouns	17	2		“ “ uninflected		25	34
Accent in verse	27	37		“ clauses		24	17
Accentuation	16	19		“ Definition of		16	23
Accidence	16	10		“ Different uses of		19	1
“	16	20		“ Function of the		19	1
Accusative, Absolute	25	33		“ phrases with nouns . .		24	28
“ Adverbial	25	32		“ Predicative		24	5
“ as secondary object	25	31		“ Relative		18	17
“ case	17	5		“ Syntax of the		25	33
“ “ in object	24	7		“ used attributively . . .		24	10
“ “ Syntax of	25	31		“ “ predicatively		24	5
“ Double, with verbs	25	31		Adjectives, Adverbs formed from		23	23
“ Nature of	17	6		“ after a personal pro-			
“ of daß with a preposi-				“ noun, Declension of		19	10
“ tion	25	40		“ after diejenige und der-			
“ Prepositions govern-				“ selbe		19	7
“ ing the	23	2		“ after pronominal ad-			
“ Prepositions govern-				“ jectives		19	13
“ ing the	27	8		“ after undeclined or un-			
“ with verbs	25	31		“ declinable words . . .		19	11
Accusatives, Two, with verbs . .	25	32		“ Comparison of		19	3
acte, Formation of	19	28		“ “		19	15
Action and state of verb	20	2		“ “		19	17
Active and passive voice	20	5		“ Comparative degree of		19	16
“ verbs and neuter verbs . .	20	2		“ Compound		23	26
“ “ Classes of	20	3		“ compounded with			
“ voice	20	13		“ verbs		22	22
Address bu	17	27		“ Declension of		19	3
“ er	17	27		“ Demonstrative		18	9
“ in the nominative	25	19		“ Derivation of		23	17
“ Personal pronoun in . . .	17	26		“ derived by prefixes . .		23	18
“ Sie	17	27		“ “ the aid of			
Adjective	16	23		“ suffixes		23	17

	<i>Sec. Page</i>			<i>Sec. Page</i>	
Adjectives derived from names of places, Undeclinable	19	12	Adjectives with irregular comparison . . .	19	19
" ending in e, Comparison of	19	18	" " nouns not expressed . . .	19	13
" ending in e, Declension of	19	12	Adjuncts, Appositive, of the noun	24	28
" ending in el, en, er, Comparison of	19	18	" Attributive, of the noun	24	27
" ending in el, en, er, Declension of	19	12	" of the verb	24	28
" ending in er derived from names of places	19	12	" Position of	24	27
" Genitive with	25	22	Adverb	16	25
" in connection with prepositions	27	19	" and adverbial phrases . . .	24	11
" Indefinite	18	22	" Definition of	16	25
" "	18	24	" Function of	22	22
" Inflection of	25	34	Adverbial accusative	25	32
" Interrogative	18	14	" clauses	24	17
" Kinds of inflection of	19	3	" conjunctions	23	6
" mixed, Declension of not modifying the root vowel in comparison	19	8	" Genitive	23	23
" not declined	19	3	" "	25	25
" Nouns derived from	23	14	" superlatives in enß	19	22
" of color, used substantively	19	14	" superlative with außß	19	22
" Positive degree of	19	16	" use of adjectives	19	3
" Possessive	18	3	" " superlative	19	21
" Pronominal	17	24	Adverbs causing inversion . . .	24	23
" "	18	1	" Classification of, with respect to origin . . .	22	24
" strong, Declension of	19	5	" classified according to meaning	22	22
" Substantive	25	35	" Comparison of	22	24
" Superlative degree of two or more, preceding a noun, Declension of	19	17	" Derivation of	23	22
" Use of	25	33	" derived from nouns	23	22
" used adverbially	19	3	" formed from adjectives . . .	23	23
" " appositively	19	2	" instead of relatives	18	20
" " as substantives	19	13	" Nature of	26	29
" " attributively	19	2	" of degree	22	23
" " only attributively	25	33	" " manner	22	23
" " " predicatively	25	34	" " place	22	23
" " predicatively	19	2	" " time	22	23
" " substantively, Declension of	19	14	" Ordinal	19	30
" Verbal	20	9	" Position of	24	30
" Weak declension of	19	6	" Prepositional, governing the genitive	27	2
" with dative	25	29	Adversative conjunctions . . .	27	22
			" Coordinate, conjunctions	24	15
			Agreement of possessive with its antecedent	25	39
			" " subject and verb	26	1
			at, Pronunciation of	16	15
			al and if, Nouns ending in	17	23
			all-, indefinite, Declension of . . .	18	26
			" Different uses of	18	27
			allein, Adverbial conjunction . . .	23	7
			aller with the superlative	19	22
			Alliteration	27	39
			Alphabet	16	11
			alß, Meanings of	26	30
			" than, after the comparative . . .	19	20

INDEX

ix

	Sec.	Page		Sec.	Page
als, with the nominative	25	19	Attributive adjectives, uninflected	25	34
also, Meanings of	26	30	" " Use of	24	9
am, andem	17	9	" adjuncts of the noun	24	27
" at the, with superlative	19	22	" noun	24	9
" with the adverbial superlative	19	22	" superlative, Declen-		
an, Meanings of	27	10	sion of	19	21
" Preposition	23	3	au, Pronunciation of	16	15
anabâft	27	38	" " " " " " "	16	15
Ancient Germanic tongue	16	5	auch, Meanings of	26	31
ander—, Declension of	19	7	auf, Meanings of	27	10
" Indefinite	18	29	" Preposition	23	4
" preceded by the indefinite			aufß with the superlative	19	22
" article, etc.	19	11	aufß governing the dative	23	2
andere followed by an adjective	19	13	" Meanings of	27	4
anfangen, Table of conjugation			aushalten	23	27
of	22	20	außer, Meanings of preposition	27	5
another, noch einer	25	43	" außer	19	20
anßatt	27	2	" außerß used to express eminence	19	22
Ant-, Derivation by the prefix	23	17	Auxiliaries, Modal	21	12
Antecedent of wer, was expressed	25	42	" " Compound		
Apostrophe	16	20	" " forms of	21	13
" Use of	24	36	" " Inflection of	21	12
" " " " " " "	27	33	" " Meanings of	21	21
Apposition in the nominative	25	19	" " Simple forms		
Appositive adjective	24	9	of	21	13
" " " " " "	24	11	" " Special uses of	21	23
" adjectives	19	2	Auxiliary haben, Uses of	20	21
" adjuncts of the noun	24	28	" sein, Uses of	20	25
" noun	24	10	" verb haben, Conjugation	20	17
Article	17	1	" verb sein, Conjugation	20	19
" Declension of	17	8	" of	20	22
" Definite	17	8	" verb werden, Conjugation	20	22
" " Nature of	16	21	" of	20	22
" " Omission of	25	3	" verbs	20	16
" " Omission of, in			" " Uses of	20	24
phrases	25	5	" werden, Uses of	20	26
" " Syntax of	25	1			
" " used instead of					
the possessive	25	3			
" indefinite, Declension of	17	9			
" " Nature of	16	22			
" " omitted	25	5			
" " Syntax of	25	5			
" not repeated	25	6			
" repeated	25	6			
" Syntax of the	25	1			
" with proper names	17	21			
Articles, Nature of the	16	21			
as-as, in comparison of equality	19	20			
at the, am, with superlative	19	22			
Attribute, Noun used as	24	10			
Attributive adjectives, Declension					
of	19	4			
" " Explanation					
of	19	2			
" " Syntax of	25	33			

B

b, Pronunciation of	16	16
baß, Meanings of	26	31
-bar, Derivation by	23	18
be, Past participle of verbs in	21	11
" prefix, Meanings of	22	13
" Verbs derived by prefix	23	20
bei, Meanings of preposition	27	5
beide, Declension of	19	7
" " " " " "	19	11
" Indefinite	18	29
Beordnende Bindewörter	24	15
betrachten, Conjugation of	22	15
Bestrich	27	33
Bindewort, Definition of	16	26
" Syntax of	27	22
" Use of	23	5
Bindewörter Beordnende	24	15

	<i>Sec.</i>	<i>Page</i>		<i>Sec.</i>	<i>Page</i>
Bündewörter Unterordnende	24	16	čf, Pronunciation of	16	17
binnen, Meanings of preposition	27	5	Cities, Names of	25	16
biß, Meanings of preposition	26	31	č, Pronunciation of	16	17
" Meaning of	27	9	Class, First, of nouns	17	10
Brandſchäken	23	27	" Fourth, of nouns	17	10
brennen, Conjugation of	21	24	" names	17	1
bringen, Conjugation of	21	24	" Second, of nouns	17	10
			" Third, of nouns	17	10
C			Classes of active verbs	20	2
c, Pronunciation of	16	16	" " common nouns	17	1
Capital letters	16	13	" " nouns	17	10
Cardinal numerals	16	23	" " numerals	19	24
" "	19	24	" " pronouns	17	25
Case, Accusative	17	9	" " subordinate clauses	24	16
" " in object	24	7	" " words	16	20
" " Nature of	17	6	Classification of adverbs accord-		
" " Syntax of	25	31	ing to meaning	22	22
" Dative	17	5	" " adverbs with re-		
" " in object	24	8	spect to origin	22	24
" " Nature of	17	5	" " conjunctions	23	6
" " Syntax of	25	26	Clause, Definition of	24	14
" Definition of	17	4	" Dependent	24	16
" forms	17	6	Clauses, Adjective	24	17
" Genitive	17	5	" Adverbial	24	17
" " in object	24	9	" Adversative coordinate	24	15
" " Nature of	17	5	" Causal coordinate	24	16
" " Syntax of	25	20	" Classes of subordinate	24	16
" In nouns	17	4	" Copulative coordinate	24	15
" Meaning of the word	17	4	" dependent, Position of	24	32
" Nominative	17	5	" Disjunctive coordinate	24	16
" " Nature of	17	5	" Independent	24	15
" " Syntax of	25	18	" Principal	24	15
Cases, Number of	17	5	" Subordinated	24	16
" Syntax of the	25	18	" Substantive	24	17
Causal conjunctions	27	22	Collective noun with plural verb	26	1
" coordinate conjunctions	24	16	" " singular verb	26	1
Cesura	27	39	Colon, Use of	24	34
Cesural pause	27	39	Color, Adjectives denoting, used		
č, Pronunciation of	16	17	substantively	19	14
Changes, Euphonic, in compari-			Combination of sentences, De-		
son of adjectives	19	17	grees of	24	14
Character, Genitive denoting	25	20	" of weak and strong		
Characteristics of the first class of			endings of adjectives	19	6
" " " nouns	17	11	" syntactic, Summary		
" " " fourth class			of	24	13
" " " of nouns	17	16	Combinations, Consonantal	16	17
" " " second class			Comma, Use of	24	33
" " " of nouns	17	13	Common nouns	17	1
" " " strong verbs			" " Classes of	17	1
" " " third class			" " Definition of	17	1
" " " of nouns	17	14	Comparative conjunctions	27	22
" " " weak de-			" declined	19	23
" " " clension	17	16	" degree	19	15
-čen, Derivation by	23	15	" " Definition of	19	16
Choriambus	27	38	" used absolutely	19	21
čš, Pronunciation of	16	17			

INDEX

xi

	<i>Sec.</i>	<i>Page</i>		<i>Sec.</i>	<i>Page</i>
Comparison, Irregular	19	19	Congruence of person in verb and		
" of adjectives	19	3	subject	26	3
" " "	19	15	Conjugation	20	13
" of adjectives, Eu-			" Definition of	20	5
phonic changes in	19	17	" Irregular	21	24
" of adjectives, Modi-			" Mixed	21	24
fication of a, o, u,			" Nature of	20	5
in	19	18	" of haben	20	17
" of adverbs	22	24	" inseparable verbs	22	15
Complex sentence	24	14	" reflexive verbs .	22	8
"	24	16	" strong verbs . .	20	14
Composition of German words .	23	23	" the impersonal		
Compound adjectives	23	26	verb	22	12
" and complex sentences	24	14	" the passive . . .	22	2
" forms of haben	20	18	" the separable		
" " " loben	21	2	compounds . .	22	19
" " " modal auxil-			" weak verbs . . .	20	14
iaries	21	13	" " "	21	1
" " " reden	21	5	" Regular	21	1
" " " sein	20	20	" Strong	21	24
" " " the reflexive	22	8	" Weak	21	1
" " " werden	20	22	" " Remarks on .	21	11
" nouns	23	24	Conjunction, Definition of . .	16	26
" " Declension of . .	17	14	" Function of	23	5
" " " "	17	23	" Syntax of	27	22
" " Gender of	25	11	Conjunctions, Adverbial	23	6
" " in general	23	24	" Adversative	27	22
" prefixes	22	18	" Causal	27	23
" sentence	24	15	" Classification of .	23	6
" " Definition of . .	24	15	" Comparative	27	22
" tenses	20	12	" Concessive	27	23
" verbs, Inseparable . .	22	13	" Conclusive	27	23
" " Separable	23	26	" Conditional	27	22
" " with dative . . .	25	28	" Coordinating	24	15
Compounds formed of an adjective			" Copulative	27	22
and a noun	23	25	" Disjunctive	27	22
" " " a verb and a			" Final	27	23
noun	23	25	" Negative	27	22
" " " two nouns . .	23	24	" Pure	23	6
" Separable	22	16	" Subordinating . .	23	6
Concessive conjunctions	27	23	" "	23	8
Conclusion omitted in conditional			" "	24	16
sentences	26	12	Conjunctive	26	8
Conclusive conjunctions	27	23	Consonant, Final, changed in past		
Concordance of number	26	1	tense	21	26
Conditional conjunctions	27	22	Consonantal combinations . . .	16	17
" mode	26	18	Consonants	16	16
" " Definition of . .	20	7	" and vowels	16	14
" " used in hypo-			Construction and uses of the re-		
thetical sen-			flexive	22	10
tences	26	18	Coordinating conjunctions . . .	24	15
" past, Formation of . .	20	27	Copulative conjunctions	27	22
" present, Formation of	20	27	" coordinate conjunc-		
" subjunctive	26	10	tions	24	15
Condition omitted in conditional			Countries, Names of	25	16
sentences	26	12	Creticus	27	38

		D		Declension of adjectives follow-	
		Sec.	Page		Sec. Page
b, Pronunciation of	16	16		ing a personal	
ba, bar in compound prefixes	22	18		pronoun	19 10
" " with a preposition	25	40		" " adjectives in gen-	
" Meanings of	26	31		eral	19 3
" substituted for es	17	29		" " adjectives, Mixed .	19 8
babei, Meanings of	26	32		" " " Strong .	19 5
Dactylus	27	38		" " " Weak .	19 6
baburð, Meanings of	26	32		" " attributive adjectives	19 4
bafur, Meanings of	26	32		" " attributive superla-	
bagegn, Meanings of	26	32		tive	19 21
bamit, Meanings of	26	32		" " comparative	19 23
baran, Meanings of	26	33		" " compound nouns	17 14
barauf, Meanings of	26	33		" " " "	17 23
baß and bieß, Use of	18	12		" " ber, bie, baß, article	18 10
" Declension of	17	8		" " ber, bie, baß, Rela-	
" with a preposition replaced				tive	18 18
by ba	25	40		" " berjenige, diejenige,	
Dash, Use of	24	35		daßjenige	18 22
baß, Meanings of	26	33		" " dießer, diefe, diefeß .	18 11
" Order of words after	24	26		" " first class	17 11
Date, Expression of	19	29		" " foreign nouns	17 23
Dative as secondary object	25	27		" " infinitives used as	
" case, Nature of	17	5		nouns	17 12
" " Object in	24	8		" " jener, jene, jeneß	18 11
" in exclamations	25	30		" " nouns	17 9
" of baß with a preposition	25	40		" " " "	25 16
" interest	25	30		" " personal pronoun	17 25
" or accusative, Preposi-				" " pronominal adjectives	19 11
tions governing the	23	3		" " proper names	17 20
" or accusative, Preposi-				" " reflexive pronoun	17 13
tions governing the	27	9		" " folcher, folche, folcheß .	18 13
" Prepositions governing				" " superlative	19 23
the	23	2		" " the article	17 8
" " governing				" " " numerals	19 25
the	27	4		" " " ordinals	19 29
" Syntax of the	25	26		" " " possessive ad-	
" used to replace the English				jective	18 5
possessive	25	30		" " " third class of	
" with adjectives	25	29		nouns	17 14
" " compound verbs	25	28		" " welder, Relative	18 18
" " impersonal verbs	25	28		" " wer, was, Relative	18 18
" " prepositions	25	30		" " Strong	17 10
" " verbal phrases	25	28		" " " and weak	17 9
" " verbs	25	26		" " Weak	17 10
bagu, Meanings of	26	33		" " " "	17 16
Dead languages	16	3		Defective endings of adjectives	19 9
Declarative sentence, Definition				" " " " pronominal	
of	24	2		adjectives	18 2
Declension	17	3		Definite article before proper	
" Definition of	17	8		names	25 2
" General rules for	17	10		" " contracted with	
" Mixed	17	19		preposition	17 9
" Mixed, of adjectives	19	4		" " Declension of	17 8
" " " "	19	9			
" of adjectives after un-					
declined words	19	11			

INDEX

xiii

	Sec.	Page		Sec.	Page
Definite article instead of posses-			bein, beine, bein	18	5
sives	18	9	Deine, der, die, daß	19	14
" " Nature of	16	21	Demonstrative pronouns	25	39
" " Omission of	25	3	" pronouns and ad-		
" " Syntax of	25	1	jectives	18	9
" " used before femi-			Demonstratives, Function of	18	10
nine names of			" Inflection of	18	10
countries	25	2	denken, Conjugation of	21	24
" " used before names			denn, Conjunction	23	7
and seasons, etc.	25	2	" Meanings of	26	33
" " used instead of the			Dependent clause	24	16
possessive	25	3	" clauses causing inver-		
" " used where omit-			sion	24	22
ted in English	25	3	" " Order of words		
" " Use of	25	1	in	24	22
Definition of alliteration	27	39	" " Position of	24	32
" " case	17	4	" concessive clauses,		
" " cesura	27	39	Order of words in	24	21
" " clause	24	14	" infinitives, Position of		
" " common nouns	17	1	ber, Declension of article	17	8
" " comparative degree	19	16	ber, die, daß, Declension of de-		
" " conditional mode	20	7	monstrative pro-		
" " declension	17	8	noun	18	10
" " feminine gender	17	7	" " " Definite article	17	8
" " first person	17	7	" " " Relative	18	18
" " imperative mode	20	8	" " " used before a geniti-		
" " impersonal verb	20	5	tive or von	25	40
" " indefinite pronoun	18	22	" " " Uses of pronoun	18	19
" " indicative mode	20	7	bergleichen	25	40
" " infinitive mode	20	8	Derivation in general	23	11
" " intransitive verb	20	4	" of adjectives	23	17
" " masculine gender	17	6	" " adjectives by pre-		
" " neuter gender	17	7	fixes	23	18
" " " verbs	20	2	" " adjectives by the		
" " participles	20	9	aid of suffixes	23	17
" " person	17	7	" " adverbs	23	22
" " personal pronoun	17	25	" " " from nouns	23	22
" " plural number	17	4	" " German words	23	11
" " positive degree	19	16	" " nouns from other		
" " predicate	24	4	nouns	23	14
" " proper nouns	17	3	" " nouns from verbs	23	12
" " reflexive verb	20	4	" " verbs	23	19
" " rime	27	39	" " " by prefixes	23	20
" " second person	17	7	" " " suffixes	23	19
" " sentence	24	1	" " " in general	23	19
" " singular number	17	4	derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige	18	12
" " subject	24	4	" diejenige, dasjenige, De-		
" " subjunctive mode	20	7	clension of	18	12
" " superlative degree	19	17	" and derselbe followed by		
" " syllable	27	37	adjectives	19	7
" " tense	20	9	derselbe, dieselbe, daselbe	18	12
" " third person	17	7	" Use of	25	40
" " transitive verb	20	4	Descriptive poetry	27	36
Degree, Adverbial genitive of	25	25	desgleichen	25	40
" Adverbs of	22	23	dessen, Use of	25	40
Degrees of sentential combination	21	14	desfo, Meanings of	26	34

INDEX

xv

	Sec.	Page		Sec.	Page
er, in address	17	27	Foot in verse	27	37
-er and erin, Derivation by	23	13	Foreign nouns, Declension of	17	23
" Suffix, for the comparative	19	17	" " in al and el	17	23
er-, prefix, Meanings of	22	14	" words, Gender of	25	11
" Past participle of verbs in	21	11	" " in the German language	16	8
" Verbs derived by prefix	23	21	Form determining gender of nouns	25	9
-ern, Derivation of adjectives by	23	18	Formation of adverbs from adjectives	23	23
" " verbs by	23	20	" " past indicative of regular verbs	21	1
erst, Comparison of	19	19	" " the passive	22	2
" Meanings of	26	35	" " past participle of weak verbs	21	1
erste	19	28	" " plural	17	4
erz, Derivation by the prefix	23	16	" " principal parts of the weak verbs	21	1
erz, Prefix	23	18	" " words	23	11
es, Declension of	17	26	" " in general	23	11
" Different uses of	17	28	Former, The biefer	25	39
" giebt, there is, there are	22	12	Forms, Compound, of loben	21	3
" in adverbial genitives	23	23	" " modal auxiliaries	21	13
" substituted by da	17	29	" " reden	21	5
-est, Suffix, for the superlative	18	17	" " the reflexive	22	8
etlicher, Indefinite	18	28	" of case	17	6
etwa, Meanings of	26	35	" Simple, of loben	21	3
etwas	18	22	" " reden	21	4
" Uses of	18	24	" " the modal auxiliaries	21	13
eu, Pronunciation of	16	15	" " the reflexive	22	8
euer, eure, euer	18	5	Fourth class, Characteristics of	17	16
Euphonic changes in comparison	19	17	" " Model nouns of	17	17
Exclamation in the nominative	25	19	" " Nouns of	17	16
" point	24	35	" " of nouns	17	10
Exclamations in dative	25	30	" "	17	16
" genitive	25	26	Fractionals	19	30
Expression of date	19	29	freuen, sich, Conjugation of	22	8
" time	19	27	Function of adjective	19	1
F			" " adverb	22	22
f, Pronunciation of	16	16	" " conjunction	23	5
-fach, faltig, used to form multiplicatives	19	27	" " demonstratives	18	10
-faltig, -fach, suffixes used to form multiplicatives	19	27	" " interjection	23	9
fehlchlagen	23	27	" " mode	20	6
fehlen, Declension of	17	18	" " preposition	23	1
Feminine gender	17	7	" " pronoun	17	24
" Definition of	17	7	" " sentences	24	2
Feminine names of persons	17	21	" " tense	20	9
fehalten	23	27	" " verb	20	1
Field of prosody	27	37	Fürwort	16	22
Final conjunctions	27	23	"	18	1
First class, Declension of	17	11	Future, Formation of	20	26
" " Model nouns of	17	11	" Perfect	20	10
" " of nouns	17	10			
" " Characteristics of	17	11			
" person	17	7			
" Definition of	17	7			
folgen, Table of conjugation of	21	8			

	Sec.	Page		Sec.	Page
Future perfect, Formation of . . .	20	26	Genitive forms <i>welcheß, welcher,</i>		
" " tense, Meaning of . . .	20	11	<i>welcheß</i>	25	42
" " " Use of . . .	26	7	" in exclamations	25	26
" tense	20	9	" " the predicate	25	21
" " Meaning of	20	11	" Objective	25	20
" " Use of	26	7	" of quality	25	20
" " used with imperative			" Partitive	25	21
force	26	20	" Possessive	25	20
Future used to denote a present			Genitive, Prepositional adverbs		
supposition	26	7	governing the	27	2
" " with imperative			Prepositions governing		
force	26	7	the	23	1
G					
g, Pronunciation of	16	16	" " governing		
gan before names of places . . .	19	13	the	27	2
ge-, Derivation by the prefix . . .	23	16	" replaced by a preposition	25	21
" Past participle of verbs in . .	21	11	" Singular, of adjectives		
" Prefix	22	19	taking en instead of es . . .	19	5
" " Meanings of	22	15	" Subjective	25	20
" Verbs derived by prefix . . .	23	22	" Syntax of the	25	20
gegen, Meanings of	27	8	" Uses of the	25	20
gegenüber, Meanings of	27	6	" with adjectives	25	22
Gegenwart	20	9	" " nouns	25	20
" Nature of	20	10	" " prepositions	25	26
geben, Table of conjugation of . .	21	30	" " verbs	25	23
Gender, Determination of	17	7	gerade, Meanings of	26	35
" determined by form	25	9	German characters	16	11
" " " meaning	25	7	" Earliest traces of	16	4
" Double, with nouns	25	12	" grammar, Division of . . .	16	10
" Feminine	17	7	" High	16	6
" " Definition of	17	7	" language, Foreign words		
" in general	25	6	in the	16	8
" " nouns	17	6	" Originality of		
" masculine, Definition of . . .	17	6	the	16	1
" Neuter	17	7	" Low	16	6
" " Definition of	17	7	" Middle High	16	7
" of compound nouns	25	11	" New High	16	7
" " foreign nouns	25	11	" Old High	16	6
" " nouns	25	6	" script	16	12
" " the cardinals as fig-			" verse	27	37
ures	19	26	" words, Composition of . . .	23	23
General rules for declension . . .	17	10	" " Derivation of	23	11
Generic or class names	17	1	Germanic tongue, Ancient . . .	16	5
Genitive	17	5	gern, Meanings of	26	36
" Adverbial	25	25	Gerundive	26	29
" " of degree	25	25	Geschehenswort	16	21
" " " manner	25	25	gleich, Meanings of	26	36
" " " place	25	25	gleichstellen	23	27
" " " time	25	25	Grammar, Division of German .	16	10
" as secondary object	25	24	" Province of	16	9
" " sole object of a verb . . .	25	23	groß, Comparison of	19	19
" case, Definition of	17	5	Gudrun	16	7
" " Object in	24	9	gut, Comparison of	19	19
" denoting character	25	20	II		
" " manner	25	20	h, Pronunciation of	16	16
			" silent after a vowel	16	14

INDEX

xvii

	Sec.	Page		Sec.	Page
haben , auxiliary, Uses of	20	24	-il , Nouns ending in	17	23
" " verb, Conjugation of	20	17	immer , Meanings of	26	36
" Compound forms of	20	18	Imperative mode	20	8
" Simple forms of	20	17	" " Definition of	20	8
" Table of conjugation of	20	28	" " Syntax of	26	19
" used to form the infinitive perfect	20	25	" sentence, Definition of	24	2
" used to form the perfect tense	20	25	" Substitutes for	26	20
" " " " the pluperfect tense	20	25	" Use of	26	19
-haft , Derivation by	23	18	Impersonal verb	20	8
halb	19	30	" "	22	11
" before names of places	19	13	" " Conjugation of	22	12
" Suffix, used to form diminutives	19	30	" verbs denoting phenomena of nature	22	11
haben , Meanings of	27	2	" verbs denoting state of body and mind	22	11
hätte	19	30	" verbs with dative	25	28
handhaben	23	27	" " secondary object	25	25
Hauptstädte	24	15	-in , Meanings of	27	12
Hauptwort	16	21	" Preposition	23	4
-heit , Derivation by	23	14	" inner, Nouns ending in	17	16
her in compound prefixes	22	18	" Derivation by	23	15
" Meanings of	22	18	Indefinite adjectives	18	22
herr , Declension of	17	18	" "	18	24
herv , Declension of	17	19	" all, Declension of	18	26
hier with a preposition	25	40	" article	16	22
High German	16	6	" " Declension of	17	9
hin in compound prefixes	22	18	" " Omission of	25	5
" Meanings of	22	18	" " Syntax of	25	5
hinter , Comparison of	19	20	" pronoun	18	22
" Meanings of	27	11	" " Definition of	18	22
" Preposition	23	4	" " Inflection of	18	22
Historical present	26	5	" pronouns	25	43
History of the German language	16	4	Indefinites with <i>igend</i>	25	43
hoch , Comparison of	19	19	Independent clauses	24	15
" Declension of	19	12	Indicative mode	20	7
höchst used to express eminence	19	22	" " Definition of	26	8
hundert , Declension of	19	26	" " Syntax of	20	7
Hyphen	27	33	" Past, of irregular verbs	21	25
" "	16	20	" " regular verbs, Formation of	21	1
" Use of	24	35	" Present, of strong verbs	21	25
I			" tenses, Uses of	26	4
i , Pronunciation of	16	14	" Uses of	26	8
Iambus	27	38	Indirect questions, Subjunctive in	26	17
ich , Declension of	17	25	" statement, Subjunctive of	26	13
-icht , Derivation by	23	18	Infinitive	26	20
Idiomatic phrases	27	23	" formed with <i>sein</i>	20	25
-ieren , Derivation of verbs by	23	20	" in general	26	30
" Past participle of verbs in	21	11	" mode	20	8
-ig , Derivation by	23	17	" " Definition of	20	8
-igen , Derivation by	23	19	" perfect formed with <i>haben</i>	20	25
ih , Declension of	17	26	" used as a noun	26	21
" <i>ihre</i> , <i>ihr</i>	18	5			

	<i>Sec.</i>	<i>Page</i>		<i>Sec.</i>	<i>Page</i>
Infinitive used for the imperative	26	20	irgend with indefinites	25	43
" Uses of	26	21	Irregular comparison	19	19
" with <i>zu</i>	26	23	conjugation	21	24
" without <i>zu</i>	26	21	nouns	17	18
Infinitives, dependent, Position of	24	31	verbs	21	1
" used as nouns	17	12	verbs, List of	21	23
" " nouns, Declen-			- <i>ist</i> , Derivation by	23	18
sion of	17	21	Iterative numerals	19	27
Infection in general	17	3			
" of adjectives	25	34	J		
" " Two kinds of	19	3	<i>j</i> , Pronunciation of	16	16
" " nouns to denote case	17	3	<i>ja</i> , Meanings of	26	36
" " " number	17	3	<i>je</i> , Meanings of	26	37
" " the comparative and			<i>jeb</i> , Declension of	19	11
superlative	19	23	<i>jeder</i> , Indefinite	18	28
" " demonstratives	18	10	<i>jederman</i>	18	22
" " indefinite pro-			Declension of	18	22
noun	18	22	<i>jedweder</i> , Indefinite	18	28
" " modal auxiliaries	21	12	<i>jedlicher</i> , Indefinite	18	28
" " noun	17	3	<i>jemand</i>	18	22
" " relative	18	18	Declension of	18	22
" " verb	20	5	<i>jener</i> and <i>diefer</i> , Difference of	25	39
inner	19	20	<i>da</i> , that one there	25	40
Inseparable compounds	22	13	<i>jene</i> , <i>jenes</i>	18	11
" or separable verbs	22	19			
" prefixes	22	13	K		
" " Meanings of	22	13	<i>k</i> , Pronunciation of	16	16
" verbs, Conjugation of	22	15	<i>keiner</i> , indefinite adjective, Declen-		
Intensive pronoun	17	13	sion of	18	26
Interest, Dative of	25	30	indefinite, Declension of	18	25
Interjection	16	27	<i>-keit</i> , Derivation by	23	14
" " " " "	23	9	<i>kennen</i> , Conjugation of	21	24
" Function of the	23	9	Kinds of inflection of nouns	17	3
Interjections causing inversion	24	24	" meters	27	38
" classified according			" objects	24	6
to their mean-			" poetry	27	35
ing	23	10	" verse	27	39
List of	23	10	<i>Konjunktiv</i>	26	8
Interrogation point	24	35	<i>können</i> , Conjugation of	21	15
Interrogative adjectives	18	14	" Meanings of	21	12
" pronouns	18	14	" " "	21	21
" " "	25	41	Principal parts of	21	12
" sentence, Definition					
of	24	2	L		
Interrogatives, Functions of	18	14	<i>l</i> , Pronunciation of	16	16
Intransitive verb	20	3	Language, Foreign words in the		
" " "	24	7	German	16	8
" " Definition of	20	4	" History of the German	16	4
" verbs, Passive of	22	6	" in general	16	1
" " with dative	25	26	" Originality of the Ger-		
Introduction	16	1	man	16	1
Inversion caused by adverbs	24	23	Languages, Dead	16	3
" of the verb	24	21	" Living	16	3
Inverted order of words	24	18	" Names of, derived		
" " " "	24	21	from adjectives	19	14
" " Use of	24	24	<i>lassen</i> with the infinitive used in-		
			stead of the passive imperative	26	20

INDEX

xix

	Sec.	Page		Sec.	Page
Latter, The, jener	25	39	mehrere followed by an adjective	19	13
-lei, Suffix, used to form varia-			" Indefinite	18	29
tives	19	27	mein, dein, sein, etc.	18	4
-lein, Derivation by	23	15	" meine, mein	18	5
-ler, Derivation by	23	14	meine, der, die, das	18	7
Letters, Capital	16	13	Reine, der, die, das	19	14
lest, Comparison of	19	19	meiner, meine, meines	18	6
-lich, Derivation by	23	17	meinige, der, die, das	18	8
" Termination of adverbs	23	23	Meter in verse	27	37
-ling, Derivation by	23	15	Middle High German	16	7
List of interjections	23	10	minder, mindest	19	19
" " Irregular verbs	21	32	Minutes, Prepositions used to ex-		
" " the most usual abbrevia-			press	19	27
tions	27	25	miß-, Derivation by the prefix	23	17
Living languages	16	3	mit, Meanings of	27	6
loben, Compound forms of	21	3	" Preposition	23	2
" Conjugation of	21	2	mitten, Meanings of	26	37
" Passive voice of	22	2	mittler	19	20
" Simple forms of	21	3	Mixed conjugation	21	24
" Table of conjugation	21	6	" declension	17	19
" " passive voice of	22	4	" " of adjectives	19	4
Low German	16	6	" " "	19	8
lustwandeln	23	27	Mode	20	6
Rüther	16	7	" Conditional	20	7
Lyric poetry	27	36	" " Syntax of	26	18
			" Definition of	20	6
M			" Function of	20	6
m, Pronunciation of	16	16	" Imperative	20	8
mal used to form iteratives	19	27	" " Syntax of	26	19
man, Substitute for the passive	18	22	" Indicative	20	7
" Syntax of	25	23	" " Use of	26	8
" Use of	18	23	" Infinitive	20	8
mande followed by an adjective	19	13	" " Syntax of	26	20
mander, Indefinite	18	28	" Subjunctive	20	7
Manner, Adverbial place of	25	25	" "	27	8
" Adverbs of	22	23	Modal auxiliaries	21	12
" Genitive denoting	25	20	" " Compound forms		
Marks of parentheses	24	35	of	21	13
" " quotation	24	36	" " Inflection of	21	12
" Orthographic	16	20	" " Meanings of	21	21
Masculine gender	17	6	" " Simple forms of	21	13
" Definition of	17	6	" " Special uses of	21	23
" proper names	17	21	Model nouns of first class	17	11
Meaning, Determining gender of			" " " fourth class	17	17
nouns by	25	7	" " " second class	17	13
" of interjections	23	10	" " " third class	17	15
" " the word case	17	4	" verb betrachten	22	15
Meanings of bin and her	22	18	" " for reflexives	22	8
" " the inseparable pre-			" " regular conjugation	21	3
fixes	22	13	" " loben, Conjugation of	21	2
" " " modal auxiliaries	21	21	" " reden	21	4
Measures of verse	27	38	" " sich freuen	22	8
mehr, Comparison of	19	19	Modes, Five	20	6
" Indefinite	18	31	" with regard to time	20	12
" more, Used to form a com-			Modification of a, u, in compari-		
parative	19	20	son of adjectives	19	18

	<i>Sec.</i>	<i>Page</i>
Modified vowels	16	15
mögen, Meanings of	21	12
" " "	21	21
" Principal parts of	21	12
" Table of conjugation of	21	16
Months, Names of	17	22
" " "	25	16
more, mehr, in comparison	19	20
Multiplicative numerals	19	27
müssen, Meanings of	21	12
" " "	21	22
" Principal parts of	21	12
" Table of conjugation of	21	17
mutmaßen	23	27
Rüther	17	12

N

n, Pronunciation of	16	16
naß, Meanings of	27	6
naß, Comparison of	19	19
Names, Generic or class	17	1
" of countries and places	17	20
" " cities, etc.,		
Declension		
of	25	16
" " feminine persons	17	21
" " languages derived		
from adjectives	19	14
" " months	17	22
" " tenses	20	10
" " things rational	17	2
" " " sensible	17	2
" proper, Declension of	17	20
" several, belonging to the		
same person, Declen-		
sion of	25	17
" with titles	25	18
neben, Meanings of	27	11
" Preposition	23	4
neßt, Meaning of	27	7
Negative conjunctions	27	22
nennen, Conjugation of	21	24
-ner, Derivation of nouns by	23	14
Neuter gender	17	7
" " Definition of	17	7
" pronominal forms used of		
persons	25	43
" verbs	20	2
New High German	16	7
ng, Pronunciation of	16	18
9ibelungenlied	16	7
nicht,	18	22
" Uses of	18	24
niemand	18	22
" Declension of	18	22
" Uses of	18	23

	<i>Sec.</i>	<i>Page</i>
nis and -fal, Nouns ending in . . .	17	13
" Derivation by	23	15
" Derivation of nouns by	23	13
noð einar, another	25	43
" Meanings of	26	37
Nominative	17	5
" case	17	5
" " Definition of	17	5
" " in address and exclamation	25	19
" " apposition	25	19
" " predicative adjective	24	6
" " " noun	24	6
" " the predicate	25	18
" subject	25	18
" Syntax of the	25	18
" with <i>alá</i> and <i>víð</i>	25	19
Non-finite part of the verb	24	20
Non-personal parts of the verb	24	29
Normal order of words	24	18
Noun	16	21
"	17	1
" adjuncts of the, Position of	24	27
" Appositive	24	10
" " adjuncts of the	24	28
" Attributive	24	9
" " adjuncts of the	24	27
" Infinitive used as a	26	21
" Inflection of the	17	3
" Number of the	25	13
" Predicative	24	5
Nouns, Abstract	17	2
" Adjective phrases with	24	28
" Adverbs derived from	23	22
" Case in	17	4
" Classes of	17	10
" " " common	17	1
" Collective, with a singular verb	26	1
" Common	17	1
" Compound	23	24
" " Gender of	25	11
" " in general	23	24
" compounded with verbs	22	22
" Declension of	17	9
" " "	25	16
" derived from adjectives	23	14
" " " other nouns	23	14
" " " verbs	23	12
" " from verbs without augments	23	12
" " from verbs with the aid of suffixes	23	12
" Division of	17	1

INDEX

xxi

	Sec.	Page		Sec.	Page
Nouns, ending in ei, heit, feit,			o, Pronunciation of	16	14
<i>schafft, ung,</i>			ö, Pronunciation of	16	15
and in	17	16	ob, Meanings of	27	7
<i>niß and ial</i>	17	13	ober	19	20
<i>tum</i>	17	15	Object clauses, Sequence of tense		
formed by the aid of pre-			in	26	15
fixes	23	16	Direct	20	3
Gender in	17	6	"	21	8
of	25	6	in general	24	6
Irregular	17	17	" the accusative case	24	7
Kinds of inflection of	17	3	" " dative case	24	8
Number in	17	4	" " genitive case	24	9
of fourth class	17	16	of a verb	23	6
" second class	17	13	" " in the genitive	25	23
" the first class	17	11	" verbs in the dative	25	26
" third class	17	15	Secondary, in the genitive	25	24
Person in	17	7	" " " accus-		
Predicate	24	5	ative	25	31
Proper	17	1	" " " dative	25	27
Plural of	25	16	of a verb	25	24
used only in the plural	25	13	Objective genitive	25	20
" " " singular	25	13	Objects, Position of	24	20
with double form in the			Three kinds of	24	7
plural	25	14	oe, Pronunciation of	16	15
gender	25	12	ohne, Meanings of	27	9
plural	17	20	Old High German	16	6
genitive	25	20	Omission of conclusion	26	12
used as attributes	24	10	" condition	25	12
predicatively	24	5	" personal forms of		
Number, Concordance of	26	1	haben and sein	24	27
in nouns	17	4	" the definite article	25	2
" verbs	20	12	" " indefinite ar-		
of cases	17	5	ticle	25	5
" tenses	20	10	one, ones, Translation of	19	13
" the noun	25	13	Optative subjunctive	26	9
" verb	26	1	Order, Inverted, of words	21	18
Plural	17	4	" Use of	24	24
Singular	17	4	Normal, of words	24	18
used instead of			of words	24	18
the plural	25	15	" " in dependent		
Numbers, Endings of, in verbs	20	15	clauses	24	22
Two	17	4	" " " general	24	18
Numeral	19	24	" " " independent		
Numerals	16	23	clauses	24	20
Cardinal	16	23	Transposed, of words	24	18
Declension of	19	25	" " "	24	25
Definition of	19	24	Ordinal adverbs	19	30
Fractional	19	30	Numerals	16	24
Iterative	19	27	"	19	24
Multiplicative	19	27	"	19	28
Ordinal	16	24	Ordinals, Declension of	19	29
"	19	28	used in expression of		
adverb	19	30	dates	19	29
Variative	19	27	Origin of the word language	16	2
nun, Meanings of	26	37	Originality of the German lan-		
nur, Meanings of	26	38	guage	16	1

	Ser.	Page		Ser.	Page
Orthographic marks	16	20	Past participle of weak verbs, Formation of	21	1
Orthography	16	10	" " used with imperative force	26	20
" New	27	31	" perfect	20	10
			" subjunctive, Use of	26	9
			" tense	20	9
			" " Change of final consonant in	21	26
P			" " " vowel in	21	26
p, Pronunciation of	16	16	" " Meaning of	20	11
Parentheses, Marks of	24	35	" " Syntax of	26	6
Participle, Definition of	20	9	" used in place of pluperfect	26	6
" of verbs in be	21	11	Pause, Cesural	27	39
" " " emp	21	11	Pauses, Poetic	27	38
" " " ent	21	11	Perfect	20	10
" " " er	21	11	" formed with fein	20	25
" " " ge	21	11	" Future	20	10
" " " ber	21	11	" " Formation of	20	26
" " " aer	21	11	" " tense, Use of	26	7
" Past, of strong verbs, Formation of	21	25	" Past	20	10
" " of verbs in ieren	21	11	" Present	20	10
" " of weak verbs, Formation of	21	1	" tense	26	6
" Present	26	26	" " formed with haben	20	25
" Ending of	20	16	" " Meaning of	20	11
" Remarks on the	26	25	" " Use of	26	6
" Syntax of the	26	25	Period, Use of	24	32
Participles	20	9	Person, Congruence of, in verb	26	3
" in connection with prepositions	27	19	" Definition of	17	7
Partitive genitive	25	21	" First	17	7
Parts of speech	16	20	" in nouns	17	7
" Principal, of a verb	20	13	" " verb, Syntax of	26	3
" " " strong verbs	21	32	" " verbs	20	12
" " " the weak verbs, Formation of	21	1	" Second	17	7
Passive, Conjugation of	22	2	" Third	17	7
" Formation of	22	2	Personal endings of verbs	20	15
" of intransitive verbs	22	6	" forms of haben and fein omitted	24	27
" Substitutes for the	22	6	" names, Titles with	17	22
" Use of	22	6	" pronoun	17	25
" voice	20	5	" " Declension of	17	25
" "	20	13	" " Definition of	17	25
" "	22	1	" " followed by an adjective	19	10
Past conditional, Formation of	20	27	" " in address	17	26
" indicative of irregular verbs	12	25	" " Syntax of	25	36
" " " regular verbs, Formation of	21	1	" " Uses of	17	26
" " " " Formation of	21	25	Persons, Endings of, in verbs	20	15
" " " " verbs in be	21	11	þû in German words	27	31
" " " " " emp	21	11	" Pronunciation of	16	18
" " " " " ent	21	11	Phrases, Adjective, with nouns	24	28
" " " " " er	21	11	" Adverbial	24	11
" " " " " ge	21	11	" Idiomatic	27	23
" " " " " ieren	21	11	" Prepositional	27	13
" " " " " ber	21	11	" Verbal, with dative	25	28
" " " " " aer	21	11	Place, Adverbial genitive of	25	26
" " " " " aer	21	11			

INDEX

xxiii

	Sec.	Page		Sec.	Page
Place, Adverbs of	22	23	Predicative adjectives	25	34
Plattdeutsch	16	6	" " Verbs taking	24	6
Pluperfect	20	10	" noun in the nominative	24	6
" formed with haben	20	25	" Verbs taking a	24	6
" " sein	20	25	" use of adjectives	19	3
" subjunctive, Use of	26	9	Prefixes, Compound separable	22	18
" tense, Meaning of	20	11	" Derivation of adjectives		
" " Use of	26	6	by	23	18
Plural, Definition of	17	4	" " " verbs by	23	20
" Nouns used only in the	25	13	" Inseparable	22	13
" number	17	4	" Nouns formed by the aid		
" " Definition of	17	4	of	23	16
" of nouns, Formation of	17	4	" Separable	22	17
" " proper nouns	25	16	Preposition	16	26
Poetic pauses	27	38	" 	23	1
Poetry and prose	27	35	" contracted with definite	17	9
" Descriptive	27	36	" Function of	23	1
" Didactic	27	36	" Syntax of	27	1
" Dramatic	27	36	" used instead of the		
" Epic	27	36	genitive	25	21
" Lyric	27	36	" with the case form of		
Point, Interrogation	24	35	dieß	25	40
Position of adjuncts	24	27	Prepositional adverbs governing		
" adverbs	24	30	the genitive	27	2
" dependent clauses	24	32	" phrases	27	13
" " infinitives	24	31	Prepositions forming superlatives		
" " objects	24	29	and comparatives	19	20
Positive degree	19	15	" governing the accusative	23	2
" Definition of	19	16	" governing the accusative	27	8
Possessive adjectives	18	3	" governing the dative	23	2
" genitive	25	20	" governing the dative	27	4
" pronominal adjectives			" governing the dative		
used substantively	19	14	or accusative	27	9
" pronouns	18	3	" governing the dative	23	3
" " Syntax of			" governing the genitive	23	1
the	25	38	" governing the genitive	27	2
" Repetition of the	25	39	" in connection with adjectives	27	19
" replaced by definite			" in connection with participles	27	19
article	25	3	" in connection with verbs	27	14
Possessives, Different uses of	18	8	" with dative	25	30
" replaced by definite			" " genitive	25	26
article	18	9	Present conditional, Formation of	20	27
" used as nouns	25	39	" Historical	26	5
" Uses of	18	4	" indicative of strong verbs	21	25
Potential subjunctive	26	10	" participle	26	26
Predicate adjective	19	2	" " Ending of	20	16
" " in the nominative	24	6	" perfect	20	10
" " Syntax of	24	5			
" and subject	24	3			
" " Relations between	24	4			
" Definition of	24	4			
" Genitive in	25	21			
" Nominative	25	18			
" noun	24	5			
" nouns and adjectives	24	5			

	Ser.	Page		Ser.	Page
Present subjunctive, Use of	26	9	Pronouns, Relative	25	42
" tense	20	9	" Uses of	18	1
" "	26	5	Pronunciation	16	14
" " In vivid narration	26	5	Proper names, Article with	17	21
" " Meaning of	20	10	" " Declension of	17	20
" " used for the impera-			" nouns	17	1
tive	26	6	" " Definition of	17	3
" " " In place of the			" " Plural of	25	16
future	26	5	Prosody	27	35
" " " with impera-			Province of grammar	16	9
tive force	26	20	Provinces, Names of	25	16
" used in place of the perfect	26	5	Punctuation	24	32
Primary tenses	20	10	Pure conjunctions	23	9
Principal clauses	24	15	Purists	16	9
" parts of a verb	20	13	Purpose, Subjunctive of	26	9
" " " reben	21	4	Bürtheilung	27	38
" " " fein	20	19			
" " " the weak verbs	21	1	Q		
" " " werden	20	22	a. Pronunciation of	16	18
Pronominal adjectives	18	1	Quality, Genitive of	25	20
" "	17	24	Quantity of syllables	27	37
" adjectives after pro-			Questions, indirect, Subjunctive in	26	17
nominal words	Ser.	7	Quotation marks	24	36
" adjectives, Defective					
endings of	18	2	R		
" adjectives, Strong			r. Pronunciation of	16	16
endings of	18	2	Reciprocal pronoun	17	13
" adjectives used sub-			reben, Compound forms of	21	5
stantively	19	14	" Conjugation of	21	4
" adjectives, Weak end-			" Principal parts of	21	4
ings of	18	2	" Simple forms of	21	4
" words followed by pro-			Reflexive pronoun, Declension of	17	13
nominal adjectives	19	7	" pronouns	17	13
Pronoun	17	24	" "	25	37
" Definition of	18	1	" " in connection		
" ber, bie; baß	18	10	with verbs	25	37
" Emphatic	17	31	" verb	20	4
" Function of	17	24	" " Definition of	20	4
" Indefinite	18	22	" verbs	22	7
" Personal	17	25	" " Conjugation of	22	8
" " followed by an			" " substitute for		
adjective	19	10	the passive	22	6
" Reciprocal	17	13	" " with secondary		
" Relative	18	17	object in the		
" Syntax of the	25	36	genitive	25	24
Pronouns, Classes of	17	25	" " with the pronoun		
" Demonstrative	18	9	in the dative	22	9
" "	25	39	Reflexives, Construction and uses		
" Indefinite	25	43	of	22	10
" Interrogative	25	41	Regular conjugation	21	1
" "	18	14	" endings of the strong		
" personal, Syntax of	25	36	verbs	21	27
" Possessive	18	3	" " of the weak		
" "	25	38	verbs	21	2
" Reflexive	17	13	" verbs	21	1
" " Syntax of	25	37	" " Formation of past		
			participle of	21	1

INDEX

xxv

	Sec.	Page		Sec.	Page
Relations between subject and predicate	24	4	fein, Table of conjugation of	20	30
Relative adjective	18	17	" used to form the perfect tense	20	25
" Inflection of	18	18	" " " the pluperfect tense	20	25
" pronoun	18	17	" " " the perfect infinitive	20	25
" pronouns, Syntax of	25	42			
" sentences, Subjunctive in	26	12	fein, <i>feine</i> , <i>fein</i> , Pronominal adjective	18	5
Relatives replaced by adverbs	18	20	tive	19	14
" Use of	18	20	<i>feine</i> , <i>der</i> , <i>die</i> , <i>daß</i>	25	39
" Uses of	18	19	<i>feiner</i> <i>Zeit</i>	25	38
Remarks about the use of the nominative	25	19	<i>selbst</i> , even, <i>Emphatic</i>	25	38
" on the participle	26	25	" used with the reflexive	25	38
" " weak verb	21	11	Semicolon, Use of the	24	34
rennen, Conjugation of	21	24	senben, Conjugation of	21	24
Repetition of the article	25	6	Sentence	24	1
" " possessive	25	39	" Complex	24	16
Rhym	27	39	" Compound	24	15
Rime	27	39	" " Definition of	24	15
Rules for spelling	27	30	" declarative, Definition of	24	2
			" defined	24	1
S			" imperative, Definition of	24	2
Sehute in German words	27	31	" interrogative, Definition of	24	2
se, Pronunciation of	16	16	" of	24	2
sal and sel, Derivation by	23	13	" must have two parts	24	8
" Nouns ending in	17	13	Sentences, Complex	24	14
sam, Derivation by	23	18	" Compound	24	14
samt, Meaning of	27	7	" Functions of	24	2
See, Der	24	1	" independent, Order of words in	24	20
Segefüge	24	16	" Uses of	24	2
Segebinbung	24	15	Sentential elements	24	3
sch, Pronunciation of	16	18	Separable compounds	22	16
sch, Pronunciation of	16	18	" " Conjugation of	22	19
Schabe, Declension of	17	18	" or inseparable verbs	22	19
-schaft, Derivation by	23	14	" prefixes	22	17
Schmer, Declension of	17	18	Sequence of tense in object clauses	26	15
schon, Meanings of	26	38	Several adjectives preceding a noun, Declension of	19	8
Script, German	16	12	sch freuen, Conjugation of	22	8
Second class, Characteristics of	17	13	" in connection with <i>selbst</i>	25	38
" " Model nouns of	17	13	" " subordinate clauses	25	38
" " of nouns	17	10	sch, Declension of	17	25
" " "	17	13	sch, in address	17	27
" person	17	7	Silbentrennung	27	32
" " Definition of	17	7	Simple forms of <i>haben</i>	20	17
Secondary object in the accusative	25	31	" " " <i>loben</i>	21	3
" " " dative	25	27	" " " <i>reden</i>	21	4
" " " genitive	25	24	" " " <i>sein</i>	20	20
" " of a verb	25	24	" " " the modal auxiliaries	21	13
" " impersonal verbs	25	25	" " " reflexive	22	8
" " of reflexive verbs	25	24	" " " <i>werden</i>	20	22
senben, Conjugation of	21	28	" tenses	20	11
sein, auxiliary, Uses of	20	25	Singular, Nouns used only in the number	17	13
" Compound forms of	20	20			
" Conjugation of	20	19			
" Simple forms of auxiliary	20	20			

	Sec.	Page		Sec.	Page
Singular number, Definition of	17	4	Subjunctive, Dubitative	26	10
" used instead of the plural	25	15	" in general	26	8
" verb with collective			" indirect questions	26	17
nouns	26	1	" relative sentences	26	12
" verb with two or more			" mode	20	7
subjects	26	2	" "	26	8
fo, Meaning of	27	9	" Definition of	20	7
"-als, in comparison of equality	19	20	" of indirect statement	26	13
"-wie, in comparison of equality	19	20	" purpose	26	9
folch, Declension of	19	11	" Optative	26	9
" followed by an adjective	19	13	" Potential	26	10
" folcher, correlative	25	41	" Unreal	26	10
folcher, folche, folches, Declension of	18	13	Subordinate clauses, Classes of	24	16
" Use of	18	14	Subordinating conjunctions	23	6
" -wie	25	41	" "	23	8
folien, Meanings of	21	12	" "	24	16
" "	21	22	Substantive adjectives	25	35
" Principal parts of	21	12	" clauses	24	17
" Table of conjugation of	21	18	" use of adjectives	19	2
Some translated by wêlcher	25	41	" " "	19	13
fonder, Conjunction	23	6	" " " possessives	25	39
" Meaning of	27	9	Substitutes for the imperative	26	20
fo, Pronunciation of	16	18	" " passive	22	6
Special uses of the modal auxiliaries	21	23	Suffixes, Derivation of adjectives		
Speech, Parts of	16	20	by the aid of	23	17
Spelling	27	29	" Derivation of verbs by	23	19
Spondeus	27	38	" -er, -est for the comparison of adjectives	19	17
ß, Pronunciation of	16	18	" Nouns derived by the aid of	23	14
Statement, indirect, Subjunctive of	26	13	" Nouns derived from verbs with the aid of	23	12
Strong and weak declensions	17	9	Summary of syntactic combination	24	13
" conjugation	21	24	Superlative, attributive, Declension of	19	21
" declension	17	10	" declined	19	23
" " of adjectives	19	4	" degree	19	15
" " "	19	5	" Definition of	19	17
" ending of pronominal adjectives	18	2	" Different uses of	19	21
" verbs	20	14	Superlatives in enß	19	22
" Characteristics of	21	24	" used adverbially	19	22
" Conjugation of	20	14	" as adverbs	19	21
" Past indicative of	21	25	" in the predicate	19	22
" past participle of, Formation of	21	25	" with after	19	22
" Present indicative of	21	25	" aufß	19	22
" Regular endings of	21	27	Supposition contrary to fact	26	11
Subject and predicate	24	3	Syllable, Definition of	27	37
" " Relations between	24	4	Syllables, Division of	16	19
" Definition of	24	4	" "	27	32
" in the nominative	25	18	" Quantity of	27	37
Subjective genitive	25	20	Syntactic combination, Summary of	24	13
Subjects, two or more, Verb with	26	2	Syntax	16	10
Subjunctive, Conditional	26	10	"	24	1
" Diplomatic	26	10	" defined	24	1
" distinguished from indicative by e	21	2			

INDEX

xxvii

	Sec.	Page		Sec.	Page
Syntax of the accusative	25	31	Tenses, Compound	20	12
" " " adjective	25	33	" " in general	26	4
" " " adverb	26	29	" " Indicative, Uses of	26	4
" " " article	25	1	" " Names of	20	10
" " " cases	25	18	" " Number of	20	10
" " " conjunction	27	22	" " Primary	20	10
" " " noun	25	6	" " Simple	20	11
" " " preposition	27	1	Teutonic race	16	5
" " " pronoun	25	36	tb, Pronunciation of	16	18
" " " verb	26	1	" " used in German words	27	30
§. Pronunciation of	16	18	Than, at8, after the comparative	19	20
			That one there, jener da	25	40
			There is, there are, es giebt	22	12
T			Third class, Model nouns of	17	15
t, Pronunciation of	16	16	" " Nouns of	17	15
Table of conjugation of anfangen	22	20	" " of nouns	17	10
" " " " dürfen	21	14	" " " " Characteristics	17	14
" " " " folgen	21	8	" " " " Declension	17	14
" " " " geben	21	30	" " " " of	17	7
" " " " haben	20	28	" " " " Definition of	17	7
" " " " können	21	15	This one here, dieser hier	25	40
" " " " loben	21	6	Time, Adverbial genitive of	25	25
" " " " mögen	21	16	" " Adverbs of	22	23
" " " " müssen	21	17	" " Division of	20	9
" " " " sein	21	28	" " Expressions of	19	27
" " " " setzen	21	29	Titles	25	18
" " " " sein	20	30	" " with names	25	18
" " " " sollen	21	18	" " personal names	17	22
" " " " werden	20	32	tochter, Declension of	17	12
" " " " wissen	21	20	tot8diagen	23	27
" " " " wollen	21	19	Transitive verb	20	3
" " the passive voice of loben	22	4	" " " "	24	7
taufenb, Declension of	19	26	" " construed with direct and indirect	25	27
teilhaben	23	27	" " " " Definition of	20	4
-tel, Suffix, used to form fractionals	19	30	" " verbs with the accusative	25	31
Tense	20	9	Transposed order of words	24	18
" " Definition of	20	9	" " " "	24	25
" " Function of	20	9	Trema, Use of	27	34
" " Future	20	9	tro8gen8	27	38
" " " " Meaning of	20	11	-tum, Derivation by	23	15
" " " " perfect, Meaning of	20	11	" " Nouns in	17	15
" " " " Use of	26	7	§. Pronunciation of	16	18
" " " " Use of	26	7			
" " Past	20	9	U		
" " " " Meaning of	20	11	u, Pronunciation of	16	15
" " " " Use of	26	6	ü, Pronunciation of	16	15
" " Perfect	20	10	über, Meanings of	27	12
" " " " Nature of	20	11	" " Preposition	23	4
" " " " Syntax of	26	6	ue, Pronunciation of	16	15
" " Pluperfect	20	10	uhr, clock	19	27
" " " " Nature of	20	11	umlaut	16	7
" " " " Syntax of	26	7			
" " Present	20	9			
" " " "	26	5			
" " " " Meaning of	20	10			
" " Sequence of, in object clauses	26	15			

	<i>Sec.</i>	<i>Page</i>		<i>Sec.</i>	<i>Page</i>
Umstandswort	16	25	Uses of reflexives	22	10
"	22	22	" " relatives	18	19
un- <i>wissen</i> , Meaning of	27	3	" " sentences	24	2
un-, Derivation by the prefix	23	16			
" Prefix	23	19			
Undeclined words, Adjectives after	19	11			
-ung, Derivation by	23	14	V		
ungeachtet, Meaning of	27	3	v, Pronunciation of	16	17
Uninflected attributive adjective	25	34	Variative numerals	19	27
Unreal subjunctive	26	10	ver-, Past participle of verbs in	21	11
unfer, unfere, unter	18	5	" prefix, Meanings of	22	14
unter	19	20	" Verbs derived by	23	22
unter, Meanings of	27	12	Verb	16	24
" Preposition	23	4	"	20	1
Unterordnende Bindewörter	24	16	"	21	1
ur, Derivation by the prefix	23	16	" Adjuncts of the	24	28
" Prefix	23	19	" Definition of	16	24
Use of adjectives	25	33	" Function of	20	1
" " apostrophe	24	36	" haben, Conjugation of	20	17
" " colon	24	34	" Impersonal	20	5
" " comma	24	33	" " Conjugation of	22	12
" " conditional mode	26	18	" Inflection of	20	5
" " daß and dieß	18	12	" Intransitive	20	3
" " dash	24	35	" "	24	7
" " definite article	25	1	" " Definition of	20	4
" " derjenige, diejenige, das- "jenige	18	13	" Inversion of the	24	21
" " es	17	28	" non-personal parts of, Posi- "tion of	24	29
" " exclamation point	24	35	" Number of	26	1
" " imperative	26	19	" Object of	24	6
" " interrogation point	24	35	" Person in	26	3
" " inverted order	24	24	" preceding two or more sub- "jects	26	2
" " modal auxiliaries	21	23	" Principal parts of	20	13
" " normal order	24	20	" Reflexive	20	4
" " optative subjunctive	26	9	" " substitute for the "passive	22	6
" " passive	22	6	" fein, Conjugation of	20	19
" " past tense	26	6	" Singular, with collective "nouns	26	1
" " perfect tense	26	6	" Syntax of	26	1
" " period	24	32	" Transitive	20	3
" " pluperfect tense	26	7	" " Definition of	20	4
" " present tense	26	5	" " Syntax of	24	7
" " relatives	18	21	" " with two or more sub- "jects	26	2
" " semicolon	24	34	Verbal adjectives	20	9
" " singular instead of plural	25	15	" " phrases, Dative with	25	28
" " subjunctive in indirect "questions	26	17	Verbs active and verbs neuter	20	2
Uses of adjective	19	1	" auxiliary, Definition of	20	16
" " auxiliary verbs	20	24	" " Uses of	20	24
" " indicative	26	8	" Compound	22	13
" " " tenses	26	4	" "	23	26
" " infinitive	26	21	" " with dative	25	28
" " genitive	25	20	" compounded with nouns	22	22
" " personal pronoun	17	26	" " with adject- "tives	22	22
" " possessives	18	4			
" " "	18	8			
" " pronouns	18	1			

INDEX

xxix

	Sec.	Page		Sec.	Page
Verbs construed with the genitive	25	23	Verbs taking a predicative adjective or noun	24	6
" denoting phenomena of nature	22	11	" Weak	21	1
" the state of body or mind	22	11	" Conjugation of	20	14
" Derivation of	23	19	" Regular endings of	21	2
" " in general	23	19	" with accusative	25	31
" " nouns from	23	12	" dative	25	26
" derived by prefixes	23	20	" object in the genitive	25	23
" " suffixes	23	19	Vergangenheit	20	9
" ending in <i>ieren</i> , Formation of past participle of	21	11	Verhältnißwort	16	26
" Endings of persons and numbers of	20	15	" "	23	1
" Genitive with	25	23	vermöge, Meanings of	27	4
" Impersonal	22	11	Verse	27	36
" " with dative	25	28	" Accent in	27	37
" " secondary object	25	25	" German	27	37
" in <i>be-</i> , Past participle of	21	11	" Elements of	27	37
" " connection with prepositions	27	14	" Measures of	27	38
" " with reflexive pronouns	25	37	Verses, Kinds of	27	39
" " <i>emp-</i> , Past participle of	21	11	viel, Comparison of	19	19
" " <i>ent-</i> , Past participle of	21	11	" Declension of	19	7
" " <i>er-</i> , Past participle of	21	11	" " "	19	11
" " <i>ge-</i> , Past participle of	21	11	" Indefinite	18	30
" " <i>-ieren</i> , Past participle of	21	11	viele followed by an adjective	19	13
" " <i>ber-</i> , Past participle of	21	11	Voice, Active	20	13
" " <i>ger-</i> , Past participle of	21	11	" Passive	20	13
" inseparable, Conjugation of	22	15	" "	22	1
" intransitive, Passive of	22	6	vollendete Gegenwart	20	10
" Irregular	21	1	" Vergangenheit	20	10
" List of	21	32	" Zukunft	20	10
" Neuter	20	2	von, Meanings of	27	7
" Number in	20	12	" used instead of the genitive	17	20
" of choosing, making, etc.	25	32	vor, Meanings of	27	12
" foreign origin, Formation of past participle of	21	11	" Preposition	23	4
" Person in	20	12	vorder	19	20
" reflexive, Conjugation of	22	8	Vowel, Change of, in past tense	21	26
" " with secondary object in genitive	25	24	" Double	16	14
" Regular	21	1	" followed by silent <i>b</i>	16	14
" " Formation of past participle of	21	1	Vowels and consonants	16	14
" " Formation of principal parts of	21	1	" " Pronunciation of	16	14
" Separable or inseparable	22	19	" Long and short	16	14
" strong, Characteristics of	21	24	" Modified	16	15
" Conjugation of	20	14			
" past participle of, Formation of	21	25			
" Regular endings of	21	27			

W

w, Pronunciation of	16	17
wahrnehmen	23	27
was, Function of	18	14
" für ein, Interrogative	18	17
" Interrogative	18	17
" interrogative, Declension of	18	14
" referring to persons	25	43
" Relative	18	18
" replaced by <i>wo</i> with preposition	18	15
" used in the sense of <i>warum</i>	25	42

	Sec.	Page		Sec.	Page
Weak and strong endings of ad-			wievielfte	19	29
jectives combined	19	6	willfahren	23	27
" " strong verbs	20	14	wir, Declension of	17	26
" conjugation	21	1	wissen, Conjugation of	21	24
" " Remarks on	21	11	" Table of conjugation of	21	20
" declension	17	10	wohl, Meanings of	26	39
" "	17	16	wollen, Meanings of	21	12
" " Characteristics of	17	16	" "	21	22
" " of adjectives	19	4	" Principal parts of	21	12
" " " "	19	6	" Table of conjugation of	21	19
" endings of pronominal ad-			Word formation	23	11
jectives	18	2	" " in general	23	11
" verbs, Conjugation of	21	1	" order in general	24	18
" " " "	20	14	Words, Classes of	16	20
" " Formation of the			" foreign, Gender of	25	11
principal parts of	21	1	" German, Composition of	23	23
" " Regular endings of	21	2	" " Derivation of	23	11
wegen, Meaning of	27	3	" Order of	24	18
-weise, Termination, in adverbs	23	23	Written rhythm	27	37
welcher, interrogative, Declension					
of	18	16			
" " Function of	18	14			
" meaning some	25	41			
" Relative	18	18			
welches used absolutely	25	42			
wenden, Conjugation of	21	24			
wenig, Comparison of	19	19			
" Declension of	19	7			
" " " "	19	11			
" Indefinite	18	30			
weniger, Indefinite	18	31			
wer and was, Uses of	18	19			
" Function of	18	14			
" interrogative, Declension of	18	14			
" Relative	18	18			
" was, Antecedent of, expressed	25	42			
werden, auxiliary, Uses of	20	26			
" Conjugation of	20	22			
" Table of conjugation of	20	32			
" used to form the future					
perfect	20	26			
" " " " the future					
tense	20	26			
" " " " the past con-					
ditional	20	27			
" " " " the present					
conditional	20	27			
wie, Meanings of	26	38			
" with the nominative	25	19			

X

x. Pronunciation of 16 17

Y

y. Pronunciation of 16 15

Z

z. Pronunciation of 16 17

Zeitwort 16 23

Zeit, seiner 25 39

Zeitwort, Definition of 16 24

" Syntax 21 1

" " 22 1

-zen, Derivation of verbs by 23 20

zer-, Past participle of verbs in 21 11

" prefix, Meanings of 22 15

" Verbs derived by 23 22

zu, Infinitive without 26 21

" Meanings of 27 8

" with infinitive 26 23

zufolge, Meaning of 27 4

Zukunft 20 10

" Syntax of 20 9

zuwiber, Meaning of 27 8

zwar, Meanings of 26 39

zwei, Declension of 19 26

zwischen, Meanings of 27 13

" Preposition 23 5

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 1)

INTRODUCTION

1. Originality of the German Language.—No one beginning the study of German grammar can fail to recognize at once its bold originality. In this respect, German contrasts sharply with all other languages of Western Europe. These other languages have been formed by compounding the native tongues of primitive peoples with the tongues of foreign nations. In such way, English was formed by inoculating a Teutonic dialect with Latin and French; so also the Romance languages grew out of a mixture of popular Latin and Teutonic, Gallic, Iberian, or other primitive elements. But German, on the other hand, exhibits a singular freedom from foreign elements and “by its determined purity of speech and idiom vindicates its place as one of the great parent languages of the world.”

LANGUAGE

2. Language in General.—In its widest sense, the word *language* includes every means by which thought or feeling may be made known. Thus, we speak of the “various language” of nature and of the language of painting, sculpture, and architecture. Everything in nature, as well as everything that bears marks of the thought and labor of man, speaks, more or less plainly, a language. The world is full of inanimate things that tell of human hope, purpose and struggle, of achievement, taste, and refinement. Such thought and feeling as the lower animals are

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

capable of, they can, more or less intelligibly, make known. But this dumb and wordless language requires no grammatical treatment, for it makes no use of nouns and verbs, or of words and sentences. It is the language of man alone that is governed by laws, and is, therefore, capable of being reduced to a science.

There are many ways in which man may make his thoughts known to others; as, for example, by grimace, gesture, the signs of the deaf and dumb, symbols, pictorial writing, and pictures. But better than any or all of these are oral speech and written language. It is chiefly by this faculty of speech that man is distinguished from the lower animals, and this faculty is so far above the power of expression possessed by brutes that many people believe human language to have been a gift of divine origin.

3. Origin of the Word Language.—The word language is derived from the Latin word *lingua*, the tongue; and, since this is the chief organ used in speech, the word for *tongue* is employed in many languages to mean oral speech. In the early history of our race, language was spoken, but not written. With the advance of civilization came the need for some form of language more lasting than mere verbal utterance. This gave rise to the first attempts to record thought by writing. These, we are told, were at first mere symbols or rude pictures so arranged as to have a meaning more or less plain, and traces of these pictures are said to remain in the letters of our own alphabet. Thus, it is now believed that our letter A has taken its present form from the representation of an eagle by the ancient Egyptians; B, from that of a crane; C, from the picture of a throne; etc.

The word language denoted at first only spoken thought, but its meaning was extended as explained above. For grammatical science, however, the only kinds of language considered are spoken and written.

Language, as treated in grammar, is the body of uttered and written signs employed by men to express and communicate their thoughts.

4. Living Languages.—As has been stated, written language was an outgrowth from mere speech; and each language, both spoken and written, continues to grow and to improve as long as the people using it maintain their national existence. Discovery, invention, and changes of every kind are constantly bringing many things never before heard of—new articles of manufacture, new processes, new wants and tastes and arts and sciences. These require exact expression, and many new words must be devised. On the other hand, old things pass away, and the words that named them get to be useless and are no longer employed; that is, they become *obsolete*. So rapid is this process of change that English as it was written 1,000 years ago is as difficult to us now as is Greek, Latin, or German. Letters have taken on new forms, words have changed both in their form and their meaning or have passed entirely out of use, and the spelling and pronunciation of those that remain are now very different from what they were some hundreds of years ago.

A language, while it is in its actual use and is undergoing these additions, losses, and changes, is said to be a **living language**.

5. Dead Languages.—It has often happened in the history of the world that entire peoples have lost their country by war. The people have sometimes been driven out by invaders, reduced to slavery, and gradually destroyed; or, deprived of their political powers and rights, they have been permitted to remain in their country, and by a slow process of absorption, have merged their identity as a people into that of their conquerors. Many examples of such national catastrophies will occur to the student.

The Roman Empire was destroyed in this way by the barbarian ancestors of the people that now inhabit Northern Europe. The Latin language was soon no longer spoken in its purity, but was mixed with the speech of the conquerors. In the passing of the centuries, there were thus formed what are known as the *Romance* languages—the Italian, the French,

the Spanish, the Portuguese, and the Wallachian. All that remained of the Latin language was what was found in the books that had been written before the fall of the Empire. Many of these have been lost during the long period since, but enough remain to show that at that time these people had the richest literature in the world. But, however great has been the change wrought upon the Latin language by the races that overthrew the people of Rome, many of the books written by great authors of the ruined nation remain unchanged. These still give us in its purity the wonderful language of Rome—the language of Livy and Tacitus, of Cicero and Cæsar, of Vergil, Ovid, and Horace. What they wrote nearly 20 centuries ago, remains today exactly as they wrote it; and without doubt it will be studied in the schools for thousands of years to come in the precise form it has at present. In other words, it is a *dead* language. There are many others like it, and the books written in them thousands of years ago may be read and understood as well as we read and understand books written in our own language.

HISTORY OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE

6. Earliest Traces of German.—A careful comparison of the languages of Europe with Persian and Indian proves the identity of certain philological elements in these diverse tongues. The conclusion is inevitable, therefore, that all nations speaking these languages originally sprang from the same root or stock. Philologists, therefore, place the original home of these different peoples in the highlands of Central Asia, whence many of them migrated in pre-historic times over Western Asia and into Europe, while another stream of wanderers poured into Southern Persia and over Hindoostan.

In the great horde of people that swept in rapidly succeeding streams over Europe were two well-defined divisions. One, comprising the Teutons and the Slavs pushed up through Western Asia and the north and west

of Europe, while the other, consisting of Greeks, Latins, and Celts, crowded through the south and the southwest of Europe and penetrated even to Southern Britain.

7. The Teutonic Race.—In early historical times we discover the Teutonic race settled in Central Europe, occupying the vast space of country extending from the shores of the Baltic and the mouth of the Elbe and Weser, to the northern bank of the Danube. But they had not then entirely given up their nomadic habits and it is not long after the curtain rises on early historic days that we see them invading Gaul and Italy. The first general irruption from Central Europe was that of the two tribes, Cimbri and Teutons about 113 B. C. These tribes, however, were arrested in their westward march by the Roman legions under Marius. In two bloody battles many thousands of them were slaughtered; the survivors were driven back beyond the Danube and the Rhine.

The existence of the word *Teuton* is in itself evidence of the ancient existence of the word *Deutonis* or *Deutsch*, which was destined to become the name most widely applied to the Germans. This word comes from the old German word *diota*, people, and its adjective *diotisk*, popular. The ancient Romans, however, generally gave their northern neighbors another name—*Germani*. *Germani* is probably a word of Celtic origin having some such meaning as *neighbors*.

8. The Ancient Germanic Tongue.—The German race comprised about two hundred tribes united—not by any political bond, but by ties of blood, religion, social habits, and a common language. We are able to form only a very imperfect picture of this old Germanic tongue, but we do know that it gradually divided into three principal groups: the *Gothic*, the *Scandinavian*, and the *German*.

After the downfall of the two great Gothic states in the early Middle Ages, the Gothic language perished.

Scandinavian still survives in the four distinct dialects: *Icelandic*, *Norwegian*, *Swedish*, and *Danish*.

The old German language was spoken by the various tribes dwelling about the mouths of the Elbe and Weser on the shores of the Baltic, in the country stretching from the sea far south to the Danube. These tribes had at last given up their nomadic life and begun to divide the land among themselves and settle in permanent homes. Those of the Germans who occupied the southern part of the country covering its hills and its mountains were called *High Germans*, while those who dwelt in the plains shelving to the Baltic and about the mouths of the great rivers came to be known as *Low Germans*. The speech of these two great divisions of the German people gradually became more and more differentiated, until at last there was a marked difference between the pronunciation of the High and the Low Germans. While the High Germans were particularly fond of sharps, aspirates, and hissing sounds, and adopted a sort of sound-shifting (*Lautverschiebung*) in their language, the Low Germans preserved the softer sounds, preferring to keep the pronunciation inherited from their forefathers. In this way the Low Germans established a vigorous dialect of their own which has survived to the present day under the name of *Plattdeutsch*.

9. Old High German.—In about 900 A. D., after all German tribes were united under the Carolingians and Saxons in one vast empire, a number of provincial dialects began to break off from both the High and the Low German. These dialects proved to be a great inconvenience in legislative assemblies and deliberative bodies, and did much to weaken the effect of legal notices and public documents. The German princes therefore found it necessary to determine which of the existing dialects should be raised to the dignity of national speech. In the end, High German was officially adopted as the court language and, being thus employed in all official communications, it quickly assumed the first place among the dialects of Germany. The royal household, the princes, the stewards of the numerous *Pfalzen*, or domains throughout the country, all

talked in High German. The laws of the Kingdom, the proclamations of the Emperor, and the charters of towns were all drawn up in High German. In the "*Krist*" and "*Evangelienbuch*" High German took on the character of a literary language. The High German of this period is now known as the **Old High German**.

10. Middle High German.—The Old High German underwent considerable changes in pronunciation during the 12th century. These changes were chiefly embodied in the intrusion of a toneless *e* into the endings of German words and the modification of the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*; that is, in the introduction of the *Umlaut*. Thus varied, the old language came to be recognized as the **Middle High German**, and was spoken as late as the 14th century by all court officials, public officers, by the poets and singers. The two great epics of the Middle Age, the *Nibelungenlied* and the *Gudrun*, the poetry of the Minnesinger and the Meistersinger, are composed in Middle High German.

11. New High German.—In the 14th and 15th centuries, however, many circumstances combined to bring about a degeneration of the High German idiom. The political agencies tending toward centralization throughout the empire had already lost their force; the lesser princes had now won a practical independence. The language, consequently, broke up into numerous provincial idioms and its very existence as a national tie was seriously imperiled.

Luther delivered the German language from these disintegrating influences and thus became the founder of the **New High German**.

He remodeled medieval German grammar, reinvigorated the vocabulary, effected a vital change in pronunciation, and was influential in many other ways in developing the language into that enduring condition in which it has persisted to the present day. These changes and improvements in Middle High German were immediately occasioned by his translation of the Bible. The language which appears in this work of Luther's, is the High German dialect spoken at

that time in all official circles, mixed with a number of Low German expressions. It filled a medium place between High and Low German and endeavored as much as possible to employ and perpetuate the average German of the educated classes. This German soon came to be accepted by all classes of people as the standard German. Pleasing to all parties, agreeable to all tastes, it has preserved its integrity and maintained its position under the name of the *New High German*.

12. Foreign Words in the German Language.—We have seen that the German language has retained its primitive Teutonic essentials from the prehistoric age down to the present time. This truth is explained by the fact that Germany has never been permanently occupied by any foreign people, and the German language has therefore been permitted to develop freely and naturally. Nevertheless, events of history have left their impression upon it. The influence of the Church, and especially the revival of old classical studies in the 15th century, introduced a number of Greek and Latin expressions into the vocabulary. Many of these expressions have been retained and Germanized; as, for instance, *der Altar, die Kanzel, die Predigt, der Priester*. Some of them have been so thoroughly naturalized, that they have lost all traces of their foreign extraction; as *die Kammer, der Meister, der Körper, die Straße*. Others were rejected as inconvenient or inadequate terms and replaced by German equivalents.

Far more pernicious than the introduction of Greek and Latin words has been the intrusion of French expressions—a movement that, beginning in the 16th century, endured for nearly 200 years. In those days, French was considered to be the only fashionable and courtly language of Europe, and consequently a great number of Gallicisms crept into German. These French words refer mostly to those phases and occupations of life in which France was the instructor of Germany. They are words relating to diplomacy, to court life, to the fine arts, etc.

13. The Purlst.—It was not long before a violent reaction began against the introduction of these foreign words. This movement commenced about 1620 with M. Opitz, was continued by the philosophers Leibnitz and Wolf and by Professor Gottsched of Leipsic; it ended in the beginning of the 19th century. The fight made by these and many other German professors against the corruption of the German language by the introduction of foreign expressions has resulted in the adoption of a "golden mean," under the operation of which foreign words are retained when convenient or expressive, but are replaced by native terms in all other cases.

GRAMMAR

14. Province of Grammar.—In order to understand a language, it is necessary to be familiar with the forms and sounds of its letter and with their various combinations into words. Of these words, we must know the forms generally approved by the best authorities, how they are pronounced, and what they mean when united in sentences. If, in consequence of being used in various ways, words undergo changes in form, pronunciation, or meaning, the principles and laws that regulate these changes must be understood. Besides all this, it is necessary to be familiar with the origin of words, with the elementary parts that compose them, and with the meaning of those parts alone and in combination. Then, too, when words are associated in sentences to express thought, the person that speaks or writes, as well as he that hears or reads, must, in order to understand exactly what these sentences mean, be acquainted with the laws that regulate the order, form, and relations of the words in such combinations. Besides, if we would choose words and arrange them in sentences that will be smooth and musical, concise and forcible, easily understood and in accordance with the best usage, there are many other things

with which we must be perfectly familiar. All this knowledge and much more make up, when properly arranged, the science of *grammar*.

Grammar is the science that treats of the principles that govern the correct use of language, either oral or written.

15. Divisions of German Grammar.—The subject of German grammar is divided into three general parts:

1. *Orthography*: the grammar of *letters*, *spelling*, and *pronunciation*.
2. *Accidence*: the grammar of *words*—the *changes* or *modifications* in their forms and the uses to which they are put.
3. *Syntax*: the grammar of the *sentence*—its *forms*, *varieties*, and the *dependence* and *relation* among themselves of the parts that compose the sentence, as well as the *arrangement* of those parts.

ORTHOGRAPHY

ALPHABET

16. Alphabet. The German alphabet consists of twenty-six letters. Although many, especially scientific German books appear in Roman type, the majority of German publications are printed in German letters.

GERMAN LETTERS	GERMAN NAME	ROMAN FORM
A, a	<i>ah</i>	A, a
B, b	<i>bay</i>	B, b
C, c	<i>tsay</i>	C, c
D, d	<i>day</i>	D, d
E, e	<i>ay</i>	E, e
F, f	<i>eff</i>	F, f
G, g	<i>gay</i>	G, g
H, h	<i>hah</i>	H, h
I, i	<i>ee</i>	I, i
J, j	<i>yot</i>	J, j
K, k	<i>kah</i>	K, k
L, l	<i>ell</i>	L, l
M, m	<i>emm</i>	M, m
N, n	<i>enn</i>	N, n
O, o	<i>oh</i>	O, o
P, p	<i>pay</i>	P, p
Q, q	<i>coo</i>	Q, q
R, r	<i>err</i>	R, r
S, s, ß	<i>ess</i>	S, s
T, t	<i>tay</i>	T, t
U, u	<i>oo</i>	U, u
V, v	<i>fow</i>	V, v
W, w	<i>vay</i>	W, w
X, x	<i>ix</i>	X, x
Y, y	<i>ipsilon</i>	Y, y
Z, z	<i>tset</i>	Z, z

17. German Script.—German script also has its own peculiar letters.

Der Herrmann Alferich

Ans Lb Lr Vt En Sf Gy

A a B b C c D d E e F f G g

I Hf Fi Jj Dd Ll Mm Nn.

Sh Ji Ji Rf, El Mm Nm

Or Pp q R r P/B V μ Z

Q q R r S s T t X x

Uu Vv Ww Xx Yy Zz þ ß ſ ſt

U u V v W w X x Y y Z z ß š č đ

Wissen Sie das? Wissen Sie das, haben Sie sich, haben Sie
Ihre Uhr gezeigt, ob nicht, haben Sie die Uhr gezeigt, ob Ihnen?
Oder, mir, geht es, geht es gut, und Ihnen?
Ich kann nicht sagen, daß es mir, besonders gut geht.
Ich habe einen kleinen Zahn, einen, einen, einen kleinen Zahn.
Wissen Sie, haben Sie nicht zu einem Zahnarzt?
Ich kann nicht sagen, wissen Sie, geht es mir, mir
an dem kleinen Zahn, geht es zu, gehen?
Ganz, mit Herzlichkeit. Mein Name ist N. N.

18. **ß** is employed at the end of a word, at the end of a syllable in a compound word, and before suffixes; in all other cases **f** is used. Thus,

Glas, Freilauf, Röschen, but Gläser, lesen.

19. There are also used (*a*) the following modified vowels: **Ä** or **ä**, — **Ö** or **ö**, — **U** or **ü**; (*b*) the following diphthongs: **ai**, **ei**, — **au**, **eu**, — **äu**, **äu**; and (*c*) the consonantal compounds: **ch**, **ck** (for **kk**), **ng**, **pf**, **ph**, **qu**, **sch**, **ß**, **th**, **z**.

20. **Capital Letters.**—Capital letters are used in German as follows:

(*a*) To begin a sentence or a direct quotation, and usually, also, to begin each line in poetry.

(*b*) To begin all nouns and all other words used as nouns; as, das Haus, das Lesen.

(*c*) To begin adjectives and pronouns in titles; as, das Königliche Museum, Seine Majestät.

(*d*) To begin adjectives and ordinal numbers used with the article after proper names; as, Alfred der Große, Friedrich der Zweite.

(*e*) To begin adjectives derived from the names of places ending in **er** and **sche**; as, Kölner Dom, Berliner Straße, Bauensche Straße. But adjectives in **isch** take a small initial: kölnisches Gebiet.

(*f*) To begin adjectives derived from personal names, when such adjectives have no general meaning; as, Goethesche Gedichte, die Schillerschen Werke.

(*g*) To begin the pronoun of the third person plural (**Sie**) and its corresponding possessive (**Ihr**) when used in a form of address.

(*h*) To begin pronouns of the second person and their corresponding possessives when occurring in letters.

(*i*) To begin adjectives following the indefinite pronouns **etwas**, **wenig**, **viel**, **nichts**; as, etwas Gutes, nichts Neues.

PRONUNCIATION

21. Vowels and Consonants. — Among the twenty-six letters of the German alphabet are the six *vowels*: *a, e, i, o, u, y*. They have a proper sound by themselves. The remaining twenty letters are called *consonants*, because they cannot well be pronounced except in connection with a vowel.

VOWELS

22. Vowels are either long or short.

(a) A vowel doubled or followed by *h* in the same syllable is long: *Haar, Beet, Boot, — Bahn, Sohn, Lehrer*.

(b) A vowel ending a syllable and usually a vowel before one consonant, is long: *lo-ben, da, Gebot, Gebet*.

(c) A vowel before two or more consonants is usually short: *Fall, Schild, Schmutz, rund, stellen*; but, a long root sound remains long before affixes: *lagst, holte, Trüb=sal*.

23. *A, a* always has the sound of *a* in *father*, long: *laden, Rad*; short: *Blatt, lassen*.

24. *E, e* long has the sound of *ey* in *they* or *a* in *late*; *Mehl, Heer, Beet*; *e* short is sounded like *e* in *met, set*: *denn, schnell, Rette*.

Unaccented *e* has an obscure sound; thus *en* in *fahren* sounds like *en* in *spoken, garden*: *Gaben, Gabel, guten, guter*.

25. *I, i* long has the sound of *i* in *machine*, or *ee* in *green*: *ihm, Igel, Har, Fibel*; *i* short is sounded like *i* in *pin*: *bin, bist, immer, List*.

26. *O, o* long sounds like *o* in *sold*: *holen, wohl, Ohr, Moor*; *o* short is sounded like *o* in *off*: *Gott, rotten, Folter, Otto*.

27. **u**, **u** long has the sound of *oo* in *shoot*: gut, Hut, Schule, Ulme; **u** short is sounded like *oo* in *good*: Hund, gesund, munter.

28. **y**, **y** occurring only in a few foreign words, has the sound of the modified vowel **ü** (see Art. 32): *Upsilon*, *Utop*, *synonym*.

MODIFIED VOWELS

29. The vowels **a**, **o**, **u** often have a modified sound called **Umlaut** and indicated by two dots: **ä**, **ö**, **ü**.

NOTE.—It was once customary to indicate the modification of a vowel by a small *e*, printed after capitals and above the small letters. This custom is still retained in some works.

30. **Ä**, **Ö**, **Ü** long is sounded like *a* in *dare*: *Bär*, *Säge*, *prägen*, *mähen*; short like *e* in *set*: *hätte*, *Aeste*, *lästig*, *glätten*.

31. **Oe**, **Ö**, **ö** long has no equivalent sound in English. It may be produced by rounding the lips as if to pronounce *o* in *roe* and then trying to sound *a* as in *rate*. The sound **ö** lies, as you see, between *o* and *e*: *Röhre*, *Söhne*, *öfen*, *Gehör*. In order to acquire the correct pronunciation of this letter, one must consult a teacher or a phonograph record; **ö** short has a sound much like *u* in *fur*: *Hölle*, *dörren*, *Bölle*.

32. **Ue**, **Ü**, **ü** also has no equivalent in English. This sound lies between *oo* and *ee*. Round the lips as if to pronounce *oo* in *woo* and then try to pronounce *ee* as in *see*; it is long in *Hüte*, *Schüler*, *Mühle*; but short in *Hütte*, *füllen*, *München*.

DIPHTHONGS

33. **Hi**, **ai** and **Ei**, **ei** is pronounced like *i* in *ice*: *Mais*, *Saite*, *Leiden*, *Seite*, *breit*.

34. **Au**, **au** has the sound of the English *ou* in *house*: *Haus*, *Maus*, *kaufen*, *laufen*.

35. **Au**, **äu** and **Eu**, **eu** is sounded like English *oi* in *coil*: *Eule*, *treu*, *reuen*; *Bäume*, *Säulen*, *räumen*.

CONSONANTS

36. **B, b** is pronounced as in English: *Ball, aber, lieben*. But at the end of a word or syllable and before inflexional suffixes it has the sound of *p*: *Lob, Grab, Leib, gelb, lobst, labt*.

37. **C, c**, before *a, o, u*, or a consonant, is pronounced like English *k*: *Cato, Conto, Claudius*. Elsewhere it has the sound of *ts*: *Ceder, Cäsar, Centrum*.

38. **D, d** is pronounced like *d* in English: *Dach, Dom, laden, baden*. But at the end of words and syllables, and before inflexional suffixes, beginning with a consonant, it has the sound of *t*: *Bad, Tod, Freund, bandst*.

39. **F, f** is pronounced as in English: *Fall, Prüfung, auf*.

40. **G, g** initial, or in the middle of a word, has the sound of *g* in *go*: *geben, regnen, Kugel*. At the end of a word and before *t* and *s*, *g* sounds exactly like *ch*: *Krieg, plagt, plagst*.

41. **H, h** at the beginning of a word or a syllable is aspirated like the English *h* in *hat*: *Hut, behüten, Land=haus, Frei=heit*. After a vowel in the same syllable it marks a long vowel and is not then heard: *Hohn, Bahn, Frühling*.

42. **J, j** always sounds like *y* in *you*: *Jahr, jeder, jäten*.

43. **K, k**, — **L, l**, — **M, m** — **N, n** and **P, p** are pronounced as in English.

44. **R, r** must be rolled or trilled: *Rede, rufen, Vater*.

45. **S, s** when standing at the beginning of a word or a syllable, and followed by a vowel, is pronounced like *z* in the word *zeal*: *Sage, sein, Silber, so*. *s* at the end of a word always sounds sharp like *ss* in *bliss*: *Gras, das, las, des*.

46. **T, t** is pronounced as in English, except in the combinations *tio* and *tie*, occurring in words adopted from Latin. In such combinations *t* has the sound of *ts*: *Station, Patient, funktionieren*.

47. **V, v** is pronounced like *f*: Vater, brav, Verdienst. But in a few foreign words it has the sound of English *v*: Verb, Veranda, ventilieren.

48. **W, w** is always pronounced like the English *v*: Wasser, wer, wo, Schwester.

49. **X, x** occurring in a few, though mostly foreign, words, is pronounced like *ks*: Max, Xenophon, Xaver.

50. **z, z** always sounds like the English *ts*—never like the English *z*: Zahn, Ziege, zu.

CONSONANTAL COMBINATIONS

51. **Ch, ch** has three different sounds, the German, the Greek, and the French.

1. *The German Sound*.—When preceded by *a, o, u*, or *au*, **ch** has a deep guttural sound, which lies between *k* and *h*: Bach, Loch, Luch. Preceded by *e, i, ä, ö, ü, ei, eu, äu*, or a consonant, **ch** has a softer, more palatal sound lying between the English *k* and soft *g*: Reich, ich, Löcher, Bücher, leuchten. Since they have no equivalents in English, these guttural and palatal sounds of **ch** must be carefully practiced. Special care must be taken to avoid, in the first case, the sound of *k*, and in the second, that of *sh*.

2. *The Greek Sound*.—This sound appears in words of Greek derivation. **ch** then has the sound of *k*: Charakter, Cherub, Chlor.

3. *The French Sound*.—In words derived from the French, **ch** has the sound of English *sh*: Chauffee, Chiffer, Champagner.

52. **ch** is pronounced like *x*, when both *ch* and *s* belong to the same stem: Dach^s, Dach^{se}s, fuch^s. But when *s* is inflexional or belongs to the second part of a compound consonant, **ch** retains its natural sound: lachst, brichst, wach^{sam}.

53. **ck** is merely a double *k* and has the effect of shortening the preceding vowel: zurück^t, steckⁿ, weckⁿ.

54. **sch, sh** has the sound of the English *sh*—never that of the English *sch* in the word *school*: *Schule*, *raſch*, *waſchen*.

55. **sch** must be distinguished from **sh**. In this compound the **s** belongs to the preceding syllable, while **ch** belongs to the syllable following: *Höſſen*, *Häuſſen*, *Lieſſen*.

56. **ng**, in the middle of a word, has a nasal sound, as in the English word *singer*: *Finger*, *England*, *Hunger*. But at the end of a word it sounds like *nk*: *Klang*, *Ding*, *Labung*.

57. **ph, psh** sounds like *t*: *Philosophie*, *Philipp*, *Phonograph*.

58. **Qu, qu** is pronounced like *kw*: *Quelle*, *bequem*, *Quart*.

59. **Th, th** always sounds like *t*—never like *th*, for this *th* sound does not exist in German: *Thal*, *Thränen*, *Unterthan*.

60. **Sp, sp, St, st**, when occurring at the beginning of a word or word stem sound like *shp* and *shst* respectively, the *sh* being pronounced slightly and quickly: *Stahl*, *Stiefel*, *ſprechen*, *Spule*. But in the middle and at the end of words these consonants sound like *sp* and *st*: *Laſt*, *Weſpe*, *durſtig*.

61. **ß**, a combination of **f** and **z**, is pronounced like **ff**. **ß** always takes the place of **ff** at the end of a word, as in *Fluß*, *Kuß*. In the middle of a word **ß** must be used after a long vowel, as in *Fuß*, *Füße*; *Gruß*, *Grüße*; and before a consonant, as in *häßlich*, *Schußlinie*, *mißlich*; the **ff** after a short vowel, as in *Fluſß*, *Flüſſe*; *Kuſß*, *Küſſe*.

62. **tz** has the sound of *ts*: *Raſe*, *Diſe*, *Buſ*, *Kloß*, *Meß*.

ACCENTUATION

63. A syllable may have a full or a secondary accent. In German words of more than one syllable, the full accent falls upon that syllable in which the root occurs, while prefixes or suffixes are unaccented or have only a secondary accent: *lieb'lich*, *geliebt'*.

64. Some of the exceptions to this rule are: (a) the negative prefix *un*, *un'treu*, *Un'sinn*; (b) the prefixes *ant*, *erz*, *ur*, *Ant'wort*, *Erz'bischof*, *Ur'sprung*; (c) the noun suffix *ei*, *Heuchelei'*, *Teufelei'*, *Malerei'*.

65. In compound words, each component part receives its proper accent, the principal accent being laid upon the determining component; that is, in compound substantives, as adjectives and verbs, the accent is usually put on the first component: *Haus'tier*, *Blu'menhauß*, *geist'reich*, *teil'nehm-men*. In other parts of speech the accent falls on the second component: *hinab'*, *davon'*, *daran'*, *darü'ber*.

66. In compound verbs and their corresponding nouns, the separable prefixes take the principal accent: *aus'zählen*, *an'sehen*, *An'sicht*. But inseparable prefixes have no effect upon the accent,—leaving it upon the root: *vergeß'en*, *benutz'en*, *Benutz'ung*.

DIVISION OF SYLLABLES

67. In German, syllables are divided according to the pronunciation of the words in which they occur; *lie=ben*, *En=dung*, *ach=ten*. But compounds and derivatives with consonantal suffixes must be divided into their constituent parts: *war=um*, *her=ein*, *Inter=esse*, *Di=stinktion*.

68. The following special rules may also be noted to assist in dividing German words. (a) A single consonant between two vowels is joined to the latter, *nä=hen*, *bü=ßen*, *re=den*. (b) Two consonants occurring between vowels must be divided: *här=ten*, *Las=ten*, *Was=ser*, *flap=sen*. But

the combinations *ch*, *sch*, *ph*, *th*, and *dt* cannot be separated and must be treated as single consonants: *Bräu=che*, *lö=schen*, *Dr=tho=gra=phie*.

ORTHOGRAPHIC MARKS

69. The **apostrophe** is used to indicate the omission of a letter: *das leid' ich nicht*, *heil'ge*; *ist's*, *geht's*. In proper names it is not necessary to separate the *s* of the genitive by an apostrophe as is done in English: *Cicero's Briefe*, *Schiller's Gedichte*. But if the proper name ends in *s*, *ß*, *r*, *z*, or *sch*, the *s* of the genitive is indicated by an apostrophe: *Boß' Luise*; *Demosthenes' Reden*.

The **hyphen** is used to connect two or more words, or to divide one word into its syllables or component parts.

ACCIDENCE

CLASSES OF WORDS

70. Parts of Speech.—Words have been divided into classes called **parts of speech**. All words in the German language have been divided into ten classes, thus making ten parts of speech.

1. *Das Hauptwort*—the noun
2. *Das Geschlechtswort*—the article
3. *Das Fürwort*—the pronoun
4. *Das Eigenschaftswort*—the adjective
5. *Das Zeitwort*—the verb.
6. *Das Umstandswort*—the adverb
7. *Das Zahlwort*—the numeral
8. *Das Verhältnisswort*—the preposition.
9. *Das Bindewort*—the conjunction
10. *Das Empfindungswort*—the interjection

When we speak of a word as being a noun, a verb, a conjunction, or any other part of speech, we mean that in the context of a given sentence it performs this function. The

character of a particular part of speech does not lie in the word itself, but in its structural relation to other words. No one, therefore, can classify a word until its use or function in some sentence structure has been determined.

Das Hauptwort—The Noun

71. In every language a large part of the words are employed to name things that are known by means of our senses, such as *Apfel, apple; Haus, house; Baum, tree*. Such names are **nouns**, for the two words mean exactly the same, except that the one is used in the language of everyday life, while the other is a technical or scientific term employed in grammar. Such words as those given above, like *Apfel, apple*, and *Haus, house* call up in the mind ideas or pictures of real things—things with color, size, taste, and weight, and other sensible qualities. But there are many names that denote things without any such qualities, and we can talk and think of these just as if they were real things. Such words as *Haß, hatred; Freiheit, liberty; Laster, vice; and Weisheit, wisdom*, are of this kind. While the mental pictures produced by these words are not so distinct or so easily formed as the ideas of objects having sensible qualities, such words can be used in sentences in precisely the same way as nouns denoting sensible things. We can think of hatred or liberty being or doing some thing or other, just as we can of boy, or bird, or star.

A **noun** is any word or expression used as the name of something.

In German grammar nouns are called *Hauptwörter*, that is, *principal words*, because they are the names of the principal ideas we have in mind.

Die Geschlechtswörter—The Articles

72. There are two **Articles** in German—the *definite* and the *indefinite*. The definite article, *der, die, das, the*, in the singular, and *die* in the plural, is a word joined to a noun to point out some particular object; as *der Mann*,

the man. This article is in reality no more than an unaccented demonstrative adjective. It can stand before common nouns either in the singular or plural number, but ordinarily it has no place with proper nouns, because a proper noun is the name of a single and definite object, and therefore, the use of a definite article with them would be tautological.

The **indefinite article**, *ein, eine, ein, a, an*, is a word having much the nature of the numeral *one*. Although it differs from this *one*, it is felt to be merely a natural offshoot of the idea embodied in the numeral. When we say *ein Apfel, an apple*, we mean broadly and vaguely any one of all those things which have the common name of apple, but we do not mean one apple numerically considered.

These definite and indefinite words joined to a noun are called *Geschlechtswörter, gender words*. They are so named because they are used to mark the gender of nouns, for the grammatical gender of a noun does not always agree with the gender of its meaning. It must therefore be indicated by the definite article. The form *der* is employed to mark the masculine, *die* to mark the feminine, and *das* to denote the neuter gender. The form *die* is used with all these genders in the plural.

Das Fürwort—The Pronoun

73. Pronouns, as the word indicates, are substitutes for nouns; (*pro, for, or instead of*). The German expression *Fürwort* means *a for-word, for a word (a noun)*. These pronouns or *Fürwörter* do not, like nouns, name things, but they refer to them in such way as to make plain what is meant. They are very useful words and without them every language would be exceedingly awkward. In an ordinary conversation, with the help of pronouns, the person speaking need not mention his own name, nor even know that of the listener. He will use *ich, I, mich, me*, when he means himself, and *er, he, sie, she, sie, they*, when he refers to other persons. The little word *es, it*, can be substituted

for the name of almost any object that can be mentioned, and the pronoun is therefore a kind of name of very wide application; it enables us to talk of anything whatever without naming it more than once.

A pronoun is a word used to denote persons or things without naming them.

Das Eigenschaftswort—The Adjective

74. The objects denoted by class names or nouns, as *Apfel, apple; Haus, house; Baum, tree*, are distinguished from one another by their qualities of color, size, form, etc. In order that persons with whom we converse may know which particular individual or group of individuals we mean, *modifiers* must be joined to the class name. Each modifier narrows or restricts the number of objects denoted by the word that is modified, and at the same time indicates more exactly what the thing intended is like. Words used in this way to modify the meaning of nouns are *adjectives*. In German these words are called *Eigenschaftswörter, quality-words*, because they qualify or modify the noun. Thus, in *das hohe Haus, the high house*, and in *der grüne Baum, the green tree*, the objects house and tree become more determined and definite by reason of the qualifying words high and green.

An adjective is a word used to modify the meaning of a noun or a pronoun.

Das Zahlwort—The Numeral

75. The numerals are considered to form a separate part of speech in the German language, while in English grammar they are classed among the adjectives. They are peculiar words used to indicate any numerical idea. Numerals are usually divided into two great classes: *cardinals* and *ordinals*.

Cardinals are those numbers directly expressing how many units are to be considered; as, *ein, one; zwei, two; drei, three*.

Ordinals are the numbers that show the order of an object in a series; as, *der erste Tag, the first day; die zehnte Klasse, the tenth class.*

In German all these words are called *Zahlwörter*, number words.

Das Zeitwort—The Verb

76. In every language, by far the most important class of words is the **verb**; for, without a verb, no complete thought can be expressed. Every sentence must contain a verb. By using the noun, we name things concerning which we may affirm or deny something; but to express such affirmation or denial in the form of a sentence—and this is the only form in which a thought can be written or spoken—a verb must be used. Thus, in the sentences, *die Sonne scheint, the sun shines; Vögel singen, birds sing; Johann wird kommen, John will come*, the words sun, birds, John suggest certain mental pictures or ideas, but they do not express complete thoughts. To obtain thoughts we have to join to these name words suitable asserting words, as *shines, sing, will come*. Such asserting words are called *verbs*. So important in the sentence is the office of the verb, that its name means the word—that is, of all the words the verb is of the greatest importance.

In German the verb is called *Zeitwort, the time word*. It is so named because it alone can express any idea of the time in which an action takes place, either in the present, the past, or the future.

Grammarians say that the verb predicates being or action of that which the subject names. This word comes from a Latin verb meaning “to tell” or “speak out” in public. The fact is that there is much need for a word that has all of the following meanings: to assert, to deny, to question, to command, to wish, to entreat; for the verb is the chief word in sentences by which all these forms of thought are expressed. But, of course, the need cannot be met, for there is no such word. The nearest approach to it is,

perhaps, the word predicate; and if the student will remember what the grammarians would like to have this word mean, he will know what the functions of the verb are.

A verb is a word used to predicate being or action of that which is denoted by a subject.

Das Umstandswort—The Adverb

77. Adverbs, as the word implies, are words joined to the verb (*ad, to*). The adverb does for the verb what the adjective does for the noun: it modifies its meaning. The action expressed by a verb, as by the verb *speak*, for example, may be performed in many different manners, at a variety of times and places, and under a multitude of other conditions and circumstances. All these modifications of action are shown by the adverb. Thus,

Ich spreche <i>I speak</i>	{	klar, clearly; langsam, slowly. jetzt, now; niemals, never. hier, here; da, there.
-------------------------------	---	--

In German, the adverb is called *Umstandswort*, the *circumstance word*, because it indicates the different circumstances under which an action takes place. But it is not the meaning of verbs alone that adverbs modify; they are frequently used to modify the meaning of adjectives or other adverbs. Thus, in the sentence *Das Haus ist hoch*, *The house is high*, many degrees of quality are expressed by the adjective *high*. These different degrees of quality can only be expressed by joining an adverb to the adjective. Thus,

Das Haus ist <i>The house is</i>	{	sehr, very ziemlich, quite außerordentlich, exceedingly	}	hoch. <i>high.</i>
-------------------------------------	---	---	---	-----------------------

Here the adverbs *very*, *quite*, *exceedingly* modify the adjective *high*.

In the sentence, *Die Zeit vergeht schnell*, *Time flies rapidly*, the adverb *rapidly* modifies the word *flies*; but the adverb

itself can be modified by another adverb, as *sehr, very; etwas, somewhat; zu, too*. Thus,

Die Zeit vergeht zu schnell, Time flies too rapidly.

An **adverb** is a word used to modify the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

Das Verhältnißwort—The Preposition

78. Prepositions are the links that express the relation, *Verhältniß*, of nouns and pronouns with other words of the sentence and show their function in the sentence. Ideas that may seem widely separated can be brought into relation by these word bridges. Thus, in the phrase

Ein Palast	{ an, by	} dem See.
A palace	{ in, in	
	{ nahe, near	

the word bridges *by, in, near*, connect the ideas of palace and sea and bring them into relation. These words are called **prepositions** because they are nearly all placed before the noun or pronoun that they connect with some preceding word. In German they are called *Verhältnißwörter, relation words*, on account of their function in the sentence. Thus the work done in sentences by prepositions is twofold: (1) they connect words; (2) they bring words into relation.

A **preposition** is a word used to connect words and bring them into relation.

Das Bindewort—The Conjunction

79. The preposition, as we have seen, connects words. The **conjunction** is also used for joining or connecting sentential elements. There are, however, some differences between these two classes of words. With the preposition, the chief use is to denote *relation*. The conjunction, in connecting, does, indeed, establish some kind of relation between the elements connected, yet this is not its most

important work in the sentence; its joining or uniting function is its prominent characteristic. It may not only unite sentential elements, but also sentences themselves. In German the conjunction is called **Bindewort**, the *joining word*.

A **conjunction** is a word used to connect sentences or sentential elements that are used alike.

Das Empfindungswort—The Interjection

80. The **interjection** is a peculiar word that, although it may be thrown into a sentence with propriety or even grace, nevertheless, plays no organic part in sentential structure and might have been omitted without disturbing the unity of the thought. Interjections are, then, words thrown among (*inter*, among, and *jectus*, thrown) sentences to indicate feeling or emotion, as the German expression **Empfindungswort**, *feeling word*, properly describes.

An **interjection** is a word that has no relation to other words in a sentence and is used to express feeling or emotion.

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 2)

Das Hauptwort und der Artikel.

The Noun and the Article

1. In Part 1, we saw that any word or expression, whether long or short, that is used in speech or writing as the name of anything, is a **noun**. Nouns are divided into two great classes: *common nouns* and *proper nouns*.

COMMON NOUNS

2. **Generic or Class Names.**—Most nouns are class names; that is, names applied in common or in general to things of the same kind. The word *common* is derived from two words meaning *bound together*. The things denoted by a common noun are united or bound together into one group by certain likenesses—certain common qualities. Thus, the word *Knabe*, *boy*, is not a name given to one particular thing and to no other; it is a name of any one of a great genus or class, composed of millions of objects that are alike in certain particulars. These *class* or *generic* names are *common nouns*.

A **common noun** is a noun used to name a class of things.

3. **Classes of Common Nouns.**—Common nouns have been variously subdivided, but they may all be included under the following two great classes:

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

1. *Names of Things Sensible.*—This class comprises the names of substances that are material, and are, therefore, capable of being perceived by the senses; as, *Baum, tree; Pferd, horse; Stadt, city; Land, land.*

2. *Names of Things Rational.*—This group includes the class names of all things that are merely *conceived* or *thought* of as existing, and cannot be recognized by the direct aid of any of the senses; as, *Wahrheit, truth; Gedanke, thought; Furcht, fear.* They are words that name qualities considered apart from the objects that have the qualities; as, *Müdigkeit, fatigue; Nähe, nearness; Länge, length;* or they name actions apart from the actors; as, *das Gehen, the walking; das Nähen, the sewing; das Kochen, the cooking.* These nouns are called **abstract nouns**, because they name something *drawn away* or *abstracted* from the real things that have that quality or exercise that action.

PROPER NOUNS

4. Nearly all the objects that we think and talk about belong in some particular class and when we wish to refer to them, their class names are generally definite enough. But if for any reason it is necessary to specify more particularly a thing that belongs to one of these classes, we may do so by pointing to it or by joining modifying words to its class name. Thus, we may say, *dieser große, rote Apfel, this large red apple; der große Mann mit schwarzem Haar, the tall man with black hair.* But this is not always satisfactory. It is often necessary to distinguish one thing very clearly from every other in its class. This can be done better than in any other way by giving it a name of its own; as, *Berlin, Berlin; Januar, January; Friedrich Schiller, Frederick Schiller.* Such names are **proper nouns**; they are so called from the Latin word *proprius*, meaning *one's own*. A proper noun is usually set apart for the purpose of naming a particular person or object; and if its work is to be done perfectly, the name must be used for no other

purpose. A common noun distinguishes one class from every other class; a proper noun is intended to distinguish one thing from every other thing.

A **proper noun** is a noun used as a special or individual name.

INFLECTION OF THE NOUN

5. Inflection in General.—The word *inflection* is one that is much used in grammar. It comes from two Latin words that mean *in* and *a bending*; it denotes that something is bent or changed from one form or condition into another. As used in grammar, inflection signifies those changes in the form of a word that come from changes in its use or meaning. A noun, pronoun, adjective, or verb may have different meanings or uses in sentential structure and in order to indicate such differences, these words change their form; that is, they undergo an **inflection**.

Generally, but not always, inflection consists in variation or additions at the end of a word. Therefore, most inflected words consist of two parts; namely, the *root*, *radical*, or *stem*, which is generally the *unchangeable* part of the word, and the *ending* or changeable part. In the inflection of some words, however, the root itself undergoes certain modifications, for instance, the root vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, *au* may change into their Umlauts *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, *äu*.

6. Kinds of Inflections of Nouns.—Nouns are inflected for two purposes:

1. *To Denote Number.*—That is, to show whether a noun signifies one of the subjects it names, or more than one of them.

2. *To Denote Case.*—This is to show the relation in which a noun or any substitute for a noun stands to other words in a sentence. There are several different relations that nouns may have in sentences, and therefore several cases.

The inflection of a noun as well as of a pronoun or adjective with regard to number and case is called **declension**.

NUMBER IN NOUNS

7. Two Numbers.—The number of a word is that form or use of it by which it denotes *one* or *more than one*. Thus, there are, in German as in English, two numbers: the *singular* and the *plural*.

The **singular number** of a word is that form or use of it by which it denotes one.

The **plural number** of a word is that form or use of it by which it denotes more than one.

8. Formation of the Plural.—The plural number of a noun is formed from the singular in many different ways: generally by adding a termination at the end of a noun; but very often by changing the root vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, *au*, into their Umlauts *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, *äu*. Thus, *Pferd*, *Pferde*, *horse*, *horses*; *Bild*, *Bilder*, *picture*, *pictures*; *Frau*, *Frauen*, *woman*, *women*; *Vater*, *Väter*, *father*, *fathers*, *Mutter*, *Mütter*, *mother*, *mothers*. Special rules for the formation of the plural will be given under the *declension of nouns*.

CASE IN NOUNS

9. Meaning of the Word Case.—The word *case* is from the Latin *casus*, which means *ein Fall*, *a falling*. German nouns have four cases; of these, one depends for its form on no other. This is the *nominative*, the form that merely names. Since this case can stand alone, as if erect and independent, while the others appear only in sentential structure and in dependence on other words, the *nominative* is called the *erect* or *upright case* (*casus rectus*). From it the others, the so-called *oblique cases*, were formed; they fell from it—were cases of it. From this notion that the other cases decline (lean away) from the *nominative*, came the word *declension*, which in grammar means an orderly arrangement showing the *nominative* or *erect* form and the *oblique* or *declined cases*.

Case, Fall, is that form or use of a noun or pronoun by which its relation to other words in a sentence is shown.

10. Number of Cases.—German nouns have four cases; their names are:

der Nominativ:	1. Fall, <i>the nominative</i>
der Genitiv:	2. Fall, <i>the genitive</i>
der Dativ:	3. Fall, <i>the dative</i>
der Accusativ:	4. Fall, <i>the accusative</i>

11. The Nominative Case.—The word *nominative* means *naming*. Thus the singular of every noun in the nominative case is the form that is always named in a dictionary, where we merely mention the name. Then, when a noun stands in a sentence as the subject of a finite verb, it is said to be in the **nominative case**. The nominative subject of a verb is the word that answers the questions *Who?* or *What?* The particular use of the nominative as well as of the other cases in sentential structure will be fully treated under Syntax.

12. The Genitive Case.—The genitive case is used to denote possession or origin; it limits or complements the meaning of nouns, adjectives, pronouns, verbs, and prepositions. When we say *Richards Buch*, *Richard's Book*, *Richards* denotes the possessor of the book; while in the phrase, *das Licht der Sonne*, *the sun's light*, *der Sonne* denotes the origin of the light. *Richards* and *der Sonne* are the genitive cases of *Richard* and *die Sonne*. The genitive answers the question *Whose?* Thus: *Wessen ist das Buch?* *Whose is the book?* *Es ist Richards Buch.* *It is Richard's book.*

13. The Dative Case.—The term *dative case* comes from the Latin *casus dativus* and its very name implies that it is the case of giving; that is, it is the case of the word denoting the person or object to whom something is given. It is therefore the case of the *indirect* or *secondary object* of a verb. Thus, in the sentence: *Er giebt dem Knaben ein Pferd*, *he gives the boy a horse*, *dem Knaben*, *the boy*, is the indirect object of the verb and stands in the dative case. In English, a prepositional phrase with *to* or *for* can generally be

substituted for the German dative; thus, he gives a horse *to* the boy. But in German the dative must always be employed in such sentences. The dative case answers the questions, *To whom? For whom?* In the above sentence: *To whom was the horse given? To the boy.*

14. The Accusative Case.—The accusative case is mostly used as the *direct object* of a verb; that is, the *object* which *directly* receives the action expressed by the verb. In the sentence: *Mein Bruder kauft einen Hut*, *my brother buys a hat*, the subject my brother denotes the buyer and the object of *buys* is *a hat*. It will be seen, that a word in the accusative case answers the question, *Whom? or What?* as in this example: *What did my brother buy? A hat.*

15. Case Forms.—The different cases in which a noun may stand in order to express its different relations in sentential structure, are indicated by changes in the form of the noun. These changes generally consist in variations or additions at the end of the word. But there are instances in which the form of a noun in one of the oblique cases does not differ from its nominative form; in such instances, however, the case of the noun can be determined only from its use in the sentence.

GENDER IN NOUNS

16. Gender.—Gender is a grammatical distinction in words expressing the natural distinction of sex. The word *gender* is from the Latin *genus* and properly means *kind*. Gender is a characteristic of words, sex a characteristic of living beings. Thus, the word *Mann*, *man*, has gender, but the object named by the word has sex. But the gender of a noun does not always agree with the sex of the object named by the word. Thus, the noun *Weib*, *woman*, is of the neuter gender, while the object named is of the female sex.

There are three genders: *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*.

The *masculine* gender is that form or use of a word by which it denotes the male sex.

The **feminine gender** is that form or use of a word by which it denotes the female sex.

The **neuter gender** is that form or use of a word by which it denotes the absence of sex.

17. Determination of Gender.—The gender of German nouns cannot usually be known from their form; consequently, it is customary in naming a noun to link with it the proper form of the definite article. Since the definite article has a different form for each of the three genders, the gender of the noun will be known by the form of the article joined with it. Thus the form of the noun *Berg* tells us nothing about its gender; but when joined with the proper article *der*, *der Berg*, the gender of the noun *Berg* is at once seen to be masculine, for *der* is the masculine form of the definite article. Students should, therefore, when committing any noun to memory, always learn with it the proper form of the definite article.

PERSON IN NOUNS

18. Person in grammar is that relation or use of words by which the speaker, the hearer, and the person or thing spoken of are distinguished from one another.

The **first person** is that relation or use of a word by which it denotes the speaker.

Wir, Friedrich Wilhelm, ernennen hiermit u. s. w., We, Frederick William, do hereby appoint, etc.

The **second person** is that relation or use of a word by which it denotes the hearer; that is, the person or thing addressed.

Du, allmächtiger Gott, hast Himmel und Erde erschaffen, Thou, Almighty God, hast created heaven and earth.

The **third person** is that relation or use of a word by which it denotes the person or thing spoken of.

Vater und Mutter leben auf dem Lande, Father and mother live in the country.

DECLENSION

19. It has already been explained that the noun is inflected for two purposes—to denote number and to denote case—and that this inflection is called the *declension* of the noun. However, the noun is not the only declined word; its substitute, the pronoun, other words sometimes used as nouns, and all those classes of words joined to it in sentential structure and used to modify its meaning, such as adjectives, numerals, and articles, are also declined.

Declension is the inflection of a noun, pronoun, adjective, or article to show differences of case and of number.

20. Since the gender of a noun cannot usually be determined from the form of the noun itself, it is necessary when naming a noun, to associate with it the definite article. Consequently, before taking up the declension of the noun, the declension of the definite article is studied.

DECLENSION OF THE ARTICLE

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

21. The definite article *der, die, das, the*, has three distinct forms in the singular, one for each gender, but only one form in the plural, used for all three genders. These forms are declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	der	die	das		die	<i>the</i>
Genitive	des	der	des		der	<i>of the</i>
Dative	dem	der	dem		den	<i>to the</i>
Accusative	den	die	das		die	<i>the</i>

22. The masculine and neuter of the definite article have the same forms in the genitive and dative singular; while all three genders have the same forms throughout the plural.

23. In poetical language, the neuter article *daß* is sometimes abbreviated to 's, as, 's Rösslein.

24. Some forms of the definite article may be contracted with a preceding preposition. Thus,

an dem:	am, at the	an daß:	anß, to the
in dem:	im, in the	auf daß:	aufß, upon the
bei dem:	beim, at the	durch daß:	durchß, through the
von dem:	vom, of or from the	für daß:	fürß, for the
zu dem:	zum, to the	in daß:	inß, into the
zu der:	zur, to the	vor daß:	vorß, before the

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE

25. The indefinite article *ein, eine, ein, a* or *an*, is declined in the singular only; the various forms are:

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	
Nominative	ein	eine	ein	<i>a, an</i>
Genitive	eines	einer	eines	<i>of a</i>
Dative	einem	einer	einem	<i>to a</i>
Accusative	einen	eine	ein	<i>a</i>

The indefinite article has only two different forms in the nominative singular and cannot, therefore, be used like the definite article to distinguish the gender of nouns. It has no plural, being originally the numeral *ein, one*.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS

26. **Strong and Weak Declensions.**—There are two declensions of nouns in German, the **strong** and the **weak**. This division is determined by the form of nouns in the nominative plural.

Nouns of the strong declension either have the nominative plural like the nominative singular or form it by adding the termination **e** or **er**. The stem vowels **a**, **o**, **u**, **au** of the nouns of this declension are usually modified into their Umlauts **ä**, **ö**, **ü**, **äü**. The strong is the older and more complete declension.

Nouns of the weak declension form their plural by adding the termination **n** or **en**; they, however, never modify the stem vowel. The weak declension is a later and less complete form.

Based upon the endings of the nominative plural, German nouns are divided into *four classes*, three belonging to the strong declension and one to the weak.

STRONG DECLENSION

First Class. The *first* class contains nouns which take no additional termination in the nominative plural.

Second Class. The *second* class contains nouns which take in the nominative plural the termination **e**.

Third Class. The *third* class contains nouns which take in the nominative plural the termination **er**.

WEAK DECLENSION

Fourth Class. The *fourth* class contains nouns which take in the nominative plural the termination **n** or **en**.

Nouns of the first class *sometimes* modify the root vowels **o**, **a**, **u**, **au**; nouns of the second class *usually* modify these root vowels; nouns of the third class *always* modify them; but the nouns of the fourth class *never* modify them.

GENERAL RULES FOR ALL FOUR CLASSES

27. Feminine nouns always remain unchanged throughout the declension of the singular.

28. All masculine and neuter nouns of the three classes of the strong declension form the genitive singular by adding the ending **s** or **es**. In the dative singular they take the ending **e** or no ending; while their accusative, singular, remains like the nominative.

The *e* of the genitive termination *es* and of the dative singular are often omitted for euphonic reasons, especially in words of more than one syllable. This occurs more in conversation and familiar writing than in higher style.

29. All masculine nouns of the fourth class add *n* or *en* in the genitive, dative, and accusative singular, as they do in all cases of the plural.

30. The dative plural of all nouns ends in *n* which is added to the form of the nominative singular, if this form does not end in *n*; but all the other cases of the plural of all nouns are like the nominative plural.

FIRST CLASS—STRONG DECLENSION

31. Characteristics.—The inflectional characteristics of nouns belonging to the first class, are:

(a) Termination *s* in the genitive singular of masculine and neuter nouns.

(b) No additional termination in the nominative plural.

(c) Root vowel *sometimes* changed in the plural.

NOTE.—The nouns of the first class, as a rule, do not take the ending *e* in the dative singular.

32. Nouns of the First Class.—This class comprises:

(1) All masculine and neuter nouns ending in *el*, *em*, *en*, *er*.

(2) All neuter diminutives in *chen* and *lein*.

(3) All neuter nouns having the prefix *Ge* and ending in *e*.

(4) Two feminine nouns: *die Mutter*, *the mother*; *die Tochter*, *the daughter*.

(5) One masculine noun in *e*, *der Käse*, *the cheese*.

33. Model Nouns of First Class.—Nouns of the first class are declined like *der Bogen*, *the bow*; *der Adler*, *the eagle*; *das Gebirge*, *the mountain range*. *Der Vater*, *the father*; *die Mutter*, *the mother*.

SINGULAR			
Nominative	der Vogen	der Adler	das Gebirge
Genitive	des Vogens	des Adlers	des Gebirges
Dative	dem Vogen	dem Adler	dem Gebirge
Accusative	den Vogen	den Adler	das Gebirge

PLURAL			
Nominative	die Vogen	die Adler	die Gebirge
Genitive	der Vogen	der Adler	der Gebirge
Dative	den Vogen	den Adlern	den Gebirgen
Accusative	die Vogen	die Adler	die Gebirge

SINGULAR		
Nominative	der Vater	die Mutter
Genitive	des Vaters	der Mutter
Dative	dem Vater	der Mutter
Accusative	den Vater	die Mutter

PLURAL		
Nominative	die Väter	die Mütter
Genitive	der Väter	der Mütter
Dative	den Vätern	den Müttern
Accusative	die Väter	die Mütter

NOTE.—Die Mutter and die Tochter remain unchanged in the singular, according to Art. 27.

Nouns already ending in *n* do not take the termination *n* in the dative plural (see Art. 30).

34. Decline without modifying the root vowel in the plural: *der Besen, the broom; der Brunnen, the well; der Flügel, the wing; der Fehler, the fault; der Esel, the donkey; das Gebäude, the building; das Mädchen, the girl; der Maler, the painter; der Schüler, the pupil; der Spanier, the Spaniard; das Häuschen, the little house; das Vögelein, the little bird.*

Decline with modification of the root vowel in the plural: *der Bruder, the brother; der Apfel, the apple; der Garten, the garden; das Kloster, the cloister; der Vogel, the bird; der Hafen, the harbor.*

35. To this class belong—by virtue of the ending *en*—all infinitives used as nouns; as, *das Schreiben, the act of writing; das Gehen, the act of going.*

Nominative	das Schreiben	Dative	dem Schreiben
Genitive	des Schreibens	Accusative	das Schreiben

SECOND CLASS—STRONG DECLENSION

36. Characteristics.—The inflectional characteristics of nouns belonging to the second class are:

- (a) Termination *s* or *es* in the genitive singular of masculine and neuter nouns.
- (b) Termination *e* in nominative plural.
- (c) Root vowel usually modified.

37. Nouns of the Second Class.—The second is the largest of all classes of declensions; it includes the majority of masculine nouns. To this class belong:

(1) Many masculine monosyllabic nouns, usually modified in the plural: some feminine monosyllabic nouns, all modified in the plural; and some neuter nouns of one syllable, a few of them modified in the plural.

(2) All masculine nouns ending in *ig*, *ing*, *ling*, not modified in the plural.

(3) Feminine and neuter nouns ending in *nis* and *sal* with vowel unchanged in the plural.

(4) Many masculine and neuter nouns of more than one syllable, not modified in the plural.

38. Nouns ending in *nis* double the *f* before all endings. Thus, *Gedächtnis*, *memory*; *Gedächtnisse*.

39. Model Nouns of the Second Class.—Nouns of the second class are declined like *der Sohn*, *the son*; *die Hand*, *the hand*; *das Jahr*, *the year*; *der König*, *the king*; *das Schicksal*, *the fate*; *das Geheimnis*, *the secret*.

SINGULAR			
Nominative	der Sohn	die Hand	das Jahr
Genitive	des Sohnes	der Hand	des Jahres
Dative	dem Sohne	der Hand	dem Jahre
Accusative	den Sohn	die Hand	das Jahr
PLURAL			
Nominative	die Söhne	die Hände	die Jahre
Genitive	der Söhne	der Hände	der Jahre
Dative	den Söhnen	den Händen	den Jahren
Accusative	die Söhne	die Hände	die Jahre

SINGULAR			
Nominative	der König	der Monat	das Schicksal
Genitive	des Königs	des Monat(es)	des Schicksals
Dative	dem König	dem Monate	dem Schicksal
Accusative	den König	den Monat	das Schicksal
PLURAL			
Nominative	die Könige	die Monate	die Schicksale
Genitive	der Könige	der Monate	der Schicksale
Dative	den Königen	den Monaten	den Schicksalen
Accusative	die Könige	die Monate	die Schicksale
		SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	das Geheimnis	die Geheimnisse	
Genitive	des Geheimnisses	der Geheimnisse	
Dative	dem Geheimnisse	den Geheimnissen	
Accusative	das Geheimnis	die Geheimnisse	

40. Decline with modification of the vowel in the plural: *der Baum, the tree; der Fluß, the river; der Fuß, the foot; der Gast, the guest; der Platz, the place; der Raum, the room; der Stuhl, the chair; der Kopf, the head; der Bach, the brook; die Frucht, the fruit; die Maus, the mouse; die Nacht, the night; die Stadt, the city; die Wand, the wall; die Bank, the bench.*

Decline without modifying the root vowel in the plural: *der Tag, the day; das Haar, the hair; das Paar, the pair; das Thor, the gate; das Rohr, the pipe; der Pfennig, the penny; der Feigling, the coward; der Jüngling, the young man; der Monat, the month; das Erzeugnis, the product; das Vermächtnis, the bequest; die Kenntnis, the knowledge; die Trübsal, tribulation.*

41. Compound nouns whose last component is a monosyllable, are treated as monosyllables in declension; as, *Blumenstrauß, bouquet; Genitive, Blumenstrausses; Nominative Plural, Blumensträusse.*

THIRD CLASS—STRONG DECLENSION

42. Characteristics.—The inflectional characteristics of the nouns belonging to the third class are:

(a) Termination *es* or *s* in genitive singular of masculine and neuter nouns.

(b) Termination *er* in the nominative plural.

(c) Root vowel always modified.

43. Nouns of the Third Class. — This class comprises:

(1) A large number of neuter and a few masculine monosyllabic nouns.

(2) All nouns ending in *tum*.

(3) A few neuter nouns of more than one syllable.

44. All nouns in *tum* modify the vowel of the suffix *tum* in the plural. Thus, *Reichtum*, *Reichtümer*.

45. Model Nouns of the Third Class. — Nouns of this class are declined like *das Blatt*, *the leaf*; *der Wald*, *the forest*; *der Reichtum*, *the riches*; *das Gesicht*, *the face*.

SINGULAR

Nominative	das Blatt	der Wald
Genitive	des Blattes	des Waldes
Dative	dem Blatte	dem Walde
Accusative	das Blatt	den Wald

PLURAL

Nominative	die Blätter	die Wälder
Genitive	der Blätter	der Wälder
Dative	den Blättern	den Wäldern
Accusative	die Blätter	die Wälder

SINGULAR

Nominative	der Reichtum	das Gesicht
Genitive	des Reichtums	des Gesichtes
Dative	dem Reichtum	dem Gesichte
Accusative	den Reichtum	das Gesicht

PLURAL

Nominative	die Reichtümer	die Gesichter
Genitive	der Reichtümer	der Gesichter
Dative	den Reichtümern	den Gesichtern
Accusative	die Reichtümer	die Gesichter

46. Decline the following nouns, modifying the root vowel in the plural: *das Dorf*, *the village*; *das Haus*, *the house*; *das Amt*, *the office*; *das Bad*, *the bath*; *das Buch*, *the book*; *das Dach*, *the roof*; *das Feld*, *the field*; *das Glas*, *the glass*; *das Gemüt*, *the feeling*; *das Geschlecht*, *the sex*;

das Gewand, *the garment*; der Geist, *the spirit*; der Gott, *the god*; der Leib, *the body*; der Mann, *the man*; der Ort, *the place*; der Rand, *the edge*; der Wald, *the forest*; der Wurm, *the worm*; das Herzogtum, *the duchy*; das Altertum, *antiquity*; der Irrtum, *the error*; das Hospital, *the hospital*; das Regiment, *the regiment*.

FOURTH CLASS—WEAK DECLENSION

47. Characteristics.—The fourth class, weak declension, is a later and less complete form of declension than the three classes of the strong declension. Its inflexional characteristics are:

(a) Termination **n** or **en** in the genitive, dative, and accusative singular of all masculine nouns. The feminines remain unchanged in the singular (see Art. 27).

(b) Termination **n** or **en** in the nominative plural of all nouns of this class.

(c) No modification of the stem vowel in the plural.

NOTE.—All nouns ending in **e**, **el**, **er**, and unaccented **ar** take in the singular and in the plural the shorter ending **n**; all others **en**. Thus, *die Blüte, die Blüten*; *die Gabel, die Gabeln*; but, *die Uhr, die Uhren*; *der Mensch, die Menschen*.

48. Nouns of the Fourth Class.—To the fourth class, or weak declension, belong:

(1) All feminine nouns not mentioned in the previous classes; that is, many feminine nouns of one syllable and all feminine nouns of more than one syllable except those in **nis** and **sal**. That includes the large class of nouns ending in **ei**, **heit**, **keit**, **schaft**, **ung**, and **in**.

(2) A few masculine monosyllabic nouns.

(3) Most masculines ending in **e**.

(4) Many foreign masculines accented on the last syllable.

49. Feminine derivatives in in, double the **n** before endings; as, *Freundin, pl. Freundinnen*.

50. Model Nouns of the Fourth Class.—Nouns of the fourth class are declined like *die Rose, the rose; die Freundin, the friend (fem.); die Frau, the woman; der Hirt, the herdsman; der Nefse, the nephew; der Student, the student.*

SINGULAR			
Nominative	die Rose	die Freundin	die Frau
Genitive	der Rose	der Freundin	der Frau
Dative	der Rose	der Freundin	der Frau
Accusative	die Rose	die Freundin	die Frau

PLURAL			
Nominative	die Rosen	die Freundinnen	die Frauen
Genitive	der Rosen	der Freundinnen	der Frauen
Dative	den Rosen	den Freundinnen	den Frauen
Accusative	die Rosen	die Freundinnen	die Frauen

SINGULAR			
Nominative	der Hirt	der Nefse	der Student
Genitive	des Hirten	des Nefsen	des Studenten
Dative	dem Hirten	dem Nefsen	dem Studenten
Accusative	den Hirten	den Nefsen	den Studenten

PLURAL			
Nominative	die Hirten	die Nefsen	die Studenten
Genitive	der Hirten	der Nefsen	der Studenten
Dative	den Hirten	den Nefsen	den Studenten
Accusative	die Hirten	die Nefsen	die Studenten

51. Decline like die Rose: *die Blume, the flower; die Blüte, the blossom; die Lampe, the lamp; die Schule, the school.*

Like *die Freundin*: *die Königin, the queen; die Gräfin, the countess; die Bäuerin, the peasant's wife; die Negerin, the negress.*

Like *die Frau*: *die Uhr, the clock; die Thür, the door; die Zeit, the time; die Schrift, the script; die Zahl, the number.*

Like *der Hirt*: *der Fürst, the prince; der Graf, the count; der Mensch, (the) man; der Bär, the bear.*

Like *der Nefse*: *der Affe, the monkey; der Bote, the messenger; der Deutsche, the German.*

Like *der Student*: *der Regent, the reigning prince; der Philosoph, the philosopher; der Demokrat, the democrat.*

52. The noun *Herr*, *mister*, adds in the singular only *n*, in the plural *en*. Thus, *des Herrn*, *dem Herrn*, *den Herrn*; plural, *die Herren*.

IRREGULAR NOUNS

53. There are a number of German nouns that follow neither of the previous declension forms but take their inflectional terminations from both the strong and the weak declension.

54. The following masculine nouns ending in *e* take in the genitive singular the ending *ns*, in all other cases of the singular and plural the termination *n* of the weak declension:

der Buchstabe, <i>the letter of the alphabet</i>	
der Funke, <i>spark</i>	der Haufe, <i>heap</i>
der Friede, <i>peace</i>	der Name, <i>name</i>
der Gedanke, <i>thought</i>	der Same, <i>seed</i>
der Glaube, <i>faith</i>	der Wille, <i>will</i>
der Schade, <i>damage, harm</i>	

Thus,

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	der Gedanke	die Gedanken
Genitive	des Gedankens	der Gedanken
Dative	dem Gedanken	den Gedanken
Accusative	den Gedanken	die Gedanken

55. *Der Schade*, the damage, genitive *Schadens*, modifies the root vowel in the plural: *die Schäden*.

56. *Der Schmerz*, the pain, usually is declined as follows: *des Schmerzes*, *dem Schmerz*, *den Schmerz*; nominative plural, *die Schmerzen*, etc.; but occasionally, especially in combinations, it also forms the genitive singular *des Schmerzens*, the dative *dem Schmerzen*.

57. *Der Felsen*, the rock, has also the shorter form *der Fels*. It forms the genitive *des Felsen* or *des Felsens*, the dative and accusative *Felsen* or *Fels*, and the plural *die Felsen*.

58. Das Herz, *the heart*, is declined as follows: des Herzens, dem Herzen, das Herz; plural, die Herzen, etc.

59. The following masculine and neuter nouns follow the strong declension in the singular and the weak in the plural:

der Bauer, <i>farmer</i>	der Strahl, <i>ray</i>
der Dorn, <i>thorn</i>	der Better, <i>cousin</i>
der Mast, <i>mast (of a ship)</i>	das Auge, <i>eye</i>
der Muskel, <i>muscle</i>	das Bett, <i>bed</i>
der Nachbar, <i>neighbor</i>	das Ende, <i>end</i>
der Pantoffel, <i>slipper</i>	das Hemd, <i>shirt</i>
der See, <i>lake</i>	das Ohr, <i>ear</i>
der Staat, <i>state</i>	das Insekt, <i>insect</i>
der Stachel, <i>sting</i>	der Doktor, <i>doctor</i>
der Stiefel, <i>boot</i>	der Professor, <i>professor</i>

Thus,

		SINGULAR	
Nominative	der Staat	das Ende	der Professor
Genitive	des Staates	des Endes	des Professors
Dative	dem Staate	dem Ende	dem Professor
Accusative	den Staat	das Ende	den Professor
		PLURAL	
Nominative	die Staaten	die Enden	die Professoren
Genitive	der Staaten	der Enden	der Professoren
Dative	den Staaten	den Enden	den Professoren
Accusative	die Staaten	die Enden	die Professoren

60. Some of these nouns form also the singular according to the weak declension; as,

der Bauer,	des,	dem,	den Bauern
der Nachbar,	des,	dem,	den Nachbarn
der Better,	des,	dem,	den Bettern

61. Some feminines of the fourth class have an *n* in the dative singular, when immediately following a preposition. Thus, auf Erden, *on earth*; zu Ehren, *in honor*; vor Freuden, *for joy*; zu Gunsten, *in favor of*; von Seiten, *on the part of*.

62. A few nouns have different senses for the same singular form, while in the plural they have a special form for each meaning. Some of these nouns are:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
die Bank, <i>bench, bank</i>	{ die Bänke, <i>benches</i> die Banken, <i>banks</i>
das Band, <i>ribbon, bond</i>	{ die Bänder, <i>ribbons</i> die Bände, <i>bonds</i>
das Wort, <i>word</i>	{ die Wörter, <i>words</i> (singly) die Worte, <i>words</i> (connected)
das Gesicht, <i>face, vision</i>	{ die Gesichter, <i>faces</i> die Gesichte, <i>visions</i>

DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES

63. Names of persons, places, and the neuter names of countries form their genitive singular by adding *s*; their dative and accusative singular are the same as the nominative; as,

Nominative	Karl	Elisabeth
Genitive	Karls	Elisabeths
Dative	Karl	Elisabeth
Accusative	Karl	Elisabeth

Thus, Pauls Hut, *Paul's hat*; Berthas Kleid, *Bertha's dress*; Berlins Museen, *the museums of Berlin*; Deutschlands Frauen or die Frauen Deutschlands, *the women of Germany*.

64. Although the genitive in *s* of proper names is more common in German than in English, German also construes names of countries and places in the dative with *von* (corresponding to the English *of*). This practice is especially frequent in speaking of sovereigns or dignitaries, or when the proper name ends in *s*; thus, die Gebäude von Berlin, *the buildings of Berlin*; die Straßen von Mainz, *the streets of Mainz*; der König von Belgien, *the king of Belgium*; der Kaiser von Deutschland, *the emperor of Germany*.

65. Names of countries and places are neuter and are used without the article; but when linked with a modifying word they take the article, as, das schöne Frankreich, *the beautiful France*; das alte Nürnberg, *the old Nürnberg*; das

moderne Wien, *the modern Vienna*. There are, however, three exceptions to this rule; namely, die Schweiz, *Switzerland*; die Türkei, *Turkey*; das (der) Elßaß, *Alsace*; the first two names are feminine, the third neuter or masculine; all three always have the article; as, die Gebirge der Schweiz, *the mountains of Switzerland*.

66. Feminine names of persons in *e* take *ns* or *s* in the genitive singular and *n* or no ending in the dative and accusative singular; thus,

Nominative	Margarete	Luiſe
Genitive	Margarete(n)s	Luiſe(n)s
Dative	Margarete(n)	Luiſe(n)
Accusative	Margarete(n)	Luiſe(n)

67. Masculine proper names ending in an *s*-sound may take the ending *ens* in the genitive; as, Friſſens Hut, *Frederick's hat*; Maxens Feder, *Maximilian's pen*; Janſens Vater, *John's father*. But family and foreign names ending in *s* indicate the genitive by the apostrophe only; as Voß' Louiſe, *Demosthenes' orations*.

68. The Latin nouns Jeſus and Chriſtus retain the Latin forms; as,

Nominative	Jeſus Chriſtus	Dative	Jeſu Chriſto
Genitive	Jeſu Chriſti	Accusative	Jeſum Chriſtum

69. The Article With Proper Names.—The *indefinite* article used with a proper name has a generalizing effect; the proper name is then undeclined. Thus, die Werke eines Goethe, *the works of a Goethe*; das Gedächtniß eines Gladſtone, *the memory of a Gladstone*.

70. The *definite* article used with a personal name has a demonstrative force and the personal name is then undeclined. Thus, die Gefänge des Horaz, *the songs of Horace*; die Reden des eifernen Biſmarck, *the oration of the iron Bismark*. When the personal name is preceded by an adjective, it must also be preceded by the definite article. Thus, der kleine Karl, *der fleißige Hans*.

71. Titles With Personal Names.—When a title with the definite article precedes a proper name, both article and title are declined but the name remains unchanged. When, however, a title without the article precedes the name, the name is declined, but the title remains unchanged. Thus,

Nominative	der Professor Braun	but	Professor Braun
Genitive	des Professors Braun		Professors Brauns
Dative	dem Professor Braun		Professor Braun
Accusative	den Professor Braun		Professor Braun

Thus,

Das Reich des Kaisers Karl, *The state of emperor Charles,*

but

Kaiser Karls Reich, *emperor Charles' state.*

72. But the title „Herr,” *mister*, is an exception to the rule just given, for it is declined even when used without the article. Thus, Herrn Brauns Buch, *Mr. Braun's book.*

73. When two titles precede a personal name, the second remains unchanged where the rules given above are applied in the case of the first. Thus, das Buch des Professors Doktor Braun, but Professor Doktor Brauns Buch; die Rede des Herrn Professor Schmidt, but Herrn Professor Schmidts Rede.

74. A title following a personal name is always declined, as, der Tod Karls des Großen, Karls des Großen Tod, *Charlemagne's death.*

75. Names of Months.—The names of the months are masculine and generally take the definite article. März, *March*; Mai, *May*; Juni, *June*; Juli, *July*, remain unchanged in the genitive, while the others may or may not have *s* in the genitive; as, die Nächte des März, *the nights of March*; das kalte Wetter des Januar(s), *the cold weather of January.*

DECLENSION OF FOREIGN NOUNS

76. Words from French, English, and other modern languages usually take *s* in the genitive singular and throughout the plural; as, *Piano*, *Pianos*; *Cello*, *Cellos*; *Genie*, *Genies*; *Chef*, *Chefs*; *Lord*, *Lords*.

77. Nouns of Latin origin in *um* and *ium* take *s* in the genitive singular, but change *um* to *en* throughout the plural; as, nominative, *Diarium*, *diary*, genitive, *Diariums*, plural, *Diarien*; *Herbarium*, *herbarium*, genitive, *Herbariums*, plural, *Herbarien*; some of these nouns have dropped the termination *ium* in the singular, as *Adverb*, but they retain in the plural *ien*, *Adverbien*.

Some other neuter nouns of foreign origin in *al* and *il* take *s* in the genitive singular and *ien* in the plural; thus, *das Material*, genitive, *des Materials*, plural, *die Materialien*; *das Fossil*, genitive, *des Fossils*, plural, *die Fossilien*.

78. A few foreign nouns retain their original plural; thus, *Datum*, *date*, plural, *Data*; *Modus*, *mode*, plural *Modi*; *Seraph*, *seraph*, plural, *Seraphim*; *Factum*, *fact*, plural, *Facta*.

DECLENSION OF COMPOUND NOUNS

79. **Compound Nouns**, which are much more freely used in German than in English, have both the inflection and the gender of the final member. Thus, *die Hausthür*, *the house door*; *der Blumengarten*, *the flower garden*; are declined like *die Thür*, respectively, *der Garten*.

Das Fürwort.

The Pronoun

80. Function of the Pronoun.—The pronoun has been defined as a word that denotes persons and things without naming them. Although it does not precisely name anything, it points to or points out some person or thing that has been named before, or that is shown by a gesture, or that is defined by its relation to something else that is named. Thus, if I say,

Das ist mein Bruder; kennen Sie ihn? This is my brother do you know him?

I use *mein*, *my*, to denote my own person and *Sie*, *you*, to denote the person to whom I speak; having mentioned my brother, I do not repeat the name but use *ihn*, *him*, instead; finally, *das*, *this*, describes plainly enough the person, toward whom I make some gesture, or whom I take hold of. All such words like *mein*, *Sie*, *ihn*, *das* are pronouns or pronominal adjectives. They have, in general, the same uses that nouns have in making sentences, but they differ from nouns in this respect, that they are almost never qualified by attributive adjectives, that is by adjectives placed before them and directly qualifying them. Pronouns have also the same inflection as nouns; namely, for number and case.

81. In German, as in English, many pronouns may be joined to a noun in order to qualify its meaning; thus they may fulfil the function of an adjective as well as of a pronoun. Pronouns used in such a way are called **pronominal adjectives**. Since these words have the character of the pronouns more than of the adjectives they will be discussed under pronouns. They belong in the classes (3) to (7) inclusive of the following list.

82. Classes of Pronouns.—According to the use and meaning in sentential structure, pronouns have been divided into the following classes:

1. The *personal pronoun*
2. The *reflexive, reciprocal, and intensive pronouns*
3. The *possessive pronoun* and *possessive pronominal adjective*
4. The *demonstrative pronoun* and *adjective*
5. The *interrogative pronoun* and *adjective*
6. The *relative pronoun* and *adjective*
7. The *indefinite pronoun* and *adjective*

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

83. The *personal pronouns* are those which by their form indicate persons—the speaker, *first person*; the person addressed, *second person*; and the person or thing spoken about, *third person*.

1. The *personal pronoun* of the first person (the speaker) is *ich, I*; in the plural, *wir, we*.

2. The *personal pronoun* of the second person (the hearer) is *du, thou, you*; in the plural *ihr, you*; in polite address *Sie, you*, in the singular as well as in the plural.

3. The *personal pronoun* of the third person (the person or thing spoken of) is *er, he*, for the masculine gender; *sie, she*, for the feminine gender; *es, it*, for the neuter gender. In the plural, all three genders have the common form *sie, they*.

DECLENSION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

84. The *personal pronouns* are declined as follows:

First Person

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	<i>ich, I</i>	<i>wir, we</i>
Genitive	<i>meiner; mein, of me</i>	<i>unser, of us</i>
Dative	<i>mir, to me</i>	<i>uns, to us</i>
Accusative	<i>mich, me</i>	<i>uns, us</i>

Second Person

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	du, thou	ihr, you
Genitive	deiner, dein, of thee	euer, of you
Dative	dir, to thee	euch, to you
Accusative	 dich, thee	euch, you

*Third Person**Masculine*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	er, he	sie, they
Genitive	seiner, sein, of him	ihrer, of them
Dative	ihm, to him	ihnen, to them
Accusative	ihn, him	sie, them

Feminine

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	sie, she	sie, they
Genitive	ihrer, of her	ihrer, of them
Dative	ih, to her	ihnen, to them
Accusative	sie, her	sie, them

Neuter

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	es, it	sie, they
Genitive	seiner, sein, of it	ihrer, of them
Dative	ihm, to it	ihnen, to them
Accusative	es, it	sie, them

85. The short forms of the genitive singular, *mein, dein*, and *sein* are used only in poetry and in familiar speech.

86. While the first and second persons have a common form for all three genders, the third person has a different form for each gender; therefore, referring to a noun by the personal pronoun *er, sie, or es*, that particular form must be used which corresponds to the gender of the noun.

USES OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUN

87. **Use of the Personal Pronoun In Address.**—Until some centuries ago, the Germans, like the French and the English, addressed each other in familiar conversation by the second person singular, and in formal intercourse by the second person plural. Since that period

another mode of address has been adopted by the Germans as expressive of respect, that is the third person plural „Sie.“ Although the modern form „Sie“ is often used the ancient forms „du“ and „ihr“ (for the plural) are also retained.

88. The natural address **du**, *thou*, in the plural **ihr**, *you*, is much more used at the present day in German than in other modern languages; as it excludes all ceremonious formality, it is reserved for relations of confidence, friendship, and love. It is used in addressing the supreme being, members of the family, friends, children, animals. Thus,

Wo gehst du hin, liebe Mutter? *Where art thou going, dear mother?*

Hast du deine Lektion gelernt, Karl? *Didst thou learn thy lesson, Charles?*

NOTE.—The last sentence also shows, that whenever **du** and **ihr** are used the corresponding possessive adjective **dein** and **euer** must be employed. When **du**, **ihr**, **dein**, and **euer** occur in letters, they must be written with capitals.

89. The usual form of address in German, for the singular as well as for the plural, is **Sie**, the third person plural of the personal pronoun, but capitalized. It is generally used in the polite conversation of people of education; and even inferiors, if not in dependence on the speaker, would be offended if otherwise addressed.

Wer sind Sie, mein Herr? or meine Herren? *Who are you, sir? or gentlemen?*

Welches Buch haben Sie gelesen, meine Damen? *Which book have you read, ladies?*

90. The third person singular of the personal pronoun, **er** for male, and **sie** for female persons, is used only in addressing inferiors, particularly servants and others, who are dependant on the speaker. It is employed by the country people of some German provinces in speaking to one another. Being considered, however, as indicating a want of respect, this mode of address should scarcely ever be used.

91. The second person plural of the personal pronoun, *ihr*, is used among peasants and other people in lower stations of life to address a single person and is never used by others. This practice is, however, more common in the country than in towns.

92. Different Uses of *es*.—The third person neuter of the personal pronoun, *es*, is sometimes used as the indefinite subject of *sein*, *to be*, with a predicative nominative either following or preceding. This nominative may be of any gender and may stand in the singular as well as in the plural, the verb always agreeing with it in person and number. This *es* is usually translated by *it* or *they*. Thus,

Es ist sein Bruder, *it is his brother.*

Es sind seine Eltern, *they are his parents.*

Ich weiß, daß *es* meine Tochter ist, *I know that it is my daughter.*

Meine Nichten sind *es*, *they are my nieces.*

93. When *es* is used as indefinite subject of *sein*, *to be*, and the predicative nominative is a personal pronoun, the reversed order of words is to be used and the verb agrees in number and person with the predicative nominative. Thus,

ich bin *es*, *it is I* (not: *es* ist ich)

du bist *es*, *it is thou*

er, sie, *es* ist *es*, *it is he, she, it*

wir waren *es*, *it was we*

ihr waret *es*, *it was you*

sie waren *es*, *it was they*

Sie waren *es*, *it was you*

In an interrogative sentence, *es* is placed at the end of the sentence. Thus, *bist du es?* *is it you?* *waren sie es?* *was it they?*

94. *Es* is sometimes used as a grammatical subject anticipating the real or logical subject, which is then placed after the verb. The verb always agrees with the logical subject. In this case, *es* can often be translated by *there*. Thus,

Es lebte einst ein edles Geschlecht, *There lived once a noble race.*

This construction is used simply to change the order of words for the purpose of putting more emphasis on the verb.

The *es* always disappears when the sentence is made an interrogative or dependent one or if the logical subject is put at the beginning of the sentence. Thus,

Lebte einst ein edles Geschlecht? *Lived there once a noble race?* Man erzählt, daß einst ein edles Geschlecht lebte; ein edles Geschlecht lebte einst.

95. Not to be confounded with this use of *es* are the phrases *es giebt, es gab, es hat gegeben, there is, there was, there has been*. The noun following these phrases is in the accusative case and the verb is always in the singular, irrespective of the number of the noun. Nor does the *es* disappear in an interrogative or dependent sentence. Thus,

Es gab einmal zwei Brüder, *There were once two brothers*.

Giebt es in Hamburg ein gutes Theater? *Is there a good theater in Hamburg.*

96. Finally, *es* may stand for the predicative word or phrase of a preceding sentence and corresponds thus sometimes to the English *so*. Thus,

Sind die Inhaber Brüder?—Nein, aber deren Väter waren es. *Are the owners brothers?—No, but their fathers were (brothers).*

Ich glaube es, *I believe so*.

97. When the personal pronoun of the third person refers to an object without life, and depends on a preposition, it is generally substituted by the adverb *da, there*, (before a vowel *dar*), compound with the preposition. Thus,

damit, *therewith, with it*
dafür, *therefore, for it*
davon, *therefrom, from that*
darin, *therein, in it*
darauf, *thereupon, upon that*
bagegen, *against that*

daraus, *thereout, out of it*
danach, } *thereafter*
darnach, }
daran, *thereon, on it*
darüber, *thereabout, about it*

Thus,

Wir kauften einen Ball und spielten damit, *We bought a ball and played with it.*

Sometimes other adverbs are used in such cases. Thus,

Wir fanden die Hütte und gingen hinein, *We found the hut and went into it.*

THE REFLEXIVE, RECIPROCAL, AND INTENSIVE PRONOUNS

98. The Reflexive Pronoun.—A reflexive pronoun is a pronoun, that as object of a verb denotes the same person or thing as the subject. It is called reflexive, because it reflects the action of the verb upon its subject. Since the reflexive pronoun is always the object of a verb, it occurs mostly in the accusative and dative cases, seldom in the genitive, and never in the nominative. For the first and second persons singular and plural, the German uses the regular forms of the personal pronoun, while for the third person in the dative and accusative of both numbers and all genders a special form **sich** is used.

99. Declension of the Reflexive Pronoun.—The reflexive pronoun is declined as follows:

SINGULAR			
	First Person	Second Person	Third Person
Genitive	meiner	deiner	seiner, ihrer, seiner
Dative	mir	dir	sich
Accusative	mich	dich	sich
PLURAL			
Genitive	unserer	eurer	ihrer, Ihrer
Dative	uns	euch	sich
Accusative	uns	euch	sich

Thus the reflexive pronoun for the dative in connection with a verb is:

ich schmeichle **mir**, *I flatter myself*
 du schmeichelst **dir**, *thou flatterest thyself*
 er } *he* }
 sie } schmeichelt **sich**, *she* } flatters
 es } *it* } herself
 wir schmeicheln **uns**, *we flatter ourselves*
 ihr schmeichelt **euch**, *you flatter yourselves*
 sie schmeicheln **sich**, *they flatter themselves*
 Sie schmeicheln **sich**, *you flatter yourself, or yourselves*

For the accusative:

ich entschuldige **mich**, *I excuse myself*
 du entschuldigst **dich**, *thou excusest thyself*

er } entschuldigt *sich*, *he* } excuses { *himself*
 sie } *she* } *herself*
 es } *it* } *itself*
 wir entschuldigen *uns*, *we excuse ourselves*
 ihr entschuldiget *euch*, *you excuse yourselves*
 sie entschuldigen *sich*, *they excuse themselves*
 Sie entschuldigen *sich*, *you excuse yourself, or yourselves*

100. We find in these examples that the reflexive pronoun of the third person, *sich*, has six different equivalents in English: *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves*, *yourself*, and *yourselves*. To these another form must be added, *oneself*, which is used with the infinitive. Thus, *sich entschuldigen*, *to excuse oneself*.

101. The Reciprocal Pronoun.—The reciprocal pronoun is a pronoun that expresses a mutual exchange of action between two or more persons or parties. This reciprocal pronoun is *einander*; in English we use *each other* or *one another* in this sense. Besides *einander* the German also uses sometimes the reflexive forms *uns*, *euch*, *sich* in a reciprocal sense. Thus,

Wir verstehen { *einander* } *we understand each other or one another*
 uns
 ihr begegnetet { *einander* } *you met each other or one another*
 euch
 sie stoßen { *einander* } *they push each other or one another*
 euch

102. The Intensive, or Emphatic, Pronoun.—The intensive, or emphatic, pronoun is a pronoun that emphasizes the noun or pronoun with which it is connected. The form of this pronoun is *selbst* or *selber*. In English we render the emphasis by the reflexive pronoun. Thus,

Simple statement: *Ich will es thun, I will do it.*

Emphatic statement: *Ich selbst will es thun, I, myself, will do it.*

Simple statement: *der Präsident war da, the President was there.*

Emphatic statement: *der Präsident selbst war da, the President, himself, was there.*

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 3)

Das Fürwort—(Continued)

1. In Part 2, the personal, reflexive, reciprocal, and intensive pronouns were discussed. The present part treats of the remaining five classes: the *possessives*, *demonstratives*, *interrogatives*, *relatives*, and *indefinites*.

Most of the words belonging to these classes can be employed not only as *pronouns proper* (that is, as substitutes for nouns) but also as adjectives (that is, as modifiers of nouns), and are then called *pronominal adjectives*.

Some of these pronominal adjectives, again, may be used

1. *Attributively*; that is, they may be joined directly to the noun to modify it; as *mein Vater*, *my father*; *unser Haus*, *our house*; *dieser Held*, *this hero*; *jene Landschaft*, *that landscape*.

2. *Predicatively*; that is, they may form a direct part of the predication or assertion about the subject of the verb. Their position is then, as a rule, after the verb. Thus,

Dieses Haus ist unser, *This house is ours*.

Dieser Garten ist mein, *This garden is mine*.

Jene Feder ist dein, *That pen is yours*.

2. **Endings for the Declension of the Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives.**—For the inflection of the pronouns and pronominal adjectives to be treated in this part, two different sets of endings are used: the strong and the weak. The *strong endings* correspond more or less to the terminations of the strong declension of nouns, while the *weak endings* correspond to those of the weak declension of nouns.

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

The strong endings are:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	-er	-e	-es		-e	
Genitive	-es	-er	-es		-er	
Dative	-em	-er	-em		-en	
Accusative	-en	-e	-es		-e	

These strong endings are almost the same as those of the definite article; except that the article has *ie* instead of *e* in the nominative singular of the feminine, and *es* instead of *es* in the nominative singular of the neuter gender.

The weak endings are:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	-e	-e	-e		-en	
Genitive	-en	-en	-en		-en	
Dative	-en	-en	-en		-en	
Accusative	-en	-e	-e		-en	

The set of strong endings is somewhat modified in the declension of the indefinite article and of the pronominal adjectives *mein, my; dein, thy, your; sein, his; ihr, her; fein, its; unser, our; euer, your; ihr, their*. These words do not take any ending in the nominative singular masculine, nor in the nominative and accusative singular neuter; in all other cases the strong endings are added. This modified set of endings is called the set of *defective endings*.

The defective endings are:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	-	-e	-		-e	
Genitive	-es	-er	-es		-er	
Dative	-em	-er	-em		-en	
Accusative	-en	-e	-		-e	

3. General Rules for the Use of the Endings.—1.

The pronouns and pronominal adjectives that will be treated hereafter, are, as a rule, declined by adding the strong endings to the stem. Thus,

Nominative	dieser	diese	dieses, <i>this</i>
Genitive	dieses	dieser	dieses
	etc.		
Nominative	welcher	welche	welches, <i>which</i>
Genitive	welches	welcher	welches
	etc.		

2. If, however, a *pronoun proper* is preceded by the definite article or a pronominal word with a strong ending, it regularly takes the weak endings. Thus,

jeder andere, *every other (man)* eines jeden, *of every (man)*
jedes anderen, *of every other* einem jeden, *to every (man)*

3. If two or more *pronominal adjectives* are combined, they do *not* affect one another; that is to say, they both take the strong endings. Thus, dieser mein Sohn, *this my son*; dieses meines Sohnes, *of this my son*; alle jene Männer, *all those men*.

4. There is, however, an exception to this rule. In the combination of a pronominal adjective with *ander*—, *beid*—, *viel*, and *wenig*, these four indefinite pronouns take the weak endings. Thus, jene anderen Kinder, *those other children*; dieses anderen Hauses, *of this other house*; welche beiden Städte, *which two cities*; diese vielen Leute, *these many people*.

5. The weak endings are therefore, as these rules show, dependent on the strong; they never occur alone, but only in connection with the strong endings. The combinations of strong and weak endings must be studied carefully; they are as follows:

	SINGULAR						PLURAL		
	Masc.		Fem.		Neuter		Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nominative	-er	-e	-e	-e	-es	-e	-e	-en	
Genitive	-es	-en	-er	-en	-es	-en	-er	-en	
Dative	-em	-en	-er	-en	-em	-en	-en	-en	
Accusative	-en	-en	-e	-e	-es	-e	-e	-en	

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

4. The *possessive pronouns* are so called because they point out the possessor of an object. Thus, in the sentence: Dieses Buch ist mein, *this book is mine*, *mein* denotes that *I* am the possessor of the book. Since the

possessor may be the first, second, or third person, that is, the person speaking, addressed, or spoken of, the possessive has, like the personal pronoun, three different forms—one for each person. Thus, *mein*, *mine*, denotes that the possessor is the person speaking; *dein*, *thine*, *your*, denotes that the possessor is the person addressed; and *sein*, *his*, that the possessor is the third person, the person spoken about.

5. Different Uses of the Possessives.—The possessives may be used as predicate adjectives, as attributive adjectives, or as pronouns proper. Thus, in the sentence: *das Buch ist mein*, *the book is mine*, *mein* is used as the predicate adjective; in the sentence *mein Buch ist nicht hier*, *my book is not here*, *mein* is an attributive adjective; while in the sentence *mein Buch liegt auf dem Tisch, daß deine auf dem Stuhl*, *my book lies on the table, yours on the chair*, the possessive *deine* is used as a pronoun proper.

6. Different Forms of the Possessive Pronouns and Adjectives.—The possessives are derived from the genitive forms *meiner*, *deiner*, *seiner*, *ihrer*, *seiner*, *unser*, *euer*, *ihrer*, of the personal pronouns, inasmuch as the stem of these genitive forms is used also as stem of the possessives. These stems are as follows: *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, *ihr*, *sein*, *unser*, *euer*, *ihr*. According to the different use of the possessives they have five different forms.

7. Form I.—When the possessives are used as predicate adjectives, they have the form of the stem and are not inflected. These adjectives are:

For the first person singular:	<i>mein</i> , <i>mine</i>
For the first person plural:	<i>unser</i> , <i>ours</i>
For the second person singular:	<i>dein</i> , <i>thine</i> , <i>yours</i>
For the second person plural:	<i>euer</i> , <i>yours</i>
For the third person singular:	masc., <i>sein</i> , <i>his</i> ; fem., <i>ihr</i> , <i>hers</i> ; neuter, <i>sein</i> , <i>its</i>
For the third person plural:	<i>ihr</i> , <i>theirs</i>
For the person of address:	<i>Ihr</i> , <i>yours</i>

Examples:

Das Schiff ist **mein**, *The ship is mine.*

Die Rache ist **mein**, *Vengeance is mine.*

Die Gemälde sind **dein**, *The paintings are yours.*

Sein sind Himmel und Erde, *His are heaven and earth.*

Der Gewinn ist **unser**, *The gain is ours.*

Reichtum und Glück sind **euer**, *Riches and fortune are yours.*

8. Form II. — When the possessives are used as attributive adjectives, their stem is connected with the endings of the defective declension. Thus, they have the following forms:

SINGULAR				PLURAL			
Masc.	Fem.	Neuter		Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	
mein	meine	mein	<i>my</i>	unser	un(s)e(re)	unser	<i>our</i>
dein	deine	dein	<i>thy, your</i>	euer	eu(e)re	euer	<i>your</i>
sein	seine	sein	<i>his</i>	ihr	ihre	ihr	<i>their</i>
ihr	ihre	ihr	<i>her</i>	Ihr	Ihre	Ihr	<i>your</i>
sein	seine	sein	<i>its</i>				

9. Declension of the Possessive Attributive Adjective. — The possessive adjectives are declined by adding the defective endings. Thus,

mein Hut, my hat

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	mein Hut	meine Hüte
Genitive	meines Hutes	meiner Hüte
Dative	meinem Hute	meinen Hüten
Accusative	mein Hut	meine Hüte

deine Schwester, your sister

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	deine Schwester	deine Schwestern
Genitive	deiner Schwester	deiner Schwestern
Dative	deiner Schwester	deinen Schwestern
Accusative	deine Schwester	deine Schwestern

sein Pferd, his horse

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	sein Pferd	seine Pferde
Genitive	seines Pferdes	seiner Pferde
Dative	seinem Pferde	seinen Pferden
Accusative	sein Pferd	seine Pferde

unser Freund, *our friend*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	unser Freund	unf(e)re Freunde
Genitive	unf(e)res Freundes	unf(e)rer Freunde
Dative	unf(e)rem Freunde	unf(e)ren Freunden
Accusative	unf(e)ren Freund	unf(e)re Freunde

euer Feind, *your enemy*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	euer Feind	eu(e)re Feinde
Genitive	eu(e)res Feindes	eu(e)rer Feinde
Dative	eu(e)rem Feinde	eu(e)ren Feinden
Accusative	eu(e)ren Feind	eu(e)re Feinde

ihr Buch, *their book*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	ihr Buch	ihre Bücher
Genitive	ihres Buches	ihrer Büchern
Dative	ihrem Buche	ihren Büchern
Accusative	ihr Buch	ihre Bücher

10. The forms *unser* and *euer* often drop the *e* before the *r* of the stem, when joined with the defective endings; as, *unfres Bruders*, *unfrem Bruder*, *unfre Brüder*, *eure Schwestern*. But the forms *unfers*, *unferm*, *unfern*, where the *e* of the inflectional endings is omitted, also occur.

11. **Form III.**—When the possessives are used as pronouns proper, those forms are commonly applied which consist of the stem and the strong endings. These forms are:

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
meiner	meine	mein(e)s, <i>mine</i>	unf(e)rer	unf(e)re	unf(e)res, <i>ours</i>
deiner	deine	deines, <i>thine, yours</i>	eu(e)rer	eu(e)re	eu(e)res, <i>yours</i>
seiner	seine	seines, <i>his</i>	ihrer	ihre	ihres, <i>theirs</i>
ihrer	ihre	ihres, <i>hers</i>	Ihrer	Ihre	Ihres,
seiner	seine	seines, <i>its</i>			

DECLENSION OF FORM III.—The pronoun *meiner*, *meine*, *meines*, etc. is declined as follows:

In meinem Garten giebt es viele Blumen in dem **Ihren** viele Ob-
bäume *In my garden there are many flowers. in yours many fruit trees.*

Ist das **Ihr** Hut oder der seine?—Es ist der **Ihre**, *Is this your hat
or his?—It is yours.*

13. Form V.—Form V is of recent origin and is, like Forms III and IV, used only as a possessive pronoun. It is formed from the stem of the possessives, the suffix *ig*, and the weak endings, and can only be used with the definite article. Thus,

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
der	die daß meinige, <i>mine</i>	der	die daß unfrige, <i>ours</i>
der	die daß deinige, <i>thine</i>	der	die daß eurige, <i>yours</i>
der	die daß seinige, <i>his</i>	der	die daß ihrige, <i>theirs</i>
der	die daß ihrige, <i>hers</i>	der	die daß Ihrige, <i>yours</i>
der	die daß ienige, <i>its</i>		

DECLENSION OF FORM V.—*der, die, daß meinige, mine, etc.* are declined by adding the weak endings. Thus,

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nom.	der meinige	die meinige	daß meinige	die meinigen		
Gen.	des meinigen	der meinigen	des meinigen	der meinigen		
Dat.	dem meinigen	der meinigen	dem meinigen	den meinigen		
Acc.	den meinigen	die meinige	daß meinige	die meinigen		

Examples:

Mein Vater ist im Garten, der deinige ist im Hause, *My father is in the garden, yours is in the house.*

Ihre Schwester hat helles Haar, die seinige hat dunkles Haar, *Your sister has light hair, his has dark hair.*

Sind das deine Bücher?—Nein, es sind die Ihrigen, *Are these your books?—No, they are yours.*

14. Different Uses of the Possessives.—1. The possessives indicate, as has been shown, by the form of the stem, the person and number of the nouns that they represent; that is, the person and number of the possessors. Thus, the stem of the possessive *seiner* indicates that the possessor is the third person of the singular.

2. Moreover, when the possessives are declined, they also make known, by their terminations, the gender, number, and case of the nouns with which they are connected: for in respect to inflection, a possessive pronoun agrees in gender, number, and case not with the *possessor* but with the name of the thing *possessed*.

3. When a possessive stands in the predicate, doubt may arise whether the adjective forms or the pronoun forms should be applied. For this reason it must be kept in mind that the adjective forms, that is Form I, simply denotes ownership and nothing else; therefore, *dieses Buch ist mein* means *this book is my property, it belongs to me and to nobody else*. But the pronominal forms denote more than mere ownership; they are used for emphasis or to distinguish the mentioned object from others of the same class. Thus if we say: *dieses Buch ist meines*, or *daß meinige*, we not only express, that *I* am the owner of the book, but we also distinguish this book from all books that are not *mine*; *this book is the one that belongs to me*.

4. When no ambiguity is likely to arise, German often replaces the possessive adjectives, where in English it would be used, by the definite article, either alone or with the dative of a personal or reflexive pronoun. Thus,

Ich habe es in den Händen, I have it in my hands.

Ich lege es dir in die Hand, I put it in your hand.

Er hat (sich) den Arm gebrochen, He has broken his arm.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

15. A **demonstrative pronoun** is a pronoun that eminently points out (demonstrates) the object to which it relates. *Demonstrative* is from the Latin word *demonstrare*, *to show*, and means "pointing out, showing, directing attention to" anything. Thus, in the sentence, *Dieses ist Wein und jenes Wasser*, *This is wine and that is water*, *dieses* and *jenes* point out the objects to which the names *Wein* and *Wasser* relate. *Dieses* and *jenes* are demonstrative pronouns.

The demonstrative pronouns are:

der, die, das, that, that one
dieser, diese, dieses, this (here), this one, the latter
jener, jene, jenes, that (there), that one, the former
derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige, that, that one
derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe, the same
solcher, solche, solche, such, such a one

16. Function of the Demonstratives.—The words given above have, in the first place, the function of pronouns; that is, they stand alone and are substitutes for nouns. Thus, in the sentence *dieser hier ist mein Bruder*, *this one here is my brother*, *dieser* is a pronoun; it is a substitute for the noun *Mann*, *man*. In the second place, these words are also used as pronominal adjectives, as modifiers of nouns. Thus, in the sentence *dieser Knabe ist krank*, *this boy is sick*, *dieser* is modifying the noun *Knabe*, therefore, it is a pronominal adjective.

INFLECTION OF THE DEMONSTRATIVES

17. Declension of *der, die, das*.—*der, die, das*, *that or this one, he, she, it*, as pronouns are declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	<i>der</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die</i>		
Genitive	<i>dessen</i>	<i>deren</i>	<i>dessen (deß)</i>	<i>deren, derer</i>		
Dative	<i>dem</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>dem</i>	<i>denen</i>		
Accusative	<i>den</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die</i>		

The form *deß* of the genitive singular of the neuter is obsolete and used only in compounds, such as the adverbs: *deswegen*, *deshalb*, *on that account*, *desgleichen*, *likewise*; and in poetical language.

Examples:

Der auf dem Wagen ist mein Bruder, *That one in the carriage is my brother.*

Haben Sie *die* dort schon gesehen? *Have you seen her yonder already?*

Morgen kommt mein Freund mit seiner Schwester und *deren* Bräutigam zu uns. *Tomorrow, my friend, with his sister and his sister's bridegroom, will come to us.*

Welchen Kindern sollen wir die Bücher geben, **denen** im Garten oder **denen** im Zimmer? *To which children shall we give the books, to those in the garden or to those in the room?*

18. **Der, die, das**, as pronominal adjectives, are declined like the definite article, but are pronounced with greater stress of voice. In print this emphasis is often indicated by spaced letters.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	der	die	das		die	
Genitive	des	der	des		der	
Dative	dem	der	dem		den	
Accusative	den	die	das		die	

Examples:

Kennen Sie den Mann?—Ja, ich kenne ihn, *Do you know that man?—Yes, I know him.*

Haben Sie das Haus schon gesehen?—Nein, das Haus habe ich noch nicht gesehen, *Have you seen that house already?—No, I have not yet seen that house.*

19. Declension of **dieser, —e, —es** and **jener, —e, —es**. **Dieser, diese, dieses, this (here), this one, the latter**, and **jener, jene, jenes, that (there), that one, the former**, are originally, like **der, die, das**, demonstrative adjectives, but they are used both as pronominal adjectives with a noun, and as pronouns standing instead of a noun. As pronouns and as pronominal adjectives they are declined by adding the strong endings. Thus,

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	dieser	diese	dieses or dies		diese	
Genitive	dieses	dieser	dieses		dieser	
Dative	diesem	dieser	diesem		diesen	
Accusative	diesen	diese	dieses or dies		diese	
Nominative	jener	jene	jenes		jene	
Genitive	jenes	jener	jenes		jener	
Dative	jenem	jener	jenem		jenen	
Accusative	jenen	jene	jenes		jene	

Examples:

Dieser Knabe ist stärker als **jener**, *This boy is stronger than that one.*

Bismarck und **Gladstone** waren große Staatsmänner; **dieser** war ein Engländer, **jener** ein Deutscher, *Bismarck and Gladstone were great statesmen; the latter was an Englishman, the former a German.*

Dieses ist französische und **jenes** ist amerikanische Seide, *This is French and that is American silk.*

Jene Gebäude dort gehören mir, **diese** hier gehören meinem Vater, *Those buildings (there) belong to me, these here belong to my father.*

20. Special Use of *das* and *dies*.—The neuter demonstrative *das* and *dies*, *this*, are often used as the indefinite subject of *sein*, *to be*, with a predicative nominative either following or preceding. This nominative may be of any gender and may stand in the singular as well as in the plural, the verb always agrees with this nominative in number and person (see Part 2). Thus,

Das bin ich, *That is I.*

Dies ist mein Vater, *This is my father.*

Das sind Maultiere, *Those are mules.*

Dies sind wir, *This is we.*

Das waret ihr, *That were you.*

Ist **dies** Ihre Tochter? *Is this your daughter?*

Sind **dies** Ihre Söhne? *Are these your sons?*

21. Declension of *der*, *die*, *dasjenige* and *ders*, *dies*, *dasſelbe*.—*Derjenige*, *diejenige*, *dasjenige*, *that*, *that one*, *he*, are composed of *der*, *die*, *das* and *jenig*—; *derſelbe*, *dieſelbe*, *daſſelbe*, *the same*, are composed of *der*, *die*, *das* and *ſelb*—. These compounds are used as pronouns proper and as pronominal adjectives. When declined both component parts are inflected; *der*, *die*, *das* are declined like the definite article, while *jenig*— and *ſelb*— take the weak endings in both uses. Thus,

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	derjenige	diejenige	dasjenige	diejenigen		
Genitive	desjenigen	derjenigen	desjenigen	derjenigen		
Dative	demjenigen	derjenigen	demjenigen	denjenigen		
Accusative	denjenigen	diejenige	dasjenige	diejenigen		

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	derselbe	dieselbe	dasſelbe	dieſelben		
Genitive	deſſelben	derſelben	deſſelben	derſelben		
Dative	demſelben	derſelben	demſelben	denſelben		
Accusative	denſelben	dieselbe	daſſelbe	dieſelben		

22. Derjenige, diejenige, daſſenige are emphatic and chiefly used as antecedents of a relative. Der, die, daſ and derſelbe, dieſelbe, daſſelbe may also be followed by a relative pronoun and are then called correlative pronouns. In this use the genitive form *derer* instead of *deren* of the pronoun *der*, *die*, *daſ* is applied.

Examples:

Derjenige, welcher daſ Kind gerettet hat, trete hervor! *He who saved the child, step forward!*

Daſſenige Regiment, welches die größten Verluſte erlitt, war daſ Bierzehnte, *That regiment, which suffered the heaviest losses, was the fourteenth.*

Daſ ſind dieſelben Leute, welche wir geſtern getroffen haben, *These are the same people that we met yesterday.*

Daſ ſind die Namen derer, welche im Kampf gefallen ſind, *These are the names of those who fell in the battle.*

23. Declension of *ſolcher*, *—e*, *—eſ*. — *Solcher*, *ſolche*, *ſolcheſ*, *such*, are used as pronouns proper and as pronominal adjectives preceded or not preceded by the indefinite article. When used as pronouns or as pronominal adjectives without the indefinite article, they are declined by adding the strong endings. Thus,

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	ſolcher	ſolche	ſolcheſ	ſolche		
Genitive	ſolcheſ	ſolcher	ſolcheſ	ſolcher		
Dative	ſolchem	ſolcher	ſolchem	ſolchen		
Accusative	ſolchen	ſolche	ſolcheſ	ſolche		

When *ſolcher*, *—e*, *—eſ* is preceded by the indefinite article, it takes the weak endings. Thus,

	SINGULAR		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	ein solcher	eine solche	ein solches
Genitive	eines solchen	einer solchen	eines solchen
Dative	einem solchen	einer solchen	einem solchen
Accusative	einen solchen	eine solche	ein solches

Solch may be followed by the indefinite article or an ordinary adjective and is then uninflected; as, *solch eine Frechheit, such an impertinence.*

Examples:

Dieses Buch ist zu teuer, geben Sie mir solches, This book is too expensive, give me such a one.

Wir achten nur solche, die ehrbar sind, We honor only such as are honorable.

Solche Nachlässigkeit muß bestraft werden, Such carelessness must be punished.

Solche Kinder lernen nichts, Such children do not learn anything.

Ein solcher Mann, eine solche Frau, ein solches Kind, Such a man, such a woman, such a child.

Solch ein fleißiger Schüler, Such a diligent scholar.

Solch große Äpfel, Such big apples.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

24. An **interrogative pronoun** is a pronoun that is used in asking questions. *Interrogative* means as much as *inquiring, asking*. Thus, in the sentence, *Wer kommt dort? who comes there?* *wer* is inquiring about the person that is approaching.

The interrogatives are:

<i>wer, who?</i>	<i>welcher, welche, welches, which? what?</i>
<i>was, what?</i>	<i>was für ein, what kind of a?</i>

25. Functions of the Interrogatives.—The interrogatives *wer* and *was* are used as pronouns only; *wer* is used in speaking of persons, for both genders and numbers; and *was* in speaking of inanimate objects.

Welcher, welche, welches are used both as adjectives and as pronouns. When used as adjectives, they have the meaning

what or *which*; as pronouns proper they mean only *which*.
Welcher, welche, welches refer to persons as well as to things.

The phrase **was für ein** is used only as interrogative adjective.

INFLECTION OF THE INTERROGATIVES

26. Declension of *wer* and *was*. — **Wer, who,** and **was, what,** have no plural; the cases of the singular are:

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>		<i>Neuter</i>	
Nominative	wer,	<i>who</i>	was,	<i>what</i>
Genitive	wessen,	<i>of whom</i>	wessen,	<i>of what</i>
Dative	wem,	<i>to whom</i>	dative is wanting	
Accusative	wen,	<i>whom</i>	was,	<i>what</i>

The original form of the genitive of **was** is **wes**, which sometimes occurs in poetical language, as **Wes ist das Bild und die Überschrift, whose picture and superscription is this?** and in the compound adverbs **weshalb, weswegen, why, what for, on what account**, which correspond to the demonstratives **deshalb, deswegen, on that account** (see Art. 18).

Examples:

Wer ist das? *Who is that?*

Wer ist stärker, Paul oder Hans? *Who is stronger, Paul or Hans?*

Wem haben Sie gesehen? *Whom did you see?*

Was ist los? *What is the matter?*

Wessen Bücher sind das? *Whose books are these?*

Er fragte mich, **wer** ich sei, *He asked me, who I am.*

27. Instead of the wanting dative and the accusative of **was** with a preposition, the adverb **wo**, before a vowel **vor**, is used with a preposition. Such compounds, representing the dative of **was** with a preposition, are:

wobei,	<i>at what, whereat</i>
wonach,	<i>for what, after what</i>
woran,	<i>on what, whereon, whereat</i>
woraus,	<i>out of what</i>
worin,	<i>in what, wherein</i>
wobon,	<i>of what, from what, about what</i>
womit,	<i>with what, wherewith</i>
wozu,	<i>to what, for what purpose</i>

Compounds, representing the accusative of *was* with a preposition, are:

wofür, *for what* *worauf*, *whereon, whereupon, upon what*
woran, *whereon, whereat* *worüber*, *of what, whereat, about what*

Examples:

Woran denken Sie? *What are you thinking about?*

Worüber sprechen Sie? *What are you talking about?*

Worauf wollen Sie schreiben? *On what do you want to write?*

28. *Was* has sometimes the meaning of *why?* or *how?* Thus, in the sentence: *Du mußt dich damit zufrieden geben, daß er dein Buch verloren hat; was hast du es ihm gegeben?* *why did you give it to him.*

29. Declension of *welcher, welche, welches*. — The words *welcher, welche, welches*, *what, which*, both as pronouns proper and as pronominal adjectives, have the strong endings and are declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	<i>welcher</i>	<i>welche</i>	<i>welches</i>		<i>welche</i>	
Genitive	<i>welches</i>	<i>welcher</i>	<i>welches</i>		<i>welcher</i>	
Dative	<i>welchem</i>	<i>welcher</i>	<i>welchem</i>		<i>welchen</i>	
Accusative	<i>welchen</i>	<i>welche</i>	<i>welches</i>		<i>welche</i>	

Examples:

Welcher von diesen Männern ist Ihr Vater? *Which of these men is your father?*

Welches von diesen Büchern wollen Sie lesen? *Which of these books do you want to read?*

In **welchen** von diesen Häusern wohnen Sie? *In which of these houses do you live?*

Welcher Weg ist der rechte? *Which way is the right one?*

Mit **welchem** Zuge sind Sie gekommen? *With what train did you come?*

Welchen Stod wollen Sie kaufen? *Which cane do you want to buy?*

Welches Land ist das schönste? *Which country is the most beautiful?*

The stem *welch* is, like *solch*, often used in exclamations before the indefinite article or an adjective, it is then uninflected (see Art. 23). Thus,

Welch ein Mann! *What a man!*

Welch eine Geduld! *What a patience!*

Welch großes Talent! *What a great talent!*

Welch herrliche Früchte! *What magnificent fruits!*

30. Declension of *was für ein*.—The phrase *was für ein*, *what sort or kind of*, is used as an interrogative adjective; *was* in this phrase is indeclinable, *für* has not the force of a preposition, but *ein* is inflected like the indefinite article. In the plural the shorter *was für* is used. Thus,

Nominative	<i>was für ein</i>	Dative	<i>was für einem</i>
Genitive	<i>was für eines</i>	Accusative	<i>was für einen</i>

Examples:

Was für eine Blume ist das? *What kind of a flower is that?*

Was für einen Hut willst du? *What kind of a hat do you want?*

Was für ein Haus haben Sie gekauft? *What kind of a house did you buy?*

31. *Was für* often occurs without *ein* even in the singular. Thus,

Was für Wetter haben wir heute? *What kind of weather do we have today?*

Was für Farben gefallen Ihnen am besten? *What kind of colors do you like the best?*

Was für Wein, **was für** Brot? *What kind of wine, what kind of bread?*

32. *Was* and *für* (*ein*) are often separated from each other. Thus,

Was ist das **für** ein Stern? *What kind of star is that?*

Was ist das **für** eine Blume? *What kind of flower is that?*

Was sind das **für** Leute? *What kind of people are those?*

RELATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

33. The relative pronoun is a pronoun that stands for some preceding word or phrase and performs the office of a conjunction in connecting sentences. Thus, it has a double function in sentences; it stands for a noun or an equivalent of a noun, and connects clauses. The word or phrase to

which a relative pronoun refers is called the **antecedent**. Thus, in the sentence, *Der Mann, welcher gestern starb, war ein Arzt*, *The man who died yesterday was a physician*, *welcher, who*, stands for the preceding *der Mann* and it connects the two sentences: *der Mann war ein Arzt* and *der Mann starb gestern*.

The relatives are:

der, die, daß, who, which, that *wer, he who, whoever*
welcher, welche, welches, who, which, that *was, what, whatever, that which*

NOTE.—The use of *der, die, daß* as demonstrative pronouns and of *welcher, -e, -es* and *wer, was* as interrogatives has already been shown.

As relatives, *wer* and *was* have the function of pronouns only, while *welcher, welche, welches* are used as pronouns proper and as pronominal adjectives.

INFLECTION OF THE RELATIVE

34. Declension of *der, die, daß*.—The relatives *der, die, daß* may refer to a person or to a thing; they are declined like the demonstrative pronoun *der*, except that in the genitive plural they have only *deren*, never *derer*. Thus,

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	<i>der</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>daß</i>		<i>die</i>	
Genitive	<i>dessen</i>	<i>deren</i>	<i>dessen</i>		<i>deren</i>	
Dative	<i>dem</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>dem</i>		<i>denen</i>	
Accusative	<i>den</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>daß</i>		<i>die</i>	

35. Declension of *welcher, welche, welches*.—The relative *welcher, -e, -es*, both as a pronoun and as a pronominal adjective, is declined like the interrogative *welcher*, but lacks the genitive case, both singular and plural. In the genitive singular only the forms *dessen, deren, dessen* and in the genitive plural the form *deren* are used. Thus,

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	<i>welcher</i>	<i>welche</i>	<i>welches</i>		<i>welche</i>	
Genitive	<i>dessen</i>	<i>deren</i>	<i>dessen</i>		<i>deren</i>	
Dative	<i>welchem</i>	<i>welcher</i>	<i>welchem</i>		<i>welchen</i>	
Accusative	<i>welchen</i>	<i>welche</i>	<i>welches</i>		<i>welche</i>	

36. Declension of *wer*, *was*.—The relatives *wer* and *was*, used as pronouns only, are declined like the interrogatives *wer*, *was*. Thus,

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	<i>wer</i>	<i>was</i>
Genitive	<i>wessen</i>	<i>wessen</i>
Dative	<i>wem</i>	(dative is wanting)
Accusative	<i>wen</i>	<i>was</i>

DIFFERENT USES OF THE RELATIVES

37. Special Use of *der*, *die*, *das*.—If the antecedent of a relative pronoun is a personal pronoun of the first or second person, *der*, *die*, *das* must be used as relatives. The personal pronoun is then often repeated after the relative, the verb agreeing in person and number with the personal. Thus,

Ich, der nicht zugegen war, soll Zeugniß ablegen! I, who have not been present, shall testify!

Wir, die wir nichts wissen, wollen die Natur tadeln! We, who do not know anything, will blame nature!

In all other cases *der* and *welcher* are used indifferently; the choice between them is a matter of style and euphony only. In the genitive case both singular and plural, however, the forms of *der*, *die*, *das* are used only. Thus,

Der Mann, dessen Tapferkeit wir bewundern, The man whose bravery we admire.

Die Frau, deren Töchter gestorben sind, The woman whose daughters died.

Die Sterne, deren Glanz uns erfreut, The stars, the splendor of which delights us.

Die Häuser, deren Besitzer wir kennen, The houses, the proprietor of which we know.

38. Uses of *wer* and *was*.—1. *Wer*, *who*, and *was*, *what*, used as relatives present the antecedent and the relative combined, that is, they are compound relatives, like in English (*he*) *who*, *whoever*, *what* (*that which*). Thus,

Wer nicht hören will, muß fühlen. *He who does not wish to obey, must suffer.*

Wer das nicht weiß, ist ein Narr. *He who does not know this, is a fool.*

Was man wünscht, das glaubt man gern. *Whatever we wish, we are willing to believe.*

2. **Was** regularly occurs, instead of the relatives **das** and **welches**, after a neuter pronoun, either personal, demonstrative, or indefinite, such as **es**, **das**, **alles**, **etwas**, **nichts**, etc., and after neuter adjectives used as nouns. Thus,

Wir fürchten das, was schädlich ist. *We are afraid of that which is noxious.*

alles, was wir haben, *all we have*

Das ist etwas, was mir nicht gefällt. *That is something I don't like.*

3. **Was** is also commonly used to refer to a preceding clause. Thus,

Er studierte zwei Jahre in Deutschland, **was** ihm sehr genützt hat. *He has studied in Germany for two years, and this has done him much good.*

4. **Wer** and **was** are sometimes used as indefinite relatives. But these words, as well as **welcher** and the relative conjunctions **wenn**, **wo**, **wie**, **wann**, are usually joined with **auch**, **nur**, **immer**, to add to them the indefinite meaning of *ever*. Thus,

Die großartige Natur muß auf jeden Eindruck machen, **wer immer er auch** sei. *The magnificent nature must make impression on everybody, be he who he may.*

Ich werde treu zu dir halten, **was auch immer** sich ereignen mag. *I shall loyally take your part, whatever may happen.*

Tu kannst mich stets rufen, **wenn immer es** dir paßt. *You may always call me, whenever it suits you.*

Man hat die Luftbremse jetzt überall eingeführt, **wo es nur** möglich war. *The air brake is now introduced at all places, wherever it has been possible to do so.*

Wie immer das Schicksal es wende, **ich** halte aus. *Howsoever fortune may turn it, I shall persevere.*

39. Use of Adverbs Instead of Relatives With Preposition.—1. In place of the dative and accusative of the relatives **der**, **welcher**, and **was** in connection with

a preposition, the compounds of **won**, before a vowel **wor**, with a preposition are used. Such compounds are:

wovon, of which, of what **wodurch**, through which, through what
womit, with which, with what **worin**, in which, in what

Compare Art. 27.

2. These compounds are regularly used, when the relative refers to objects without life, to the indefinite pronouns, such as **nichts**, **alles**, **manches**, or to a clause. Thus,

Das ist die Fabrik, worin ich arbeite, *This is the factory in which I work.*

Das ist die Brücke, worüber wir gehen müssen, *This is the bridge over which we must go.*

Das Schiff, worauf wir fuhren, ist gescheitert, *The ship, in which we have been, has been shipwrecked.*

3. When the relative refers to collective nouns, such as **Eschar**, *troop*; **Menge**, *multitude*; **Heer**, *army*; **Verein**, *society, club*; the substitution of the compounds for the relatives with prepositions is permissible. Thus,

Das ist das Heer, worauf wir stolz sein können, *That is the army which we can be proud of.*

der Verein, wozu ich gehöre, *the society to which I belong*

4. But when the relative refers to a person, the compounds must not be used. Thus,

Das ist der Mann, mit dem (not **womit**) **ich gekommen bin**, *This is the man with whom I have come.*

5. Instead of the relatives **der** and **welcher** with a preposition, German sometimes uses a simple adverb. Thus,

das Land, wo ich lebe, *the country where I live*

die Zeit, wann ich esse, *the time when I eat*

40. Differences in the English and German Use of the Relative.—The relative pronoun is often omitted in English, but must always be expressed in German. Thus,

All I have, Alles, was ich habe.

The sermon we heard yesterday, Die Predigt, welche wir gestern hörten.

The book we spoke about, Das Buch, worüber wir sprachen.

In some English relative constructions and in all interrogative constructions, the preposition connected with the relative or interrogative pronoun is thrown to the end of the clause. In German, however, this cannot be done. Thus,

The book we spoke about, Das Buch, worüber wir sprachen.

The soldier we were speaking of, Der Soldat, von dem wir sprachen.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

41. The indefinite pronouns stand, as their name indicate, for nouns, but represent persons and things in a general way, without reference to particular individuals. Some of them have something of the demonstrative quality, but not enough of it to put them among the demonstratives. It is their indefiniteness in denoting the persons or things that is most noticeable. Some of the indefinites are used only as pronouns while others take the place of pronouns as well as of pronominal adjectives.

The indefinites, used only as pronouns proper, are:

jedermann, <i>everybody, every one</i>	man, <i>one, they, etc.</i>
jemand, <i>some one, somebody, anybody</i>	etwas, <i>something, anything</i>
niemand, <i>no one, nobody, not any one</i>	nichts, <i>nothing</i>

INFLECTION OF THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN

42. Declension of jedermann. — Jedermann, *everybody*, a compound of jeder, *every*, and Mann, *man*, is declined as follows:

Nominative	jedermann	Dative	jedermann
Genitive	jedermanns	Accusative	jedermann

43. Declension of jemand and niemand. — Jemand, *somebody*, and niemand, *nobody*, form their genitives by adding *es* or *s*, their dative by adding *em* or *en* or no ending, their accusative by adding *en* or no ending. They have no plural. Thus,

Nominative	jemand	niemand
Genitive	jemand(e)s	niemand(e)s
Dative	jemand(em) or (en)	niemand(em) or (en)
Accusative	jemand(en)	niemand(en)

Examples:

Jedermann weiß es, *Everybody knows it.*

Die Gabe des Gesanges ward nicht jedermann zuteil, *The gift of song was not imparted to everybody.*

Siehst du niemand(en) auf der Bank? *Do you see nobody on the bench?*

Der Blinde sieht niemand(en), *The blind (man) sees no one.*

Hast du jemand kommen hören? *Did you hear anybody come?*

Ich habe niemand kommen hören, *I didn't hear anybody come.*

44. Niemand is very often the equivalent of *not anyone* or *not anybody*. Thus,

Didn't you see anybody? Hast du niemand gesehen?

I have not seen anybody, Ich habe niemand(en) gesehen.

The translation of *not anyone, anybody* by *nicht jemand* is, in this case, where the question expects a negative answer, not permissible. In questions, however, expecting an affirmative answer, *nicht jemand, not somebody*, often occurs. Thus,

Hat nicht jemand geklopft, *Did not somebody knock?*

45. The indefinite man (from Mann) is used as general personal subject to indicate persons in the most general manner. It is indeclinable and can be variously translated, as by *one, people, they, we*, often by a passive construction, etc. Thus,

Man muß sich selbst überwinden, um glücklich zu sein, *One must conquer oneself, in order to be happy.*

Man muß stillschweigen, wenn ältere Leute sprechen, *One must keep silence when older people talk.*

Man sagt, der Kaiser sei hier, *People say that the emperor is here.*

Man glaubt, er werde sterben, *They believe that he will die.*

Man kann nicht immer handeln, wie man will, *We cannot always act as we wish.*

Man sagt von ihm, daß er ein großer General sei, *He is said to be a great general.*

Man is used only as nominative singular. When, therefore, any other case would be called for, the corresponding oblique case of *ein* is employed. Thus,

Er will einen nie hören, *He will never listen to one.*

46. The Indefinite Pronouns *etwas* and *nichts*.
Etwas, *something*, and *nichts*, *nothing*, are indeclinable.

Ich habe etwas gehört, I have heard something.

They often occur with a neuter adjective used as a noun.
 Thus,

Etwas Gutes, Something good.

Er erzählte mir etwas Neues, He told me something new.

Nichts Schlechtes, Nothing bad.

Er gab mir etwas Kostbares, He gave me something valuable.

Etwas also occurs with a noun in apposition. Thus,

Etwas Wasser, Some water.

Etwas Suppe, Some soup.

Etwas Fleisch, Some meat.

Instead of *etwas* the shorter form *was* is often used. Thus,

Er hat was Gutes für mich, He has something good for me.

Er weiß was Neues, He knows something new.

47. The English *not anything* will be usually expressed simply by *nichts* (see Art. 44). Thus,

Didn't you get anything?—I didn't get anything, Haben Sie nichts bekommen?—Ich habe nichts bekommen.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS USED ALSO AS ADJECTIVES

48. The indefinite pronouns used also as adjectives are:

ein, <i>one</i>	manch—, <i>many a</i>	ander—, <i>other, the rest,</i>
kein, <i>none, no one, not</i>	jeder, jede, jedes, }	else
a, an, any	jedlicher, e, es, }	each, viel, <i>much</i> , (pl.) <i>many</i>
all, all, every	jedweder, e, es, }	every wenig, <i>little</i> , (pl.) <i>few</i>
einige, }	mehrere, <i>several</i>	mehr, <i>more</i>
etliche, }	beide, <i>both, two</i>	weniger, <i>less, fewer</i>

49. Declension of *einer* and *keiner*.—The indefinite pronouns *einer*, *one*, and *keiner*, *none*, are the pronominal forms of *ein* and *kein*. They are declined with strong endings like the singular of *meiner*. Thus,

		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative		einer	eine	eines
Genitive		eines	einer	eines
Dative		einem	einer	einem
Accusative		einen	eine	eines

		SINGULAR		PLURAL
Nominative	keiner	keine	keines	keine
Genitive	keines	keiner	keines	keiner
Dative	keinem	keiner	keinem	keinen
Accusative	keinen	keine	keines	keine

Examples:

Ihr alle waret zugegen; **einer** muß es gethan haben, *You all were present, one must have done it.*

Alle deine Freunde haben dich verlassen, nur **einer** blieb dir treu, *All your friends have deserted you, only one was faithful.*

Keiner hat es gesehen, *No one has seen it.*

Ich will **keines** von diesen, *I don't want any of these.*

Ich kenne **keinen** von Ihnen, *I don't know any one of you.*

50. Ein —, *one*, may be preceded by the definite article or some other pronominal word with strong ending and may be used as pronoun or as pronominal adjective. In this case it is declined with weak endings, like *der, die, das* *meine* (see Art. 11). Thus,

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	der eine	die eine	daß eine	die einen		
Genitive	des einen	der einen	des einen	der einen		
Dative	dem einen	der einen	dem einen	den einen		
Accusative	den einen	die eine	daß eine	die einen		

Examples:

Der **eine** ist hier, der andere dort, *One is here, the other there.*

Die Arbeit des **einen** ist besser als die des anderen, *The work of one is better than that of the other.*

Daß **eine** von den Büchern, daß ich gelesen habe, *The one of the books I have read.*

Die Meinung der **einen** war, *The opinion of some was.*

Die **einen** blieben hier, die anderen gingen fort, *Some stayed here, others went away.*

Der **eine** Bruder ist zu Hause, der andere in Amerika, *One brother is at home, the other in America.*

Die **eine** Seite ist weiß, die andere schwarz, *One side is white, the other black.*

51. The **indefinite fein**, used as pronominal adjective, has the defective endings. Thus,

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	fein	feine	fein	feine	feine	feine
Genitive	feines	feiner	feines	feiner	feiner	feiner
Dative	feinem	feiner	feinem	feinen	feinen	feinen
Accusative	feinen	feine	fein	feine	feine	feine

Examples:

Kein Mensch ist zu sehen, *Not a man can be seen.*

Er ist **keines** Menschen Freund, *He is nobody's friend.*

Man hörte **keinen** Ton, *One didn't hear a sound.*

Ich habe **kein** Geld, *I have no money.*

52. In Arts. 44 and 47 it was shown that *not anyone* or *not anybody* must be translated by *niemand*, and *not anything* by *nichts* (not by *nicht etwas*). In like manner *not a*, *not anyone*, must often be given in German by **kein** (not *nicht ein*). Thus,

I have not a penny, Ich habe keinen Pfennig.

53. Like *nicht jemand* and *nicht etwas*, *nicht ein* occurs chiefly in questions expecting an affirmative answer and, when it is used emphatically, meaning *not one*, *not somebody*. Thus,

Hat **nicht einer** von euch Mitleid mit mir? *Has not one of you pity for me?*

Nicht einer wußte es, *Not one knew it.*

54. The **indefinite all**, as pronoun and as adjective, has the strong endings. Thus,

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	aller	alle	alles	alle	alle	alle
Genitive	alles	aller	alles	aller	aller	aller
Dative	allem	aller	allem	allen	allen	allen
Accusative	allen	alle	alles	alle	alle	alle

55. Different Uses of all.—1. *Aller, alle, alles, all*, applied in the singular, denotes quantity. Thus,

aller Reichtum, all wealth

alle Macht, all power

alles Recht, all right

Dieses alles will ich dir geben, I will give you all this.

Aller Anfang ist schwer, All beginnings are hard.

2. If *all* is placed before a pronominal word or before the definite article, followed by a noun, it often does not take an ending. Thus,

all dies Geld, all this money

all sein Fleiß, all his diligence

all seine Arbeit, all his work

all der Glanz, all the splendor

3. In the neuter of the singular, *alles* often denotes an indefinite number or amount and sometimes means *everybody*. Thus,

Alles was singen konnte, sang, All that could sing, did so.

Sie scheinen alles zu wissen, You seem to know everything.

Alles schweigt, Everybody is silent.

4. In the plural, *alle* denotes number and is fully declined.

Alle Menschen sind sterblich, All men are mortal.

Ich habe allen meinen Freunden Lebewohl gesagt, I have bid farewell to all my friends.

an allen Orten, at all places

zu allen Zeiten, at all times

5. In the plural, *alle* is seldom followed by the article; thus, *all the children* must be translated either by *alle Kinder* or *die Kinder*; *alle*; *all the Americans*, *alle Amerikaner*.

6. *Alle*—, has often the meaning of *every*, especially in expressions denoting periodic time intervals. Thus,

Nehmen Sie alle zwei Stunden einen Theelöffel voll, Take a teaspoonful every two hours.

alle Stunde, every hour

alle Jahre, every year

7. **Al** is never used in the sense of *whole*, which must be given in German by **ganz**. Thus,

What are you doing all day? Was treibt ihr den ganzen Tag?

8. Finally, the phrases *all of us*, *all of you*, *all of them* must be rendered by **wir alle**, **ihr alle**, **sie alle**.

56. The indefinites **einiger**, **-e**, **-es**, and **etlicher**, **-e**, **-es**, *some*, *a few*, as pronouns and as adjectives have the strong endings. They occur mostly in the plural. Thus,

Ich habe nur einige Städte der Schweiz gesehen, I have seen only a few cities of Switzerland.

Dieser Berg liegt etliche Meilen von hier, This mountain is situated some miles from here.

Er hat mir einiges mitgeteilt, das ich nicht glaube, He has communicated to me some things that I do not believe.

57. The indefinite **mancher**, *many (a)*, is employed as pronoun proper and pronominal adjective, and has in both cases the strong endings. Thus,

Mancher unter euch besitzt nicht genug Selbstbeherrschung, Many a one of you has not enough self-control.

Dort habe ich manche von Ihnen getroffen, There I have met many of you.

Manch is also used in the singular without endings when followed by the indefinite article; as, **manch ein Knabe**, *many a boy*; **manch eine Frau**, *many a woman*; **manch ein Dorf**, *many a village*. Also before an adjective, as, **manch schönes Gewand**, *many a beautiful robe*.

58. The indefinites **jeder**, **jeglicher**, **jedweder**, *each*, *every*, occur only in the singular and take as pronouns and as adjectives the strong endings. Thus,

Jeder weiß es, Every one knows it.

Er gab jedem Kinde einen Pfennig, He gave a penny to every child.

Jeder is often used with the indefinite article as pronoun. Thus,

Ein jeder, Every one.

Ein jedes kennt ihn, Everybody knows him.

59. The indefinite *mehrere*, *several*, occurring only in the plural, has, as pronoun and as adjective, the strong endings. Thus,

Ich habe *mehrere* Jahre in Berlin gelebt, *I have lived several years in Berlin.*

Er hat es *mehreren* erzählt. *He told it to several persons.*

60. The indefinite *ander* —, *other, the rest, else*, employed as pronoun and as adjective, takes the weak endings, when preceded by the definite article or a pronominal word with strong endings. Thus,

Der *andere*, *the other*

Die *anderen*, *the others, the rest*

Dieser *andere*, jener *andere*, *this other one, that other one*

But in all other cases, *ander* — takes the strong endings; as ein *anderer*, *andere* Zeiten. Thus,

Die einen lesen, die *anderen* schreiben, but einige lesen, *andere* schreiben, *Some are reading, others writing.*

Wir besuchen euch ein *anderes* Mal, *We will visit you another time;* but das *andere* Mal war er nicht zu Hause, *The other time he was not at home.*

Andere Zeiten, *andere* Sitten, *Other times, other customs.*

61. The indefinite *beide*, *both, two*, as pronoun and as adjective, is declined like *ander* —, that is to say, it takes the weak endings when preceded by a pronominal word with strong endings or the definite article; otherwise the strong endings. Thus,

Meine *beiden* Schwestern sind im Garten, *My two sisters are in the garden.*

Beide Kinder sind hier, *Both children are here.*

Ich habe *beide* gesehen, *I have seen both.*

Die Lage *beider* Städte ist sehr gesund, *The situation of both cities is very healthy.*

Preceded by a pronominal word *beide* often means *two*. Thus,

Wir *beide* sind Brüder, *We two are brothers.*

Diese *beiden* Männer sind meine Freunde, *These two men are my friends.*

Beid— is also used in some cases of the singular, especially in the neuter. Thus,

Beides ist mir neu, *Both things are new to me.*

Ich habe **beides** gesehen, *I have seen both things.*

62. The indefinite **viel**, *much*, (pl.) *many*, when preceded by the definite article or a pronominal word with strong endings, takes the weak endings otherwise it takes the strong endings. Thus,

Der **viele** Wein, *The great quantity of wine.*

Er hat seine **vielen** Freunde verlassen, *He has left his numerous friends.*

Sein **vieles** Reden schadet ihm, *His excessive talking does him much harm.*

Er hat sehr **vielen** Freunde und ich habe auch **vielen**, *He has a great many friends and I have also a great many.*

Viel is generally not declined in the singular, where it is used collectively and is not preceded by an article or a pronoun. Thus,

Er hat **viel** Geld, *He has much money.*

Viel Geduld, *much patience*

Viel Obst, *much fruit*

Sometimes, however, **vielen** is also found. Thus,

Ich habe **vielen** gehört, doch glaube ich es nicht. *I have heard many things, yet I do not believe them.*

63. The indefinite **wenig**, *little*, (pl.) *few*, follows the same rules of inflection as **viel** (see Art. 62). Thus,

Das **wenige** Geld, das ich habe, *The little money I have.*

Die **wenigen** Häuser, welche sich in dieser Gegend befinden, *The few houses that are in this region.*

Ich habe meine **wenigen** freien Stunden bei ihm zugebracht, *I have spent my few free hours with him.*

But,

Wenige Meilen von hier, *A few miles from here.*

Ich kann nur **wenige** Minuten hier bleiben, *I can stay here only a few minutes.*

Wenig Freiheit, *Little liberty.*

Ich habe nur **weniges** gesehen, *I have seen only a few things.*

64. The indefinites **mehr** and **weniger**, used as pronouns and as adjectives are not inflected. Thus,

Er denkt **mehr** und spricht **weniger**, *He thinks more and speaks less.*

Wir haben **mehr** Gutes gethan als ihr, *We have done more good than you.*

Er handelt mit **mehr** Überlegung, *He acts with more consideration.*

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 4)

Das Eigenschaftswort.

The Adjective

1. Function of the Adjective.—The adjective is a word used to modify the meaning of a noun or a pronoun. The term *adjective* comes from the Latin word *adjectivus* (added to) and means that this element is joined directly to a noun or pronoun, the effect in each case being to restrict or limit to a particular number or kind the objects named by the noun. This is to modify or measure the noun in the extent of its application. Thus, if we join to the noun *Bäume*, *trees*, the modifier *groß*, *large*, and say *große Bäume*, *large trees*, the number of trees is restricted by excluding all trees except those that are tall. Or, if we say *braune Pferde*, *brown horses*, we limit the number of horses, by excluding all that are not brown.

In these and many other ways the adjective enables us to separate the objects named by the noun from all others that we wish to consider. On the other hand, the adjective is a descriptive word, pointing out some quality or condition, or action or relation, or the like, as belonging to the object signified by the noun it qualifies. Thus, in the sentence, *der Baum ist groß*, *the tree is tall*, *groß*, *tall* points out some quality belonging to the particular object signified by the noun *Baum*, *tree*.

2. Different Uses of the Adjective.—Adjectives are used in five different ways: predicatively, attributively, appositively, substantively, and adverbially.

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

1. *Predicatively*.—Many verbs are not complete as predicates; such verbs are rarely used alone, an adjective generally being added to them to complete the statement. Thus, in the sentence, *die Erde ist rund*, *the earth is round*, the adjective *rund*, *round*, is used in connection with the auxiliary verb *ist*, *is*, to make the predication. An adjective thus used is called a **predicate adjective**, or is said to stand in the predicate, or to be used **predicatively**.

2. *Attributively*.—Much oftener, however, an adjective qualifies a noun more directly, being simply added to the noun to describe, limit, or restrict its meaning. The quality or state or character is not directly asserted, but is merely mentioned as belonging to that which the noun expresses. Thus in the sentence: *dieser alte Mann hat weiße Haare*, *this old man has white hairs*, the age of the man is made a part of the description of the person about whom the assertion is made and the adjective *weiß*, *white*, is used to describe the object *hair*. An adjective thus used to describe a noun without being a part of the assertion or predication is called an **attribute** or an **attributive adjective**, or is said to be used **attributively** (*attribute* meaning *ascribed* or *attached*). An attributive adjective may qualify a noun in any situation whatever and is generally put before it.

3. *Appositively*.—Sometimes an adjective is joined to a noun in a looser and more indirect way. It then seems less closely connected with the noun it describes, less dependent on it, than is the attributive adjective. Thus, in *der Himmel, tief und klar*, *the heavens, deep and clear*, *tief* and *klar*, *deep* and *clear*, seem to be independent words added to *der Himmel*, for further description. An adjective thus used is called an **appositive adjective** or is said to be used **appositively**. This word means *in position by the side of*, or *placed near*.

4. *Substantively*.—An adjective is sometimes used as a **substantive**, that is, as a noun, to denote a person or other object possessing the quality expressed by the adjective. In German such an adjective is capitalized like a noun.

Thus, in the sentence, *daß Schöne ergötzt den Guten*, *the beautiful delights the good (man)*, the adjectives *schön* and *gut* are used as nouns, denoting an object and a person, respectively.

5. *Adverbially*.—Like an adverb, an adjective may be used to modify the meaning of a verb. Thus, in the sentences, *Wir gehen schnell*, *we walk fast*, *Er sang gut*, *he sang well*, the adjectives *schnell*, *fast*, and *gut*, *well*, modify the meaning of the verbs with which they are joined and are, therefore, practically adverbs or are adjectives used **adverbially**.

INFLECTION OF ADJECTIVES

3. **Inflection of Adjectives in General**.—German adjectives have two kinds of inflections; namely:

(1) To indicate gender, number, and case. This inflection is termed the *declension of adjectives*; it corresponds to the declension of nouns.

(2) To indicate differences of degree in quality. This inflection is called the *comparison of adjectives*.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES

4. Whether or not an adjective is to be declined at all, depends wholly on the manner in which it is used.

1. *Adjectives Used Predicatively*.—When an adjective is used predicatively (that is, when it performs a direct or primary part in the predication), it is never declined. Be the noun, therefore, masculine, feminine, or neuter, be it singular or plural, the form of the adjective remains unchanged when thus used. For example:

Der Mann ist gut, The man is good.

Die Frau ist gut, The woman is good.

Das Kind ist gut, The child is good.

Die Männer sind gut, The men are good.

Die Frauen sind gut, The women are good.

Die Kinder sind gut, The children are good.

Some German adjectives are never otherwise used than predicatively; they are, therefore, indeclinable. Some of these adjectives are:

abhold, <i>averse</i>	gewärtig, <i>expecting</i>
angst, <i>anxious</i>	gram, <i>grudge bearing</i>
anheischig, <i>bound by promise</i>	habhaft, <i>possessing</i>
ansichtig, <i>in sight of</i>	handgemein, <i>hand to hand</i>
bereit, <i>ready</i>	irre, <i>wrong, erring</i>
brach, <i>fallow</i>	kund, <i>known</i>
feind, <i>hostile</i>	leid, <i>distressing, sorrowful</i>
freund, <i>friendly</i>	nütz, <i>useful</i>
gehaßt, <i>hated</i>	quer, <i>across</i>
gar, <i>done, cooked enough</i>	quitt, <i>quits, free</i>
gang und gebe, <i>current, usual</i>	schuld, <i>guilty</i>
eingedenk, <i>mindful</i>	teilhaft, <i>participating in</i>
getroßt, <i>confident</i>	unpäßlich, <i>ill</i>
gewahr, <i>aware</i>	verlöstig, <i>forfeiting</i>

2. *Adjectives Used Appositively.*—When used in apposition with a noun or pronoun, adjectives are not declined. Thus,

der Himmel, **na**h und **fer**n, *the heavens, near and far*
 das Wasser, **tief** und **klar**, *the water, deep and clear*
 die Sterne, **hell** und **glitzernd**, *the stars, bright and glittering*

3. *Adjectives Used Adverbially.*—Adjectives used adverbially, that is, to modify the meaning of a verb, also remain unchanged. Thus,

Er singt **gut**, *He sings well.*
 Sie läuft **schnell**, *She walks fast.*
 Wir sprechen **deutlich**, *We speak distinctly.*

4. *Adjectives Used Attributively.*—Adjectives are most commonly used as attributes to nouns. They are, then, joined directly to the modified words and stand before them. When so used, they are declined to indicate the gender, number, and case of the nouns with which they are joined.

Like many of the pronominal adjectives, every common adjective used attributively is subject to two kinds of declension—the *strong* and the *weak*. The combination of these two forms is called the *mixed declension*.

5. Strong Declension of Adjectives. — When the attributive adjective is not preceded by one of the articles or pronominal adjectives, the adjective takes the endings of the strong declension throughout. These endings, given in Part 3 under the declension of pronominal adjectives, are:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	—er	—e	—es		—e	
Genitive	—es	—er	—es		—er	
Dative	—em	—er	—em		—en	
Accusative	—en	—e	—es		—e	

The declension of adjectives is made by adding these endings to the root. Thus, decline in full the following adjectives: *gut, good; schlecht, bad; lang, long; kurz, short; schwarz, black; weiß, white; alt, old; jung, young.*

Examples:

großer Reichtum, great wealth

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	großer Reichtum	große Reichtümer
Genitive	großes Reichtums	großer Reichtümer
Dative	großem Reichtum	großen Reichtümern
Accusative	großen Reichtum	große Reichtümer

reife Frucht, ripe fruit

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	reife Frucht	reife Früchte
Genitive	reifer Frucht	reifer Früchte
Dative	reifer Frucht	reifen Früchten
Accusative	reife Frucht	reife Früchte

weißes Papier, white paper

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	weißes Papier	weiße Papiere
Genitive	weißes Papiers	weißer Papiere
Dative	weißem Papier	weißen Papieren
Accusative	weißes Papier	weiße Papiere

6. In the genitive singular of the masculine and neuter, the adjective now usually takes the weak ending *en* instead

of the strong ending *eß*, when joined to a noun ending in *ß* or *eß*. It takes this ending simply for euphonic reasons. Thus,

eine Flasche süßen Weines, *a bottle of sweet wine*
 ein Pfund guten Kaffees, *a pound of good coffee*

7. Weak Declension of Adjectives.—When the attributive adjective is preceded by the definite article or a pronominal adjective with strong endings throughout, as *der, dieser, jener, jeder, welcher*, the adjective loses its strong endings and takes the endings of the weak declension instead. These endings, already studied under the declension of pronominal adjectives, are:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	—e	—e	—e	—en		
Genitive	—en	—en	—en	—en		
Dative	—en	—en	—en	—en		
Accusative	—en	—e	—e	—en		

8. The endings of the weak declension are dependent on the endings of the strong declension; that is, an adjective takes the weak endings only when preceded by a pronominal word with strong endings. It is therefore necessary to study the combination of weak and strong endings, since the weak endings have no independent value. These combinations are:

	SINGULAR						PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>		<i>Neuter</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	—er	—e	—e	—e	—eß	—e	—e	—en	
Genitive	—eß	—en	—er	—en	—eß	—en	—er	—en	
Dative	—em	—en	—er	—en	—em	—en	—en	—en	
Accusative	—en	—en	—e	—e	—eß	—e	—e	—en	

Decline by applying the rules given above: *der große, die kleine, das neue, dieser schöne, jede alte, jenes neue.*

Examples:

der gute Wein, the good wine

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	der gute Wein	die guten Weine
Genitive	des guten Weines	der guten Weine
Dative	dem guten Weine	den guten Weinen
Accusative	den guten Wein	die guten Weine

diese neue Bank, this new bench

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	diese neue Bank	diese neuen Bänke
Genitive	dieser neuen Bank	dieser neuen Bänke
Dative	dieser neuen Bank	diesen neuen Bänken
Accusative	diese neue Bank	diese neuen Bänke

jenes alte Buch, that old book

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	jenes alte Buch	jene alten Bücher
Genitive	jenes alten Buches	jener alten Bücher
Dative	jenem alten Buche	jenen alten Büchern
Accusative	jenes alte Buch	jene alten Bücher

Decline in the same way: *der tiefe Fluß, the deep river; die breite Straße, the broad street; das grüne Feld, the green field; dieser große Schmerz, this great pain; jede helle Farbe, every light color; jenes blaue Band, that blue ribbon.*

9. The pronominal adjectives *ander—, beide—, viel—, wenig—*, may also stand after the pronominal words *der, dieser, jeder, jener*, etc., and are then declined with weak endings like ordinary adjectives. Thus,

Der andere Bruder, the other brother
Diese andere Seite, this other side
Das andere Buch, the other book
Jedes andere Kind, every other child
Diese beiden Männer, these two men
Jene beiden Frauen, those two women
Das viele Geld, all that money
Die wenigen Male, the few times

After the pronominal adjectives *derjenige* and *derselbe*, the adjective takes the weak endings throughout, although the

terminations of *derjenig*—, and *derſelb*—, are of the weak declension. This peculiarity results from the fact that the first component parts of these words is the definite article, which is declined with the strong endings as shown in Part 3.

Thus,

Nominative *derjenige tapfere Krieger, that brave warrior*
 Genitive *deſſenigen tapferen Kriegerſ, of that brave warrior*

Etc.

Nominative *dieſelbe dunkle Farbe, the same dark color*
 Genitive *deſſelben dunklen Farbe, of the same dark color*

Etc.

Nominative *daſſelbe ſtarke Geſchlecht, the same strong race*
 Etc.

10. When two or more adjectives precede a noun, both adjectives have the strong endings if not preceded by the definite article or by a pronominal word with strong endings; but both take the weak endings, if preceded by one of these words. Thus,

guter, alter Wein, good old wine
friſche, warme Milch, fresh warm milk
klareſ, kalteſ Waſſer, clear cold water

but

der groſſe, ſchöne Park, the large, beautiful park
dieſe alte, verfallene Burg, this old, decayed castle
jeneſ hübfche, neue Gebäude, that pretty, new building

11. Mixed Declension of Adjectives.—It has been shown that an adjective when standing alone before its noun, is declined by adding the strong endings in order to indicate the gender, number, and case of the noun, which are imperfectly indicated by the forms of the noun itself. The terminations of the strong declension, which are more complete than the weak endings, seem necessary to point out these particulars more fully. Thus,

guter Sohn, good son
gute Tochter, good daughter
guteſ Licht, good light

When, however, the adjective is preceded by restrictive words (such as *der*, *dieſer*, *jeder*, *jener*, etc.) declined after the

strong declension, that show sufficiently by their endings, the gender, number, and case of the noun, the adjective no longer takes the more complete endings of the strong declension, but the less distinctive weak endings. Thus,

der gute Sohn, *the good son*
 die gute Tochter, *the good daughter*
 das gute Licht, *the good light*

But there are some restrictive pronominal words which, although declined according to the strong declension, have no significant termination in the nominative singular, masculine and neuter, nor in the accusative of the neuter. These words are the indefinite article *ein* and the possessive pronouns *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, *ihr*, *sein*, *unser*, *euer*, *ihr*, and *kein*. In Part 3 it was shown that these words have *defective endings*. When, therefore, the adjective is preceded by a word with a defective ending, it takes itself the distinctive forms of the strong declension where these words are without endings—in the nominative singular *er* for the masculine, *es* for the neuter, and *es* also in the accusative singular for the neuter. In all other cases the endings follow the weak declension. In this way a *mixed declension* is produced, partly strong and partly weak. The defective and mixed endings combined are therefore:

	SINGULAR						PLURAL		
	Masc.		Fem.		Neuter		Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nominative	—	—er	—e	—e	—	—es	—e	—en	
Genitive	—es	—en	—er	—en	—es	—en	—er	—en	
Dative	—em	—en	—er	—en	—em	—en	—en	—en	
Accusative	—en	—en	—e	—e	—	—es	—e	—en	

Examples:

ein schöner Garten, *a beautiful garden*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	ein schöner Garten	schöne Gärten
Genitive	eines schönen Gartens	schöner Gärten
Dative	einem schönen Garten	schönen Gärten
Accusative	einen schönen Garten	schöne Gärten

unsere gute Mutter, *our good mother*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	unsere gute Mutter	unsere guten Mütter
Genitive	unserer guten Mutter	unserer guten Mütter
Dative	unserer guten Mutter	unseren guten Müttern
Accusative	unsere gute Mutter	unsere guten Mütter

kein neues Kleid, *no new dress*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	kein neues Kleid	keine neuen Kleider
Genitive	keines neuen Kleides	keiner neuen Kleider
Dative	keinem neuen Kleide	keinen neuen Kleidern
Accusative	kein neues Kleid	keine neuen Kleider

Decline in the same way: ein großer Hund, *a big dog*; kein guter Mann, *no good man*; mein lieber Freund, *my dear friend*; dein teures Kind, *your dear child*; sein altes Haus, *his old house*; unser schönes Land, *our beautiful country*; kein grünes Feld, *no green field*.

12. The adjective also takes the endings of the mixed declension when preceded by the personal pronouns ich, du, er, sie, es, wir, ihr, sie, Sie. But in the dative singular of all genders and in the nominative plural, the strong endings may also be used. Thus,

ich or du armer Mann, *I or you poor man*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	ich or du armer Mann	wir or ihr { arme } Männer
Dat.	mir or dir { armem } Manne	uns or euch armen Männern
Acc.	mich or dich armen Mann	uns or euch { arme } Männer

ich or du arme Frau, *I or you poor woman*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	ich or du arme Frau	wir or ihr { arme } Frauen
Dat.	mir or dir { armer } Frau	uns or euch armen Frauen
Acc.	mich or dich arme Frau	uns or euch { arme } Frauen

ich or du armes Mädchen, *I or you poor girl*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

Nom. ich or du armes Mädchen wir or ihr {arme
armen} Mädchen

Dat. mir or dir {armem
armen} Mädchen uns or euch armen Mädchen

Acc. mich or dich armes Mädchen uns or euch {arme
armen} Mädchen

13. The pronominal adjectives *ander—*, *beid—*, *viel*, *wenig*, *solch*, *jed—*, which are treated like ordinary adjectives when preceded by pronominal words with strong endings, have also the declensional characteristics of ordinary adjectives when preceded by the indefinite article, the possessives, or *kein*; that is, they take in this case the mixed endings. Thus,

ein anderer Mann, *another man*

ein solches Kind, *such a child*

kein vieles Geld, *all the money you have*

ein jedes Mitglied, *every member*

14. **Adjectives After Undeclined or Indeclinable Words.**—There are a number of pronominal words which are either indeclinable, or are regularly undeclined, or which occasionally drop their endings. When an adjective is preceded by such a word, it must take the strong endings to indicate the gender, number, and case of the noun, for these are not shown by the preceding word. Some of these words are:

etwas, *some*

mehr, *more*

weniger, *less*

genug, *enough*

lauter, *nothing but*

viel, *much, many*

wenig, *little, few*

was für, *what kind of, what*

allerlei, *all kinds of*

mancherlei, *many kinds of*

vielerlei, *many kinds of*

manch, *many a, many*

solch, *such a, such*

welch, *what a, what*

zwei, *two*

drei, *three*

vier, *four*

fünf, *five*

Examples:

etwas süßer Wein, *some sweet wine*
 mehr gutes Wasser, *more good water*
 weniger schlechtes Bier, *less bad beer*
 genug unnützes Gerede, *enough useless talk*
 lauter schöne Rosen, *none but beautiful roses*
 was für herrliche Früchte, *what splendid fruits*
 vielerlei große Bäume, *many kinds of large trees*
 manch bunte Blumen, *many colored flowers*
 welch reicher Himmel, *what a rich sky*
 drei glänzende Sterne, *three bright stars*

15. Remarks on Adjective Declension. — With regard to the declension of adjectives the following points must be kept in mind:

1. The adjective *hoch* changes its *ch* into *h* before a declensional ending. Thus,

der hohe Turm, *the high tower*
 die hohen Berge, *the high mountains*

2. Adjectives ending in *e* drop the *e* before all declensional endings. Thus,

weise, *wise*; ein weißer Mann, eine weise Frau, ein weißes Kind.

3. Adjectives ending in unaccented *el*, *en*, *er*, usually drop the *e* of these endings before an inflexional termination, or sometimes the *e* of the ending. Thus,

edel, *noble*; edler, edle, edles, edle, edlem (or edelm), etc.
 offen, *open*; offener, offene, offenes, offene, offenem
 munter, *awake, lively*; munterer, muntre, muntres, muntrem

4. Adjectives ending in *er* derived from names of places are not declined. Thus,

das Berliner Rathaus, *the Berlin city hall*
 das Königsberger Schloß, *the Königsberg castle*
 der Bau des Kölner Domes, *the building of the cathedral of Cologne*

5. The adjectives *ganz*, *whole*, and *halb*, *half*, are not declined when used without the article before the neuter names of countries and places. Thus,

ganz Deutschland, all Germany

ganz Amerika, all America

die Bevölkerung von ganz Europa, the population of all Europe

halb Paris, half of Paris

but

die halbe Stadt, half of the city

ein halber Dollar, half a dollar

6. When a noun is not expressed (being merely understood) the declension of the adjective modifying the understood noun remains the same as if the noun were expressed. The English words *one*, *ones*, which generally take the place of the noun, are not expressed in German. Thus,

ein fruchtbarer Baum und ein unfruchtbarer, a fertile tree and a sterile one

ein großes Haus und ein kleines, a large house and a small one

7. The pronominal words *andere*, *other*, *manche*, *many*, *einige*, *some*, *a few*, *solche*, *such*, *mehrere*, *several*, *viele*, *many*, *wenige*, *few*, when standing in the nominative or accusative plural are often followed by adjectives with strong instead of weak endings. Thus,

andere helle Sterne, other bright stars

einige wilde Tiere, some wild animals

Er hat viele schöne Blumen, He has many beautiful flowers.

16. Adjectives Used as Substantives.—In German as in other languages, adjectives are often used as nouns. They then begin with capital letters but retain the forms of declension peculiar to adjectives. As nouns they denote persons or objects having the quality expressed by the adjectives; in the singular of the masculine and feminine, the adjective denotes a person possessing the quality; in the singular of the neuter, a thing possessing the quality; and in the plural, persons possessing the quality. The gender is

indicated either by the termination or by the presence of an article or other definite. Thus, from the adjective

deutsch, <i>German</i> ,	{	ein Deutscher , <i>a German</i>
		eine Deutsche , <i>a German woman</i>
		die Deutschen , <i>the Germans</i>
		das Deutsche , <i>the German (language)</i>

Examples:

das **Gute** und das **Böse**, *the good and the bad*

das **Wahre** und das **Falsche**, *the true and the false*

das **Erhabene**, *the sublime*

die **Guten** und die **Bösen**, *the good (men) and the bad (men)*

Es liebt die Welt, das **Strahlende** zu schwärzen, und das **Erhabene** in den Staub zu ziehen, *The world delights in darkening brilliancy and in dragging sublimeness into the mire.*

17. The possessive pronominal adjectives *der*, *die*, *das* *meine*, *deine*, etc., and *der*, *die*, *das* *meinige*, *deinige*, etc. are also used substantively like ordinary adjectives. Thus,

Ich liebe die **Meinen**, und die **Meinen** lieben mich, *I love my own (friends) and my own (friends) love me.*

Ein jeder beschützt das **Seine**, *Everybody protects his own (property).*

Du hast das **Deinige** gethan, *You have done your duty.*

18. An adjective used substantively in apposition with a personal pronoun, is also declined like an ordinary adjective. Thus,

ich or du, **Glücklicher**, *I or thou fortunate (man)*

wir **Deutsche** or **Deutschen**, *we Germans*

mit uns **Deutschen**, *with us Germans*

19. Adjectives denoting color, when used substantively are not declined; the genitive only sometimes takes an *s*. Thus,

das **Blau**, *the blue*; das **Grün**, *the green*; des **Grüns**, *of the green*

Jenes grelle **Rot** gefällt mir nicht, *I do not like that glaring red.*

20. The neuter names of languages derived from adjectives frequently take an ending when immediately preceded by the definite article. Thus,

das Deutsch and das Deutsche, *the German language*

das Studium des Italienischen, *the study of the Italian language*

but

ein gutes Französisch, *a good French*

Er spricht ein gebrochenes Spanisch, *He speaks a broken Spanish.*

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

21. Most adjectives that denote quality, either sensible or rational, are inflected to show the degree of quality denoted. Thus, we may say of one thing that it is groß, *large*, hübsch, *pretty*; of another that it is größer, *larger*, schöner, *prettier*; of a third that it is the größte, *largest*, hübschste, *prettiest*. Such adjectives as are compared or inflected for quality have three degrees of comparison: the **positive**, the **comparative**, and the **superlative**.

But some adjectives that denote quality are not capable of expressing different degrees of that quality. Such words are not inflected; they are incomparable. If, for instance, anything is really rund, *round*, it cannot be any more or any less so. Words of this kind cannot be legitimately compared.

22. The Positive Degree.—It is by means of the qualities, sensible and rational, and by the various relations among things, that we are able to recognize objects and distinguish them from one another. It is by their differences and resemblances and by their relations, and in no other way, that we become acquainted with them.

But before we can say that anything is large, for example, we must have a notion of the average size of objects of that kind. This notion we get by experience in comparing many things of the same class. When one says, ein großes Haus, *a big house*, the expression implies that he has seen and compared many houses and that he has in his mind a general notion or type with respect to the size of each kind of things mentioned. This type is not often the same with different persons, for it is derived from experience, and this varies considerably; the wider the experience the more valuable is

the type. This typical notion of quality is the positive degree of that quality. It is expressed by the simple uninflected form of the adjective, as *weise*, *wise*; *traurig*, *sorry*; *bläß*, *pale*, etc.

The positive degree of an adjective is the form or use of it that implies the comparison of one thing or group of things with many others of the class.

23. The Comparative Degree.—In the use of an adjective in the positive degree, the comparison is only implied or taken for granted; in the comparative degree the comparison of one thing with another must actually be made. Only two objects or two groups of objects are considered—one having a certain quality, and the other having it in a higher or lower measure or degree. Thus, one thing may be *süß*, *sweet*, or *hübsch*, *pretty*, or *lang*, *long*, or *klein*, *small*, and the other *süßer*, *sweeter*, *hübscher*, *prettier*, *länger*, *longer*, or *kleiner*, *smaller*, than the first. An adjective so used is in the comparative degree.

The comparative degree of an adjective is the form or use of it by which a comparison with respect to some quality is made, between two things or groups of things. Thus,

Dieses Mädchen ist hübscher als jenes, This girl is prettier than that one.

Jener Berg ist höher als dieser, That mountain is higher than this one.

24. The Superlative Degree.—When the superlative degree of an adjective is used the least number of objects or groups of objects considered is three. One of them as compared with the others—two or more—is seen to have the highest or lowest degree of some quality, and to denote this a form or use of the adjective known as the superlative degree is required. This degree, like the comparative, requires an actual comparison. At least three *hübsche*, *pretty*, or *kleine*, *little*, objects must be compared before we can say

that one of them is *der hübschste*, *the prettiest*, *der kleinste*, *the smallest*. The word superlative means "surpassing all others."

The **superlative degree** of an adjective is the form or use of it by which a comparison with respect to some quality is made among three or more things or groups of things. Thus,

Dieses Mädchen hier ist *hübsch*, dieses da ist *hübscher*, und jenes ist *das hübschste*, *This girl here is pretty, that one there is prettier, and that one is the prettiest*.

Jener Berg ist *hoch*, dieser da ist *höher*, und dieser hier ist *der höchste*, *That mountain is high, that one there is higher, and this one here is the highest*.

25. Comparison of Adjectives.—In German, as in English, the degrees of comparison are commonly expressed by means of the suffixes *er* for the comparative and *est* for the superlative. Thus,

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
dreist, <i>bold</i>	dreister, <i>bolder</i>	dreisteſt, <i>boldest</i>
feſt, <i>firm</i>	feſter, <i>firmer</i>	feſteſt, <i>firmest</i>
laut, <i>loud</i>	lauter, <i>louder</i>	lauteſt, <i>loudest</i>
loß, <i>loose</i>	loſer, <i>looser</i>	loſeſt, <i>loosest</i>
naß, <i>wet</i>	näſſer, <i>wetter</i>	näſſeſt, <i>wettest</i>
raſch, <i>quick</i>	raſcher, <i>quicker</i>	raſcheſt, <i>quickest</i>
edel, <i>noble</i>	edler, <i>nobler</i>	edelſt, <i>noblest</i>
träge, <i>lazy</i>	träge, <i>lazier</i>	trägeſt, <i>laziest</i>

26. Euphonic Changes.—For euphonic reasons some adjectives undergo certain modifications when compared.

1. When the positive does not end in *d*, *t*, *ſt*, *ß*, *ſch*, or *ß*, the *e* of the superlative suffix *eſt* is generally omitted. Thus,

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
klar, <i>clear</i>	klarer, <i>clearer</i>	klarſt, <i>clearest</i>
reich, <i>rich</i>	reicher, <i>richer</i>	reichſt, <i>richest</i>
rein, <i>pure</i>	reiner, <i>purer</i>	reinſt, <i>purest</i>
ſchön, <i>beautiful</i>	ſchöner, <i>more beautiful</i>	ſchönſt, <i>most beautiful</i>

2. Adjectives ending in *e* drop this *e* before the *er* of the comparative and the *est* of the superlative. Thus,

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>weise, wise</i>	<i>weiser, wiser</i>	<i>weisest, wisest</i>
<i>müde, weary</i>	<i>müder, more weary</i>	<i>müdest, most weary</i>

3. When the positive of an adjective ends in unaccented *el*, *en*, *er*, the *e* of these terminations is generally omitted before the *er* of the comparative. Thus,

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>edel, noble</i>	<i>edler, nobler</i>	<i>edelst, noblest</i>
<i>trocken, dry</i>	<i>trockner, drier</i>	<i>trockenst, driest</i>
<i>tapfer, brave</i>	<i>tapftrer, braver</i>	<i>tapferst, bravest</i>

4. Most monosyllabic adjectives whose root vowels are *a*, *o*, or *u*, modify these vowels in the comparative and superlative. Thus,

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>alt, old</i>	<i>älter</i>	<i>ältest</i>
<i>arg, bad</i>	<i>ärger</i>	<i>ärgeſt</i>
<i>arm, poor</i>	<i>ärmer</i>	<i>ärmſt</i>
<i>groß, great</i>	<i>größer</i>	<i>größt</i>
<i>hart, hard</i>	<i>härter</i>	<i>härteſt</i>
<i>hoch, high</i>	<i>höher</i>	<i>höcheſt</i>
<i>jung, young</i>	<i>jünger</i>	<i>jüngſt</i>
<i>kalt, cold</i>	<i>kälter</i>	<i>kälteſt</i>
<i>klug, wise</i>	<i>klüger</i>	<i>klügſt</i>
<i>kranſ, sick</i>	<i>kranſer</i>	<i>krankeſt</i>
<i>kurz, short</i>	<i>kürzer</i>	<i>kürzeſt</i>
<i>lang, long</i>	<i>länger</i>	<i>längeſt</i>
<i>rot, red</i>	<i>röter</i>	<i>röteſt</i>
<i>ſcharf, sharp</i>	<i>ſchärfer</i>	<i>ſchärfeſt</i>
<i>ſchwarz, black</i>	<i>ſchwärzer</i>	<i>ſchwärzeſt</i>
<i>ſtark, strong</i>	<i>ſtärker</i>	<i>ſtärkeſt</i>
<i>warm, warm</i>	<i>wärmer</i>	<i>wärmeſt</i>

5. Some monosyllabic adjectives, however, do *not* modify these vowels *a*, *o*, *u* in the comparative and superlative. Thus,

brav, good, worthy; braver, braveſt

The most important of this class are:

bunt, <i>variegated, gay</i>	loß, <i>loose</i>	ſchlant, <i>slender</i>
fade, <i>insipid</i>	matt, <i>tired</i>	ſchroff, <i>rugged</i>
ſahl, <i>fallow</i>	nackt, <i>naked</i>	ſtarr, <i>stiff</i>
ſalſch, <i>false</i>	platt, <i>flat</i>	ſtolz, <i>proud</i>
ſlach, <i>flat</i>	plump, <i>clumsy</i>	ſtraff, <i>stiff, tight</i>
ſroh, <i>joyful, happy</i>	raſch, <i>quick</i>	ſtumm, <i>dumb</i>
hohl, <i>hollow</i>	roh, <i>raw</i>	ſtumpf, <i>blunt</i>
hold, <i>amiable</i>	rund, <i>round</i>	tol, <i>mad</i>
lahl, <i>bald</i>	ſacht, <i>slow</i>	voll, <i>full</i>
ſarg, <i>stingy</i>	ſanft, <i>gentle</i>	zahm, <i>tame</i>
lahm, <i>lame</i>	ſchlaff, <i>loose</i>	

6. Some adjectives may or may not modify the vowels a, o, and u. Thus,

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
blaß, <i>pale</i>	blaßer or blässer	blasseſt or blässeſt
dumm, <i>stupid</i>	dummer or dümmer	dummeſt or dümmeſt
fromm, <i>pious</i>	frömmere or frömmer	frommeſt or frömmeſt
geſund, <i>healthy</i>	geſunder or geſünder	geſundeſt or geſündereſt
naß, <i>wet</i>	näſſer or nasser	nasseſt or nässeſt

27. **Irregular Comparison.**—The following adjectives are irregular in their comparison:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
groß, <i>great</i>	größter	größt
gut, <i>good</i>	besser	beſt
hoch, <i>high</i>	höher	höchſt
naß, <i>near</i>	näher	nächſt
ehe, <i>before</i>	(eher), <i>sooner</i>	(eheſt), <i>erst, first</i>
wanting	wanting	leßt, <i>latest</i>
viel, <i>much</i>	mehr	meiſt
(wenig, <i>little</i>)	mindest, <i>less</i>	mindeſt, <i>least</i>
(erſt, <i>first</i>)	erſtere, <i>the former</i>	wanting
(leßt, <i>last</i>)	leßtere, <i>the latter</i>	wanting
(mehr, <i>more</i>)	mehrere, <i>several</i>	wanting

NOTE.—1. Groß, *great, tall*, größte, is contracted in the superlative: der größte instead of der größteste.

2. Hoch, *high*, changes ch to h in the comparative, while the h of naß, näher becomes ch in the superlative: nächſt, der nächſte.

3. From erſt, leßt, which are really superlatives, are formed the new comparatives: der erſtere, *the former*; der leßtere, *the latter*; and from mehr, *more*, which is really a comparative, the new comparative mehrere, *several*, is derived.

4. Mindest, *less*, and mindeſt, *least*, may be considered as irregular comparative and superlative of wenig, *little*.

28. The following comparatives and superlatives lack a positive. They are derived from prepositions or adverbs, which are given in the place of the positive. They form their superlatives by adding the superlative suffix *ſt* to the comparative.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
in, <i>in</i>	inner, <i>inner</i>	innerſt, <i>innermost</i>
auß, <i>out</i>	äußer, <i>outer</i>	äußerſt, <i>outermost</i>
oben, <i>above</i>	ober, <i>upper</i>	oberſt, <i>uppermost</i>
unter, <i>under</i>	unter, <i>lower</i>	unterſt, <i>undermost</i>
vor, <i>before</i>	vorder, <i>before</i>	vorderſt, <i>foremost</i>
hinter, <i>behind</i>	hinter, <i>behind</i>	hinterſt, <i>hindmost</i>
mitten, <i>in the middle of</i>	mittel, <i>middle</i>	mittelſt, <i>middlemost</i>

29. The English *than* after the comparative is expressed, in German, by *als*. Thus,

Sie ſind größer als ich. *You are taller than I.*

Dieſe Berge ſind höher als jene. *Theſe mountains are higher than theſe.*

30. When we make a comparison of equality, which is expressed, in English, by *as—as*, in German we place *ſo* or *eben ſo* before the adjective and *wie* or *als* after it. Thus,

Dieſer Baum iſt eben ſo alt wie jener. *This tree is as old as that one.*

Dieſes Land iſt eben ſo fruchtbar wie jenes, *This country is as fertile as that one.*

31. Instead of the usual comparative formed by inflection, in some cases an auxiliary comparative is used by joining *mehr*, *more*, to the positive. That occurs,

1. With adjectives that are used only predicatively. Thus,

Er iſt mir mehr abhold als dir, *He is more averse to me than to you.*

2. When different qualities of the same subject are compared. Thus,

Der Soldat war mehr glücklich als tapfer, *The soldier was more lucky than brave.*

32. Some comparative forms are used absolutely, that is without implying direct comparison. Thus,

ein älterer Herr, *an older gentleman*

Wir machten eine längere Reise, *We made quite a long journey.*

33. Different Uses of the Superlative.—1. The three degrees of the adjectives have been given in their stem forms without inflectional endings; as groß, *large*, größer, *greater*, größt. While the positive and comparative often occur as predicate adjectives or adverbs in these stem forms, only one superlative is used in its stem form as a predicate adjective. This superlative is allerliebſt, *very charming, very sweet*. Thus,

Diese Landschaft ist allerliebſt, *This landscape is very charming.*

2. A few other superlatives are used in their stem forms as adverbs, as,

äußerſt, *extremely*

eiligſt, *most hastily*

ergebenſt, *most devotedly*

gefälligſt, *kindly, please*

gehörſamſt, *most obediently*

gütigſt, *most kindly*

höchſt, *most highly*

höflichſt, *most politely*

innigſt, *most cordially*

jüngſt, *most recently*

längſt, *long since*

meiſt, *mostly*

möglichſt, *as much as possible*

Thus,

Dieſes Buch iſt äußerſt langweilig, *This book is extremely tedious.*

Kommen Sie möglichſt bald, *Come as soon as possible.*

3. When the superlative is used as attribute to a noun, it takes, like an ordinary adjective, the weak endings when preceded by the definite article or some other pronominal word with strong endings; in all other cases the strong endings. Thus,

London iſt die größte Stadt der Welt, *London is the largest city in the world.*

Die klügſten Leute ſind nicht immer die beſten, *The wisest people are not always the best.*

Du biſt mein beſter Freund, *You are my best friend.*

4. When the superlative is used as predicative adjective a special form is made by inserting *ist* or *sind* contracted into *am*, at the end the *am* of the superlative. Thus,

*Der Winter ist die Tage am kürzesten, In winter the days are shortest.
Es ist das Jahr am besten, The year is now best.*

5. When the superlative is used adverbially, it regularly takes the form with *am*. Thus,

*Dieses Pferd ist am schnellsten, This horse runs fastest (of all).
Dieser Knabe singt am besten, This boy sings best.*

34. In a manner similar to the combination of the dative of the superlative with *am*, some adverbial phrases are formed by combining the accusative of a superlative with *am* (*am* *besten*) at the. Thus,

*am schönsten, in the most beautiful manner
am besten, in the best possible manner*

Er sagte das am deutlichste, He said this in the most distinct manner.

35. A number of adverbs are formed from superlatives by means of the suffix *ens*; as,

<i>bestens, in the best manner</i>	<i>meistens, for the most part</i>
<i>erstens, in the first place</i>	<i>mindestens, at the least</i>
<i>frühestens, at the earliest</i>	<i>wenigstens, at the least</i>
<i>höchstens, at the highest</i>	<i>nächstens, in the nearest future</i>
<i>spätestens, at the latest</i>	<i>schönstens, in the handsomest manner</i>

36. The superlative is often strengthened by the prefix *aller*. Thus,

*das aller schönste Bild, the most beautiful picture
mein allerbestes Kleid, my very best dress*

37. When mere eminence, and not comparison, is to be expressed, the words *äußerst*, *extremely*, and *höchst*, *highest*, are often employed. Thus,

Der Bau einer neuen Schule ist äußerst notwendig, The erection of a new school is extremely necessary.

Diese Bemerkungen sind höchst wichtig, These remarks are most important.

38. Inflection of the Comparative and Superlative.—Comparatives and superlatives, when declined, are subject to the same rules of declension as the positive; that is, they are declined like ordinary adjectives. Thus,

besserer Wein, better wine

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	besserer Wein	bessere Weine
Genitive	besseres(en) Weines	besserer Weine
Dative	besserem Weine	besseren Weinen
Accusative	besseren Wein	bessere Weine

die jüngere Frau, the younger woman

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	die jüngere Frau	die jüngeren Frauen
Genitive	der jüngeren Frau	der jüngeren Frauen
Dative	der jüngeren Frau	den jüngeren Frauen
Accusative	die jüngere Frau	die jüngeren Frauen

das beste Kleid, the best dress

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	das beste Kleid	die besten Kleider
Genitive	des besten Kleides	der besten Kleider
Dative	dem besten Kleide	den besten Kleidern
Accusative	das beste Kleid	die besten Kleider

Examples:

ein älterer Mann, der ältere Mann, *an older man, the older man*
 ältere Männer, die älteren Männer, *older men, the older men*
 eine bessere Frau, die bessere Frau, *a better woman, the better woman*
 bessere Frauen, die besseren Frauen, *better women, the better women*
 ein größeres Kind, das größere Kind, *a bigger child, the bigger child*
 größere Kinder, die größeren Kinder, *bigger children, the bigger children*

Das Zahlwort.

The Numeral

39. Numerals are words that express the relation of number and quantity. They differ from common adjectives in that they do not indicate some inherent quality or attribute of substances, but only an external relation, namely, that of quantity. The importance of this class of words is evident from the consideration that quantity, as distinguished from quality, is one of the great general categories or fundamental principles of human knowledge.

The numerals are divided into two great classes: *cardinal numbers* and *ordinal numbers*. Other less important classes are derived from these two and will be treated in connection with them.

CARDINAL NUMERALS

40. The cardinal numerals, whence all the others are derived, express number in its simplest form and answer the question: *How many?* They express the repetition of units. They are:

- | | |
|----|-----------------------------------|
| 1 | einſ (ein, eine, ein), <i>one</i> |
| 2 | zwei, <i>two</i> |
| 3 | drei, <i>three</i> |
| 4 | vier, <i>four</i> |
| 5 | fünf, <i>five</i> |
| 6 | ſechſ, <i>six</i> |
| 7 | ſieben, <i>seven</i> |
| 8 | aſt, <i>eight</i> |
| 9 | neun, <i>nine</i> |
| 10 | zehn, <i>ten</i> |
| 11 | elf, <i>eleven</i> |
| 12 | zwölf, <i>twelve</i> |
| 13 | dreizehn, <i>thirteen</i> |
| 14 | vierzehn, <i>fourteen</i> |

15	fünfzehn, <i>fifteen</i>
16	sechzehn, <i>sixteen</i>
17	siebzehn, <i>seventeen</i>
18	achtzehn, <i>eighteen</i>
19	neunzehn, <i>nineteen</i>
20	zwanzig, <i>twenty</i>
21	einundzwanzig, <i>twenty-one</i>
22	zweiundzwanzig, <i>twenty-two</i>
23	dreiundzwanzig, <i>twenty-three</i>
30	dreißig, <i>thirty</i>
31	einunddreißig, <i>thirty-one</i>
32	zweiunddreißig, <i>thirty-two</i>
40	vierzig, <i>forty</i>
50	fünfzig, <i>fifty</i>
60	sechzig, <i>sixty</i>
70	siebzig, <i>seventy</i>
80	achtzig, <i>eighty</i>
90	neunzig, <i>ninety</i>
100	hundert, <i>hundred</i>
101	hundert(und)eins
102	hundert(und)zwei
120	hundert(und)zwanzig
149	hundert(und)neunundvierzig
200	zweihundert
300	dreihundert
1,000	tausend
2,000	zweitausend
100,000	hunderttausend
1,000,000	eine Million
2,000,000	zwei Millionen

The neuter pronominal form *eins* is used abstractly in counting when no other numeral follows; thus, *eins*, *zwei*, *drei*, etc.; *hundert und eins*, *tausend und eins*; also in expressions of time: *es ist eins*, *it is one o'clock*; *es ist halb eins*, *it is half past twelve*.

The undeclined form *ein* is used before other cardinals and before ordinals; as, *einundzwanzig* 21, *der einundzwanzigste*, *the 21st*, *ein hundert*, *one hundred*, *ein tausend*, *one thousand*; and in a few idiomatic expressions; as, *ein paar*, *a few*; *ein wenig*, *a little*.

41. Declension of the Numerals.—The cardinals are for the most part indeclinable.

1. Ein, *one*, however is regularly declined—when before a noun—like the indefinite article ein, eine, ein. It is, in fact, the same word with a different use and is distinguished from it, in speaking, only by a stronger emphasis, which in writing is often indicated by spaced letters. Thus,

Ihr habt nur einen Garten, wir haben zwei, *You have only one garden, we have two.*

Es giebt nur einen Weg über das Gebirge, *There is only one way over the mountains.*

NOTE. — For the use of ein as an indefinite pronoun see Part 3.

2. Zwei, *two*, and drei, *three*, are declined, when the cases are not sufficiently pointed out by other words in the context. Thus,

Nominative	zwei, <i>two</i>	drei, <i>three</i>
Genitive	zweier, <i>of two</i>	dreier, <i>of three</i>
Dative	zweien, <i>to two</i>	dreien, <i>to three</i>
Accusative	zwei, <i>two</i>	drei, <i>three</i>

Examples:

Der Tod zweier Freunde hat mich sehr betrübt, *The death of two of my friends has deeply afflicted me.*

Ich habe das Buch dreien meiner Freunde geliehen, *I have lent this book to three of my friends.*

3. All the other cardinals when used substantively sometimes take the termination en in the dative of the plural. Thus,

Er fährt mit vieren, *He drives with four: (horses).*

Ich habe fünfen von diesen Armen Almosen gegeben, *I have given alms to five of these poor (men).*

4. Hundert and tausend take in the plural the termination e, when used as collective nouns. Thus,

Hunderte erwarteten den Zug, *Hundreds were waiting for the train.*

Man erwartet tausende von Zuschauern, *They expect thousands of spectators.*

5. In speaking of the cardinals merely as figures or characters, all are regarded as being of the feminine gender. Thus,

die Eins, *the one*, die Zwei, *the two*, etc.

42. Expression of Time.—1. The hours of the day are expressed by the cardinal numbers in connection with the noun *Uhr*, *clock*, which is not declined. The fractions are counted on the next hour. Thus,

Wieviel Uhr ist es? *What time is it?*
 Es ist zwei Uhr, *It is two o'clock.*
 Es ist ein Viertel (auf) drei, *It is quarter past two.*
 Es ist halb drei, *It is half past two.*
 Es ist drei Viertel (auf) drei, *It is a quarter to three.*
 Um wieviel Uhr? *At what time?*
 Um sieben Uhr, *At seven o'clock.*

2. When minutes have to be expressed, we use the prepositions *in*, *vor*, and *über*, *nach*. Thus,

Es ist in fünf Minuten drei, *It is five minutes to three.*
 Es ist zehn Minuten vor sieben, *It is ten minutes to seven.*
 Es ist zehn Minuten nach (über) drei, *It is ten minutes past three.*

43. Iterative Numerals.—The iteratives answer the question: *wie oft?* *how often?* or *wievielmals?* *how many times?* and are formed from the cardinals by the addition of the suffix *mal*, *time*. Thus,

einmal, <i>once</i>	hundertmal, <i>hundred times</i>
zweimal, <i>twice</i>	tausendmal, <i>thousand times</i>
dreimal, <i>thrice</i>	manchmal, <i>sometimes</i>
zehnmal, <i>ten times</i>	vielmals, <i>many times</i>

44. Variative Numerals.—The variatives answer the question: *wievielerlei?* *of how many kinds?* and are formed from the cardinals by adding the suffix *lei*, the syllable *er* being inserted for the sake of euphony. Thus,

einerlei, <i>of one kind</i>	viererlei, <i>of four kinds</i>
zweierlei, <i>of two kinds</i>	fünferlei, <i>of five kinds</i>
dreierlei, <i>of three kinds</i>	mancherlei, <i>of many kinds</i>

All these words are indeclinable adjectives.

45. Multiplicative Numerals.—The multiplicative, which answer the question: *wievielfach?* *how many fold?* are formed from the cardinals by adding the suffix *fach*, *fold*, or *fältig*. Thus,

2. Adjectives ending in *e* drop this *e* before the *er* of the comparative and the *est* of the superlative. Thus,

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
weise, <i>wise</i>	weiser, <i>wiser</i>	weisest, <i>wisest</i>
müde, <i>weary</i>	müder, <i>more weary</i>	müdest, <i>most weary</i>

3. When the positive of an adjective ends in unaccented *el*, *en*, *er*, the *e* of these terminations is generally omitted before the *er* of the comparative. Thus,

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
edel, <i>noble</i>	edler, <i>nobler</i>	edelst, <i>noblest</i>
trocken, <i>dry</i>	trockner, <i>drier</i>	trockenst, <i>driest</i>
tapfer, <i>brave</i>	tapftrer, <i>braver</i>	tapferst, <i>bravest</i>

4. Most monosyllabic adjectives whose root vowels are *a*, *o*, or *u*, modify these vowels in the comparative and superlative. Thus,

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
alt, <i>old</i>	älter	ältest
arg, <i>bad</i>	ärger	ärgst
arm, <i>poor</i>	ärmer	ärmst
groß, <i>great</i>	größer	größt
hart, <i>hard</i>	härter	härtest
hoch, <i>high</i>	höher	höchst
jung, <i>young</i>	jünger	jüngst
kalt, <i>cold</i>	kälter	kältest
klug, <i>wise</i>	klüger	klügst
krank, <i>sick</i>	kränker	kränkst
kurz, <i>short</i>	kürzer	kürzest
lang, <i>long</i>	länger	längst
rot, <i>red</i>	röter	rötest
scharf, <i>sharp</i>	schärfer	schärfst
schwarz, <i>black</i>	schwärzer	schwärzest
stark, <i>strong</i>	stärker	stärkst
warm, <i>warm</i>	wärmer	wärmst

5. Some monosyllabic adjectives, however, do *not* modify these vowels *a*, *o*, *u* in the comparative and superlative. Thus,

gut, *good*, *worthy*; braver, *bravest*

The most important of this class are:

bunt, <i>variegated, gay</i>	loß, <i>loose</i>	schlanke, <i>slender</i>
fade, <i>insipid</i>	matt, <i>tired</i>	schroffe, <i>rugged</i>
fahl, <i>fallow</i>	nackt, <i>naked</i>	starr, <i>stiff</i>
falsch, <i>false</i>	platt, <i>flat</i>	stolz, <i>proud</i>
flach, <i>flat</i>	plump, <i>clumsy</i>	starr, <i>stiff, tight</i>
fröh, <i>joyful, happy</i>	rasch, <i>quick</i>	stumm, <i>dumb</i>
hohl, <i>hollow</i>	roh, <i>raw</i>	stumpf, <i>blunt</i>
höflich, <i>amiable</i>	rund, <i>round</i>	toll, <i>mad</i>
kahl, <i>bald</i>	sacht, <i>slow</i>	voll, <i>full</i>
karg, <i>stingy</i>	sant, <i>gentle</i>	zahm, <i>tame</i>
lahm, <i>lame</i>	schlaß, <i>loose</i>	

6. Some adjectives may or may not modify the vowels a, o, and u. Thus,

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bläß, <i>pale</i>	blässer or blässer	blässest or blässest
dumm, <i>stupid</i>	dummer or dummer	dummiest or dummiest
fromm, <i>pious</i>	frommer or frommer	frommest or frommest
gesund, <i>healthy</i>	gesunder or gesunder	gesundest or gesundest
näß, <i>wet</i>	nasser or nasser	nassest or nassest

27. **Irregular Comparison.**—The following adjectives are irregular in their comparison:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
groß, <i>great</i>	größer	größt
gut, <i>good</i>	besser	best
hoch, <i>high</i>	höher	höchst
nahe, <i>near</i>	näher	nächst
ehe, <i>before</i>	(eher), <i>sooner</i>	(ehest), <i>erst, first</i>
wanting	wanting	lest, <i>latest</i>
viel, <i>much</i>	mehr	meist
(wenig, <i>little</i>)	minder, <i>less</i>	mindest, <i>least</i>
(erst, <i>first</i>)	erstere, <i>the former</i>	wanting
(lest, <i>last</i>)	lestere, <i>the latter</i>	wanting
(mehr, <i>more</i>)	mehrere, <i>several</i>	wanting

NOTE.—1. Groß, *great, tall*, größer, is contracted in the superlative: der größte instead of der größteste.

2. Hoch, *high*, changes ch to h in the comparative, while the h of nahe, näher becomes ch in the superlative: nächst, der nächste.

3. From erst, lest, which are really superlatives, are formed the new comparatives: der erstere, *the former*; der leftere, *the latter*; and from mehr, *more*, which is really a comparative, the new comparative mehrere, *several*, is derived.

4. Minder, *less*, and mindest, *least*, may be considered as irregular comparative and superlative of wenig, *little*.

28. The following comparatives and superlatives lack a positive. They are derived from prepositions or adverbs, which are given in the place of the positive. They form their superlatives by adding the superlative suffix *ſt* to the comparative.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
in, <i>in</i>	inner, <i>inner</i>	innerſt, <i>innermost</i>
auß, <i>out</i>	äußer, <i>outer</i>	äußerſt, <i>outermost</i>
oben, <i>above</i>	ober, <i>upper</i>	oberſt, <i>uppermost</i>
unter, <i>under</i>	unter, <i>lower</i>	unterſt, <i>undermost</i>
vor, <i>before</i>	vorder, <i>fore, front</i>	vorderſt, <i>foremost</i>
hinter, <i>behind</i>	hinter, <i>hinder</i>	hinterſt, <i>hindmost</i>
mitten, <i>in the middle of</i>	mittler, <i>middle</i>	mittleſt, <i>middlemost</i>

29. The English *than* after the comparative is expressed, in German, by *als*. Thus,

Sie ſind größer **als** ich, *You are taller than I.*

Dieſe Berge ſind höher **als** jene, *These mountains are higher than those.*

30. When we make a comparison of equality, which is expressed, in English, by *as—as*, in German we place *ſo* or *eben ſo* before the adjective and *wie* or *als* after it. Thus,

Dieſer Baum iſt **eben ſo** alt **wie** jener, *This tree is as old as that one.*

Dieſes Land iſt (**eben**) **ſo** fruchtbar **wie** jenes, *This country is as fertile as that one.*

31. Instead of the usual comparative formed by inflection, in some cases an auxiliary comparative is used by joining *mehr*, *more*, to the positive. That occurs,

1. With adjectives that are used only predicatively. Thus,

Er iſt mir **mehr** abhold **als** dir, *He is more averse to me than to you.*

2. When different qualities of the same subject are compared. Thus,

Der Soldat war **mehr** glücklich **als** tapfer, *The soldier was more lucky than brave.*

32. Some comparative forms are used absolutely, that is without implying direct comparison. Thus,

ein *älter*er Herr, *an older gentleman*

Wir machten eine *längere* Reise, *We made quite a long journey.*

33. Different Uses of the Superlative.—1. The three degrees of the adjectives have been given in their stem forms without inflectional endings; as groß, *large*, größer, *greater*, größt. While the positive and comparative often occur as predicate adjectives or adverbs in these stem forms, only one superlative is used in its stem form as a predicate adjective. This superlative is allerliebste, *very charming, very sweet*. Thus,

Diese Landschaft ist *allerliebste*, *This landscape is very charming.*

2. A few other superlatives are used in their stem forms as adverbs, as,

äußerst, *extremely*

eiligst, *most hastily*

ergebenst, *most devotedly*

gefälligst, *kindly, please*

gehörigst, *most obediently*

gütigst, *most kindly*

höchst, *most highly*

höflichst, *most politely*

innigst, *most cordially*

jüngst, *most recently*

längst, *long since*

meist, *mostly*

möglichst, *as much as possible*

Thus,

Dieses Buch ist *äußerst* langweilig, *This book is extremely tedious.*

Kommen Sie *möglichst* bald, *Come as soon as possible.*

3. When the superlative is used as attribute to a noun, it takes, like an ordinary adjective, the weak endings when preceded by the definite article or some other pronominal word with strong endings; in all other cases the strong endings. Thus,

London ist die größte Stadt der Welt, *London is the largest city in the world.*

Die klügsten Leute sind nicht immer die besten, *The wisest people are not always the best.*

Du bist mein bester Freund, *You are my best friend.*

4. When the superlative is used as predicate adjective a special form is made up consisting of *am dem*, contracted into *am*, *at the*, and the dative of the superlative. Thus,

Im Winter sind die Tage am kürzesten, In winter the days are shortest.
Hier ist das Licht am besten, The light is best here.

5. When the superlative is used adverbially, it regularly takes the form with *am*. Thus,

Dieses Pferd lief am schnellsten, This horse ran fastest (of all).
Dieser Knabe singt am besten, This boy sings best.

34. In a manner similar to the combination of the dative of the superlative with *am*, some adverbial phrases are formed by combining the accusative of a superlative with *auf* (*auf daß*) *at the*. Thus,

auf schönste, in the most beautiful manner
auf beste, in the best possible manner

Er sagte das auf deutlichste, He said this in the most distinct manner.

35. A number of adverbs are formed from superlatives by means of the suffix *enst*; as,

<i>bestenst, in the best manner</i>	<i>meistenst, for the most part</i>
<i>erstenst, in the first place</i>	<i>mindestenst, at the least</i>
<i>frühestenst, at the earliest</i>	<i>wenigstenst, at the least</i>
<i>höchstenst, at the highest</i>	<i>nächststenst, in the nearest future</i>
<i>spätestenst, at the latest</i>	<i>schönstenst, in the handsomest manner</i>

36. The superlative is often strengthened by the prefix *aller*. Thus,

daß aller schönste Bild, the most beautiful picture
mein allerbestes Kleid, my very best dress

37. When mere eminence, and not comparison, is to be expressed, the words *äußerst*, *extremely*, and *höchst*, *highest*, are often employed. Thus,

Der Bau einer neuen Schule ist äußerst notwendig, The erection of a new school is extremely necessary.

Diese Bemerkungen sind höchst wichtig, These remarks are most important.

38. Inflection of the Comparative and Superlative.—Comparatives and superlatives, when declined, are subject to the same rules of declension as the positive; that is, they are declined like ordinary adjectives. Thus,

	<i>besserer Wein, better wine</i>	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	besserer Wein	bessere Weine
Genitive	besser e s(en) Weines	besserer Weine
Dative	besserem Weine	besseren Weinen
Accusative	besseren Wein	bessere Weine

	<i>die jüngere Frau, the younger woman</i>	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	die jüngere Frau	die jüngeren Frauen
Genitive	der jüngeren Frau	der jüngeren Frauen
Dative	der jüngeren Frau	den jüngeren Frauen
Accusative	die jüngere Frau	die jüngeren Frauen

	<i>das beste Kleid, the best dress</i>	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	das beste Kleid	die besten Kleider
Genitive	des besten Kleides	der besten Kleider
Dative	dem besten Kleide	den besten Kleidern
Accusative	das beste Kleid	die besten Kleider

Examples:

ein älterer Mann, der ältere Mann, *an older man, the older man*
 ältere Männer, die älteren Männer, *older men, the older men*
 eine bessere Frau, die bessere Frau, *a better woman, the better woman*
 bessere Frauen, die besseren Frauen, *better women, the better women*
 ein größeres Kind, das größere Kind, *a bigger child, the bigger child*
 größere Kinder, die größeren Kinder, *bigger children, the bigger children*

Das Zahlwort.

The Numeral

39. Numerals are words that express the relation of number and quantity. They differ from common adjectives in that they do not indicate some inherent quality or attribute of substances, but only an external relation, namely, that of quantity. The importance of this class of words is evident from the consideration that quantity, as distinguished from quality, is one of the great general categories or fundamental principles of human knowledge.

The numerals are divided into two great classes: *cardinal numbers* and *ordinal numbers*. Other less important classes are derived from these two and will be treated in connection with them.

CARDINAL NUMERALS

40. The cardinal numerals, whence all the others are derived, express number in its simplest form and answer the question: *How many?* They express the repetition of units. They are:

- | | |
|----|-----------------------------------|
| 1 | einſ (ein, eine, ein), <i>one</i> |
| 2 | zwei, <i>two</i> |
| 3 | drei, <i>three</i> |
| 4 | vier, <i>four</i> |
| 5 | fünf, <i>five</i> |
| 6 | ſechſ, <i>six</i> |
| 7 | ſieben, <i>seven</i> |
| 8 | acht, <i>eight</i> |
| 9 | neun, <i>nine</i> |
| 10 | zehn, <i>ten</i> |
| 11 | elf, <i>eleven</i> |
| 12 | zwölf, <i>twelve</i> |
| 13 | dreizehn, <i>thirteen</i> |
| 14 | vierzehn, <i>fourteen</i> |

15	fünfzehn, <i>fifteen</i>
16	sechzehn, <i>sixteen</i>
17	siebzehn, <i>seventeen</i>
18	achtzehn, <i>eighteen</i>
19	neunzehn, <i>nineteen</i>
20	zwanzig, <i>twenty</i>
21	einundzwanzig, <i>twenty-one</i>
22	zweiundzwanzig, <i>twenty-two</i>
23	dreiundzwanzig, <i>twenty-three</i>
30	dreißig, <i>thirty</i>
31	einunddreißig, <i>thirty-one</i>
32	zweiunddreißig, <i>thirty-two</i>
40	vierzig, <i>forty</i>
50	fünfzig, <i>fifty</i>
60	sechzig, <i>sixty</i>
70	siebzig, <i>seventy</i>
80	achtzig, <i>eighty</i>
90	neunzig, <i>ninety</i>
100	hundert, <i>hundred</i>
101	hundert(und)eins
102	hundert(und)zwei
120	hundert(und)zwanzig
149	hundert(und)neunundvierzig
200	zweihundert
300	dreihundert
1,000	tausend
2,000	zweitausend
100,000	hunderttausend
1,000,000	eine Million
2,000,000	zwei Millionen

The neuter pronominal form *ein* is used abstractly in counting when no other numeral follows; thus, *ein*, *zwei*, *drei*, etc.; *hundert und ein*, *tausend und ein*; also in expressions of time: *es ist ein*, *it is one o'clock*; *es ist halb ein*, *it is half past twelve*.

The undeclined form *ein* is used before other cardinals and before ordinals; as, *einundzwanzig* 21, *der einundzwanzigste*, *the 21st*, *ein hundert*, *one hundred*, *ein tausend*, *one thousand*; and in a few idiomatic expressions; as, *ein paar*, *a few*; *ein wenig*, *a little*.

41. Declension of the Numerals.—The cardinals are for the most part indeclinable.

1. *Ein*, *one*, however is regularly declined—when before a noun—like the indefinite article *ein*, *eine*, *ein*. It is, in fact, the same word with a different use and is distinguished from it, in speaking, only by a stronger emphasis, which in writing is often indicated by spaced letters. Thus,

Ihr habt nur einen Garten, wir haben zwei, You have only one garden, we have two.

Es giebt nur einen Weg über das Gebirge, There is only one way over the mountains.

NOTE.—For the use of *ein* as an indefinite pronoun see Part 3.

2. *Zwei*, *two*, and *drei*, *three*, are declined, when the cases are not sufficiently pointed out by other words in the context. Thus,

Nominative	<i>zwei, two</i>	<i>drei, three</i>
Genitive	<i>zweier, of two</i>	<i>dreier, of three</i>
Dative	<i>zweien, to two</i>	<i>dreien, to three</i>
Accusative	<i>zwei, two</i>	<i>drei, three</i>

Examples:

Der Tod zweier Freunde hat mich sehr betrübt, The death of two of my friends has deeply afflicted me.

Ich habe das Buch dreien meiner Freunde geliehen, I have lent this book to three of my friends.

3. All the other cardinals when used substantively sometimes take the termination *en* in the dative of the plural. Thus,

Er fährt mit vieren, He drives with four (horses).

Ich habe fünfen von diesen Armen Almosen gegeben, I have given alms to five of these poor (men).

4. *Hundert* and *tausend* take in the plural the termination *e*, when used as collective nouns. Thus,

Hunderte erwarteten den Zug, Hundreds were waiting for the train.

Man erwartet tausende von Zuschauern, They expect thousands of spectators.

5. In speaking of the cardinals merely as figures or characters, all are regarded as being of the feminine gender. Thus,

die Eins, the one, die Zwei, the two, etc.

42. Expression of Time.—1. The hours of the day are expressed by the cardinal numbers in connection with the noun *Uhr*, *clock*, which is not declined. The fractions are counted on the next hour. Thus,

Wieviel Uhr ist es? *What time is it?*

Es ist zwei Uhr, *It is two o'clock.*

Es ist ein Viertel (auf) drei, *It is quarter past two.*

Es ist halb drei, *It is half past two.*

Es ist drei Viertel (auf) drei, *It is a quarter to three.*

Um wieviel Uhr? *At what time?*

Um sieben Uhr, *At seven o'clock.*

2. When minutes have to be expressed, we use the prepositions *in*, *vor*, and *über*, *nach*. Thus,

Es ist in fünf Minuten drei, *It is five minutes to three.*

Es ist zehn Minuten vor sieben, *It is ten minutes to seven.*

Es ist zehn Minuten nach (über) drei, *It is ten minutes past three.*

43. Iterative Numerals.—The iteratives answer the question: *wie oft?* *how often?* or *wievielmals*, *how many times?* and are formed from the cardinals by the addition of the suffix *mal*, *time*. Thus,

einmal, *once*

zweimal, *twice*

dreimal, *thrice*

zehnmal, *ten times*

hundertmal, *hundred times*

tausendmal, *thousand times*

manchmal, *sometimes*

vielmals, *many times*

44. Variative Numerals.—The variatives answer the question: *wievielerlei?* *of how many kinds?* and are formed from the cardinals by adding the suffix *lei*, the syllable *er* being inserted for the sake of euphony. Thus,

einerlei, *of one kind*

zweierlei, *of two kinds*

dreierlei, *of three kinds*

viererlei, *of four kinds*

fünferlei, *of five kinds*

mancherlei, *of many kinds*

All these words are indeclinable adjectives.

45. Multiplicative Numerals.—The multiplicative, which answer the question: *wievielfach?* *how many fold?* are formed from the cardinals by adding the suffix *fach*, *fold*, or *fältig*. Thus,

einfach or einfältig, *onelfold or single*
 zweifach or zweifältig, *twofold or double*
 dreifach or dreifältig, *threefold or triple*
 vierfach or vierfältig, *fourfold or quadruple*

ORDINAL NUMERALS

46. The **ordinals** are numerals that denote a series and answer the question: *der wievielte or wievielfte? which one in the series?* as, *der erste, the first; der zweite, the second*, etc. The ordinal numerals from 2 to 19 are formed from the cardinal numbers by adding the suffix *te*, and from 20 upwards by adding *ste*. They are usually preceded by the definite article. Thus,

der, die, das erste, <i>the first</i>	der, die, das sechste, <i>the sixth</i>
der, die, das zweite, <i>the second</i>	der, die, das siebente, <i>the seventh</i>
der, die, das dritte, <i>the third</i>	der, die, das achte, <i>the eighth</i>
der, die, das vierte, <i>the fourth</i>	der, die, das neunte, <i>the ninth</i>
der, die, das fünfte, <i>the fifth</i>	der, die, das neunzehnte, <i>the nineteenth</i>

After this with the suffix *ste*:

der, die, das zwanzigste, <i>the twentieth</i>
der, die, das einundzwanzigste, <i>the twenty-first</i>
der, die, das zweiundzwanzigste, <i>the twenty-second</i>
der, die, das dreiundzwanzigste, <i>the twenty-third</i>
der, die, das dreißigste, <i>the thirtieth</i>
der, die, das einunddreißigste, <i>the thirty-first</i>
der, die, das vierzigste, <i>the fortieth</i>
der, die, das fünfzigste, <i>the fiftieth</i>
der, die, das sechzigste, <i>the sixtieth</i>
der, die, das siebenzigste, <i>the seventieth</i>
der, die, das achtzigste, <i>the eightieth</i>
der, die, das neunzigste, <i>the nintieth</i>
der, die, das hundertste, <i>the hundredth</i>
der, die, das hundert und erste, <i>the hundred and first</i>
der, die, das hundert und zwanzigste, <i>the hundred and twentieth</i>
der, die, das zweihundertste, <i>the two-hundredth</i>
der, die, das tausendste, <i>the thousandth</i>
der, die, das letzte, <i>the last</i>

Erste, *first*, is, as we have seen, the superlative of *ein*, *before*. Dritte, *third*, is formed from *drei*, *three*, by shortening

the radical vowel *ei* into *i*; and *achte*, *eighth*, drops the *t* of the stem; thus instead of *acht-te*, *achte*.

The ordinals are declined like ordinary adjectives. Thus,

ein *zweites* Mal, *a second time*

die *ersten* Reihen, *the first rows*

Wir wohnen im *vierten* Stode, *We live in the fourth story.*

Dies ist ein Hotel *zweiter* Klasse, *This is a second-class hotel.*

A sort of interrogative ordinal is formed from *wie*, *how*, and *viel*, *much*, which is used when we wish to put the question: *Which of the number?* as *der wievielte* or *der wievielte*. Thus,

Der *wievielte* ist heute, den *wievielten* haben wir heute? *What day of the month is today?*

47. Expression of Date.—1. When simply the date of the year is given, the cardinal numbers are used and may or may not be preceded by *im Jahre*, *in the year*. Thus,

Karl der Große starb (im Jahre) 814 (achthundert und vierzehn), *Charlemagne died (in the year) 814.*

Schiller wurde (im Jahre) 1759 (siebzehnhundert neunundfünfzig) geboren, *Schiller was born (in the year) 1759.*

2. When the day of the month is to be given, the ordinals are used without a preposition. Thus,

Der *wievielte* ist heute?—Heute ist der *achtzehnte* September, *What day of the month is today?—Today is the eighteenth of September.*

3. But when a date is to be named, the ordinal is used preceded by the preposition *am*, which is contracted with *dem*, the dative of the article, to *am*. Thus,

Weihnachten ist *am* 25. (fünfundzwanzigsten) Dezember, *Christmas is on the 25th of December.*

Schiller wurde *am* 10. (zehnten) November 1759 geboren, *Schiller was born the 10th of November, 1759.*

4. In dating a letter the simple accusative is used. Thus,

Berlin, den 5. (fünften) Januar 1900, *Berlin, January 5, 1900.*

Boston, den 30. (dreißigsten) April 1902, *Boston, April 30, 1902.*

48. Ordinal Adverbs.—The ordinal adverbs, which answer the question: *In what place in the series?* are formed by adding the suffix *enß* to the ordinal number. Thus,

erstenß, <i>first, in the first place</i>	fünftenß, <i>fifthly</i>
zweitenß, <i>secondly</i>	sechstenß, <i>sixthly</i>
drittenß, <i>thirdly</i>	siebentenß, <i>seventhly</i>
viertenß, <i>fourthly</i>	achtenß, <i>eighthly, etc.</i>

49. Fractionals.—The fractionals are a class of neuter nouns, answering to the question: *What part?* They are formed by adding to the ordinals the suffix *tel*, which was originally the noun *Teil*, *part*. Before the *t* of *tel* the final *t* of the stem is dropped. There is only one exception to this formation, that is, *die Hälfte*, *the half*. Thus,

die Hälfte, <i>the half</i>	ein Fünftel, <i>a fifth</i>
ein Drittel, <i>a third</i>	ein Sechstel, <i>a sixth</i>
ein Viertel, <i>a fourth</i>	ein Zehntel, <i>a tenth</i>

Halb, *half*, is used and inflected like an adjective. Thus,

Ich habe einen halben Apfel, I have half an apple.

Wir waren ein und ein halbes Jahr in Amerika, We have been in America for a year and a half.

But in certain expressions it does not take any ending. Thus,

Es ist halb elf, halb zwei, halb drei, It is half past ten, half past one, half past two.

50. Diminutives.—The diminutives are formed from the ordinals by adding the word *halb*, *half*, and denote half a unit less than the corresponding number. Thus,

anderthalb, <i>one and a half</i>
dritthalb, <i>two and a half</i>
viertelhalb, <i>three and a half</i>

These words are indeclinable.

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 5)

Das Zeitwort.

The Verb

1. Function of the Verb.—In every sentence the verb is the predicated word. It is meant by this that the verb is the word by means of which it is possible to make a statement, to ask a question, and to express a command or wish. So important in the sentence is the office of this part of speech that grammarians were led to call it the **verb**, from the Latin word *verbum*, meaning *the word*. They intended to imply that of all words the verb is the all-important element in speech.

2. In order to understand the real nature of the verb and the reasons for the classifications that are to follow, it is necessary to keep the following points in mind.

The most important matter with which language can be concerned is action—the various changes and movements and doings of things material and immaterial. In the expression of thought, therefore, those words are the most useful that express action—the verbs. Action is of many kinds and it is sometimes not easy to see that a certain verb really does express action. Physical action is recognized without difficulty, generally by the aid of the senses, as in the following verbs: *gehen*, *to walk*; *stoßen*, *to push*; *schreiben*, *to write*; *bauen*, *to build*. Mental action is almost as readily recognized as sensible motion, as in the verbs: *denken*, *to think*; *bewundern*, *to admire*; *betrachten*, *to consider*; *urteilen*, *to judge*.

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

48. Ordinal Adverbs.—The ordinal adverbs, which answer the question: *In what place in the series?* are formed by adding the suffix *tes* to the ordinal number. Thus,

<i>erstes</i> , first, in the first place	<i>fünftens</i> , fifthly
<i>zweites</i> , secondly	<i>sechstens</i> , sixthly
<i>drittes</i> , thirdly	<i>achtens</i> , eighthly, etc.
<i>viertes</i> , fourthly	

49. Fractionals.—The fractionals are a class of neuter nouns, answering to the question: *What part?* They are formed by adding to the ordinals the suffix *tel*, which was originally the noun *Teil*, *part*. Before the *t* of *tel* the final *t* of the stem is dropped. There is only one exception to this formation, that is, *die Hälfte*, *the half*. Thus,

<i>die Hälfte</i> , the half	<i>ein Fünftel</i> , a fifth
<i>ein Drittel</i> , a third	<i>ein Sechstel</i> , a sixth
<i>ein Viertel</i> , a fourth	<i>ein Zehntel</i> , a tenth

Halb, *half*, is used and inflected like an adjective. Thus,

Ich habe einen halben Apfel, *I have half an apple*.

Sir waren ein und ein halbes Jahr in Amerika, *We have been in America for a year and a half*.

But in certain expressions it does not take any ending. Thus,

Es ist halb elf, halb zwei, halb drei, *It is half past ten, half past one, half past two*.

50. Diminutives.—The diminutives are formed from the ordinals by adding the word *halb*, *half*, and denote half a unit less than the corresponding number. Thus,

<i>anderthalb</i> , one and a half
<i>drittehalb</i> , two and a half
<i>viertehalb</i> , three and a half

These words are indeclinable.

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 5)

Das Zeitwort.

The Verb

1. Function of the Verb.—In every sentence the verb is the predicated word. It is meant by this that the verb is the word by means of which it is possible to make a statement, to ask a question, and to express a command or wish. So important in the sentence is the office of this part of speech that grammarians were led to call it the **verb**, from the Latin word *verbum*, meaning *the word*. They intended to imply that of all words the verb is the all-important element in speech.

2. In order to understand the real nature of the verb and the reasons for the classifications that are to follow, it is necessary to keep the following points in mind.

The most important matter with which language can be concerned is action—the various changes and movements and doings of things material and immaterial. In the expression of thought, therefore, those words are the most useful that express action—the verbs. Action is of many kinds and it is sometimes not easy to see that a certain verb really does express action. Physical action is recognized without difficulty, generally by the aid of the senses, as in the following verbs: *gehen*, *to walk*; *stoßen*, *to push*; *schreiben*, *to write*; *bauen*, *to build*. Mental action is almost as readily recognized as sensible motion, as in the verbs: *denken*, *to think*; *bewundern*, *to admire*; *betrachten*, *to consider*; *urteilen*, *to judge*.

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

It is less easy to see that real action or change is indicated by such verbs as *ruhen*, *to rest*; *liegen*, *to lie*; *schlafen*, *to sleep*; and many others like them; but most difficult of all are a few verbs called *neuter verbs*, such as *scheinen*, *to seem, to appear*; *fühlen*, *to feel*; and especially *sein*, *to be*, in its various forms. **Neuter verbs** apparently express no action, but a state or condition of that which is named by the subject. A little reflection, however, will make it clear that they express action and at the same time denote a state or condition of the actor.

When it is said, *Er sieht krank aus*, *he looks sick*, there are certain changes in the usual appearance of the person in question. In other words, certain parts of the person are doing something when he seems or looks or appears in a manner that reveals some state of his mind or body. His general bearing is, by a kind of action, making known that he is in a state described by *sick*. In short, it appears that all verbs express action of some kind.

3. Action and State.—Every verb, then, indicates some kind and degree of activity. But this is not all. Every verb also expresses or implies a state or condition of the actor or agent. Thus, when we say,

der Knabe	schreibt,	the boy	writes
	schläft,		sleeps
	wächst,		grows

each of the verbs denotes a special kind of activity as well as a certain accompanying state. The boy not only performs the act of writing, but he is in a state or condition such that he may be called a *writing boy*. He is in the condition of writing, of sleep, of growth. When the boy writes, we notice the action, but the state wherein he is, is scarcely ever considered; when he sleeps and grows, we notice the state rather than the action.

4. Verbs Active and Verbs Neuter.—It is evident that all verbs may be divided into two great classes—*active verbs* denoting an action, and *neuter verbs* denoting a state. The dividing line between these two classes cannot be fixed

with any definiteness, for it is sometimes difficult to determine whether it is the action or the state that is more prominent. Besides, a verb may be used as active in one sentence and as neuter in another.

5. Classes of Active Verbs.—The action expressed by a verb may be of a kind that involves only the actor, as when we say,

der Knabe	{	läuft,		the boy	{	walks
		schreibt,				writes
		denkt,				thinks

Again, the action may begin with the actor and end with something that receives the action or is affected by it. Thus,

der Knabe	{	liest ein Buch,		the boy	{	reads a book
		schreibt einen Brief,				writes a letter
		wirft einen Stein,				throws a stone

In these examples, the action performed by the boy operates on or affects something besides the boy himself—a *book*, a *letter*, a *stone*. These words being always in the accusative case, are called the *direct objects* of the verbs. Verbs so used are called *transitive*, because the action seems to pass over (*transire*, to go over) the verb, from the name of the actor to the name of something that receives the action.

All active verbs not so used are called *intransitive*, for the reason that the action does not go over, so to speak, from an actor to a receiver. Many grammarians also call the neuter verbs, denoting a state or condition, *intransitive verbs* and divide all verbs into the two classes, the *transitive* and the *intransitive*. For the sake of simplification we also will follow this division.

Whether a verb is transitive or intransitive depends entirely on the use that is made of it, for a verb ordinarily transitive may be used without an object. In such cases the verb is *intransitive*.

Der Mensch baut, aber die Zeit zerstört, *Man builds but time destroys.*

The verbs *bauen*, *to build*, and *zerstören*, *to destroy*, are generally transitive and followed by a direct object. In our

sentence, however, the intention is to say of man only that he performs the act of building, and of time that it is performing the act of destroying; but it is not the purpose to specify what man builds, or what time destroys. Thus, these verbs are used intransitively and must be regarded as being intransitive.

On the other hand, verbs, by their nature intransitive, may be used transitively in certain peculiar constructions. Thus, when the object expresses in noun form the action signified by the verb itself; as, *Er schlief einen tiefen Schlaf, he slept a deep sleep.* Here the verb *schlafen, to sleep*, by its nature intransitive, takes an object expressing the action contained in the verb itself.

Therefore, a **transitive verb** is a verb that expresses action represented as received by some person or thing.

An **intransitive verb** is a verb that expresses a state or condition, or action not represented as received by any person or thing.

6. When the subject of a sentence is represented by the verb as acting upon itself, we call the verb a *reflexive* verb, or the verb is said to be used *reflexively* (the action being made to turn back upon the actor, instead of passing over to a different object). It is evident that any active transitive verb may be used in this manner. Thus,

Ich wasche mich, I wash myself.

Strictly speaking, however, those only are accounted reflexive verbs, that cannot otherwise be used. Thus,

sich freuen, to rejoice

sich einbilden, to imagine

A **reflexive verb** is a verb that represents the subject as acting upon itself.

7. Some intransitive verbs are used with *es, it*, as subject, which does not mean any definite actor, but only helps express that some action or process is going on. Such

verbs are called **impersonal verbs**, or are said to be used **impersonally**. Thus,

Es regnet, *It rains.*

Es schneit, *It snows.*

8. Transitive Verbs, Active and Passive.—Transitive verbs are used in two forms:

1. *The Active Form or Active Voice.*—In this use of the transitive verb, the subject denotes the actor, and the name of the receiver of the action is the direct object of the verb.

Der Jäger **schoss** einen Hirsch, *The hunter shot a deer.*

Der Jäger, *the hunter*, is the subject and names the actor, Hirsch, *deer*, is the object and names the receiver of the action.

2. *The Passive Form or Passive Voice.*—In the passive form of a transitive verb, the subject denotes the receiver of the action, it is under the influence of the action, that is, it is passive. The actor, if denoted at all, is represented by a noun with a preposition, as, von, durch, *by*. Thus,

Ein Hirsch **wurde** (von dem Jäger) **geschossen**, *A deer was shot (by the hunter).*

Hirsch, *deer*, is the subject and names the receiver of the action, while the actor is given in an adverbial phrase with the preposition von, *by*, von dem Jäger.

INFLECTION OF THE VERB

9. Conjugation.—As we have seen, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives are inflected or changed in form, in consequence of some change in meaning or use. For a similar reason, verbs also are inflected. The inflection of nouns and pronouns is called *declension*; that of verbs *conjugation*. This word means a *yoking* or *joining together*; that is, all the different inflections of a verb are so arranged as to be seen together and the changes to be more easily recognized and compared. Verbs have four inflections: for *mode*, for *tense*, for *number*, for *person*.

Conjugation is an orderly arrangement of the various modes, tenses, numbers, and persons of a verb.

MODE

10. Function of Mode.—The sentence *er schreibt*, *he writes*, takes before the mind the form of a mere statement, that is, the guise or mode of the thought is that of a statement or declaration. The thought is merely stated or indicated. On the other hand the thought may be expressed as conditional or dependant on something else—it assumes before the mind another fashion or mode; as, for instance, in the sentence:

Wenn ich gesund wäre, würde ich spazieren gehen, If I were healthy, I would take a walk.

Again the thought must be conceived or recognized as being in the mode or dress of a command or an imperative in the following:

Sei ruhig! Be quiet!

Beeile dich! Make haste!

Or the action or state may take the form of mere mention, without special reference to any person as acting or being. This is a case of action or being in general, as a mere abstract noun and without predication; as in

Schwimmen stärkt den Körper, Swimming strengthens the body.

These different attitudes that a complete thought or a mere verbal idea assumes before the mind, are **modes**; and since these differences depend largely on the form of the verb and the way in which it is used, the verb itself is said to be in this or that mode. It is, however, generally the sentence that really has mode; a sentence appears at one time in the dress of a statement, and at another time in that of a command, condition, etc.

Mode is the form or use of a verb that shows the manner in which the action or the state of the subject is conceived by the speaker, whether actual, doubtful, or commanding.

11. Five Modes.—German verbs have five modes: the indicative, the subjunctive, the conditional, the imperative, the infinitive.

12. Indicative Mode.—The word *indicative* comes from the Latin *indicare* and means to point out or show. When a thought is expressed in the form or guise that affirms or denies, or in that of an inquiry, the predicator verb is in the *indicative mode*. Thus,

Die Sonne **ist** ein Fixstern, *The sun is a fixed star.*

Die Erde **steht** nicht stille, *The earth does not stand still.*

Ist die deutsche Sprache schwer? *Is the German language difficult?*

The **indicative mode** is that form or use of a verb by which a direct assertion or interrogation is expressed.

13. Subjunctive Mode.—*Subjunctive* comes from the Latin *subjungere*, to *subjoin*. This mode is so named because it is found generally in subjoined or dependent clauses. It is used to denote something doubtful or contingent, something contrary to fact, or to express a wish or purpose. Thus,

Man sagt, er **werde** nicht kommen, *They say, he will not come.*

Wenn das Wetter schön **wäre**, würde ich nicht hier sein, *If the weather were fair, I would not be here.*

Ich wünsche, er **hätte** das nicht gethan, *I wish he had not done it.*

The **subjunctive mode** is that form or use of a verb by which a doubtful or merely supposed or conditional idea is expressed.

14. Conditional Mode.—This mode is so named because it is used only in the conclusion of conditional sentences contrary to fact, that is to say, the conditional is used to state what would or would not be if a certain condition were fulfilled. Thus,

Wäre ich gesund, so **würde** ich ausgehen, *Were I well, I would go out.*

The **conditional mode** is that form or use of a verb which indicates what would or would not take place if a certain condition were fulfilled.

15. Imperative Mode.—The word *imperative* means commanding; this mode is so called because it is used in commanding, exhorting, entreating, etc. Thus,

Gehe weg! *Go away!*

Sei still! *Be quiet!*

Verlassen Sie uns nicht! *Do not leave us!*

Geh' in Frieden! *Go in peace!*

The subject of the imperative denotes the person or thing commanded, and is generally the second person. When the name of the person commanded is used, it is independent by address. Thus,

Karl, komm her! *Charles, come here!*

Marie, kommen Sie herein! *Mary, come in!*

The imperative mode is that form or use of a verb, by which a sentence is shown to be a command, an exhortation, or an entreaty.

16. Infinitive Mode.—The word *infinitive* means not limited. This mode of the verb is so named because it is not limited to a particular subject as to person or number, as are the other forms of the verbs which are called *finite*. The infinitive does not predicate, as do the other modes; but it names an act very much as a common noun names a thing; it is often used as a kind of verbal noun, and is then, in German, capitalized. Thus,

Laufen ist gesunder als **Fahren**, *Walking is healthier than driving.*

When, however, the infinitive retains its verbal force, it remains uncapitalized, is often joined with the preposition *zu*, *to*, and may be modified like any other mode.

Es ist edel, seinen Feinden **zu vergeben**, *It is noble to forgive one's enemies.*

The infinitive mode is that use of the verb by which action or state is represented, not as *predicated*, but as *merely named*.

17. Participles or Verbal Adjectives.—There is another kind of word derived from the verb, the *participle*. The word *participle* comes from a Latin verb meaning to share or partake of. It is so called because it partakes of the nature and function of both the verb and the adjective. The verbal character of the participle is sometimes very slightly marked. In such cases the verbal adjective may be regarded as an ordinary adjective. Thus,

Freundlich grüßend ging er an uns vorbei, *Greeting us kindly, he passed us.*

Er saß zitternd da, *He sat there trembling.*

Der liebende Gatte, *the loving husband*

Das geliebte Kind, *the beloved child*

The *participle* is a form of the verb having the function of a verb and of an adjective.

TENSE

18. Function of Tense.—We have seen that, either by its form or by its use, the action or state expressed by a verb may be presented to the mind as being in a certain attitude or mode. But the verb is also capable of showing by its forms the time of an action or a state. Thus, if I say *ich bin, I am; ich sehe, I see; ich laufe, I run*, the verbs show by their forms that the action expressed is to be understood as taking place in the present; but if the form is changed into *ich war, I was; ich sah, I saw; ich lief, I ran*, the time of the action belongs to the past. This peculiarity of the verb, by which it reveals the time of an action or a state, is called *tense*, a word meaning time.

Tense is the form or use of a verb by which it indicates the relation of time.

19. Division of Time.—There are three principal divisions of time—*die Gegenwart, the present, die Vergangenheit, the past, and die Zukunft, the future*. There are, therefore, three principal tenses: the *present tense*, the *past tense* and

the *future tense*. These are called **primary tenses** because they correspond to the primary divisions of time. Thus,

Present tense	ich liebe, <i>I love</i>
Past tense	ich liebte, <i>I loved</i>
Future tense	ich werde lieben, <i>I shall love</i>

20. In the three principal tenses, action in several conditions may be denoted:

1. As indefinite with respect to time. Thus action may be expressed as performed at some time in the present, the past, or the future, but at no particular time.

Present indefinite	er arbeitet, <i>he works</i>
Past indefinite	er arbeitete, <i>he worked</i>
Future indefinite	er wird arbeiten, <i>he shall work</i>

2. As complete or perfect. Verb phrases may represent action or state as completed or finished at some definite time. This definite time is for the present tense, the time of speaking; and for the past and future tenses it is a time before that of some other act to which reference is made.

Present perfect	er hat gearbeitet, <i>he has worked</i>
Past perfect	er hatte gearbeitet, <i>he had worked</i>
Future perfect	er wird gearbeitet haben, <i>he will have worked</i>

The present perfect is usually called the *perfect*, the past perfect is called the *pluperfect*. These shorter names will be used in the following.

21. Number and Names of the Tenses.—German verbs have, therefore, six tenses; their names are as follows: *the present tense*, die Gegenwart; *the perfect tense*, die vollendete Gegenwart; *the past tense*, die Vergangenheit; *the pluperfect tense*, die vollendete Vergangenheit; *the future tense*, die Zukunft; *the future perfect tense*, die vollendete Zukunft.

1. The present tense denotes present time. Thus,

Die Erde **dreht** sich, *The earth revolves.*

Der Vogel **singt**, *The bird is singing.*

2. The **past tense** covers all past time and reaches to the moving point called *now*. Thus,

Der Vogel sang, *The bird was singing.*

Er schrieb, *He wrote.*

3. The **future tense** denotes all time beginning at the moving point *now* and including all future time. Thus,

Der Tag wird kommen, *The day will come.*

Er wird schreiben, *He will write.*

4. The **perfect tense** denotes action or state as complete at some point in the present. Thus,

Er hat gearbeitet, *He has worked.*

Der Tag ist gekommen, *The day has come.*

5. The **pluperfect tense** denotes action or state as complete at or before some specified past time. Thus,

Er hatte geschrieben, bevor ich kam, *He had written, before I arrived.*

Die Sonne war schon aufgegangen, als ich erwachte, *The sun had risen, when I awoke.*

6. The **future perfect tense** denotes action or state as complete at or before some specified future time. Thus,

Der Zug wird schon abgefahren sein, wenn wir nach dem Bahnhof kommen werden, *The train will have left, when we arrive at the depot.*

Ich werde den Brief schon beendet haben, wenn du kommen wirst, *I will have finished the letter, when you come.*

22. Simple and Compound tenses.—With regard to their formation, tenses may be divided into two classes, the *simple tenses* and the *compound tenses*. Simple tenses are those that are formed solely by modifications of the stem of the verb. Thus,

Present tense ich schreibe, *I write*

Past tense ich schrieb, *I wrote*

Compound tenses are those that are formed by joining the verb with some other verb to help in its conjugation. Thus,

Perfect tense	ich habe geschrieben, <i>I have written</i>
Pluperfect tense	ich hatte geschrieben, <i>I had written</i>
Future tense	ich werde schreiben, <i>I shall write</i>
Future perfect tense	ich werde geschrieben haben, <i>I shall have written</i>

23. Different Modes With Regard to Time.—The meaning of the six tenses just explained applies strictly only to the ordinary tense forms of the indicative mode. In a statement or a question, time is generally a matter of importance, in other words, the tenses of the indicative carefully distinguish differences of time. In the subjunctive and conditional modes, the notion of time is often unimportant or is obscured by some other consideration; in the imperative and the infinitive tense forms, the real time of the expressed action must be gathered from the entire sentence. Thus, the indicative mode has all six tenses, the subjunctive mode also has forms for all six tenses.

In the conditional mode we distinguish only the *present conditional*, which expresses the action that would take place if a certain condition were fulfilled, and the *perfect conditional*, which expresses action that would have taken place if a certain condition had been fulfilled. The infinitive mode has only two tenses, the *present infinitive* and the *perfect infinitive*. The participle also has two tenses, the *present participle* and the *past participle*.

24. Numbers In Verbs.—Verbs have two numbers, the *singular* and the *plural*, corresponding to the twofold distinction in personal pronouns. Thus,

SINGULAR	ich schreibe , <i>I write</i>
PLURAL	wir schreiben , <i>we write</i>

25. Persons In Verbs.—Verbs have three persons, corresponding to the threefold distinction in personal pronouns: the *first person*, that is the person speaking; as ich **schreibe**, *I write*; the *second person*, that is the person

addressed, as *du schreibst, you write*; the *third person*, that is the person spoken of, as *er schreibt, he writes*.

26. Changes in the number and person of the subject require changes of the forms of German verbs, that is, German verbs are inflected not only with regard to mode and tense, but also with regard to number and person.

CONJUGATION

27. The *conjugation* of a verb, as has already been explained, is an orderly arrangement of the inflected forms of a verb in their various voices, modes, tenses, numbers, and persons. The conjugation of a verb in the active form is called the **active voice**; and that in the passive form, the **passive voice**.

In order to conjugate a German verb correctly, we must, first of all, know the inflectional base, that is, the *stem of the verb*. This stem is found by dropping from the present infinitive the ending *en*. Thus,

Infinitives	lob -en, reb -en, schreib -en, geh -en
Stems	lob, reb, schreib, geh

From these inflectional bases, or stem forms, the various modes and tenses are derived. The most important of all the derived forms are the first person of the past indicative and the past participle. For the verbs given above these two forms are:

Past indicative	(ich) lobte, (ich) rebete, (ich) schrieb, (ich) ging
Past infinitive	gelobt, gerebet, geschrieben, gegangen

It will be noticed that the inflectional base is retained in the past tense and perfect participle of only two of the foregoing words. These two are *loben* and *reben*; their derived forms are made by additions of prefixes or suffixes to the stem. The remaining two verbs form their past tense in some other way; that is, by changing the stem vowel.

28. Principal Parts of a Verb.—The three forms given above, that is, the present infinitive, the first person

singular of the past indicative, and the past participle of every verb are called the **principal parts** of a verb. They are so called because of their importance in forming the various tenses of the verb. We must know these principal parts of a verb in order to be able to conjugate it. It is therefore necessary in learning a verb to commit its principal parts to memory.

29. Weak and Strong Verbs.—According to the different formation of the past tense and the perfect participle from the stem, all German verbs are divided into two great classes, the *weak* and the *strong*, or the verbs of the *weak* or *new conjugation* and the verbs of the *strong* or *old conjugation*.

Weak verbs are those verbs that are conjugated by adding suffixes to the stem; they undergo an external change only. Thus, the principal parts of *loben* and *reden* are:

lob=en	(ich) lob:t:e	ge=lob:t
red=en	(ich) red:et:e	ge=red:et

In the weak verbs, the first person singular of the past indicative is formed by adding (e)t to the stem for a tense sign and by adding e as ending. The past participle ends in et or t and takes the prefix ge.

Strong verbs are those verbs that form their past tense, and usually their perfect participle, by changing the vowel of the root. Thus, the principal parts of *schreiben*, *to write*, and of *singen*, *to sing*, are:

schreib=en	(ich) schrieb	ge=schrieb=en
sing=en	(ich) sang	ge=sung=en

The strong verbs change, in the first person singular of the past indicative, the stem-vowel for a tense-sign and take no ending. The past participle is formed by adding the prefix ge and the suffix en.

NOTE.—These verbs are called strong, because they are inflected by internal change without the aid of a suffix, while the weak verbs require suffixes for their inflection. Almost all strong verbs are original German roots and correspond closely to the English irregular verbs. In German strong verbs are often called *irregular verbs*, while weak verbs are called *regular*.

30. Endings of Persons and Numbers.—It has been said that we must know the stem and the principal parts of a verb in order to be able to form the different tenses and modes. But German verbs are inflected not only with regard to tense and mode, but also with regard to number and person. To indicate the different persons and numbers, German uses certain endings which are added to the stem, or in the past indicative and subjunctive of weak verbs, to the tense-sign *t*.

These endings of both the weak and the strong verbs are as follows:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
First person	<i>s e</i> , or no ending	<i>s en</i>
Second Person	<i>s (e) ft</i> , <i>s e</i> , or no ending	<i>s (e) t</i>
Third Person	<i>s (e) t</i> , <i>s e</i> , or no ending	<i>s en</i>

The retention or rejection of the short vowel *e* in the terminations *(e)ft*, *(e)t* of the present tense and in the terminations *(e)te*, *(e)tet*, *(e)ten* of the past tense (see Art. 29) depend on euphony. As a rule the longer forms with *e* are preferred in stately and solemn style; the shorter in familiar and colloquial speech. But there are some instances in which the *e* must be retained:

1. When a verb ends in *b* or *t*, in *m* or *n*, the *e* must be retained. Thus,

reben, to speak; du redest, er redet, ihr redet
bilben, to form; du bildest, er bildet, ihr bildet

2. The personal ending *ft* of the second person singular is regularly separated by the vowel *e* from a preceding *s*-sound. Thus,

reisen, to travel; du reiseft
tanzén, to dance; du tanzeft
löschén, to extinguish; du löscheft

3. The *e* is also retained in many subjunctive forms in order to distinguish them from the corresponding indicative forms, which reject the *e*. Thus,

	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE
loben, <i>to praise</i> ;	du lobest ihr lobet	du lobst ihr lobt
schreiben, <i>to write</i> ;	du schreibest ihr schreibet	du schreibst ihr schreibt

4. Verbs whose stems end in *el* or *er* drop the *e* of the stem before the ending *e*; elsewhere they drop the *e* of the inflection. Thus,

tadeln, *to blame*; ich tadele, du tadelst, er tadelt
wandern, *to wander*; ich wandre, du wanderst, er wandert

31. **Ending of the Present Participle.** — The present participle is formed by adding *end* or, if the stem ends in *el* or *er*, *nd* to the stem. Thus,

schreibend, *writing* tadelnd, *blaming*
redend, *talking* wandernd, *wandering*

AUXILIARY VERBS

32. With the help of the rules given above all simple tenses can be formed. The compound tenses, however, consist of two or more words and are formed with the help of other verbs, which, when so used, are called **auxiliaries**; that is, *helping verbs*. Three such auxiliaries are used in the conjugation of other verbs: *haben, to have*; *sein, to be*; and *werden, to become*. These three verbs are used with the perfect participle or the present infinitive of another verb to form its compound parts. It is therefore necessary to give the conjugation and use of the auxiliaries first.

The German verb-forms of the following paradigms have various English equivalents. For the sake of uniformity only the most usual forms of English translation are given. The German subjunctive, for instance, may be variously translated; but only *may* and *might* are used to represent it in the models.

The Auxiliary Verb *haben*

33. The principal parts of the verb *haben*, *to have*, are:

Present infinitive	haben , <i>to have</i>
First person of the past indicative	ich hatte , <i>I had</i>
Past participle	gehabt , <i>had</i>

34. The simple forms of *haben* are as follows:

PRESENT

<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
ich habe , <i>I have</i>	ich habe , <i>I may have</i>
du hast , <i>thou hast</i>	du habeſt , <i>thou mayest have</i>
er hat , <i>he has</i>	er habe , <i>he may have</i>
wir haben , <i>we have</i>	wir haben , <i>we may have</i>
ihr habt , <i>you have</i>	ihr habet , <i>you may have</i>
sie haben , <i>they have</i>	sie haben , <i>they may have</i>

The second and the third person of the present indicative drop the *h* of the stem *hab* before the terminations *ſt* and *t*.

PAST

<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
ich hatte , <i>I had</i>	ich hätte , <i>I might have</i>
du hatteſt , <i>thou hadst</i>	du hätteſt , <i>thou mightst have</i>
er hatte , <i>he had</i>	er hätte , <i>he might have</i>
wir hätten , <i>we had</i>	wir hätten , <i>we might have</i>
ihr hattet , <i>you had</i>	ihr hättet , <i>you might have</i>
sie hätten , <i>they had</i>	sie hätten , <i>they might have</i>

In these past forms the *h* of the stem has assimilated to the tense sign *t*, and the subjunctive modifies the vowel of the stem.

IMPERATIVE

Second person singular	habe , <i>have</i>
Second person plural	hab(e)t , <i>have</i>
Second person singular or plural	haben <i>Sie</i> , <i>have</i>

PRESENT INFINITIVE

(*zu*) **haben**, (*to*) *have*

PARTICIPLE

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>
habend , <i>having</i>	gehabt , <i>had</i>

35. The compound forms of *haben* are as follows:

1. The perfect tense is formed by joining the present of *haben* with the past participle *gehabt*. Thus,

PERFECT

<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
ich habe gehabt, <i>I have had</i>	ich habe gehabt, <i>I may have had</i>
du hast gehabt, <i>thou hast had</i>	du habest gehabt, <i>thou mayst have had</i>
er hat gehabt, <i>he has had</i>	er habe gehabt, <i>he may have had</i>
wir haben gehabt, <i>we have had</i>	wir haben gehabt, <i>we may have had</i>
ihr habt gehabt, <i>you have had</i>	ihr habet gehabt, <i>you may have had</i>
sie haben gehabt, <i>they have had</i>	sie haben gehabt, <i>they may have had</i>

2. The pluperfect is formed by joining the past tense of *haben* with the past participle *gehabt*. Thus,

PLUPERFECT

<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
ich hatte	ich hätte
du hatteſt	du hätteſt
er hatte	er hätte
wir hatten	wir hätten
ihr hättet	ihr hättet
sie hatten	sie hätten

3. The perfect infinitive of *haben* is formed by joining the present infinitive of *haben* with its past participle. Thus,

PERFECT INFINITIVE

gehabt (zu) *haben*, *to have had*

4. The future tense is formed by joining the present tense of *werden* with the present infinitive of *haben*. Thus,

FUTURE

<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
ich werde	ich werde
du wirst	du werdest
er wird	er wird
wir werden	wir werden
ihr werdet	ihr werdet
sie werden	sie werden

5. The future perfect is formed by joining the present tense of *werden* to the past infinitive of *haben*. Thus,

FUTURE PERFECT

<i>Indicative</i>			<i>Subjunctive</i>		
ich werde	} <i>haben,</i>	} <i>I shall</i>	ich werde	} <i>haben,</i>	} <i>I shall</i>
du wirst			du werdest		
er wird			er werde		
wir werden			wir werden		
ihr werdet			ihr werdet		
sie werden			sie werden		
		<i>they will</i>			<i>they will</i>
		<i>have had</i>			<i>have had</i>

6. The present conditional is formed by joining the past subjunctive of *werden* with the present infinitive of *haben*. Thus,

PRESENT CONDITIONAL

ich würde	} <i>haben,</i>	} <i>I should</i>	} <i>have</i>
du würdest			
er würde			
wir würden			
ihr würdet			
sie würden			
		<i>they would</i>	

7. The perfect conditional is formed by joining the past subjunctive of *werden* with the perfect infinitive of *haben*. Thus,

PERFECT CONDITIONAL

ich würde	} <i>gehabt haben,</i>	} <i>I should</i>	} <i>have had</i>
du würdest			
er würde			
wir würden			
ihr würdet			
sie würden			
		<i>they would</i>	

The Auxillary Verb *sein*

36. The principal parts of the verb *sein*, *to be*, are:

Present infinitive	<i>sein, to be</i>
First person of the past indicative	<i>ich war, I was</i>
Past participle	<i>gewesen, been</i>

37. The simple forms are:

PRESENT

Indicative

ich bin, *I am*
 du bist, *thou art*
 er ist, *he is*
 wir sind, *we are*
 ihr seid, *you are*
 sie sind, *they are*

Subjunctive

ich sei, *I may be*
 du seiest, *thou mayst be*
 er sei, *he may be*
 wir seien, *we may be*
 ihr seiet, *you may be*
 sie seien, *they may be*

PAST

Indicative

ich war, *I was*
 du warst, *thou wast*
 er war, *he was*
 wir waren, *we were*
 ihr wart, *you were*
 sie waren, *they were*

Subjunctive

ich wäre, *I were*
 du wärest, *thou wert*
 er wäre, *he were*
 wir wären, *we were*
 ihr wäret, *you were*
 sie wären, *they were*

IMPERATIVE

Second person singular	sei, <i>be</i>
Second person plural	seid, <i>be</i>
Second person singular and plural	seien Sie, <i>be</i>

PRESENT INFINITIVE

(zu) sein, *(to) be*

PARTICIPLE

Present
 seiend, *being*

Past
 gewesen, *been*

38. The compound forms of sein, *to be*, are:

1. The perfect and pluperfect of sein are formed by joining the present and past of the verb with its past participle gewesen. Thus,

PERFECT

Indicative

ich bin	} <i>gewesen,</i>	<i>I have</i>	} <i>been</i>
du bist		<i>thou hast</i>	
er ist		<i>he has</i>	
wir sind		<i>we have</i>	
ihr seid		<i>you have</i>	
sie sind		<i>they have</i>	

Subjunctive

ich sei	} <i>gewesen,</i>	<i>I may</i>	} <i>have been</i>
du seiest		<i>thou mayst</i>	
er sei		<i>he may</i>	
wir seien		<i>we may</i>	
ihr seiet		<i>you may</i>	
sie seien		<i>they may</i>	

PLUPERFECT

<i>Indicative</i>			<i>Subjunctive</i>		
ich war	gewesen,	<i>I had</i>	ich wäre	gewesen,	<i>I had</i>
du warst		<i>thou hadst</i>	du wärest		<i>thou hadst</i>
er war		<i>he had</i>	er wäre		<i>he had</i>
wir waren		<i>we had</i>	wir wären		<i>we had</i>
ihr wart(e)t		<i>you had</i>	ihr wäret		<i>you had</i>
sie waren		<i>they had</i>	sie wären		<i>they had</i>

PERFECT INFINITIVE

gewesen (zu) sein, (to) have been

2. The future, future perfect, and the present and perfect conditional of *sein* are formed, like the corresponding forms of *haben*, with the help of the auxiliary *werden*. Thus,

FUTURE

<i>Indicative</i>			<i>Subjunctive</i>		
ich werde	sein,	<i>I shall</i>	ich werde	sein,	<i>I shall</i>
du wirst		<i>thou wilt</i>	du werdest		<i>thou wilt</i>
er wird		<i>he will</i>	er werde		<i>he will</i>
wir werden		<i>we shall</i>	wir werden		<i>we shall</i>
ihr werdet		<i>you will</i>	ihr werdet		<i>you will</i>
sie werden		<i>they will</i>	sie werden		<i>they will</i>

FUTURE PERFECT

<i>Indicative</i>			<i>Subjunctive</i>		
ich werde	gewesen sein,	<i>I shall</i>	ich werde	gewesen sein,	<i>I shall</i>
du wirst		<i>thou wilt</i>	du werdest		<i>thou wilt</i>
er wird		<i>he will</i>	er werde		<i>he will</i>
wir werden		<i>we shall</i>	wir werden		<i>we shall</i>
ihr werdet		<i>you will</i>	ihr werdet		<i>you will</i>
sie werden		<i>they will</i>	sie werden		<i>they will</i>

PRESENT CONDITIONAL

ich würde	sein,	<i>I should</i>	be
du würdest		<i>thou wouldst</i>	
er würde		<i>he would</i>	
wir würden		<i>we should</i>	
ihr würdet		<i>you would</i>	
sie würden		<i>they would</i>	

PERFECT CONDITIONAL

ich würde	} gewesen sein.	I should	} have been
du würdest		thou wouldst	
er würde		he would	
wir würden		we should	
ihr würdet		you would	
sie würden		they would	

The Auxiliary Verb werden

39. The principal parts of werden, *to become*, are:

Present infinitive	werden, <i>to become</i>
First person of the past indicative	ich wurde (new form), ich ward (old form)
Past participle	geworden, <i>become</i>

40. The simple forms of werden are:

PRESENT

Indicative

ich werde, <i>I become</i>
du wirst, <i>thou becomest</i>
er wird, <i>he becomes</i>
wir werden, <i>we become</i>
ihr werdet, <i>you become</i>
sie werden, <i>they become</i>

Subjunctive

ich werde, <i>I may become</i>
du werdest, <i>thou mayst become</i>
er werde, <i>he may become</i>
wir werden, <i>we may become</i>
ihr werdet, <i>you may become</i>
sie werden, <i>they may become</i>

PAST

Indicative

ich wurde or ward, <i>I became</i>
du wurdest or wardst, <i>thou becamest</i>
er wurde or ward, <i>he became</i>
wir wurden, <i>we became</i>
ihr wurdet, <i>you became</i>
sie wurden, <i>they became</i>

Subjunctive

ich würde, <i>I might become</i>
du würdest, <i>thou mightst become</i>
er würde, <i>he might become</i>
wir würden, <i>we might become</i>
ihr würdet, <i>you might become</i>
sie würden, <i>they might become</i>

IMPERATIVE

Second person singular	werde, <i>become</i>
Second person plural	werdet, <i>become</i>
Second person singular and plural	werden Sie, <i>become</i>

PRESENT INFINITIVE
(zu) werden, (to) become

PARTICIPLE	
<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>
werdend, becoming	geworden, become

41. The compound forms of werden are:

1. The perfect and pluperfect of werden are formed by joining the present and past of sein with the participle geworden. Thus,

PERFECT			
<i>Indicative</i>		<i>Subjunctive</i>	
ich bin	<i>I have</i>	ich sei	<i>I (may)</i>
du bist	<i>thou hast</i>	du seiest	<i>thou mayst</i>
er ist	<i>he has</i>	er sei	<i>he may</i>
wir sind	<i>we have</i>	wir seien	<i>we may</i>
ihr seid	<i>you have</i>	ihr seiet	<i>you may</i>
sie sind	<i>they have</i>	sie seien	<i>they may</i>
geworden, } become		geworden, } have become	

PLUPERFECT			
<i>Indicative</i>		<i>Subjunctive</i>	
ich war	<i>I had</i>	ich wäre	<i>I might</i>
du warst	<i>thou hadst</i>	du wärest	<i>thou mightst</i>
er war	<i>he had</i>	er wäre	<i>he might</i>
wir waren	<i>we had</i>	wir wären	<i>we might</i>
ihr wäret	<i>you had</i>	ihr wäret	<i>you might</i>
sie waren	<i>they had</i>	sie wären	<i>they might</i>
geworden, } become		geworden, } have become	

PERFECT INFINITIVE
geworden (zu) sein, (to) have become

2. The future, future perfect, and the present and perfect conditional of werden are formed, like the corresponding forms of haben and sein, with the help of its present and past forms. Thus,

FUTURE			
<i>Indicative</i>		<i>Subjunctive</i>	
ich werde	<i>I shall</i>	ich werde	<i>I shall</i>
du wirst	<i>thou wilt</i>	du werdest	<i>thou wilt</i>
er wird	<i>he will</i>	er werde	<i>he will</i>
wir werden	<i>we shall</i>	wir werden	<i>we shall</i>
ihr werdet	<i>you will</i>	ihr werdet	<i>you will</i>
sie werden	<i>they will</i>	sie werden	<i>they will</i>
werden, } become		werden, } become	

FUTURE PERFECT

<i>Indicative</i>			<i>Subjunctive</i>		
ich werde	sein,	<i>I shall</i>	ich werde	sein,	<i>I shall</i>
du wirst	werden	<i>thou wilt</i>	du werdest	werden	<i>thou wilt</i>
er wird		<i>he will</i>	er werde		<i>he will</i>
wir werden	geworden sein,	<i>we shall</i>	wir werden	geworden sein,	<i>we shall</i>
ihr werdet		<i>you will</i>	ihr werdet		<i>you will</i>
sie werden		<i>they will</i>	sie werden		<i>they will</i>

PRESENT CONDITIONAL

ich würde		<i>I should</i>	
du würdest		<i>thou wouldst</i>	
er würde	werden,	<i>he would</i>	<i>become</i>
wir würden		<i>we should</i>	
ihr würdet		<i>you would</i>	
sie würden		<i>they would</i>	

PERFECT CONDITIONAL

ich würde		<i>I should</i>	
du würdest		<i>thou wouldst</i>	
er würde	geworden sein,	<i>he would</i>	<i>have become</i>
wir würden		<i>we should</i>	
ihr würdet		<i>you would</i>	
sie würden		<i>they would</i>	

USES OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS

42. As auxiliaries, the verbs *haben*, *sein*, and *werden* enter into the composition of the compound tenses of all classes of verbs. The perfect and pluperfect tenses of verbs must be conjugated sometimes with *haben* and sometimes with *sein*; it becomes, therefore, important to know when to use the one and when the other. The determination of this question depends chiefly upon the signification of the main verb. The general rules governing the use of the auxiliaries are given in the following.

43. *Haben* is used as an auxiliary to form the perfect and the pluperfect tenses, indicative and subjunctive, and the

perfect infinitive of all transitive verbs, of all reflexive verbs, of most impersonal, and many intransitive verbs.

1. The perfect tense is formed by the present tense of **haben** joined with the perfect participle of the verb. Thus,

ich **habe** gelobt, *I have praised*
wir **haben** gesehen, *we have seen*

2. The pluperfect tense is formed by joining the past tense of **haben** with the past participle of the verb. Thus,

ich **hatte** gelobt, *I had praised*
wir **hatten** gesehen, *we had seen*

3. The infinitive perfect is formed by joining the present infinitive of **haben** with the past participle. Thus,

gelobt **haben**, *to have praised*
gesehen **haben**, *to have seen*

44. **Sein** is used as an auxiliary to form the perfect and the pluperfect tense, indicative and subjunctive, and the perfect infinitive of many intransitive verbs.

1. The perfect tense is formed by joining the present tense of **sein** with the perfect participle of the verb. Thus,

ich **bin** gegangen, *I have walked*
wir **sind** geblieben, *we have stayed*

2. The pluperfect tense is formed by joining the past tense of **sein** with the past participle of the verb. Thus,

ich **war** gegangen, *I had walked*
wir **waren** geblieben, *we had stayed*

3. The infinitive perfect is formed by joining the present infinitive of **sein** with the past participle of the verb. Thus,

gegangen **sein**, *to have walked*
geblieben **sein**, *to have stayed*

Most of the intransitives that form their perfect tenses with the forms of **sein**, signify a change of condition, or a movement to or from a place. Some of them are:

ankommen, *to arrive*
 aufgehen, *to rise, to open*
 aufstehen, *to rise, to get up*
 ausgehen, *to go out*
 begegnen, *to meet*
 bleiben, *to stay, to remain*
 eilen, *to hasten, to hurry*
 einfallen, *to fall in*
 einschlafen, *to fall asleep*
 eintreffen, *to arrive*
 eintreten, *to enter*
 entstehen, *to originate*
 erscheinen, *to appear*
 erwachen, *to awake*
 fahren, *to go driving*
 fallen, *to fall*
 fliegen, *to fly*
 fliehen, *to flee*
 fließen, *to flow*
 folgen, *to follow*
 fortgehen, *to go away*
 gehen, *to go, to walk*
 gelingen, *to succeed*
 geschehen, *to happen*
 kommen, *to come*

kriechen, *to creep*
 laufen, *to run*
 losgehen, *to go off, start*
 reisen, *to travel, to go*
 reiten, *to ride*
 scheiden, *to depart*
 schwimmen, *to swim*
 sein, *to be*
 sinken, *to sink*
 springen, *to jump, to crack*
 steigen, *to rise, to mount*
 sterben, *to die*
 stürzen, *to fall, to tumble*
 treten, *to step, to tread*
 vergehen, *to pass, to perish*
 verschwinden, *to disappear*
 vorkommen, *to occur*
 wachsen, *to grow, to increase*
 wandern, *to wander*
 weichen, *to recede, to give away*
 weitergehen, *to go on*
 werden, *to become*
 ziehen, *to march, to move*
 zugehen, *to come to pass*

Examples:

Ich bin gerade **angekommen**, *I have just arrived.*

Wir **waren** ihm **gefolgt**, *We had followed him.*

Sie **waren** **gefallen**, *They had fallen.*

45. With the auxiliary **werden** are formed the future and the future perfect tenses, indicative and subjunctive, and the conditional mode, present and perfect, of all verbs.

1. The future tense is formed by joining the present tense of **werden** with the present infinitive of the verb. Thus,

ich **werde** loben, *I shall praise*

ich **werde** gehen, *I shall walk*

2. The future perfect is formed by joining the present tense of **werden** with the perfect infinitive of the verb. Thus,

ich **werde** gelobt haben, *I shall have praised*

ich **werde** gegangen sein, *I shall have walked*

3. The present conditional is formed by joining the past subjunctive of *werden* with the present infinitive. Thus,

ich würde haben, I would have

ich würde gehen, I would walk

4. The past conditional is formed by joining the past subjunctive of *werden* with the perfect infinitive. Thus,

ich würde gelobt haben, I would have praised

wir würden gegangen sein, I would have walked

46. In the following tables a systematical arrangement of all forms of the three auxiliary verbs is given. The different modes of every tense are set in horizontal order, while the perpendicular rows show the forms of every mode in the different tenses. By this arrangement a complete picture of the conjugation of any verb is easily obtained.

TABLE I

haben*to have*

	Indicative	Subjunctive
Present	ich habe, <i>I have</i> , du hast, <i>thou hast</i> er hat, <i>he has</i> wir haben, <i>we have</i> ihr hab(e)t, <i>you have</i> sie haben, <i>they have</i>	ich habe, <i>I may have</i> du habest, <i>thou mayst have</i> er habe, <i>he may have</i> wir haben, <i>we may have</i> ihr habet, <i>you may have</i> sie haben, <i>they may have</i>
Past	ich hatte, <i>I had</i> du hättest, <i>thou hadst</i> er hatte, <i>he had</i> wir hatten, <i>we had</i> ihr hättet, <i>you had</i> sie hätten, <i>they had</i>	ich hätte, <i>I might have</i> du hättest, <i>thou mightst have</i> er hätte, <i>he might have</i> wir hätten, <i>we might have</i> ihr hättet, <i>you might have</i> sie hätten, <i>they might have</i>
Perfect	ich habe gehabt, <i>I have had</i> du hast gehabt, <i>thou hast had</i> er hat gehabt, <i>he has had</i> wir haben gehabt, <i>we have had</i> ihr habet gehabt, <i>you have had</i> sie haben gehabt, <i>they have had</i>	ich habe gehabt, <i>I may have had</i> du habest gehabt, <i>thou mayst have had</i> er habe gehabt, <i>he may have had</i> wir haben gehabt, <i>we may have had</i> ihr habet gehabt, <i>you may have had</i> sie haben gehabt, <i>they may have had</i>
Pluperfect	ich werde haben, <i>I shall have</i> du wirst haben, <i>thou shalt have</i> er wird haben, <i>he will have</i> wir werden haben, <i>we shall have</i> ihr werdet haben, <i>you will have</i> sie werden haben, <i>they will have</i>	ich hätte gehabt, <i>I might have had</i> du hättest gehabt, <i>thou mightst have had</i> er hätte gehabt, <i>he might have had</i> wir hätten gehabt, <i>we might have had</i> ihr hättet gehabt, <i>you might have had</i> sie hätten gehabt, <i>they might have had</i>
Future	ich hatte gehabt, <i>I had had</i> du hättest gehabt, <i>thou hadst had</i> er hatte gehabt, <i>he had had</i> wir hatten gehabt, <i>we had had</i> ihr hättet gehabt, <i>you had had</i> sie hätten gehabt, <i>they had had</i>	ich werde haben, <i>I shall have</i> du werdest haben, <i>thou wilt have</i> er werde haben, <i>he will have</i> wir werden haben, <i>we shall have</i> ihr werdet haben, <i>you shall have</i> sie werden haben, <i>they shall have</i>
Future Perfect	ich werde du wirst er wird wir werden ihr werdet sie werden	I shall thou wilt he will we shall you will they will
	haben, } gehabt haben, } } have had	haben, } gehabt haben, } } have had

TABLE I—(Continued)

Haben

to have

Conditional	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle			
<div><div><div>irbe</div><div>irdest</div><div>irbe</div><div>würden</div><div>würdest</div><div>würden</div></div><div><div>haben,</div><div>haben,</div><div>haben,</div><div>haben,</div><div>haben,</div><div>haben,</div></div><div><div>I should</div><div>thou wouldst</div><div>he would</div><div>we should</div><div>you would</div><div>they would</div></div><div><div>have</div><div>have</div><div>have</div><div>have</div><div>have</div><div>have</div></div></div> <tr><td><div><div>habe, have</div><div>habet, have</div><div>haben Sie, have</div></div></td><td><div><div>(zu) haben,</div><div>to have</div></div></td><td><div><div>habend,</div><div>having</div></div></td></tr> <tr><td><div><div><div>irbe</div><div>irdest</div><div>irbe</div><div>würden</div><div>würdest</div><div>würden</div></div><div><div>gehabt haben,</div><div>gehabt haben,</div><div>gehabt haben,</div><div>gehabt haben,</div><div>gehabt haben,</div><div>gehabt haben,</div></div><div><div>I should</div><div>thou wouldst</div><div>he would</div><div>we should</div><div>you would</div><div>they would</div></div><div><div>have had</div><div>have had</div><div>have had</div><div>have had</div><div>have had</div><div>have had</div></div></div><tr><td><div><div>gehabt (zu)</div><div>haben,</div><div>to have had</div></div></td><td><div><div>gehabt, had</div></div></td></tr></td></tr>	<div><div>habe, have</div><div>habet, have</div><div>haben Sie, have</div></div>	<div><div>(zu) haben,</div><div>to have</div></div>	<div><div>habend,</div><div>having</div></div>	<div><div><div>irbe</div><div>irdest</div><div>irbe</div><div>würden</div><div>würdest</div><div>würden</div></div><div><div>gehabt haben,</div><div>gehabt haben,</div><div>gehabt haben,</div><div>gehabt haben,</div><div>gehabt haben,</div><div>gehabt haben,</div></div><div><div>I should</div><div>thou wouldst</div><div>he would</div><div>we should</div><div>you would</div><div>they would</div></div><div><div>have had</div><div>have had</div><div>have had</div><div>have had</div><div>have had</div><div>have had</div></div></div> <tr><td><div><div>gehabt (zu)</div><div>haben,</div><div>to have had</div></div></td><td><div><div>gehabt, had</div></div></td></tr>	<div><div>gehabt (zu)</div><div>haben,</div><div>to have had</div></div>	<div><div>gehabt, had</div></div>
<div><div>habe, have</div><div>habet, have</div><div>haben Sie, have</div></div>	<div><div>(zu) haben,</div><div>to have</div></div>	<div><div>habend,</div><div>having</div></div>				
<div><div><div>irbe</div><div>irdest</div><div>irbe</div><div>würden</div><div>würdest</div><div>würden</div></div><div><div>gehabt haben,</div><div>gehabt haben,</div><div>gehabt haben,</div><div>gehabt haben,</div><div>gehabt haben,</div><div>gehabt haben,</div></div><div><div>I should</div><div>thou wouldst</div><div>he would</div><div>we should</div><div>you would</div><div>they would</div></div><div><div>have had</div><div>have had</div><div>have had</div><div>have had</div><div>have had</div><div>have had</div></div></div> <tr><td><div><div>gehabt (zu)</div><div>haben,</div><div>to have had</div></div></td><td><div><div>gehabt, had</div></div></td></tr>	<div><div>gehabt (zu)</div><div>haben,</div><div>to have had</div></div>	<div><div>gehabt, had</div></div>				
<div><div>gehabt (zu)</div><div>haben,</div><div>to have had</div></div>	<div><div>gehabt, had</div></div>					

TABLE II

Ein

to be

	Indicative	Subjunctive
Present	<p>ich bin, <i>I am</i> du bist, <i>thou art</i> er ist, <i>he is</i> wir sind, <i>we are</i> ihr seid, <i>you are</i> sie sind, <i>they are</i></p>	<p>ich sei, <i>I may be</i> du seiest, <i>thou mayst be</i> er sei, <i>he may be</i> wir seien, <i>we may be</i> ihr seiet, <i>you may be</i> sie seien, <i>they may be</i></p>
Past	<p>ich war, <i>I was</i> du warst, <i>thou wast</i> er war, <i>he was</i> wir waren, <i>we were</i> ihr waret, <i>you were</i> sie waren, <i>they were</i></p>	<p>ich wäre, <i>I might be</i> du wärest, <i>thou mightst be</i> er wäre, <i>he might be</i> wir wären, <i>we might be</i> ihr wäret, <i>you might be</i> sie wären, <i>they might be</i></p>
Perfect	<p>ich bin gewesen, <i>I have been</i> du bist gewesen, <i>thou hast been</i> er ist gewesen, <i>he has been</i> wir sind gewesen, <i>we have been</i> ihr seid gewesen, <i>you have been</i> sie sind gewesen, <i>they have been</i></p>	<p>ich sei gewesen, <i>I may have been</i> du seiest gewesen, <i>thou mayst have been</i> er sei gewesen, <i>he may have been</i> wir seien gewesen, <i>we may have been</i> ihr seiet gewesen, <i>you may have been</i> sie seien gewesen, <i>they may have been</i></p>
Pluperfect	<p>ich war gewesen, <i>I had been</i> du warst gewesen, <i>thou hadst been</i> er war gewesen, <i>he had been</i> wir waren gewesen, <i>we have been</i> ihr wart gewesen, <i>you have been</i> sie waren gewesen, <i>they have been</i></p>	<p>ich wäre du wärest er wäre wir wären ihr wäret sie wären</p> <p style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">} <i>gewesen,</i></p> <p style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">} <i>I might thou mightst he might we might you might they might</i></p> <p style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">} <i>have been</i></p>
Future	<p>ich werde sein, <i>I shall be</i> du wirst sein, <i>thou wilt be</i> er wird sein, <i>he will be</i> wir werden sein, <i>we shall be</i> ihr werdet sein, <i>you will be</i> sie werden sein, <i>they will be</i></p>	<p>ich werde sein, <i>I shall be</i> du werdest sein, <i>thou wilt be</i> er werde sein, <i>he will be</i> wir werden sein, <i>we shall be</i> ihr werdet sein, <i>you will be</i> sie werden sein, <i>they will be</i></p>
Future Perfect	<p>ich werde du wirst er wird wir werden ihr werdet sie werden</p> <p style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">} <i>gewesen sein,</i></p> <p style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">} <i>I shall thou wilt he will we shall you will they will</i></p> <p style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">} <i>have been</i></p>	<p>ich werde du werdest er werde wir werden ihr werdet sie werden</p> <p style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">} <i>gewesen sein,</i></p> <p style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">} <i>I shall thou wilt he will we shall you will they will</i></p> <p style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">} <i>have been</i></p>

TABLE II—(Continued)

Sein

to be

Conditional	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
erbe sein, <i>I should be</i> erdest sein, <i>thou wouldst be</i> erbe sein, <i>he would be</i> ürden sein, <i>we should be</i> irdet sein, <i>you would be</i> rben sein, <i>they would be</i>	sei, <i>be</i> seib, <i>be</i> seien Sie, <i>be</i>	(zu) sein, <i>to be</i>	seiend, <i>being</i>
erbe erdest erbe ürden irdet rben	} <i>I should</i> } <i>thou wouldst</i> } <i>he would</i> } <i>we should</i> } <i>you would</i> } <i>they would</i>	gewesen (zu) sein, <i>to have been</i>	gewesen, <i>been</i>

Werden

TABLE III

to become

	Indicative	Subjunctive						
Present	ich werde, <i>I become</i> du wirst, <i>thou becomest</i> er wird, <i>he becomes</i> wir werden, <i>we become</i> ihr werdet, <i>you become</i> sie werden, <i>they become</i>	ich werde, <i>I may become</i> du werdest, <i>thou mayst become</i> er werde, <i>he may become</i> wir werden, <i>we may become</i> ihr werdet, <i>you may become</i> sie werden, <i>they may become</i>						
Past	ich wurde or ward, <i>I became</i> du wurdest or wardst, <i>thou becamest</i> er wurde or ward, <i>he became</i> wir wurden, <i>we became</i> ihr wurdet, <i>you became</i> sie wurden, <i>they became</i>	ich würde, <i>I might become</i> du würdest, <i>thou mightst become</i> er würde, <i>he might become</i> wir würden, <i>we might become</i> ihr würdet, <i>you might become</i> sie würden, <i>they might become</i>						
Perfect	ich bin geworden, <i>I have become</i> du bist geworden, <i>thou hast become</i> er ist geworden, <i>he has become</i> wir sind geworden, <i>we have become</i> ihr seid geworden, <i>you have become</i> sie sind geworden, <i>they have become</i>	ich sei du seiest er sei wir seien ihr seiet sie seien <table style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: middle;">} geworden,</td><td style="vertical-align: middle;"> <i>I may</i> <i>thou mayst</i> <i>he may</i> <i>we may</i> <i>you may</i> <i>they may</i> </td><td style="vertical-align: middle;">} have become</td></tr> </table>	} geworden,	<i>I may</i> <i>thou mayst</i> <i>he may</i> <i>we may</i> <i>you may</i> <i>they may</i>	} have become			
} geworden,	<i>I may</i> <i>thou mayst</i> <i>he may</i> <i>we may</i> <i>you may</i> <i>they may</i>	} have become						
Pluperfect	ich war geworden, <i>I had become</i> du warst geworden, <i>thou hadst become</i> er war geworden, <i>he has become</i> wir waren geworden, <i>we have become</i> ihr wart geworden, <i>you have become</i> sie waren geworden, <i>they have become</i>	ich wäre du wärest er wäre wir wären ihr wäret sie wären <table style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: middle;">} geworden,</td><td style="vertical-align: middle;"> <i>I might</i> <i>thou mightst</i> <i>he might</i> <i>we might</i> <i>you might</i> <i>they might</i> </td><td style="vertical-align: middle;">} have become</td></tr> </table>	} geworden,	<i>I might</i> <i>thou mightst</i> <i>he might</i> <i>we might</i> <i>you might</i> <i>they might</i>	} have become			
} geworden,	<i>I might</i> <i>thou mightst</i> <i>he might</i> <i>we might</i> <i>you might</i> <i>they might</i>	} have become						
Future	ich werde werden, <i>I shall become</i> du wirst werden, <i>thou wilt become</i> er wird werden, <i>he will become</i> wir werden werden, <i>we shall become</i> ihr werdet werden, <i>you will become</i> sie werden werden, <i>they will become</i>	ich werde werden, <i>I shall become</i> du werdest werden, <i>thou wilt become</i> er werde werden, <i>he will become</i> wir werden werden, <i>we shall become</i> ihr werdet werden, <i>you will become</i> sie werden werden, <i>they will become</i>						
Perfect Future	ich werde du wirst er wird wir werden ihr werdet sie werden <table style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: middle;">} sein,</td><td style="vertical-align: middle;"> <i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i> </td><td style="vertical-align: middle;">} have become</td></tr> </table>	} sein,	<i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i>	} have become	ich werde du werdest er werde wir werden ihr werdet sie werden <table style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: middle;">} sein,</td><td style="vertical-align: middle;"> <i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i> </td><td style="vertical-align: middle;">} have become</td></tr> </table>	} sein,	<i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i>	} have become
} sein,	<i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i>	} have become						
} sein,	<i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i>	} have become						

Werden

to become

Conditional	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="margin-right: 10px;"> werde werdest werde würden werdet werden </div> <div style="margin-right: 10px;"> werden, </div> <div style="margin-right: 10px;"> <i>I should thou wouldst he would we should you would they would</i> </div> <div style="margin-left: 10px;"> } become </div> </div>	werde, become werdet, become werden Sie, become	(zu) werden, to become	werdend, becoming
<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="margin-right: 10px;"> werde werdest werde würden werdet werden </div> <div style="margin-right: 10px;"> geworden sein, </div> <div style="margin-right: 10px;"> <i>I should thou wouldst he would we should you would they would</i> </div> <div style="margin-left: 10px;"> } have become </div> </div>		geworden (zu) sein, to have become	geworden, become

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 6)

Das Zeitwort—(Continued)

1. German verbs, as explained in Part 5, are divided into two distinct classes, according to the formation of the past indicative and the perfect participle: verbs of the *weak* and verbs of the *strong conjugation*. Verbs of the weak conjugation, being the more numerous and representing the modern process in conjugation, are sometimes called *regular verbs*, while verbs of the strong conjugation are named *irregular verbs*. The weak conjugation, being the simpler and most frequently used form, will be treated first.

WEAK OR REGULAR CONJUGATION

2. **Weak verbs** are conjugated by adding suffixes to the stem; that is, they undergo an external change. Thus, the first person singular of the past indicative adds *t* or *et* to the stem for a tense sign, and *e* for an ending. The past participle ends in *(e)t* and usually takes the prefix *ge*. It is, therefore, not difficult to form the principal parts of the weak verbs. Thus,

STEM	INFINITIVE	FIRST PERSON OF PAST INDICATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
lob	lob-en	ich lob-t-e	ge-lob-t
reb	reb-en	ich reb-et-e	ge-reb-et
handel	handel-n	ich handel-t-e	ge-handel-t

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

3. The regular endings of the weak verbs are:

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>
	<i>Singular</i>			
First person	—e	—(e)te	—e	—(e)te
Second person	—(e)st	—(e)teſt	—eſt	—(e)teſt
Third person	—(e)t	—(e)te	—e	—(e)te
	<i>Plural</i>			
First person	—en	—(e)ten	—en	—(e)ten
Second person	—(e)t	—(e)tet	—et	—(e)tet
Third person	—en	—(e)ten	—en	—(e)ten
	IMPERATIVE			
	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
	—e		—(e)t	
INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE		PERFECT PARTICIPLE	
—en	—enb		—ge(e)t	

4. The Vowel e Before Certain Terminations.—The vowel e in the endings (e)ſt, (e)t, (e)te, (e)tet, (e)ten, is used, for euphonic reasons only, in the following cases:

1. To separate the tense sign t of the past, the participial ending t, or the personal endings t and ſt from a preceding b or t, or from m or n preceded by a mute consonant. Thus,

reden, *to speak*, du redest, er redet, ihr redet, ich redete, geredet
atmen, *to breathe*, du atmeſt, er atmet, ihr atmet, ich atmete, geatmet

2. To separate the personal ending ſt from a preceding s sound; as, du tanzeſt, du reijeſt.

3. To distinguish the subjunctive forms from the indicative forms; as, er lobt, er lobet.

5. Weak verbs are conjugated like the modal verbs loben, reden, and folgen, which are given below and in tables I and II. Of these the verb reden takes the vowel e before the terminations.

Modal Verb loben

6. The principal parts of the verb loben, to praise, are:

Present infinitive	loben, <i>to praise</i>
First person of the past indicative	ich lobte, <i>I praised</i>
Past participle	gelobt, <i>praised</i>

7. The simple forms of loben are as follows:

<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>	
PRESENT		
ich lobe, <i>I praise</i>	ich lobe, <i>I may praise</i>	
du lobst, <i>thou praisest</i>	du lobest, <i>thou mayst praise</i>	
er lobt, <i>he praises</i>	er lobe, <i>he may praise</i>	
wir loben, <i>we praise</i>	wir loben, <i>we may praise</i>	
ihr lobt, <i>you praise</i>	ihr lobet, <i>you may praise</i>	
sie loben, <i>they praise</i>	sie loben, <i>they may praise</i>	
PAST		
ich lobte, <i>I praised</i>	ich lobte, <i>I might praise</i>	
du lobtest, <i>thou praisedst</i>	du lobtest, <i>thou mightst praise</i>	
er lobte, <i>he praised</i>	er lobte, <i>he might praised</i>	
wir lobten, <i>we praised</i>	wir lobten, <i>we might praise</i>	
ihr lobtet, <i>you praised</i>	ihr lobtet, <i>you might praise</i>	
sie lobten, <i>they praised</i>	sie lobten, <i>they might praise</i>	
IMPERATIVE		
Singular	lobe, <i>praise</i>	
Plural	lob(e)t, <i>praise</i>	
Singular and plural	loben Sie, <i>praise</i>	
PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE
(zu) loben, <i>to praise</i>	lobend, <i>praising</i>	gelobt, <i>praised</i>

8. **Compound Forms of loben.**—The perfect and pluperfect tenses of loben are formed with the help of the auxiliary haben; future and conditional tenses with the help of the auxiliary werden. Thus,

<i>Indicative</i>		<i>Subjunctive</i>
PERFECT		
ich habe gelobt, <i>I have praised, etc.</i>		ich habe gelobt, <i>I may have praised, etc.</i>
du hast gelobt, etc.		du habest gelobt, etc.
PLUPERFECT		
ich hatte gelobt, <i>I had praised, etc.</i>		ich hätte gelobt, <i>I might have praised, etc.</i>
du hättest gelobt, etc.		du hättest gelobt, etc.
FUTURE		
ich werde loben, <i>I shall praise, etc.</i>		ich werde loben, <i>I shall praise, etc.</i>
du wirst loben, etc.		du werdest loben, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

ich werde gelobt haben,
I shall have praised, etc.
 du wirst gelobt haben,
 etc.

ich werde gelobt haben,
I shall have praised, etc.
 du werdest gelobt haben,
 etc.

PRESENT CONDITIONAL

ich würde loben,
I should praise, etc.
 du würdest loben,
 etc.

PERFECT CONDITIONAL

ich würde gelobt haben,
I should have praised, etc.
 du würdest gelobt haben,
 etc.

PERFECT INFINITIVE

gelobt (zu) haben, *to have praised*

Modal Verb reden.

9. The principal parts of reden, *to speak*, are:

Present infinitive	reden, <i>to speak</i>
First person of the past indicative	ich redete, <i>I spoke</i>
Past participle	geredet, <i>spoken</i>

10. The simple forms of reden are as follows:

Indicative

ich rede, *I speak*
 du redest, *thou speakest*
 er redet, *he speaks*
 wir reden, *we speak*
 ihr redet, *you speak*
 sie reden, *they speak*

Subjunctive

PRESENT

ich rede, *I may speak*
 du redest, *thou mayst speak*
 er rede, *he may speak*
 wir reden, *we may speak*
 ihr redet, *you may speak*
 sie reden, *they may speak*

PAST

ich redete, *I spoke*
 du redetest, *thou spokest*
 er redete, *he spoke*
 wir redeten, *we spoke*
 ihr redetet, *you spoke*
 sie redeten, *they spoke*

ich redete, *I might speak*
 du redetest, *thou mightst speak*
 er redete, *he might speak*
 wir redeten, *we might speak*
 ihr redetet, *you might speak*
 sie redeten, *they might speak*

IMPERATIVE

Singular	rede, <i>speak</i>
Plural	redet, <i>speak</i>
Singular and plural	reden Sie, <i>speak</i>

PRESENT INFINITIVE
 (zu) reden, *to speak*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE
 redend, *speaking*

PAST PARTICIPLE
 geredet, *spoken*

11. Compound Forms of reden.—The perfect and pluperfect tenses of reden are formed with the auxiliary haben, the future and conditional tenses with the help of the auxiliary werden. Thus,

<i>Indicative</i>		<i>Subjunctive</i>
	PERFECT	
ich habe geredet, <i>I have spoken</i> , etc.		ich habe geredet, <i>I may have spoken</i> , etc.
du hast geredet, etc.		du habest geredet, etc.
	PLUPERFECT	
ich hatte geredet, <i>I had spoken</i>		ich hätte geredet, <i>I might have spoken</i>
du hättest geredet, etc.		du hättest geredet, etc.
	FUTURE	
ich werde reden, <i>I shall speak</i>		ich werde reden, <i>I shall speak</i>
du wirst reden, etc.		du werdest reden, etc.
	FUTURE PERFECT	
ich werde geredet haben, <i>I shall have spoken</i>		ich werde geredet haben, <i>I shall have spoken</i>
du wirst geredet haben, etc.		du werdest geredet haben, etc.
PRESENT CONDITIONAL		PERFECT CONDITIONAL
ich würde reden, <i>I should speak</i>		ich würde geredet haben, <i>I should have spoken</i>
du würdest reden, etc.		du würdest geredet haben, etc.
	PERFECT INFINITIVE	
	geredet (zu) haben, <i>to have spoken</i>	

12. In order to display the regular conjugation more clearly, tables containing the complete inflection of loben, *to praise*, and of folgen, *to follow*, are given. They will be found exceedingly convenient for ready reference. Loben forms its perfect and pluperfect tenses with the auxiliary haben, but the auxiliary sein must be employed to form the perfect and pluperfect tenses of folgen.

TABLE I

loben,

to praise

	Indicative	Subjunctive
Present	ich lobe, <i>I praise</i> du lobst, <i>thou praisest</i> er lobt, <i>he praises</i> wir loben, <i>we praise</i> ihr lobt, <i>you praise</i> sie loben, <i>they praise</i>	ich lobe, <i>I may praise</i> du lobest, <i>thou mayst praise</i> er lobe, <i>he may praise</i> wir loben, <i>we may praise</i> ihr lobet, <i>you may praise</i> sie loben, <i>they may praise</i>
Past	ich lobte, <i>I praised</i> du lobtest, <i>thou praisedst</i> er lobte, <i>he praised</i> wir lobten, <i>we praised</i> ihr lobtet, <i>you praised</i> sie lobten, <i>they praised</i>	ich lobte, <i>I might praise</i> du lobtest, <i>thou mightst praise</i> er lobte, <i>he might praise</i> wir lobten, <i>we might praise</i> ihr lobtet, <i>you might praise</i> sie lobten, <i>they might praise</i>
Perfect	ich habe gelobt, <i>I have praised</i> du hast gelobt, <i>thou hast praised</i> er hat gelobt, <i>he has praised</i> wir haben gelobt, <i>we have praised</i> ihr habt gelobt, <i>you have praised</i> sie haben gelobt, <i>they have praised</i>	ich habe du habest er habe wir haben ihr habet sie haben <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;"> <i>I may thou mayst he may we may you may they may</i> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;"> <i>have praised</i> </div>
Pluperfect	ich hatte gelobt, <i>I had praised</i> du hattest gelobt, <i>thou hadst praised</i> er hatte gelobt, <i>he had praised</i> wir hatten gelobt, <i>we had praised</i> ihr hattet gelobt, <i>you had praised</i> sie hatten gelobt, <i>they had praised</i>	ich hätte du hättest er hätte wir hätten ihr hättet sie hätten <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;"> <i>I might thou mightst he might we might you might they might</i> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;"> <i>have praised</i> </div>
Future	ich werde loben, <i>I shall praise</i> du wirst loben, <i>thou wilt praise</i> er wird loben, <i>he will praise</i> wir werden loben, <i>we shall praise</i> ihr werdet loben, <i>you will praise</i> sie werden loben, <i>they will praise</i>	ich werde du werdest er werde wir werden ihr werdet sie werden <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;"> <i>I shall thou will he will we shall you will they will</i> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;"> <i>praise</i> </div>
Future Perfect	ich werde du wirst er wird wir werden ihr werdet sie werden <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;"> <i>I shall thou will he will we shall you will they will</i> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;"> <i>have praised</i> </div>	ich werde du werdest er werde wir werden ihr werdet sie werden <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;"> <i>I shall thou will he will we shall you will they will</i> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;"> <i>have praised</i> </div>

TABLE I—(Continued)

loben,

to praise

Conditional		Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden	<i>I should thou wouldst he would we should you would they would</i>	<i>lobe, praise lob(e)t, praise lobenSie, praise</i>	<i>(zu) loben, to praise</i>	<i>lobend, praising</i>
ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden	<i>haben, I should thou wouldst he would we should you would they would</i>		<i>gelobt (zu) haben, to have praised</i>	<i>gelobt, praised</i>

TABLE II

<i>folgen,</i>		<i>to follow</i>	
Indicative		Subjunctive	
Present	ich folge, <i>I follow</i>	ich folge, <i>I may follow</i>	
	du folgst, <i>thou followest</i>	du folgest, <i>thou mayst follow</i>	
	er folgt, <i>he follows</i>	er folge, <i>he may follow</i>	
	wir folgen, <i>we follow</i>	wir folgen, <i>we may follow</i>	
	ihr folgt, <i>you follow</i>	ihr folget, <i>you may follow</i>	
	sie folgen, <i>they follow</i>	sie folgen, <i>they may follow</i>	
Past	ich folgte, <i>I followed</i>	ich folgte, <i>I might follow</i>	
	du folgtest, <i>thou followedst</i>	du folgest, <i>thou mightst follow</i>	
	er folgte, <i>he followed</i>	er folgte, <i>he might follow</i>	
	wir folgten, <i>we followed</i>	wir folgten, <i>we might follow</i>	
	ihr folgtet, <i>you followed</i>	ihr folgtet, <i>you might follow</i>	
	sie folgten, <i>they followed</i>	sie folgten, <i>they might follow</i>	
Perfect	ich bin gefolgt, <i>I have followed</i>	ich sei	<i>I may</i>
	du bist gefolgt, <i>thou hast followed</i>	du seiest	<i>thou mayst</i>
	er ist gefolgt, <i>he has followed</i>	er sei	<i>he may</i>
	wir sind gefolgt, <i>we have followed</i>	wir seien	<i>we may</i>
	ihr seid gefolgt, <i>you have followed</i>	ihr seiet	<i>you may</i>
	sie sind gefolgt, <i>they have followed</i>	sie seien	<i>they may</i>
Pluperfect	ich war gefolgt, <i>I had followed</i>	ich wäre	<i>I might</i>
	du warst gefolgt, <i>thou hadst followed</i>	du wärest	<i>thou mightst</i>
	er war gefolgt, <i>he had followed</i>	er wäre	<i>he might</i>
	wir waren gefolgt, <i>we had followed</i>	wir wären	<i>we might</i>
	ihr wart gefolgt, <i>you had followed</i>	ihr wäret	<i>you might</i>
	sie waren gefolgt, <i>they had followed</i>	sie wären	<i>they might</i>
Future	ich werde folgen, <i>I shall follow</i>	ich werde	<i>I shall</i>
	du wirst folgen, <i>thou wilt follow</i>	du werdest	<i>thou wilt</i>
	er wird folgen, <i>he will follow</i>	er werde	<i>he will</i>
	wir werden folgen, <i>we shall follow</i>	wir werden	<i>we shall</i>
	ihr werdet folgen, <i>you will follow</i>	ihr werdet	<i>you will</i>
	sie werden folgen, <i>they will follow</i>	sie werden	<i>they will</i>
Future Perfect	ich werde	ich werde	<i>I shall</i>
	du wirst	du werdest	<i>thou wilt</i>
	er wird	er werde	<i>he will</i>
	wir werden	wir werden	<i>we shall</i>
	ihr werdet	ihr werdet	<i>you will</i>
	sie werden	sie werden	<i>they will</i>

9

folgen,

to follow

Conditional	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> ürbe ürbest ürbe würden würdet würden </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; margin: 0 5px;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>I should thou wouldst he would we should you would they would</i> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; margin: 0 5px;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>folgen, follow</i> </div>	folgen, <i>follow</i> folg(e)t, <i>follow</i> folgen Sie, <i>follow</i>	(zu) folgen, <i>to follow</i>	folgend, <i>following</i>
<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> ürbe ürbest ürbe würden würdet würden </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; margin: 0 5px;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>I should thou wouldst he would we should you would they would</i> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; margin: 0 5px;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>gefolgt sein, have followed</i> </div>		gefolgt (zu) sein, <i>to have followed</i>	gefolgt, <i>followed</i>

13. Conjugate like *loben* the following verbs:

INFINITIVE	PAST	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
brauchen, <i>to need, to use</i>	brauchte	gebraucht
brummen, <i>to hum, to buzz</i>	brummte	gebrummt
barben, <i>to starve</i>	darbte	gedarbt
anken, <i>to thank</i>	danfte	gedankt
bienen, <i>to serve</i>	biente	gebient
fassen, <i>to grasp</i>	faßte	gefaßt
fehlen, <i>to be wanting</i>	fehlte	gefehlt
fragen, <i>to ask</i>	fragte	gefragt
föhren, <i>to lead</i>	föhrtte	geföhrt
glauben, <i>to believe</i>	glaubte	geglaubt
hoffen, <i>to hope</i>	hoffte	gehofft
hören, <i>to hear</i>	hörte	gehört
holen, <i>to fetch</i>	holte	geholt
kaufen, <i>to buy</i>	kaufte	gekauft
leben, <i>to live</i>	lebte	gelebt
lernen, <i>to learn</i>	lernte	gelernt
lieben, <i>to love</i>	liebte	geliebt
machen, <i>to make</i>	machte	gemacht
sagen, <i>to say</i>	sagte	gesagt
setzen, <i>to set</i>	setzte	gesetzt
spielen, <i>to play</i>	spielte	gespielt
schicken, <i>to send</i>	schickte	geschickt
suchen, <i>to look for</i>	suchte	gesucht
wachen, <i>to be awake</i>	wachte	gewacht
weinen, <i>to weep</i>	weinte	geweint
wünschen, <i>to wish</i>	wünschte	gewünscht
zählen, <i>to tell</i>	zählte	gezählt
zeigen, <i>to show</i>	zeigte	gezeigt

14. Conjugate like *reden*:

INFINITIVE	PAST	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
achten, <i>to esteem</i>	achtete	geachtet
arbeiten, <i>to work</i>	arbeitete	gearbeitet
atmen, <i>to breathe</i>	atmete	geatmet
baden, <i>to bathe</i>	badete	gebadet
leiten, <i>to lead</i>	leitete	geleitet
retten, <i>to save</i>	rettete	gerettet
öffnen, <i>to open</i>	öffnete	geöffnet
rechnen, <i>to reckon</i>	rechnete	gerechnet
trösten, <i>to comfort</i>	tröstete	getröstet
zeichnen, <i>to draw</i>	zeichnete	gezeichnet
schaden, <i>to harm</i>	schadete	geschadet
warten, <i>to wait</i>	wartete	gewartet

15. Conjugate like *folgen*, employing the auxiliary *sein* to form the perfect and pluperfect tenses, the following verbs:

INFINITIVE	PAST	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
begegnen	begegnete	begegnet
eilen	eilte	geeilt
erwachen	erwachte	erwacht
reisen	reiste	gereist
stürzen	stürzte	gestürzt
wandern	wanderte	gewandert

REMARKS ON THE WEAK CONJUGATION

16. If the stem of a verb ends in *el*, or *er*, the *e* of the stem is often dropped before the ending *e*; before other endings the *e* of the inflection is dropped (see Art. 4). Thus,

tadeln, <i>to blame</i>	ich tadelte	wir tadeln
	du tatest	ihr tabet
	er talt	sie tadeln

The following verbs are similarly conjugated:

betteln, <i>to beg</i>	ich bettete	du bettest
handeln, <i>to act</i>	ich handelte	du handelst
lächeln, <i>to smile</i>	ich lächelte	du lächelst
ändern, <i>to alter</i>	ich änderte	du änderst
wandern, <i>to wander</i>	ich wanderte	du wanderst
hadern, <i>to quarrel</i>	ich haderte	du haderst

17. **Verbs of Foreign Origin.** — Verbs of foreign origin in *ieren* do not take the prefix *ge* in the past participle. Thus,

INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
probieren, <i>to try</i>	probiert
studieren, <i>to study</i>	studiert
regieren, <i>to reign</i>	regiert
diktieren, <i>to dictate</i>	diktirt
buchstabieren, <i>to spell</i>	buchstabiert

18. Verbs formed with the unaccented inseparable prefixes *be-*, *emp-*, *ent-*, *ver-*, *ge-*, *er-*, *zer-*, form their perfect participle without the prefix *ge-*. Thus,

INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
bemalen, <i>to paint</i>	bemalt
beweinen, <i>to deplore</i>	beweint
bezeigen, <i>to show</i>	bezeigt
verkaufen, <i>to sell</i>	verkauft
vermachen, <i>to bequest</i>	vermacht

THE MODAL AUXILIARIES

19. Besides the auxiliary tense-verbs *haben, sein, werden*, treated in Part 5, there are six auxiliary verbs of mood, called **modal auxiliaries**. The principal parts of these verbs are:

dürfen, durfte, gedurft, to be allowed, to be permitted; with a negation: must not; interrogatively: may I, etc.

können, konnte, gekonnt, can, to be able, may

mögen, mochte, gemocht, may, like to, care to

müssen, mußte, gemußt, must, be obliged, to be compelled, to have to

sollen, sollte, gesollt, shall, ought, to have to

wollen, wollte, gewollt, to be willing, to want to, to intend to, to be about to

These verbs serve the purpose of modifying or complementing the sense of other verbs by attaching to them ideas of liberty, possibility, necessity, etc. They are, for the most part, very irregular in their conjugation. While, however, the corresponding English verbs are defective, the German auxiliary verbs have a complete conjugation.

20. Inflection of the Modal Auxiliaries.—The principal parts of the six auxiliary verbs given above, show that four of these verbs, namely, *dürfen, können, mögen, and müssen*, have the Umlaut in the infinitive, but that they drop it in the past indicative and perfect participle. However, the Umlaut appears again in the past subjunctive. *Sollen* and *wollen* never have the Umlaut. *Mögen* changes *g* to *ch* in the past and in the perfect participle.

In the present indicative the plural has the same vowel as the infinitive, while the singular forms adopt a different vowel, except in *sollen*. These singular forms are conjugated like the past forms of a strong verb; that is, the first and the third persons do not take any ending.

21. The simple forms of the modal auxiliaries are as follows:

PRESENT INDICATIVE					
ich darf	kann	mag	muß	soll	will
du darfst	kannst	magst	mußt	sollst	willst
er darf	kann	mag	muß	soll	will
wir dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
ihr dürft	könnt	mögt	müßt	sollt	wollt
sie dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE					
ich dürfe	könne	möge	müsse	solle	wolle
du dürfest	könneſt	mögeſt	müßeſt	solleſt	wolleſt
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
PAST INDICATIVE					
ich durfte	konnte	mochte	mußte	sollte	wollte
du durftest	konnteſt	mochteſt	mußteſt	sollteſt	wollteſt
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
PAST SUBJUNCTIVE					
ich dürfte	könnte	möchte	müßte	sollte	wollte
du dürteſt	könnteſt	möchteſt	müßteſt	sollteſt	wollteſt
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
IMPERATIVE					
wanting in all but wollen	Singular		wolle		
	Plural		wollt		
	Singular and plural		wollen Sie		

22. The compound forms are formed regularly, that is, the auxiliary *haben* is employed to form the perfect and pluperfect tenses, and the auxiliary *werden* to form the future and conditional tenses. Thus,

Perfect indicative	ich habe geburft, gekonnt, etc.
Pluperfect indicative	ich hatte geburft, gekonnt, etc.
Future indicative	ich werde dürfen, können, etc.
Future perfect indicative	ich werde geburft (gekonnt, etc.) haben
Present conditional	ich würde dürfen, etc.
Perfect conditional	ich würde geburft (gekonnt, etc.) haben

23. In order to make the conjugation of the auxiliaries as clear as possible, the conjugation of each is given in a special table.

The verb *wissen*, *to know*, resembles the modal auxiliaries in the inflection of its simple forms. Its complete conjugation is therefore given in connection with the auxiliaries.

FUTURE PERFECT

ich werde gelobt haben,
I shall have praised, etc.
 du wirst gelobt haben,
 etc.

ich werde gelobt haben,
I shall have praised, etc.
 du werdest gelobt haben,
 etc.

PRESENT CONDITIONAL

ich würde loben,
I should praise, etc.
 du würdest loben,
 etc.

PERFECT CONDITIONAL

ich würde gelobt haben,
I should have praised, etc.
 du würdest gelobt haben,
 etc.

PERFECT INFINITIVE

gelobt (zu) haben, *to have praised*

Modal Verb reden.

9. The principal parts of reden, *to speak*, are:

Present infinitive	reden, <i>to speak</i>
First person of the past indicative	ich redete, <i>I spoke</i>
Past participle	geredet, <i>spoken</i>

10. The simple forms of reden are as follows:

Indicative

ich rede, *I speak*
 du redest, *thou speakest*
 er redet, *he speaks*
 wir reden, *we speak*
 ihr redet, *you speak*
 sie reden, *they speak*

Subjunctive

PRESENT

ich rede, *I may speak*
 du redest, *thou mayst speak*
 er rede, *he may speak*
 wir reden, *we may speak*
 ihr redet, *you may speak*
 sie reden, *they may speak*

PAST

ich redete, *I spoke*
 du redetest, *thou spokedst*
 er redete, *he spoke*
 wir redeten, *we spoke*
 ihr redetet, *you spoke*
 sie redeten, *they spoke*

ich redete, *I might speak*
 du redetest, *thou mightst speak*
 er redete, *he might speak*
 wir redeten, *we might speak*
 ihr redetet, *you might speak*
 sie redeten, *they might speak*

IMPERATIVE

Singular	rede, <i>speak</i>
Plural	redet, <i>speak</i>
Singular and plural	reden Sie, <i>speak</i>

PRESENT INFINITIVE
 (zu) reden, *to speak*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE
 redend, *speaking*

PAST PARTICIPLE
 geredet, *spoken*

11. Compound Forms of reden.—The perfect and pluperfect tenses of *reden* are formed with the auxiliary *haben*, the future and conditional tenses with the help of the auxiliary *werden*. Thus,

<i>Indicative</i>		<i>Subjunctive</i>
	PERFECT	
ich habe geredet, <i>I have spoken</i> , etc.		ich habe geredet, <i>I may have spoken</i> , etc.
du hast geredet, etc.		du habest geredet, etc.
	PLUPERFECT	
ich hatte geredet, <i>I had spoken</i>		ich hätte geredet, <i>I might have spoken</i>
du hättest geredet, etc.		du hättest geredet, etc.
	FUTURE	
ich werde reden, <i>I shall speak</i>		ich werde reden, <i>I shall speak</i>
du wirst reden, etc.		du werdest reden, etc.
	FUTURE PERFECT	
ich werde geredet haben, <i>I shall have spoken</i>		ich werde geredet haben, <i>I shall have spoken</i>
du wirst geredet haben, etc.		du werdest geredet haben, etc.
PRESENT CONDITIONAL		PERFECT CONDITIONAL
ich würde reden, <i>I should speak</i>		ich würde geredet haben, <i>I should have spoken</i>
du würdest reden, etc.		du würdest geredet haben, etc.
	PERFECT INFINITIVE	
	geredet (zu) haben, <i>to have spoken</i>	

12. In order to display the regular conjugation more clearly, tables containing the complete inflection of *loben*, *to praise*, and of *folgen*, *to follow*, are given. They will be found exceedingly convenient for ready reference. *Loben* forms its perfect and pluperfect tenses with the auxiliary *haben*, but the auxiliary *sein* must be employed to form the perfect and pluperfect tenses of *folgen*.

TABLE I

	loben,	to praise
	Indicative	Subjunctive
Present	ich lobe, <i>I praise</i> du lobst, <i>thou praisest</i> er lobt, <i>he praises</i> wir loben, <i>we praise</i> ihr lobt, <i>you praise</i> sie loben, <i>they praise</i>	ich lobe, <i>I may praise</i> du lobest, <i>thou mayst praise</i> er lobe, <i>he may praise</i> wir loben, <i>we may praise</i> ihr lobet, <i>you may praise</i> sie loben, <i>they may praise</i>
Past	ich lobte, <i>I praised</i> du lobtest, <i>thou praisedst</i> er lobte, <i>he praised</i> wir lobten, <i>we praised</i> ihr lobtet, <i>you praised</i> sie lobten, <i>they praised</i>	ich lobte, <i>I might praise</i> du lobtest, <i>thou mightst praise</i> er lobte, <i>he might praise</i> wir lobten, <i>we might praise</i> ihr lobtet, <i>you might praise</i> sie lobten, <i>they might praise</i>
Perfect	ich habe gelobt, <i>I have praised</i> du hast gelobt, <i>thou hast praised</i> er hat gelobt, <i>he has praised</i> wir haben gelobt, <i>we have praised</i> ihr habt gelobt, <i>you have praised</i> sie haben gelobt, <i>they have praised</i>	ich habe } <i>I may</i> du habest } <i>thou mayst</i> er habe } <i>he may</i> wir haben } <i>we may</i> ihr habet } <i>you may</i> sie haben } <i>they may</i>
Pluperfect	ich hatte gelobt, <i>I had praised</i> du hattest gelobt, <i>thou hadst praised</i> er hatte gelobt, <i>he had praised</i> wir hatten gelobt, <i>we had praised</i> ihr hättet gelobt, <i>you had praised</i> sie hatten gelobt, <i>they had praised</i>	ich hätte } <i>I might</i> du hättest } <i>thou mightst</i> er hätte } <i>he might</i> wir hätten } <i>we might</i> ihr hättet } <i>you might</i> sie hätten } <i>they might</i>
Future	ich werde loben, <i>I shall praise</i> du wirst loben, <i>thou wilt praise</i> er wird loben, <i>he will praise</i> wir werden loben, <i>we shall praise</i> ihr werdet loben, <i>you will praise</i> sie werden loben, <i>they will praise</i>	ich werde } <i>I shall</i> du werdest } <i>thou wilt</i> er werde } <i>he will</i> wir werden } <i>we shall</i> ihr werdet } <i>you will</i> sie werden } <i>they will</i>
Future Perfect	ich werde } <i>I shall</i> du wirst } <i>thou wilt</i> er wird } <i>he will</i> wir werden } <i>we shall</i> ihr werdet } <i>you will</i> sie werden } <i>they will</i>	ich werde } <i>I shall</i> du werdest } <i>thou wilt</i> er werde } <i>he will</i> wir werden } <i>we shall</i> ihr werdet } <i>you will</i> sie werden } <i>they will</i>

TABLE I—(Continued)

loben,		to praise		
Conditional		Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden	<i>I should thou wouldst he would we should you would they would</i>	<i>lobe, praise lob(e)t, praise lobenSie, praise</i>	(zu) loben, to praise	lobend, praising
ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden	<i>I should thou wouldst he would we should you would they would</i>		gelobt (zu) haben, to have praised	gelobt, praised

TABLE II

folgen,		to follow	
Indicative		Subjunctive	
Present	ich folge, <i>I follow</i>	ich folge, <i>I may follow</i>	
	du folgst, <i>thou followest</i>	du folgest, <i>thou mayst follow</i>	
	er folgt, <i>he follows</i>	er folge, <i>he may follow</i>	
	wir folgen, <i>we follow</i>	wir folgen, <i>we may follow</i>	
	ihr folgt, <i>you follow</i>	ihr folget, <i>you may follow</i>	
	sie folgen, <i>they follow</i>	sie folgen, <i>they may follow</i>	
Past	ich folgte, <i>I followed</i>	ich folgte, <i>I might follow</i>	
	du folgtest, <i>thou followedst</i>	du folgest, <i>thou mightst follow</i>	
	er folgte, <i>he followed</i>	er folgte, <i>he might follow</i>	
	wir folgten, <i>we followed</i>	wir folgten, <i>we might follow</i>	
	ihr folgtet, <i>you followed</i>	ihr folgtet, <i>you might follow</i>	
	sie folgten, <i>they followed</i>	sie folgten, <i>they might follow</i>	
Perfect	ich bin gefolgt, <i>I have followed</i>	ich sei	<i>I may</i>
	du bist gefolgt, <i>thou hast followed</i>	du seiest	<i>thou mayst</i>
	er ist gefolgt, <i>he has followed</i>	er sei	<i>he may</i>
	wir sind gefolgt, <i>we have followed</i>	wir seien	<i>we may</i>
	ihr seid gefolgt, <i>you have followed</i>	ihr seiet	<i>you may</i>
	sie sind gefolgt, <i>they have followed</i>	sie seien	<i>they may</i>
Pluperfect	ich war gefolgt, <i>I had followed</i>	ich wäre	<i>I might</i>
	du warst gefolgt, <i>thou hadst followed</i>	du wärest	<i>thou mightst</i>
	er war gefolgt, <i>he had followed</i>	er wäre	<i>he might</i>
	wir waren gefolgt, <i>we had followed</i>	wir wären	<i>we might</i>
	ihr wart gefolgt, <i>you had followed</i>	ihr wäret	<i>you might</i>
	sie waren gefolgt, <i>they had followed</i>	sie wären	<i>they might</i>
Future	ich werde folgen, <i>I shall follow</i>	ich werde	<i>I shall</i>
	du wirst folgen, <i>thou wilt follow</i>	du werdest	<i>thou wilt</i>
	er wird folgen, <i>he will follow</i>	er werde	<i>he will</i>
	wir werden folgen, <i>we shall follow</i>	wir werden	<i>we shall</i>
	ihr werdet folgen, <i>you will follow</i>	ihr werdet	<i>you will</i>
	sie werden folgen, <i>they will follow</i>	sie werden	<i>they will</i>
Future Perfect	ich werde	ich werde	<i>I shall</i>
	du wirst	du werdest	<i>thou wilt</i>
	er wird	er werde	<i>he will</i>
	wir werden	wir werden	<i>we shall</i>
	ihr werdet	ihr werdet	<i>you will</i>
	sie werden	sie werden	<i>they will</i>

TABLE II—(Continued)

folgen,

to follow

Conditional		Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden	<i>I should thou wouldst he would we should you would they would</i>	folgen, follow folg(e)t, follow folgen Sie, follow	(zu) folgen, to follow	folgend, following
ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden	<i>I should thou wouldst he would we should you would they would</i>		gefolgt (zu) sein, to have followed	gefolgt, followed

13. Conjugate like *loben* the following verbs:

INFINITIVE	PAST	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
<i>brauchen, to need, to use</i>	<i>brauchte</i>	<i>gebraucht</i>
<i>brummen, to hum, to buzz</i>	<i>brummte</i>	<i>gebrummt</i>
<i>darben, to starve</i>	<i>darbte</i>	<i>gedarbt</i>
<i>danke, to thank</i>	<i>danfte</i>	<i>gedankt</i>
<i>bienen, to serve</i>	<i>biente</i>	<i>gebient</i>
<i>fassen, to grasp</i>	<i>faßte</i>	<i>gefaßt</i>
<i>fehlen, to be wanting</i>	<i>fehlte</i>	<i>gefehlt</i>
<i>fragen, to ask</i>	<i>fragte</i>	<i>gefragt</i>
<i>führen, to lead</i>	<i>führte</i>	<i>geführt</i>
<i>glauben, to believe</i>	<i>glaubte</i>	<i>geglaubt</i>
<i>hoffen, to hope</i>	<i>hoffte</i>	<i>gehofft</i>
<i>hören, to hear</i>	<i>hörte</i>	<i>gehört</i>
<i>holen, to fetch</i>	<i>holte</i>	<i>geholt</i>
<i>kaufen, to buy</i>	<i>kaufte</i>	<i>gekauft</i>
<i>leben, to live</i>	<i>lebte</i>	<i>gelebt</i>
<i>lernen, to learn</i>	<i>lernte</i>	<i>gelernt</i>
<i>lieben, to love</i>	<i>liebte</i>	<i>geliebt</i>
<i>machen, to make</i>	<i>machte</i>	<i>gemacht</i>
<i>sagen, to say</i>	<i>sagte</i>	<i>gesagt</i>
<i>setzen, to set</i>	<i>setzte</i>	<i>gesetzt</i>
<i>spielen, to play</i>	<i>spielte</i>	<i>gespielt</i>
<i>schicken, to send</i>	<i>schickte</i>	<i>geschickt</i>
<i>suchen, to look for</i>	<i>suchte</i>	<i>gesucht</i>
<i>wachen, to be awake</i>	<i>wachte</i>	<i>gewacht</i>
<i>weinen, to weep</i>	<i>weinte</i>	<i>geweint</i>
<i>wünschen, to wish</i>	<i>wünschte</i>	<i>gewünscht</i>
<i>zählen, to tell</i>	<i>zählte</i>	<i>gezählt</i>
<i>zeigen, to show</i>	<i>zeigte</i>	<i>gezeigt</i>

14. Conjugate like *reden*:

INFINITIVE	PAST	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
<i>achten, to esteem</i>	<i>achtete</i>	<i>geachtet</i>
<i>arbeiten, to work</i>	<i>arbeitete</i>	<i>gearbeitet</i>
<i>atmen, to breathe</i>	<i>atmete</i>	<i>geatmet</i>
<i>baden, to bathe</i>	<i>badete</i>	<i>gebadet</i>
<i>leiten, to lead</i>	<i>leitete</i>	<i>geleitet</i>
<i>retten, to save</i>	<i>rettete</i>	<i>gerettet</i>
<i>öffnen, to open</i>	<i>öffnete</i>	<i>geöffnet</i>
<i>rechnen, to reckon</i>	<i>rechnete</i>	<i>gerechnet</i>
<i>trösten, to comfort</i>	<i>tröstete</i>	<i>getröstet</i>
<i>zeichnen, to draw</i>	<i>zeichnete</i>	<i>gezeichnet</i>
<i>schaden, to harm</i>	<i>schadete</i>	<i>geschadet</i>
<i>warten, to wait</i>	<i>wartete</i>	<i>gewartet</i>

15. Conjugate like *folgen*, employing the auxiliary *sein* to form the perfect and pluperfect tenses, the following verbs:

INFINITIVE	PAST	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
begegnen	begegnete	begegnet
eilen	eilte	geeilt
erwachen	erwachte	erwacht
reisen	reiste	gereist
stürzen	stürzte	gestürzt
wandern	wanderte	gewandert

REMARKS ON THE WEAK CONJUGATION

16. If the stem of a verb ends in *el*, or *er*, the *e* of the stem is often dropped before the ending *e*; before other endings the *e* of the inflection is dropped (see Art. 4). Thus,

tadeln, <i>to blame</i>	ich tadelte	wir tadeln
	du tadelst	ihr tabet
	er tabet	sie tadeln

The following verbs are similarly conjugated:

betteln, <i>to beg</i>	ich bettete	du bettelst
handeln, <i>to act</i>	ich handelte	du handelst
lächeln, <i>to smile</i>	ich lächelte	du lächelst
ändern, <i>to alter</i>	ich änderte	du änderst
wandern, <i>to wander</i>	ich wanderte	du wanderst
hadern, <i>to quarrel</i>	ich haderte	du haderst

17. **Verbs of Foreign Origin.** — Verbs of foreign origin in *ieren* do not take the prefix *ge* in the past participle. Thus,

INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
probieren, <i>to try</i>	probiert
studieren, <i>to study</i>	studiert
regieren, <i>to reign</i>	regiert
diktieren, <i>to dictate</i>	diktirt
buchstabieren, <i>to spell</i>	buchstabiert

18. Verbs formed with the unaccented inseparable prefixes *be-*, *emp-*, *ent-*, *ver-*, *ge-*, *er-*, *zer-*, form their perfect participle without the prefix *ge-*. Thus,

INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
bemalen, <i>to paint</i>	bemalt
beweinen, <i>to deplore</i>	beweint
bezeigen, <i>to show</i>	bezeigt
verkaufen, <i>to sell</i>	verkauft
vermachen, <i>to bequest</i>	vermachst

sollen, shall, ought, to have to

Indicative	Subjunctive	Conditional	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
Present ich soll du sollst er soll wir sollen ihr sollt sie sollen	ich solle du sollest er solle wir sollen ihr sollt sie sollen	ich würde sollen du würdest sollen er würde sollen wir würden sollen ihr würdet sollen sie würden sollen	wanting	(zu) sollen	sollend
Past ich sollte du solltest er sollte wir sollten ihr solltet sie sollten	ich sollte du solltest er sollte wir sollten ihr solltet sie sollten				
Perfect ich habe gesollt du habst gesollt etc.	ich habe gesollt du habest gesollt etc.	ich würde gesollt haben du würdest gesollt haben etc.		gesollt (zu) haben	gesollt
Pl-Perfect ich hätte gesollt du hättest gesollt etc.	ich hätte gesollt du hättest gesollt etc.				
Future ich werde sollen du wirst sollen etc.	ich werde sollen du werdest sollen etc.				
Future Perfect ich werde gesollt haben du wirst gesollt haben etc.	ich werde gesollt haben du werdest gesollt haben etc.				

wollen, will, to be willing, to want to, etc.

Indicative	Subjunctive	Conditional	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
Present ich will du willst er will wir wollen ihr wollt sie wollen	ich wolle du wollest er wolle wir wollen ihr wöllt sie wöllen	ich würde wollen du würdest wollen er würde wollen wir würden wollen ihr würdet wollen sie würden wollen	wolle wolle wolle wolle wolle wolle	(zu) wollen wollen wollen wollen wollen wollen	wollend wollend wollend wollend wollend wollend
Past ich wollte du wolltest er wollte wir wollten ihr wolltet sie wollten	ich wolle du wollest er wolle wir wollten ihr wöllt sie wöllen				
Perfect ich habe gewollt du hast gewollt etc.	ich habe gewollt du habest gewollt etc.	ich würde gewollt haben du würdest gewollt haben		gewollt (zu) haben	gewollt gewollt
Plu-Perfect ich hätte gewollt du hättest gewollt etc.	ich hätte gewollt du hättest gewollt etc.				
Future ich werde wollen du wirst wollen etc.	ich werde wollen du werdest wollen etc.				
Future Perfect ich werde gewollt haben du wirst gewollt haben etc.	ich werde gewollt haben du werdest gewollt haben etc.				

dürfen, to be permitted, to be allowed to, may, etc.

Indicative	Subjunctive	Conditional	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
Present ich darf du darfst er darf wir dürfen ihr dürft sie dürfen	ich dürfe du dürfeſt er dürfe wir dürfen ihr dürft ſie dürfen	ich würde dürfen du würdeſt dürfen er würde dürfen wir würden dürfen ihr würdet dürfen ſie würden dürfen	<i>Imperative</i>	(au) dürfen	dürfend
Past ich dürfte du dürteſt er dürfte wir dürften ihr dürftet ſie dürften	ich dürfte du dürteſt er dürfte wir dürften ihr dürftet ſie dürften				
Perfect ich habe gedurft du haſt gedurft etc.	ich habe gedurft du habeſt gedurft etc.	ich würde gedurft haben du würdeſt gedurft haben etc.		gedurft (au) haben	gedurft
Plu-Perfect ich hätte gedurft du hätteſt gedurft etc.	ich hätte gedurft du hätteſt gedurft etc.				
Future ich werde dürfen du wirſt dürfen etc.	ich werde dürfen du werdeſt dürfen etc.				
Future Perfect ich werde gedurft haben du wirſt gedurft haben etc.	ich werde gedurft haben du werdeſt gedurft haben etc.				

Indicative	Subjunctive	Conditional	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
Present { ich kann du kannst er kann wir können ihr könnt sie können }	{ ich könne du könntest er könne wir können ihr könntet sie könnten }	{ ich würde können du würdest können er würde können wir würden können ihr würdet können sie würden können }	<i>wanting</i>	(zu) können	könnend
Past { ich konnte du konntest er konnte wir konntet ihr konntet sie konnten }	{ ich hätte du hättest er hätte wir hätten ihr hättet sie hätten }	{ ich hätte du hättest er hätte wir hätten ihr hättet sie hätten }		gesehen	gesehen
Plu-Perfect { ich hätte du hättest er hätte wir hätten ihr hättet sie hätten }	{ ich hätte du hättest er hätte wir hätten ihr hättet sie hätten }	{ ich hätte du hättest er hätte wir hätten ihr hättet sie hätten }		gesehen	gesehen
Future { ich werde du wirst er wird wir werden ihr werdet sie werden }	{ ich werde du werdest er werde wir werden ihr werdet sie werden }	{ ich werde du werdest er werde wir werden ihr werdet sie werden }		gesehen	gesehen
Future Perfect { ich werde du wirst er wird wir werden ihr werdet sie werden }	{ ich werde du werdest er werde wir werden ihr werdet sie werden }	{ ich werde du werdest er werde wir werden ihr werdet sie werden }		gesehen	gesehen

mögen, may, like to, care to

Indicative	Subjunctive	Conditional	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
Present ich mag du magst er mag wir mögen ihr mögt sie mögen Past ich mochte du mochtest er mochte wir mochten ihr mochtet sie mochten Perfect ich habe gemocht du hast gemocht etc. Plu-Perfect ich hatte gemocht du hättest gemocht etc. Future ich werde mögen du wirst mögen etc. Future Perfect ich werde gemocht haben du wirst gemocht haben etc.	ich möge du mögest er möge wir mögen ihr möget sie mögen ich möchte du möchtest er möchte wir möchten ihr möchtet sie möchten ich habe gemocht du habest gemocht etc. ich hätte gemocht du hättest gemocht etc. ich werde mögen du werdest mögen etc. ich werde gemocht haben du werdest gemocht haben etc.	ich würde mögen du würdest mögen er würde mögen wir würden mögen ihr würdet mögen sie würden mögen ich würde gemocht haben du würdest gemocht haben etc.	<i>wünsche</i>	(Au) mögen gemocht (Au) haben	mögend gemocht

müssen, must, to be obliged, to be compelled, to have to

Indicative	Subjunctive	Conditional	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
Present ich muß du mußt er muß wir müssen ihr müßt sie müssen	ich müsse du müssest er müsse wir müssen ihr müßet sie müssen	ich würde müssen du würdest müssen er würde müssen wir würden müssen ihr würdet müssen sie würden müssen	wanting	(zu) müssen etc.	müssend
Past ich mußte du mußtest er mußte wir mußten ihr mußtet sie mußten	ich müßte du müßtest er müßte wir müßten ihr müßtet sie müßten				
Perfect ich habe gemußt du hast gemußt etc.	ich habe gemußt du habest gemußt etc.	ich würde gemußt haben du würdest gemußt haben etc.		gemußt (zu) haben	gemußt
Plu-Perfect ich hätte gemußt du hättest gemußt etc.	ich hätte gemußt du hättest gemußt etc.				
Future ich werde müssen du wirst müssen etc.	ich werde müssen du werdest müssen etc.				
Future Perfect ich werde gemußt haben du wirst gemußt haben etc.	ich werde gemußt haben du werdest gemußt haben etc.				

sollen, shall, ought, to have to

Indicative	Subjunctive	Conditional	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
Present { ich soll du sollst er solle wir sollen ihr sollt sie sollen }	ich solle du sollest er solle wir sollen ihr sollt sie sollen	ich würde sollen du würdest sollen er würde sollen wir würden sollen ihr würdet sollen sie würden sollen	<i>So laßt</i>	(Au) sollen	sollend
Past { ich sollte du solltest er sollte wir sollten ihr solltet sie sollten }	ich habe gesollt du habest gesollt etc. ich hätte gesollt du hättest gesollt etc.	ich würde gesollt haben du würdest gesollt haben etc.		gesollt (Au) haben	gesollt
Plu-Perfect { ich hatte gesollt du hattest gesollt etc. }	ich werbe sollen du werdest sollen etc.				
Future { ich werde gesollt haben du wirst gesollt haben etc. }					

Indicative	Subjunctive	Conditional	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
Present ich will du willst er will wir wollen ihr wollt sie wollen	ich wolle du wollest er wolle wir wollen ihr wollt sie wolle	ich würde wollen du würdest wollen er würde wollen wir würden wollen ihr würdet wollen sie würden wollen	wolle wolle wolle wolle wolle wolle	(zu) wollen	wollend
Past ich wollte du wolltest er wollte wir wollten ihr wolltet sie wollten	ich wolle du wollest er wolle wir wollen ihr wollt sie wolle				
Perfect ich habe gewollt du hast gewollt etc.	ich habe gewollt du habest gewollt etc.	ich würde gewollt haben du würdest gewollt haben		gewollt (zu) haben	gewollt
Plu-Perfect ich hätte gewollt du hättest gewollt etc.	ich hätte gewollt du hättest gewollt etc.				
Future ich werde wollen du wirst wollen etc.	ich werde wollen du werdest wollen etc.				
Future Perfect ich werde gewollt haben du wirst gewollt haben etc.	ich werde gewollt haben du werdest gewollt haben etc.				

wissen, to know

Indicative	Subjunctive	Conditional	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
Present ich weiß du weißt er weiß wir wissen ihr wisst sie wissen	ich wisse du wissest er wisse wir wissen ihr wisst sie wissen	ich würde wissen du würdest wissen er würde wissen wir würden wissen ihr würdet wissen sie würden wissen	du du du du du du	(zu) wissen wissen	wissend
Past ich wußte du wußtest er wußte wir wußten ihr wußtet sie wußten	ich wüßte du wüßtest er wüßte wir wüßten ihr wüßtet sie wüßten				
Perfect ich habe gewußt du hast gewußt etc.	ich habe gewußt du habest gewußt etc.	ich würde gewußt haben du würdest gewußt haben etc.		gewußt (zu) haben	gewußt
Plu-Perfect ich hätte gewußt du hättest gewußt etc.	ich hätte gewußt du hättest gewußt etc.				
Future ich werde wissen du wirst wissen etc.	ich werde wissen du werdest wissen etc.				
Future Perfect ich werde gewußt haben du wirst gewußt haben etc.	ich werde gewußt haben du werdest gewußt haben etc.				

MEANINGS OF THE MODAL AUXILIARIES

24. dürfen.—This verb is commonly employed to denote permission, right, or liberty, and is then translated by *be allowed, be permitted, may; to have a right to*, etc. Thus,

Der Knabe darf in der Schule nicht spielen, *The boy is not allowed to play in school.*

Darf ich diese Blumen pflücken, *May I pluck these flowers?*

Darf ich fragen? *May I ask?*

Dürfen also denotes a requirement or need. Thus,

Er darf nur reden, *He needs only to speak.*

Er darf sich darüber nicht wundern, *He need not wonder at it.*

It is employed only in the imperfect subjunctive, however, to denote what probably may be and is then translated by such words as *might, would, need*, etc. Thus,

Es dürfte jetzt zu spät sein, *It might be too late.*

Er dürfte es wohl vergessen haben, *He might have forgotten it.*

25. können.—The original signification of können is *to know, to know how*. Thus,

Ich kann lesen und schreiben, *I know how to read and write.*

Ich kann französisch, *I know French.*

It is, however, commonly used to express ability, possibility, permission, or concession, and is then translated by *can, be able, may, be allowed*. Thus,

Er kann jetzt wieder arbeiten, *He now (can) is able to work again.*

Er kann es verstanden haben, *He may have understood it.*

Er kann jetzt wieder fortgehen, *He may go away now.*

Das kann wahr sein, *That may be true.*

26. mögen.—This verb very often denotes preference, inclination, or liking, and is rendered in English by *like to, care to*. Thus,

Er hat es nicht thun mögen, *He did not like to do it.*

Ich mag es nicht sehen, *I do not care to see it.*

Wir mochten das nicht hören, *We did not care to hear it.*

In the past subjunctive *mögen* denotes a wish, desire, request, or polite command. Thus,

Er möchte gern etwas lernen, *He wishes to learn something.*

Ich möchte gern wissen, *I should like to know.*

Er sagte mir, ihr müchtet hier bleiben, *He told me that you should stay here.*

Müchtet ihr immer gesund bleiben, *May you always remain healthy.*

27. müssen.—The auxiliary *müssen* denotes, in an affirmative sentence, necessity or obligation and must be translated by *be obliged, must, have to*. Thus,

Er ist faul und muß bestraft werden, *He is lazy and must be punished.*

Wir müssen diesen Unglücklichen unterstützen, *We must help this unfortunate man.*

Das mußte so kommen, *Things had to turn this way.*

Müssen with a negation often denotes prohibition. Thus,

Das mußt du nicht thun, mein Sohn, *You must not do that, my son.*

28. sollen.—*Sollen* commonly expresses a duty or obligation and is rendered in English by *shall, should, ought to, is to*. Thus,

Ich soll zu Hause bleiben, *I have to stay at home.*

Der Bote sollte einen Brief auf die Post tragen, *The messenger should carry a letter to the post office.*

Sollen often expresses a command. Thus,

Du sollst nicht stehlen, *Thou shalt not steal.*

Du sollst deinen Nächsten lieben wie dich selbst, *Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself.*

Sollen must often be translated by *is said, is reported*. Thus,

Er soll krank sein, *He is said to be sick.*

Das Verbrechen sollte von ihm begangen worden sein, *The crime was reported to have been committed by him.*

29. wollen.—This verb usually denotes will or determination, rendered in English by *will, am determined to*. Thus,

Ich will etwas lernen, *I will learn something.*

Er will dieses Ziel erreichen, *He is determined to reach this aim.*

Wollen often denotes willingness. Thus,

Ich will das schon thun, aber ich kann es nicht, *I am willing to do it, but I cannot.*

It may also express a desire or wish, especially when employed in connection with gern, lieber, am liebsten. Thus,

Ein Herr will dich gern sprechen, *A gentleman wishes very much to see you.*

Der Knabe will lieber spielen als arbeiten, *The boy would rather play than work.*

30. Special Uses of the Modal Auxiliaries.—1.

When an infinitive is dependent on a modal auxiliary, zu, like the English *to*, is omitted. Thus,

Der Knabe darf nicht in den Garten gehen, *The boy must not go into the garden.*

Wir können schon deutsch sprechen, *We can speak German already.*

Ich will zu Hause bleiben und arbeiten, *I will stay at home and work.*

2. When a compound form of the modal auxiliaries is connected with a dependent infinitive, the perfect participle of the auxiliary is replaced by the corresponding infinitive. Thus,

Er hat es nicht thun dürfen, *He was not allowed to do it.*

Wir haben nicht kommen können, *We have not been able to come.*

3. This construction of the modal auxiliaries is commonly followed by the following verbs:

heißen, *to bid*
helfen, *to help*
hören, *to hear*
lassen, *to let*

sehen, *to see*
sometimes: lehren, *to teach*
lernen, *to learn*
machen, *to make*

Examples:

Ich habe dich kommen hören, *I have heard you come.*

Wir hatten sie kommen lassen, *We had let them come, or we sent for them.*

Er hat uns arbeiten helfen, *He has helped us to work.*

MIXED CONJUGATION

31. A few verbs have a sort of **mixed conjugation**, partaking of the strong conjugation in that they change their radical vowel to form the imperfect tense and the perfect participle, but at the same time partaking of the weak conjugation in that they assume, in the same parts, the tense sign *te* and the participial ending *t*. The principal parts of these verbs are:

INFINITIVE	PAST	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
brennen, <i>to burn</i>	brannte	gebrannt
bringen, <i>to bring</i>	brachte	gebracht
denken, <i>to think</i>	dachte	gedacht
kennen, <i>to know</i>	kante	gekant
nennen, <i>to name</i>	nannte	genannt
rennen, <i>to run</i>	rante	gerannt
senden, <i>to send</i>	sandte	gesandt
wenden, <i>to turn</i>	wandte	gewandt
wissen, <i>to know</i>	wußte	gewußt

Bringen and denken change the *ng* and *nt* into *ch* in the past and in the perfect participle.

Verbs of the mixed conjugation are, strictly speaking, *irregular verbs*. They will be found, also, in the general list of the so-called irregular or strong verbs, added at the end of this part.

The wholly irregular auxiliaries *haben*, *sein*, *werden*, were treated in Part 5.

STRONG OR IRREGULAR CONJUGATION

32. The strong or irregular verbs are those that are conjugated not only by external additions like the weak verbs, but also by internal changes; that is, by the modification of the root vowel. This modification is called *Ablaut*.

33. Characteristics of the Strong Verbs.—1. The strong verbs always change the stem vowel of the past for a tense sign.

2. They do not take any ending in the first and third persons of the singular number of the past indicative. (In this they differ from the verbs of the mixed conjugation, which change the stem vowel and take the endings of the weak conjugation.)

3. The perfect participle of the strong verbs is formed by the prefix *ge* and the suffix *en*. The stem vowel of this participle is sometimes the same as that of the infinitive. Thus,

INFINITIVE	PAST	PARTICIPLE
blasen, <i>blow</i>	blies	geblasen
fangen, <i>catch</i>	fang	gefangen
schlagen, <i>beat</i>	schlug	geschlagen
sehen, <i>see</i>	sah	gesehen

In other verbs, the stem vowel is the same as in the past. Thus,

INFINITIVE	PAST	PARTICIPLE
heben, <i>lift</i>	hob	gehoben
schieben, <i>to shove</i>	schob	geschoben
saugen, <i>to suck</i>	sog	gesogen
weben, <i>weave</i>	wob	gewoben

In some verbs, a different radical vowel is found in each of the three parts. Thus,

INDICATIVE	PAST	PARTICIPLE
helfen, <i>help</i>	half	geholfen
sinnen, <i>reflect</i>	sann	gesonnen
trinken, <i>drink</i>	trant	getrunken

4. In the present indicative certain strong verbs change the stem-vowel of the second and third persons singular.

(a) Those verbs having *a* in the first person singular, assume the *Umlaut* in the second and third persons. Thus, the present indicatives of *fangen*, *schlagen*, *tragen* are:

ich fange	ich schlage	ich trage
du fängst	du schlägst	du trägst
er fängt	er schlägt	er trägt
wir fangen	wir schlagen	wir tragen
ihr fangt	ihr schlagt	ihr tragt
sie fangen	sie schlagen	sie tragen

(b) Those verbs having long *e* in the first person singular of the present indicative take *ie* in the second and third persons; those verbs having short *e*, take the vowel *i* in the same place; in both instances the second person singular of the imperative takes the vowel form of the second person of the indicative. Thus,

PRESENT INDICATIVE

ich lese, *I read*
 du liestest, *thou readst*
 er liest, *he reads*
 wir lesen, *we read*
 etc.

IMPERATIVE

Singular liest, *read*
 Plural lest, *read*
 Singular and plural lesen Sie, *read*

ich helfe, *I help*
 du hilfst, *thou helpest*
 er hilft, *he helps*
 wir helfen, *we help*
 etc.

Singular hilf, *help*
 Plural helft, *help*
 Singular and plural helfen Sie, *help*

(c) Laufen, *to run*, and stoßen, *to push*, always modify the stem vowel in the second and third person indicative. Thus,

ich laufe	du läufst	er läuft	wir laufen, etc.
ich stoße	du stößest	er stößt	wir stoßen, etc.

5. A few verbs change the final consonant of the stem in the past tense and in the perfect participle.

(a) The following verbs shorten their stem vowel in the past and perfect participle and double, therefore, the final consonant.

greifen, <i>to grasp</i>	griff	gegriffen
leiden, <i>to suffer</i>	litt	gelitten
reiten, <i>to ride</i>	ritt	geritten
schneiden, <i>to cut</i>	schnitt	geschnitten
schreiten, <i>to stride</i>	schritt	geschritten
streiten, <i>to fight</i>	stritt	gestritten
nehmen, <i>to take</i>	(nahm)	genommen

(b) A few verbs lengthen the vowel of the stem and must, therefore, simplify the consonant. Thus,

erschrecken, <i>to be frightened</i>	erschraf	erschroden
fallen, <i>to fall</i>	fiel	gefallen
kommen, <i>to come</i>	kam	gekommen
treffen, <i>to hit</i>	traf	getroffen
bitten, <i>to beg</i>	bat	gebeten

6. Two verbs shorten the long *e* in the second and third persons singular of the present tense to short *i* and double the final consonants of the stem. Thus,

nehmen, <i>to take</i>	du nimmst	er nimmt
treten, <i>to step</i>	du trittst	er tritt

7. The past subjunctive of the strong verbs is formed from the past indicative by modifying the stem vowel, if possible, and adding the regular personal endings. Thus,

INFINITIVE	PAST INDICATIVE	PAST SUBJUNCTIVE
schlagen, <i>to beat</i>	ich schlug	ich schüge
brechen, <i>to break</i>	ich brach	ich bräche
kommen, <i>to come</i>	ich kam	ich käme

34. The regular endings of the strong verbs are:

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>
	<i>Singular</i>			
First person	—e		—e	—e
Second person	—st	—st	—est	—est
Third person	—t		—e	—e
	<i>Plural</i>			
First person	—en	—en	—en	—en
Second person	—(e)t	—(e)t	—et	—et
Third person	—en	—en	—en	—en
INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE		PERFECT PARTICIPLE	
—en	—end		ge—en	

In tables III and IV two paradigms of the strong conjugation are given: *sehen, to see* and *gehen, to go*. These tables clearly display the peculiarities of strong verbs. *Sehen* employs *haben* while *gehen* uses *sein* as its auxiliary verb in the perfect and pluperfect tenses. After these paradigms an alphabetical list of all strong verbs with their principal parts is given.

TABLE III

sehen,		to see	
Indicative		Subjunctive	
Present	ich sehe, <i>I see</i>	ich sehe, <i>I may see</i>	
	du siehst, <i>thou seest</i>	du sehest, <i>thou mayst see</i>	
	er sieht, <i>he sees</i>	er sehe, <i>he may see</i>	
	wir sehen, <i>we see</i>	wir sehen, <i>we may see</i>	
	ihr seht, <i>you see</i>	ihr sehet, <i>you may see</i>	
	sie sehen, <i>they see</i>	sie sehen, <i>they may see</i>	
Past	ich sah, <i>I saw</i>	ich sähe, <i>I might see</i>	
	du sahst, <i>thou sawst</i>	du sähest, <i>thou mightst see</i>	
	er sah, <i>he saw</i>	er sähe, <i>he might see</i>	
	wir sahen, <i>we saw</i>	wir sähen, <i>we might see</i>	
	ihr saht, <i>you saw</i>	ihr sähet, <i>you might see</i>	
	sie sahen, <i>they saw</i>	sie sähen, <i>they might see</i>	
Perfect	ich habe gesehen, <i>I have seen</i>	ich habe	<i>I may</i>
	du hast gesehen, <i>thou hast seen</i>	du habest	<i>thou mayst</i>
	er hat gesehen, <i>he has seen</i>	er habe	<i>he may</i>
	wir haben gesehen, <i>we have seen</i>	wir haben	<i>we may</i>
	ihr habt gesehen, <i>you have seen</i>	ihr habet	<i>you may</i>
	sie haben gesehen, <i>they have seen</i>	sie haben	<i>they may</i>
Pluperfect	ich hatte gesehen, <i>I had seen</i>	ich hätte	<i>I might</i>
	du hättest gesehen, <i>thou hadst seen</i>	du hättest	<i>thou mightst</i>
	er hatte gesehen, <i>he had seen</i>	er hätte	<i>he might</i>
	wir hatten gesehen, <i>we had seen</i>	wir hätten	<i>we might</i>
	ihr hättet gesehen, <i>you had seen</i>	ihr hättet	<i>you might</i>
	sie hatten gesehen, <i>they had seen</i>	sie hätten	<i>they might</i>
Future	ich werde sehen, <i>I shall see</i>	ich werde sehen, <i>I shall see</i>	
	du wirst sehen, <i>thou wilt see</i>	du werdest sehen, <i>thou wilt see</i>	
	er wird sehen, <i>he will see</i>	er werde sehen, <i>he will see</i>	
	wir werden sehen, <i>we shall see</i>	wir werden sehen, <i>we shall see</i>	
	ihr werdet sehen, <i>you will see</i>	ihr werdet sehen, <i>you will see</i>	
	sie werden sehen, <i>they will see</i>	sie werden sehen, <i>they will see</i>	
Future Perfect	ich werde	ich werde	<i>I shall</i>
	du wirst	du werdest	<i>thou wilt</i>
	er wird	er werde	<i>he will</i>
	wir werden	wir werden	<i>we shall</i>
	ihr werdet	ihr werdet	<i>you will</i>
	sie werden	sie werden	<i>they will</i>

sehen, TABLE III—(Continued) to see

Conditional	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
ich würde sehen, <i>I should see</i> du würdest sehen, <i>thou wouldst see</i> er würde sehen, <i>he would see</i> wir würden sehen, <i>we should see</i> ihr würdet sehen, <i>you would see</i> sie würden sehen, <i>they would see</i>	sieh, <i>see</i> seht, <i>see</i> sehen Sie, <i>see</i>	(zu) sehen, <i>to see</i>	sehend, <i>seeing</i>
ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden		gesehen (zu) haben, <i>to have seen</i>	gesehen, <i>seen</i>
haben, <i>I should</i> haben, <i>thou wouldst</i> haben, <i>he would</i> gesehen <i>we should</i> gesehen <i>you would</i> gesehen <i>they would</i>			

TABLE III

sehen,		to see	
Indicative		Subjunctive	
Present	<p>ich sehe, <i>I see</i> du siehst, <i>thou seest</i> er sieht, <i>he sees</i> wir sehen, <i>we see</i> ihr seht, <i>you see</i> sie sehen, <i>they see</i></p>	<p>ich sehe, <i>I may see</i> du sehest, <i>thou mayst see</i> er sehe, <i>he may see</i> wir sehen, <i>we may see</i> ihr sehet, <i>you may see</i> sie sehen, <i>they may see</i></p>	
Past	<p>ich sah, <i>I saw</i> du sahst, <i>thou sawst</i> er sah, <i>he saw</i> wir sahen, <i>we saw</i> ihr saht, <i>you saw</i> sie sahen, <i>they saw</i></p>	<p>ich sähe, <i>I might see</i> du sähest, <i>thou mightst see</i> er sähe, <i>he might see</i> wir sähen, <i>we might see</i> ihr sähet, <i>you might see</i> sie sähen, <i>they might see</i></p>	
Perfect	<p>ich habe gesehen, <i>I have seen</i> du hast gesehen, <i>thou hast seen</i> er hat gesehen, <i>he has seen</i> wir haben gesehen, <i>we have seen</i> ihr habt gesehen, <i>you have seen</i> sie haben gesehen, <i>they have seen</i></p>	<p>ich habe du habest er habe wir haben ihr habet sie haben</p> <p style="text-align: center;">gesehen,</p> <p style="text-align: right;"> <i>I may thou mayst he may we may you may they may</i> </p> <p style="text-align: right;">} have seen</p>	
Pluperfect	<p>ich hatte gesehen, <i>I had seen</i> du hättest gesehen, <i>thou hadst seen</i> er hatte gesehen, <i>he had seen</i> wir hatten gesehen, <i>we had seen</i> ihr hättet gesehen, <i>you had seen</i> sie hatten gesehen, <i>they had seen</i></p>	<p>ich hätte du hättest er hätte wir hätten ihr hättet sie hätten</p> <p style="text-align: center;">gesehen,</p> <p style="text-align: right;"> <i>I might thou mightst he might we might you might they might</i> </p> <p style="text-align: right;">} have seen</p>	
Future	<p>ich werde sehen, <i>I shall see</i> du wirst sehen, <i>thou wilt see</i> er wird sehen, <i>he will see</i> wir werden sehen, <i>we shall see</i> ihr werdet sehen, <i>you will see</i> sie werden sehen, <i>they will see</i></p>	<p>ich werde sehen, <i>I shall see</i> du werdest sehen, <i>thou wilt see</i> er werde sehen, <i>he will see</i> wir werden sehen, <i>we shall see</i> ihr werdet sehen, <i>you will see</i> sie werden sehen, <i>they will see</i></p>	
Future Perfect	<p>ich werde du wirst er wird wir werden ihr werdet sie werden</p> <p style="text-align: center;">gesehen haben,</p> <p style="text-align: right;"> <i>I shall thou wilt he will we shall you will they will</i> </p> <p style="text-align: right;">} have seen</p>	<p>ich werde du werdest er werde wir werden ihr werdet sie werden</p> <p style="text-align: center;">gesehen haben,</p> <p style="text-align: right;"> <i>I shall thou wilt he will we shall you will they will</i> </p> <p style="text-align: right;">} have seen</p>	

TABLE III—(Continued)
sehen, to see

Conditional	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
würde sehen, <i>I should see</i> würdest sehen, <i>thou wouldst see</i> würde sehen, <i>he would see</i> würden sehen, <i>we should see</i> würdet sehen, <i>you would see</i> würden sehen <i>they would see</i>	sieh, <i>see</i> seht, <i>see</i> sehen Sie, <i>see</i>	(zu) sehen, <i>to see</i> gesehen (zu) haben, <i>to have seen</i>	sehend, <i>seeing</i> gesehen, <i>seen</i>
würde } <i>I should</i> würdest } <i>thou wouldst</i> würde } <i>he would</i> würden } <i>we should</i> würdet } <i>you would</i> würden } <i>they would</i>			

TABLE IV

gehen,

to go

	Indicative	Subjunctive						
Present	ich gehe, <i>I go</i> du gehst, <i>thou goest</i> er geht, <i>he goes</i> wir gehen, <i>we go</i> ihr geht, <i>you go</i> sie gehen, <i>they go</i>	ich gehe, <i>I may go</i> du gehst, <i>thou mayst go</i> er gehe, <i>he may go</i> wir gehen, <i>we may go</i> ihr gehet, <i>you may go</i> sie gehen, <i>they may go</i>						
Past	ich ging, <i>I went</i> du gingst, <i>thou wentst</i> er ging, <i>he went</i> wir gingen, <i>we went</i> ihr gingt, <i>you went</i> sie gingen, <i>they went</i>	ich ginge, <i>I might go</i> du gingest, <i>thou mightst go</i> er ginge, <i>he might go</i> wir gingen, <i>we might go</i> ihr ginget, <i>you might go</i> sie gingen, <i>they might go</i>						
Perfect	ich bin gegangen, <i>I have gone</i> du bist gegangen, <i>thou hast gone</i> er ist gegangen, <i>he has gone</i> wir sind gegangen, <i>we have gone</i> ihr seid gegangen, <i>you have gone</i> sie sind gegangen, <i>they have gone</i>	ich sei du seiest er sei wir seien ihr seiet sie seien <table> <tr> <td>gegangen,</td><td> <i>I may</i> <i>thou mayst</i> <i>he may</i> <i>we may</i> <i>you may</i> <i>they may</i> </td><td>have gone</td></tr> </table>	gegangen,	<i>I may</i> <i>thou mayst</i> <i>he may</i> <i>we may</i> <i>you may</i> <i>they may</i>	have gone			
gegangen,	<i>I may</i> <i>thou mayst</i> <i>he may</i> <i>we may</i> <i>you may</i> <i>they may</i>	have gone						
Pluperfect	ich war gegangen, <i>I had gone</i> du warst gegangen, <i>thou hadst gone</i> er war gegangen, <i>he had gone</i> wir waren gegangen, <i>we had gone</i> ihr waret gegangen, <i>you had gone</i> sie waren gegangen, <i>they had gone</i>	ich wäre du wärest er wäre wir wären ihr wäret sie wären <table> <tr> <td>gegangen,</td><td> <i>I might</i> <i>thou mightst</i> <i>he might</i> <i>we might</i> <i>you might</i> <i>they might</i> </td><td>have gone</td></tr> </table>	gegangen,	<i>I might</i> <i>thou mightst</i> <i>he might</i> <i>we might</i> <i>you might</i> <i>they might</i>	have gone			
gegangen,	<i>I might</i> <i>thou mightst</i> <i>he might</i> <i>we might</i> <i>you might</i> <i>they might</i>	have gone						
Future	ich werde gehen, <i>I shall go</i> du wirst gehen, <i>thou wilt go</i> er wird gehen, <i>he will go</i> wir werden gehen, <i>we shall go</i> ihr werdet gehen, <i>you will go</i> sie werden gehen, <i>they will go</i>	ich werde gehen, <i>I shall go</i> du werdest gehen, <i>thou wilt go</i> er werde gehen, <i>he will go</i> wir werden gehen, <i>we shall go</i> ihr werdet gehen, <i>you will go</i> sie werden gehen, <i>they will go</i>						
Future Perfect	ich werde du wirst er wird wir werden ihr werdet sie werden <table> <tr> <td>gegangen sein,</td><td> <i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i> </td><td>have gone</td></tr> </table>	gegangen sein,	<i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i>	have gone	ich werde du werdest er werde wir werden ihr werdet sie werden <table> <tr> <td>gegangen sein,</td><td> <i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i> </td><td>have gone</td></tr> </table>	gegangen sein,	<i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i>	have gone
gegangen sein,	<i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i>	have gone						
gegangen sein,	<i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i>	have gone						

TABLE IV - (Continued)

gehen, <i>to go</i>			
Conditional	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
ich <i>should go</i> du <i>wouldst go</i> er <i>would go</i> wir <i>should go</i> ihr <i>would go</i> sie <i>would go</i>	geh(e), <i>go</i> geht, <i>go</i> gehen Sie, <i>go</i>	(zu)gehen, <i>to go</i>	gehend, <i>going</i>
ich <i>should</i> du <i>thou wouldst</i> er <i>he would</i> wir <i>we should</i> ihr <i>you would</i> sie <i>they would</i>		gegangen (zu) sein, <i>to have</i> gone	gegangen, <i>gone</i>

gehen,		to go	
Indicative		Subjunctive	
Present	ich gehe, <i>I go</i>	ich gehe, <i>I may go</i>	
	du gehst, <i>thou goest</i>	du gehst, <i>thou mayst go</i>	
	er geht, <i>he goes</i>	er gehe, <i>he may go</i>	
	wir gehen, <i>we go</i>	wir gehen, <i>we may go</i>	
	ihr geht, <i>you go</i>	ihr gehet, <i>you may go</i>	
	sie gehen, <i>they go</i>	sie gehen, <i>they may go</i>	
Past	ich ging, <i>I went</i>	ich ginge, <i>I might go</i>	
	du gingst, <i>thou wentst</i>	du gingest, <i>thou mightst go</i>	
	er ging, <i>he went</i>	er ginge, <i>he might go</i>	
	wir gingen, <i>we went</i>	wir gingen, <i>we might go</i>	
	ihr gingt, <i>you went</i>	ihr ginget, <i>you might go</i>	
	sie gingen, <i>they went</i>	sie gingen, <i>they might go</i>	
Perfect	ich bin gegangen, <i>I have gone</i>	ich sei	<i>I may</i>
	du bist gegangen, <i>thou hast gone</i>	du seiest	<i>thou mayst</i>
	er ist gegangen, <i>he has gone</i>	er sei	<i>he may</i>
	wir sind gegangen, <i>we have gone</i>	wir seien	<i>we may</i>
	ihr seid gegangen, <i>you have gone</i>	ihr seiet	<i>you may</i>
	sie sind gegangen, <i>they have gone</i>	sie seien	<i>they may</i>
Pluperfect	ich war gegangen, <i>I had gone</i>	ich wäre	<i>I might</i>
	du warst gegangen, <i>thou hadst gone</i>	du wärest	<i>thou mightst</i>
	er war gegangen, <i>he had gone</i>	er wäre	<i>he might</i>
	wir waren gegangen, <i>we had gone</i>	wir wären	<i>we might</i>
	ihr wäret gegangen, <i>you had gone</i>	ihr wäret	<i>you might</i>
	sie waren gegangen, <i>they had gone</i>	sie wären	<i>they might</i>
Future	ich werde gehen, <i>I shall go</i>	ich werde gehen, <i>I shall go</i>	
	du wirst gehen, <i>thou wilt go</i>	du werdest gehen, <i>thou wilt go</i>	
	er wird gehen, <i>he will go</i>	er werde gehen, <i>he will go</i>	
	wir werden gehen, <i>we shall go</i>	wir werden gehen, <i>we shall go</i>	
	ihr werdet gehen, <i>you will go</i>	ihr werdet gehen, <i>you will go</i>	
	sie werden gehen, <i>they will go</i>	sie werden gehen, <i>they will go</i>	
Future Perfect	ich werde	ich werde	<i>I shall</i>
	du wirst	du werdest	<i>thou wilt</i>
	er wird	er werde	<i>he will</i>
	wir werden	wir werden	<i>we shall</i>
	ihr werdet	ihr werdet	<i>you will</i>
	sie werden	sie werden	<i>they will</i>

TABLE IV—(Continued)

gehen,		to go	
Conditional	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
<i>be</i> gehen, <i>I should go</i> <i>best</i> gehen, <i>thou wouldst go</i> <i>be</i> gehen, <i>he would go</i> <i>rben</i> gehen, <i>we should go</i> <i>rbet</i> gehen, <i>you would go</i> <i>ben</i> gehen, <i>they would go</i>	geh(e), <i>go</i> geht, <i>go</i> gehen Sie, <i>go</i>	(zu) gehen, <i>to go</i>	gehend, <i>going</i>
<i>be</i> } <i>I should</i> <i>best</i> } <i>thou wouldst</i> <i>be</i> } <i>he would</i> <i>rben</i> } <i>we should</i> <i>rbet</i> } <i>you would</i> <i>ben</i> } <i>they would</i>	} <i>have gone</i>		
		gegangen (zu) sein, <i>to have</i> <i>gone</i>	gegangen, <i>gone</i>

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS

Infinitive	Present Indicative	Imperfect		Imperative	Past Participle
		Indicative	Subjunctive		
backen , to bake	ich backe, du backst, er backt	ich back	ich bücke	backe	gebacken
bedürfen , to need	ich bedarf, du bedarfst, er bedarf	ich bedurfte	ich bedürfte	bedarf	bedurft
befehlen , to command	ich befehle, du befehlst, er befiehlt	ich befahl	ich befühle	befiehl	befohlen
befleischen , to apply oneself	ich befele, u. f. w.	ich befele	ich befele	befleie	befleien
beginnen , to begin	ich beginne, u. f. w.	ich begann	ich begünne	beginne (e)	begonnen
beißen , to bite	ich beiße, du beißest, er beißt, u. f. w.	ich biß	ich biße	beiße	gebeissen
bergen , to conceal	ich berge, du birgst, er birgt	ich barg	ich bärge	birg	geborgen
bersten , to burst	ich berste, du berstest, er berstet, birst	ich barst, barst	ich bärste	berste	geborsten
bessinnen , to think of	ich besinne, u. f. w.	ich besann	ich besänne	besinn (e)	befonnen
bessigen , to possess	ich besige, u. f. w.	ich besaß	ich besäße	besige	befessen
betrügen , to deceive	ich betrüge, u. f. w.	ich betrog	ich betröge	betrüge	betrogen
bewegen , to move	ich bewege, u. f. w.	ich bewog	ich bewöge	bewege	bewogen
biegen , to bend	ich biege, u. f. w.	ich bog	ich böge	biege	gebogen
bieten , to offer	ich biete, u. f. w.	ich bot	ich böte	biete	geboten
binden , to bind	ich binde, u. f. w.	ich band	ich bände	binde	gebunden
bitten , to beg	ich bitte, u. f. w.	ich bat	ich bäte	bitte	gebeten
blasen , to blow	ich blase, du blästest, er bläst	ich blies	ich bliese	blase	geblasen
bleiben , to remain	ich bleibe, u. f. w.	ich blieb	ich bliebe	bleibe	geblieben
braten , to roast	ich brate, du bratest, er brätet	ich brät, brätete	ich bräte, bräte	brat	gebraten
brechen , to break	ich breche, du brichst, er bricht	ich brach	ich bräche	brich	gebrochen
brennen , to burn	ich brenne, u. f. w.	ich brannte	ich brennete	brenne	gebrannt
bringen , to bring	ich bringe, u. f. w.	ich brachte	ich brächte	bringe	gebracht
denken , to think	ich denke, u. f. w.	ich dachte	ich dächte	denke	gedacht

	ich bingē, u. f. w.	ich bung	ich bünge	blinge	gebungen
<i>bringen, to hire</i>	ich bringe, u. f. w.	ich bring	ich brünge	bringe	gebrungen
<i>dringen, to thrash</i>	ich dringe, u. f. w.	ich drang	ich drünge	bringe	gebrungen
<i>drücken, to be permitted</i>	ich darf, du darfst, er darf	ich durfte	ich dürte	empfiel	empfohlen
<i>empfehlen, to recommend</i>	ich empfehle, du empfiehlest, er empfehlest	ich empfahl	ich empfähle	erblicke	erblickten
<i>erblicken, to grow pale</i>	ich erblicke, u. f. w.	ich erblick	ich erblicke	erschall(e)	erschallen
<i>erschallen, to resound</i>	ich erschalle, u. f. w.	ich erschall	ich erschalle	erschrick	erschrocken
<i>erschrecken, to be frightened</i>	ich erschrecke, du erschrickst, er erschrickt	ich erschrick	ich erschricke		
<i>ernennen, to consider</i>	ich ernenne, u. f. w.	ich ernann	ich ernenne	ernähre	ernährt
<i>essen, to eat</i>	ich esse, du isstest, er isst	ich aß	ich äße	ist	gegessen
<i>fahren, to drive</i>	ich fahre, du fährst, er fährt	ich fuhr	ich fähre	fahre	gefahren
<i>fallen, to fall</i>	ich falle, du fällst, er fällt	ich fiel	ich fielle	fiel	gefallen
<i>fangen, to catch</i>	ich fange, du fängst, er fängt	ich fing	ich fänge	fange	gefangen
<i>sehen, to see</i>	ich sehe, du siehst, er sieht	ich sah	ich sähe	sieh	gesehen
<i>finden, to find</i>	ich finde, u. f. w.	ich fand	ich fände	finde	gefunden
<i>flechten, to braid</i>	ich flechte, du flechtst, er flecht	ich flicht	ich flichte	flieht	geflechten
<i>fliegen, to fly</i>	ich fliege, du fliegst, er fliegt	ich flog	ich flöge	fliege	geflogen
<i>fliehen, to flee</i>	ich fliehe, du fliehst, er flieht	ich floh	ich flöhe	flieh(e)	geflohen
<i>fließen, to flow</i>	ich fließe, u. f. w.	ich floss	ich flösse	fließ(e)	geflossen
<i>fressen, to devour</i>	ich fresse, du frisstest, er frisst	ich fraß	ich fräße	friß	gefressen
<i>frieren, to freeze</i>	ich friere, u. f. w.	ich froz	ich fröze	friere	gefroren
<i>gären, to ferment</i>	ich gäre, u. f. w.	ich gür	ich gäre	gäre	gegoren
<i>gebären, to bring forth</i>	ich gebäre, du gebärst, er gebärt	ich gebor	ich gebäre	gebäre	geboren
<i>geben, to give</i>	ich gebe, du gibst, er gibt	ich gab	ich gäbe	gi(e)b	gegeben
<i>gebieten, to command</i>	ich gebiete, u. f. w.	ich gebot	ich geböte	gebiete	gebieten
<i>gedeihen, to prosper</i>	ich gedeihe, u. f. w.	ich gedieh	ich gediehe	gediehe	gediehen
<i>gefallen, to please</i>	ich gefalle, du gefällst, er gefällt	ich gefiel	ich gefiele	gefaße	gefallen

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS

Infinitive	Present Indicative	Imperfect		Imperative	Past Participle
		Indicative	Subjunctive		
backen , to bake	ich backe, du backst, er backt	ich back	ich bücke	backe	gebacken
bedürfen , to need	ich bedarf, du bedarfst, er bedarf	ich bedürfte	ich bedürfte	bedarf	bedurft
befehlen , to command	ich befehle, du befehlst, er befehlt	ich befehl	ich befähle	befiehl	befohlen
befleihen , to apply oneself	ich befele, u. f. w.	ich befehl	ich befehle	befleige	befleihen
beginnen , to begin	ich beginne, u. f. w.	ich begann	ich begänne	beginne (e)	begonnen
beißen , to bite	ich beiße, du beißt, er beißt, u. f. w.	ich biß	ich biße	beiße	gebissen
bergen , to conceal	ich berge, du birgst, er birgt	ich barg	ich bärge	birg	geborgen
bersten , to burst	ich berste, du berstest, er berstet, birst	ich barst, barst	ich bärste	berste	geborsten
bessinnen , to think of	ich besinne, u. f. w.	ich besann	ich besänne	besinn(e)	bessinnen
befitzen , to possess	ich besitze, u. f. w.	ich besaß	ich besäße	besitze	befessen
betrügen , to deceive	ich betrüge, u. f. w.	ich betrog	ich betrüge	betrüge	betrogen
bewegen , to move	ich bewege, u. f. w.	ich bewog	ich bewöge	bewege	bewogen
biegen , to bend	ich biege, u. f. w.	ich bog	ich böge	biege	gebogen
bieten , to offer	ich biete, u. f. w.	ich bot	ich böte	biete	geboten
binden , to bind	ich binde, u. f. w.	ich band	ich bände	binde	gebunden
bitten , to beg	ich bitte, u. f. w.	ich bat	ich bäte	bitte	gebeten
blasen , to blow	ich blase, du bläst, er bläst	ich blies	ich bliese	blase	geblasen
bleiben , to remain	ich bleibe, u. f. w.	ich blieb	ich bliebe	bleibe	geblieben
braten , to roast	ich brate, du bratest, er brätet	ich briet, bratete	ich briete, brate	brate	gebraten
brechen , to break	ich breche, du brichst, er bricht	ich brach	ich bräche	brich	gebrochen
brennen , to burn	ich brenne, u. f. w.	ich brannte	ich brennete	brenne	gebrannt
bringen , to bring	ich bringe, u. f. w.	ich brachte	ich brächte	bringe	gebracht
denken , to think	ich denke, u. f. w.	ich dachte	ich dächte	denke	gedacht

[illegible]

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS — (Continued)

Infinitive	Present Indicative	Imperfect		Imperative	Past Participle
		Indicative	Subjunctive		
gehen, to go	ich gehe, u. f. w.	ich ging	ich ginge	gehe	gegangen
gelingen, to succeed	es gelingt, u. f. w.	es gelang	es gelänge	geling	gelingen
gelten, to be worth	ich gelte, du gibst, er gilt	ich galt	ich gälte	gilt	gegolten
genesen, to recover	ich geneße, u. f. w.	ich genas	ich genäße	geneße	genesen
genießen, to enjoy	ich genieße, u. f. w.	ich genoß	ich genüße	genieße	genessen
geraten, to fall into	ich gerate, du gerätst, er gerät	ich geriet	ich geräte	gerate	geraten
geschehen, to happen	es geschieht	es geschah	es geschähe	geschehe	geschehen
gewinnen, to win	ich gewinne, u. f. w.	ich gewann	ich gewönne	gewinne	gewonnen
gießen, to pour	ich gieße, u. f. w.	ich goß	ich göße	gieße	gegossen
gleich, to resemble	ich gleiche, u. f. w.	ich glied	ich gliede	gleich	geglichen
gleiten, to glide	ich gleite, u. f. w.	ich glitt	ich glitte	gleite	geglitten
glimmen, to glimmer	ich glimme, du glimmst, er glimmt	ich glom	ich glümme	glimme	geglimmen
graben, to dig	ich grabe, du gräbst, er gräbt	ich grub	ich grube	grabe	gegraben
greifen, to seize	ich greife, u. f. w.	ich griff	ich griffe	greife	gegriffen
haben, to have	ich habe, du hast, er hat	ich hatte	ich hätte	habe	gehabt
halten, to hold	ich halte, du hältst, er hält	ich hielt	ich hielte	halt or halte	gehalten
hängen, to hang	ich hänge, du hängst, er hängt	ich hing	ich hänge	hänge	gehängen
hauen, to hew	ich hause, u. f. w.	ich hieb	ich hiebe	hau(e)	gehauen
heben, to heave	ich hebe, u. f. w.	ich hob	ich hübe	hebe	gehoben
heißen, to order	ich heiße, du heißest, er heißt	ich hieß	ich hieße	heiße	geheißen
helfen, to help	ich helfe, du hilfst, er hilft	ich half	ich hülfe	helf	geholfen
heissen, to chide	ich teife, u. f. w.	ich tiff	ich tiffe	teife	getiffen
kennen, to know	ich kenne, u. f. w.	ich kannte	ich kennte	kenne	gkannt

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS — (Continued)

Infinitive	Present Indicative	Imperfect		Imperative	Past Participle
		Indicative	Subjunctive		
gehen , to go	ich gehe, u. f. w.	ich ging	ich ginge	gehe	gegangen
gelingen , to succeed	es gelingt, u. f. w.	es gelang	es gelänge	gelingen	gelingen
gelten , to be worth	ich gelte, du gibst, er gilt	ich galt	ich gälte	gilt	gegolten
genesen , to recover	ich genehe, u. f. w.	ich genas	ich genähe	genehe	genesen
genießen , to enjoy	ich genieße, u. f. w.	ich genoß	ich genösse	genieße	genossen
geraten , to fall into	ich gerate, du gerätst, er gerät	ich geriet	ich geräte	gerate	geraten
geschehen , to happen	es geschieht	es geschah	es geschähe	geschehe	geschehen
gewinnen , to win	ich gewinne, u. f. w.	ich gewann	ich gewünne	gewinne	gewonnen
gießen , to pour	ich gieße, u. f. w.	ich goß	ich gösse	gieße	gegossen
gleich , to resemble	ich gleiche, u. f. w.	ich gleich	ich gleiche	gleich	geglichen
gleiten , to glide	ich gleite, u. f. w.	ich glitt	ich glitte	gleite	geglitten
glimmen , to glimmer	ich glimme, du glimmst, er glimmt	ich glomm	ich glümme	glimme	geglommen
graben , to dig	ich grabe, du grabst, er gräbt	ich grub	ich grube	grabe	gegraben
greifen , to seize	ich greife, u. f. w.	ich griff	ich griffe	greife	gegriffen
haben , to have	ich habe, du hast, er hat	ich hatte	ich hätte	habe	gehabt
halten , to hold	ich halte, du hältst, er hält	ich hielt	ich hielte	halt or halte	gehalten
hängen , to hang	ich hänge, du hängst, er hängt	ich hing	ich hänge	hänge	gehangen
hauen , to hew	ich haxe, u. f. w.	ich hieb	ich hiebe	hau(e)	gehauen
heben , to heave	ich hebe, u. f. w.	ich hob	ich hebbe	hebe	gehoben
heißen , to order	ich heiße, du heißest, er heißt	ich hieß	ich hieße	heiße	geheißen
helfen , to help	ich helfe, du hilfst, er hilft	ich half	ich helfe	helf	geholfen
heissen , to chide	ich teise, u. f. w.	ich tiff	ich tisse	teise	getiffen
kennen , to know	ich kenne, u. f. w.	ich kannte	ich kenne	kenne	gekannt

Kommen, to come	ich komme, u. f. w.	ich kam	ich käme	komme	gekommen
Können, to be able to, can	ich kann, du kannst, er kann	ich konnte	ich könnte	triede	getrunnt
Kriechen, to creep	ich kriech, u. f. w.	ich krieche	ich kriechte	lache	gelaufen
Laden, to load	ich lade, u. f. w.	ich lud	ich lüde	lasse	gelassen
Lassen, to let	ich lasse, du lässest, er läßt	ich ließ	ich ließe	laufe	gelaufen
Laufen, to run	ich laufe, du läufst, er läuft	ich lief	ich liefte	leide	gelitten
Leiden, to suffer	ich leide, u. f. w.	ich litt	ich littte	leihe	geliehen
Leihen, to lend	ich leihe, u. f. w.	ich lieh	ich liehte	leihe	geliehen
Lesen, to read	ich lese, du liesest, er liest	ich las	ich läse	liege	gelesen
Liegen, to lie down	ich liege, u. f. w.	ich lag	ich läge	liege	gelegen
Lügen, to lie, speak falsely	ich lüge, u. f. w.	ich log	ich löge	lüge	gelogen
Meiden, to avoid	ich meide, u. f. w.	ich mied	ich miede	meide	gemieden
Melken, to milk	ich melke, u. f. w.	ich moil	ich möile	melte	gemolken
Messen, to measure	ich messe, du mißest, er mißt	ich maß	ich möße	miß	gemessen
Mögen, may, etc.	ich mag, du magst, er mag, wir mögen	ich mochte	ich möchte		gemocht
Müssen, must, etc.	ich muß, du mußt, er muß, wir müssen, u. f. w.	ich mußte	ich müßte		gemußt
Nehmen, to take	ich nehme, du nimmst, er nimmt	ich nahm	ich nähme	nimm	genommen
Nennen, to name	ich nenne, u. f. w.	ich nannte	ich nennte	nenne	genannt
Pfeifen, to whistle	ich pfeife, u. f. w.	ich piff	ich piffe	pfeife	gepiffen
Preisfen, to praise	ich preise, u. f. w.	ich pries	ich priele	preile	gepriesen
Quellen, to well	ich quelle, du quillst, er quillt	ich quoll	ich quölle	quill	gequollen
Raten, to advise	ich rate, du rätst, er rät	ich riet	ich riete	rate	geraten
Reiben, to rub	ich reibe, u. f. w.	ich rieb	ich riebe	reibe	gerieben
Reißen, to tear	ich reiße, u. f. w.	ich riß	ich riffe	reiß	gerissen
Reiten, to ride	ich reite, u. f. w.	ich ritt	ich ritte	reite	geritten

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS — (Continued)

Infinitive	Present Indicative	Imperfect		Imperative	Past Participle
		Indicative	Subjunctive		
rennen, to run	ich renne, u. f. w.	ich rannte	ich rennte	renne	gerannt
riechen, to smell	ich rieche, u. f. w.	ich roch	ich röhde	rieche	gerochen
ringen, to wrestle	ich ringe, u. f. w.	ich rang	ich ränge	ringe	gerungen
rinnen, to run (of water)	ich rinne, u. f. w.	ich rann	ich ränne	rinne	geronnen
rufen, to call	ich rufe, u. f. w.	ich rief	ich riefe	rufe	gerufen
saufen, to drink	ich saufe, du säuffst, er säuft	ich soff	ich söffe	saufe	gesoffen
saugen, to suck	ich sauge, u. f. w.	ich sog	ich söge	saug	gesogen
schaffen, to create	ich schaffe, u. f. w.	ich schuf	ich schüfe	schaffe	geschaffen
scheiden, to separate	ich scheide, u. f. w.	ich schied	ich schiede	scheide	geschieden
scheinen, to shine	ich scheine, u. f. w.	ich schien	ich schiene	scheine	geschienen
schelten, to scold	ich schelte, du schilst, er schilt	ich schalt	ich schälte	schilt	gescholten
scheren, to shear	ich schere, du schierst, er schiert	ich schor	ich schöre	schier, schere	geschoren
schieben, to shove	ich schiebe, u. f. w.	ich schob	ich schöbe	schiebe	geschoben
schießen, to shoot	ich schieße, u. f. w.	ich schoß	ich schöße	schieß(e)	geschossen
schlafen, to sleep	ich schlafe, du schläfst, er schläft	ich schlief	ich schliefe	schlafe	geschlafen
schlagen, to beat	ich schlage, du schlägst, er schlägt	ich schlug	ich schläge	schlage	geschlagen
schleichen, to sneak	ich schleiche, u. f. w.	ich schlich	ich schliche	schleiche	geschlichen
schleifen, to whet	ich schleife, u. f. w.	ich schliif	ich schliefe	schleife	geschliffen
schleichen, to slit	ich schleiche, u. f. w.	ich schliß	ich schließe	schleiche	geschliffen
schließen, to shut	ich schliesse, u. f. w.	ich schloß	ich schliesse	schliesse	geschlossen
schlingen, to sling	ich schlinge, u. f. w.	ich schlang	ich schlänge	schlinge	geschlungen
schmeißen, to throw	ich schmeiße, u. f. w.	ich schmiß	ich schmieße	schmeiße	geschmissen
schmelzen, to melt	ich schmelze, du schmildest, er schmilzt	ich schmolz	ich schmolze	schmelz	geschmolzen

schrauben, to screw	ich schraube, u. f. w.	ich schraubte oder schrob	ich schraubte	ich schraubte	schraube	geschraubt, geschoben
schreiben, to write	ich schreibe, u. f. w.	ich schrieb	ich schrieb	ich schrieb	schreibe	geschrieben
schreien, to cry	ich schreie, u. f. w.	ich schrie	ich schrie	ich schrie	schreie	geschrien
schreiten, to stride	ich schreite, u. f. w.	ich schritt	ich schritt	ich schritt	schreite	geschritten
schweigen, to be silent	ich schweige, u. f. w.	ich schwieg	ich schwieg	ich schwieg	schweige (e)	geschwiegen
schwellen, to swell	ich schwell, u. f. w.	ich schwoll	ich schwoll	ich schwoll	schwell	geschwollen
schwimmen, to swim	ich schwimme, u. f. w.	ich schwamm	ich schwamm, schwamm	ich schwamm	schwimm	geschwommen
schwinden, to vanish	ich schwinde, u. f. w.	ich schwand	ich schwand	ich schwand	schwinde	geschwunden
schwingen, to swing	ich schwing, u. f. w.	ich schwang	ich schwang	ich schwang	schwing	geschwungen
schwören, to swear	ich schwöre, u. f. w.	ich schwor	ich schwor (schwur)	ich schwor	schwöre	geschworen
sehen, to see	ich sehe, du siehst, er sieht	ich sah	ich sah	ich sah	sieh(e)	gesehen
sein, to be	ich bin, du bist, er ist, wir sind, ihr seid, sie sind	ich war	ich war	ich war	sei	gewesen
senden, to send	ich sende, u. f. w.	ich sandte	ich sandte	ich sandte	sende	gesandt
steden, to boil	ich stede, u. f. w.	ich kochte	ich kochte	ich kochte	stede	gekocht
singen, to sing	ich singe, u. f. w.	ich sang	ich sang	ich sang	singe	gesungen
sinken, to sink	ich sinke, u. f. w.	ich sank	ich sank	ich sank	sinke	gesunken
sinnen, to reflect	ich sinne, u. f. w.	ich sann	ich sann	ich sann	sinne	gesonnen
sitzen, to sit	ich sitze, u. f. w.	ich saß	ich saß	ich saß	sitze	gesessen
sollen, shall	ich soll, du sollst, er soll	ich sollte	ich sollte	ich sollte	sollte	gesollt
spalten, to split	ich spalte, u. f. w.	ich spaltete	ich spaltete	ich spaltete	spalte	gespalten
spelen, to spit	ich speie, u. f. w.	ich spie	ich spie	ich spie	speie	gespien
spinnen, to spin	ich spinne, u. f. w.	ich spann	ich spann	ich spann	spinn(e)	gesponnen
sprechen, to speak	ich spreche, du sprichst, er spricht	ich sprach	ich sprach	ich sprach	sprach	gesprochen
sprießen, to sprout	ich sprieße, u. f. w.	ich sproß	ich sproß	ich sproß	spröße	gesprossen

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS — (Continued)

Infinitive	Present Indicative	Imperfect		Imperative	Past Participle
		Indicative	Subjunctive		
rennen, to run	ich renne, u. f. w.	ich rannte	ich rennte	renne	gerannt
riechen, to smell	ich rieche, u. f. w.	ich roch	ich röche	rieche	gerochen
ringen, to wrestle	ich ringe, u. f. w.	ich rang	ich ränge	ringe	gerungen
runnen, to run (of water)	ich rinne, u. f. w.	ich rann	ich ränne	rinne	geronnen
rufen, to call	ich rufe, u. f. w.	ich rief	ich riefe	rufe	gerufen
saufen, to drink	ich saufe, bu säuffst, er säufft	ich soff	ich söffe	saufe	gesoffen
saugen, to suck	ich sauge, u. f. w.	ich sog	ich söge	sauge	gesogen
schaffen, to create	ich schaffe, u. f. w.	ich schuf	ich schüfe	schaffe	geschaffen
scheiden, to separate	ich scheide, u. f. w.	ich schied	ich schiede	scheide	geschieden
scheinen, to shine	ich scheine, u. f. w.	ich schien	ich schiene	scheine	geschienen
schelten, to scold	ich schelte, bu schiltst, er schilt	ich schalt	ich schälte	schilt	gescholten
scheren, to shear	ich schere, bu schierst, er schiert	ich schor	ich schöre	schier, schere	geschoren
schieben, to shove	ich schiebe, u. f. w.	ich schob	ich schöbe	schiebe	geschoben
schießen, to shoot	ich schieße, u. f. w.	ich schoß	ich schöße	schieß (e)	geschossen
schlafen, to sleep	ich schlafe, bu schläfst, er schläft	ich schlief	ich schliefe	schlafe	geschlafen
schlagen, to beat	ich schlage, bu schlägst, er schlägt	ich schlug	ich schläge	schlage	geschlagen
schleichen, to sneak	ich schleiche, u. f. w.	ich schlich	ich schliche	schleiche	geschlichen
schleifen, to whet	ich schleife, u. f. w.	ich schliif	ich schliefe	schleife	geschliffen
schleppen, to stit	ich schleppe, u. f. w.	ich schlep	ich schlepe	schleppe	geschleppt
schließen, to shut	ich schließe, u. f. w.	ich schloß	ich schlosse	schließe	geschlossen
schlingen, to sling	ich schlinge, u. f. w.	ich schlang	ich schlänge	schlinge	geschlungen
schmeißen, to throw	ich schmeiße, u. f. w.	ich schmiß	ich schmieße	schmeiße	geschmissen
schmelzen, to melt	ich schmelze, bu schmilzt, er schmilzt	ich schmolz	ich schmolze	schmelz	geschmolzen

<i>schrauben, to screw</i>	<i>ich schraube, u. f. w.</i>	<i>ich schraube oder schrob</i>	<i>ich schraubete</i>	<i>ich schraube</i>	<i>geschraubt, geschroben</i>
<i>schreiben, to write</i>	<i>ich schreibe, u. f. w.</i>	<i>ich schrieb</i>	<i>ich schrieb</i>	<i>schreibe</i>	<i>geschrieben</i>
<i>schreien, to cry</i>	<i>ich schreie, u. f. w.</i>	<i>ich schrie</i>	<i>ich schrie</i>	<i>schreie</i>	<i>geschrien</i>
<i>schreiten, to stride</i>	<i>ich schreite, u. f. w.</i>	<i>ich schritt</i>	<i>ich schritt</i>	<i>schreite</i>	<i>geschritten</i>
<i>schweigen, to be silent</i>	<i>ich schweige, u. f. w.</i>	<i>ich schwieg</i>	<i>ich schwieg</i>	<i>schweige (e)</i>	<i>geschwiegen</i>
<i>schwellen, to swell</i>	<i>ich schwell, du schwellst, er schwellt</i>	<i>ich schwoll</i>	<i>ich schwoll</i>	<i>schwell</i>	<i>geschwollen</i>
<i>schwimmen, to swim</i>	<i>ich schwimme, u. f. w.</i>	<i>ich schwamm, schwamm</i>	<i>ich schwamm</i>	<i>schwimm</i>	<i>geschwommen</i>
<i>schwinden, to vanish</i>	<i>ich schwinde, u. f. w.</i>	<i>ich schwand</i>	<i>ich schwand</i>	<i>schwinde</i>	<i>geschwunden</i>
<i>schwingen, to swing</i>	<i>ich schwing, u. f. w.</i>	<i>ich schwang</i>	<i>ich schwang</i>	<i>schwinge</i>	<i>geschwungen</i>
<i>schwören, to swear</i>	<i>ich schwöre, u. f. w.</i>	<i>ich schwor (schwur)</i>	<i>ich schwor</i>	<i>schwöre</i>	<i>geschworen</i>
<i>sehen, to see</i>	<i>ich sehe, du siehst, er sieht</i>	<i>ich sah</i>	<i>ich sah</i>	<i>sieh (e)</i>	<i>gesehen</i>
<i>sein, to be</i>	<i>ich bin, du bist, er ist, wir sind, ihr seid, sie sind</i>	<i>ich war</i>	<i>ich war</i>	<i>sei</i>	<i>gewesen</i>
<i>senden, to send</i>	<i>ich sende, u. f. w.</i>	<i>ich sandte</i>	<i>ich sandte</i>	<i>sende</i>	<i>gesandt</i>
<i>sieden, to boil</i>	<i>ich siebe, u. f. w.</i>	<i>ich kochte</i>	<i>ich kochte</i>	<i>siede</i>	<i>gekocht</i>
<i>singen, to sing</i>	<i>ich singe, u. f. w.</i>	<i>ich sang</i>	<i>ich sang</i>	<i>singe</i>	<i>gesungen</i>
<i>sinken, to sink</i>	<i>ich sinke, u. f. w.</i>	<i>ich sank</i>	<i>ich sank</i>	<i>sinke</i>	<i>gesunken</i>
<i>sinnen, to reflect</i>	<i>ich sinne, u. f. w.</i>	<i>ich sann</i>	<i>ich sann</i>	<i>sinne</i>	<i>gesonnen</i>
<i>sitzen, to sit</i>	<i>ich sitze, u. f. w.</i>	<i>ich saß</i>	<i>ich saß</i>	<i>sitze</i>	<i>gesessen</i>
<i>sollen, shall</i>	<i>ich soll, du sollst, er soll</i>	<i>ich sollte</i>	<i>ich sollte</i>	<i>sollte</i>	<i>gesollt</i>
<i>spalten, to split</i>	<i>ich spalte, u. f. w.</i>	<i>ich spaltete</i>	<i>ich spaltete</i>	<i>spalte</i>	<i>gespalten</i>
<i>speien, to spit</i>	<i>ich speie, u. f. w.</i>	<i>ich spie</i>	<i>ich spie</i>	<i>speie</i>	<i>gespieen</i>
<i>spinnen, to spin</i>	<i>ich spinne, u. f. w.</i>	<i>ich spann</i>	<i>ich spann</i>	<i>spinn (e)</i>	<i>gesponnen</i>
<i>sprechen, to speak</i>	<i>ich spreche, du sprichst, er spricht</i>	<i>ich sprach</i>	<i>ich sprach</i>	<i>sprich</i>	<i>gesprochen</i>
<i>sprießen, to sprout</i>	<i>ich sprieße, u. f. w.</i>	<i>ich sproß</i>	<i>ich sproß</i>	<i>sprieße</i>	<i>gesprossen</i>

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS—(Continued)

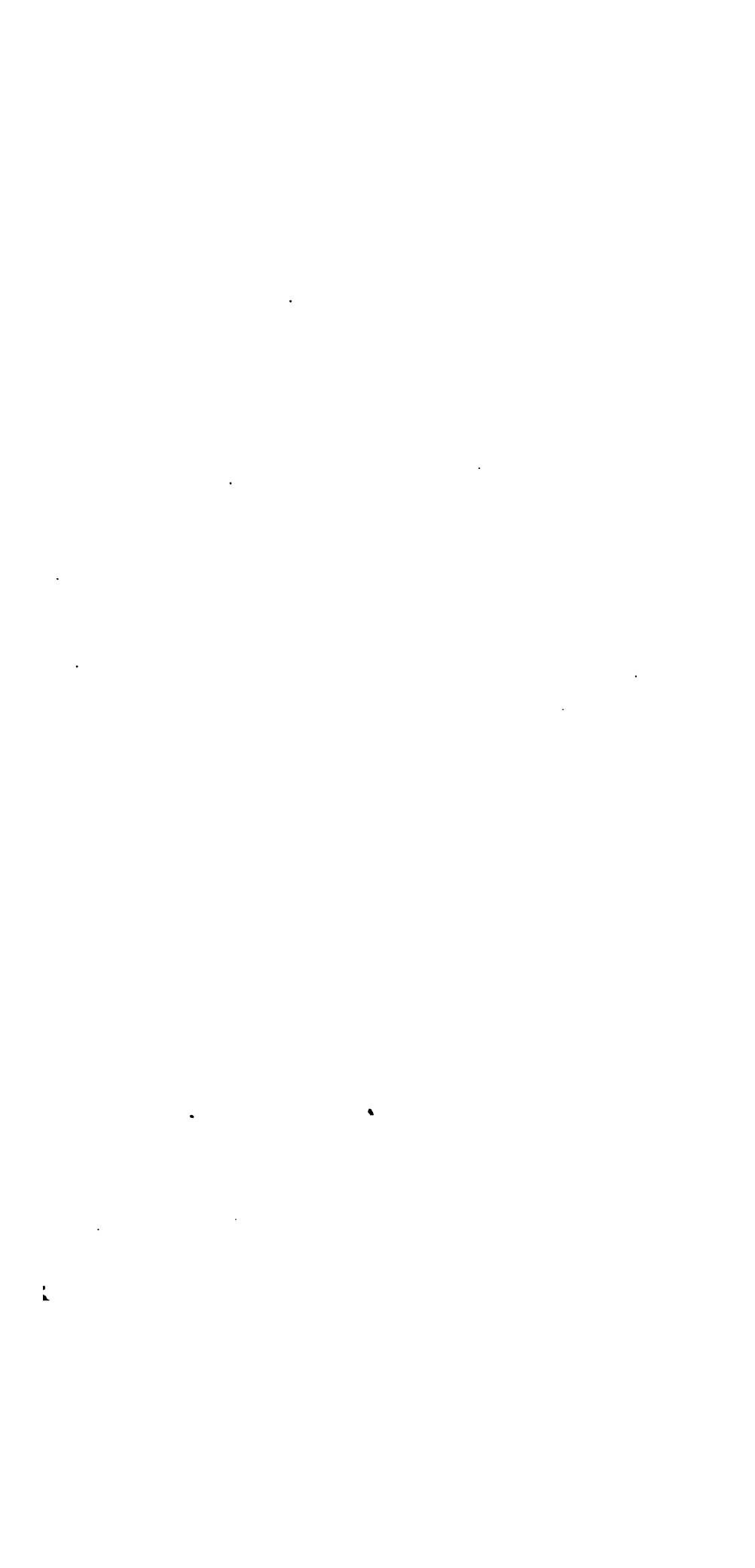
Infinitive	Present Indicative	Imperfect		Imperative	Past Participle
		Indicative	Subjunctive		
<i>springen, to spring</i>	ich springe, u. f. w.	ich spring	ich springe	springe	gesprungen
<i>sprechen, to sting</i>	ich spreche, du sprichst, er spricht	ich sprach	ich spreche	sprich	gesprochen
<i>stecken, to stick</i>	ich stecke, u. f. w.	ich steckte, stand	ich stecke, stände	stecke	gesteckt
<i>stehen, to stand</i>	ich stehe, u. f. w.	ich stand	ich stehe, überstehe	stehe(e)	gestanden
<i>stehlen, to steal</i>	ich stehle, du stiehst, er stiehlt, u. f. w.	ich stahl	ich stehle, stähle	stieh!	gestohlen
<i>steigen, to ascend</i>	ich steige, u. f. w.	ich stieg	ich steige	steig(e)	gestiegen
<i>sterben, to die</i>	ich sterbe, du stirbst, er stirbt	ich starb	ich sterbe, stirbe	stirb	gestorben
<i>stieben, to scatter</i>	ich siebe, u. f. w.	ich siob	ich siebe	sieb(e)	gestoben
<i>stinken, to stink</i>	ich stinke, u. f. w.	ich stank	ich stinke	stinke	gestunken
<i>stoßen, to push</i>	ich stoße, du stoßest, er stoßt, u. f. w.	ich stieß	ich stoße	stoß(e)	gestoßen
<i>streichen, to stroke</i>	ich streiche, u. f. w.	ich strich	ich streiche	streich(e)	gestrichen
<i>streiten, to fight</i>	ich streite, u. f. w.	ich stritt	ich streite	streite	gestritten
<i>thun, to do</i>	ich thue, du thust, er thut	ich that	ich thäte	thue, thue	gethan
<i>tragen, to carry</i>	ich trage, du trägst, er trägt	ich trug	ich träge	trage	getragen
<i>treffen, to hit</i>	ich treffe, du triffst, er trifft	ich traf	ich trafe	triff	getroffen
<i>treiben, to drive</i>	ich treibe, u. f. w.	ich trieb	ich treibe	treibe	getrieben
<i>treten, to tread</i>	ich trete, du trittst, er tritt	ich trat	ich trete	tritt	getreten
<i>trinken, to drink</i>	ich trinke, u. f. w.	ich trank	ich tränke	trinke	getrunken
<i>trügen, to deceive</i>	ich trüge, du trügst, er trügt	ich trog	ich trüge	trüge	getrogen
<i>verbergen, to conceal</i>	ich verberge, du verbirgst, er verbirgt	ich verbarg	ich verbärge	verbirg	verborgen
<i>verbieten, to forbid</i>	ich verbiete, u. f. w.	ich verbot	ich verböte	verbiete	verbotten
<i>verderben, to spoil</i>	ich verderbe, du verdirbst, er verdirbt	ich verderb	ich verderbe	verdirb	verdorben

verdrießen, to grieve	es verdrießt	es verdroß	es verbrüßte	verbroffen
vergessen, to forget	ich vergesse, du vergisst, er vergißt	ich vergaß	ich vergahe	vergesen
verhehlen, to conceal	ich verhehle, u. f. w.	ich verhehlte	ich verhehlte	verhehlt,
verlieren, to lose	ich verliere	ich verlor	ich verlor	verloren
verlöschen, to extinguish	ich verlösche, du verlöschest, er ver-	ich verlosch	ich verlosch	verloschen
verschwinden, to disappear	lischt, er verschwindet oder verschwindet	ich verschwand	ich verschwand	verschwin-
verschwinden, to disappear	u. f. w.	ich verschwand	ich verschwand	den
verwirren, to entangle	ich verwirre, u. f. w.	ich verwirrte	ich verwirrte	verwirren
verzeihen, to pardon	ich verzeihe, u. f. w.	ich verzieh	ich verzieh	verziehen
wachsen, to grow	ich wachse, du wachst, er wächst	ich wuchs	ich wuchs	wachsen
wägen oder wiegen, to weigh	ich wäge oder wiege, du wägst oder wiegst, er wägt oder wiegt	ich wog	ich wog	wägen
waschen, to wash	ich wasche, du wäschst, er wäscht	ich wusch	ich wusch	gewaschen
weisen, to yield	ich weiche, u. f. w.	ich wich	ich wich	gewichen
weisen, to show	ich weise, u. f. w.	ich wies	ich wies	gewiesen
wenden, to turn	ich wende, u. f. w.	ich wendete	ich wendete	wenden,
werben, to make efforts	ich werbe, du wirbst, er wirbt	oder wandte	ich wandte	gewandt
werden, to become	ich werde, du wirst, er wird	ich warb	ich warb	geworden
werfen, to throw	ich werfe, du wirfst, er wirft	ich wurde oder warb	ich wurde	geworfen
winden, to wind	ich winde, u. f. w.	ich warf	ich warf	gewunden
wissen, to know	ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß, wir wissen	ich wand	ich wand	gewußt
wollen, to will	ich will, du willst, er will	ich wollte	ich wollte	gewollt
ziehen, to draw	ich ziehe, u. f. w.	ich zog	ich zog	gezogen
zwingen, to force	ich zwingen, u. f. w.	ich zwang	ich zwang	gezwungen

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS—(Continued)

Infinitive	Present Indicative	Imperfect		Imperative	Past Participle
		Indicative	Subjunctive		
springen, to spring	ich springe, u. f. w.	ich sprang	ich spränge	springe	gesprungen
sprechen, to speak	ich spreche, du sprichst, er spricht	ich sprach	ich spräche	sprich	gesprochen
stecken, to stick	ich stecke, u. f. w.	ich steckte, stand	ich steckte, stände	stecke	gesteckt
stehen, to stand	ich stehe, u. f. w.	ich stand	ich stände oder stünde	steh(e)	gestanden
stehlen, to steal	ich stehle, du stiehst, er stiehlt, u. f. w.	ich stahl	ich stähle, stöhle	stieh!	gestohlen
steigen, to ascend	ich steige, u. f. w.	ich stieg	ich stiege	steig(e)	gestiegen
sterben, to die	ich sterbe, du stirbst, er stirbt	ich starb	ich stürbe, stürbe	stirb	gestorben
stieben, to scatter	ich stiebe, u. f. w.	ich stob	ich stöbe	stieb(e)	gestoben
stinken, to stink	ich stinke, u. f. w.	ich stank	ich stänke	stinke	gestunken
stoßen, to push	ich stoße, du stoßest, er stoßt, u. f. w.	ich stieß	ich stieße	stoß(e)	gestoßen
streichen, to stroke	ich streiche, u. f. w.	ich strich	ich sträche	streiche	gestrichen
streiten, to fight	ich streite, u. f. w.	ich stritt	ich stritte	streite	gestritten
thun, to do	ich thue, du thust, er thut	ich that	ich thäte	thu, thue	gethan
tragen, to carry	ich trage, du trägst, er trägt	ich trug	ich trüge	trage	getragen
treffen, to hit	ich treffe, du triffst, er trifft	ich traf	ich träfe	triff	getroffen
treiben, to drive	ich treibe, u. f. w.	ich trieb	ich triebe	treibe	getrieben
treten, to tread	ich trete, du trittst, er tritt	ich trat	ich träte	tritt	getreten
trinken, to drink	ich trinke, u. f. w.	ich trank	ich tränke	trinke	getrunken
trügen, to deceive	ich trüge, du trügst, er trügt	ich trog	ich tröge	trüge	getrogen
verbergen, to conceal	ich verberge, du verbirgst, er verbirgt	ich verbarg	ich verbärge	verbirg	verborgen
verbieten, to forbid	ich verbiete, u. f. w.	ich verbot	ich verböte	verbiete	verbotten
verderben, to spoil	ich verderbe, du verdirbst, er verdirbt	ich verderb	ich verdirbe	verdirb	verdorben

verdrücken, to grieve vergeffen, to forget verhehlen, to conceal	es verdrückt ich vergeße, du vergiffest, er vergißt ich verhehle, u. f. w.	es verdröß ich vergaß ich verheßte	es verdrüßte ich verdrüßte ich verheßte	verdrücken vergeffen verheßt, verheßten
verlieren, to lose verlöfchen, to extinguish verschwinden, to disappear	ich verliere ich verliße, du verlißest, er verlißt ich verschwinde, u. f. w.	ich verlor ich verloß ich verschwand	ich verlor ich verloß ich verschwand	verlieren verloren verloßen
verwirren, to entangle verzeihen, to pardon wachsen, to grow wägen ober wiegen, to weigh	ich verwirre, u. f. w. ich vergeiße, u. f. w. ich wächse, du wächstest, er wächst ich wäge ober wiege, du wägst ober wiegst, er wägt ober wiegt	ich verwirrte ich vergaß ich wuchs ich wog	ich verwirrte ich vergaß ich wuchs ich wog	verwirren verzeihen gewachsen gewogen
waschen, to wash weichen, to yield weisen, to show wenden, to turn	ich wasche, du wäschest, er wäscht ich weiche, u. f. w. ich weise, u. f. w. ich wende, u. f. w.	ich wusch ich wich ich wies ich wendete ober wandte	ich wusch ich wich ich wies ich wendete	waschen gewaschen gewiesen gewendet, gewandt geworben
werben, to make efforts <i>for obtaining a thing</i> werden, to become	ich werde, du wirst, er wirbt ich werde, du wirst, er wird	ich warb ich wurde ober ward	ich würde ich würde	werden geworden
werfen, to throw winden, to wind wissen, to know wollen, to will ziehen, to draw zwingen, to force	ich werfe, du wirfst, er wirft ich winde, u. f. w. ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß, wir wissen ich will, du willst, er will ich ziehe, u. f. w. ich zwinge, u. f. w.	ich warf ich wand ich mußte ich wollte ich zog ich zwang	ich würde ich würde ich würde ich würde ich würde ich würde	werfen gewunden gewußt gewollt gezogen gezwungen



GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 7)

Das Zeitwort—(Continued)

THE PASSIVE

1. A transitive verb, as already defined, represents action as passing over the verb from the actor to the person or thing that receives the action. Thus in the sentence, *Der Bauer pflügt das Feld*, *The farmer plows the field*, the action of plowing passes over from the actor, the farmer, to the acted upon, the field. In this use of the transitive verb the subject denotes the actor, while the receiver of the action is the direct object.

But frequently we wish to represent the receiver of an action as the subject of a sentence, or we wish to say that the subject of a sentence is not acting, but is being acted upon. Thus, if in the above sentence we wished to express that the field is acted upon, the sentence would be *Das Feld wird (vom Landmann) bebaut*, *The field is plowed (by the farmer)*. The word *Feld*, *the field*, which was in the former sentence the object of the verb becomes, in this sentence, the subject, while the subject of the first sentence, *der Landmann*, *the farmer*, is expressed by the phrase *vom Landmann*, *by the farmer*.

This transformation of the sentence is made possible by the use of a different verb form. While in the first sentence the verb was *pflügt*, *plows*, the active form, in the second sentence it becomes *wird gepflügt*, *is plowed*. The latter verb form is called the **passive form**, or the **passive voice**. It is so named, because, by means of it, the object

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

of a transitive verb in the ordinary conjugation is turned into a subject, representing it as enduring or suffering (passive) the action expressed by that verbal form.

Since by the passive form the object of a transitive verb is turned into a subject, passives are, as a rule, made only from transitive verbs, or those that can take a direct object.

2. Formation of the Passive.—The passive voice is formed by adding to the auxiliary *werden*, *to become*, through all its modes and tenses, the perfect participle of a transitive verb. This participle of the transitive verb follows the simple forms of *werden*, but precedes the infinitive *werden*, the present participle *werdend*, and the perfect participle *worden*, in the compound forms.

Conjugation of the Passive of *loben*

3. The forms corresponding to the simple forms of the active voice consist of the simple forms of the auxiliary *werden* and the perfect participle of the transitive verb. Thus, for the verb *loben*, *to praise*, the forms are:

<i>Indicative</i>		<i>Subjunctive</i>
PRESENT		
ich werde gelobt <i>I am praised</i>		ich werde gelobt <i>I (may) be praised</i>
du wirst gelobt		du werdest gelobt
er wird gelobt		er werde gelobt
wir werden gelobt		wir werden gelobt
ihr werdet gelobt		ihr werdet gelobt
sie werden gelobt		sie werden gelobt
PAST		
ich wurde (ward) gelobt <i>I was praised</i>		ich würde gelobt <i>I might be praised</i>
du wurdest (wardst) gelobt		du würdest gelobt
er wurde (ward) gelobt		er würde gelobt
wir wurden gelobt		wir würden gelobt
Etc.		Etc.
IMPERATIVE		
Singular		werde gelobt, <i>be praised</i>
Plural		werdet gelobt, <i>be praised</i>
Singular and plural		werden Sie gelobt, <i>be praised</i>

PRESENT INFINITIVE

gelobt (zu) werden, *to be praised*

PARTICIPLE

*Present*gelobt werden, *being praised**Past*gelobt worden, *been praised*

4. The forms corresponding to the compound forms of the active voice consist of the compound forms of the auxiliary werden and the perfect participle of the transitive verb. Where the perfect participle of the main verb is joined with the participle geworden of the auxiliary, the latter loses the augment ge, whereby a repetition of the prefix ge, in two succeeding words is avoided.

Indicative

PERFECT

Subjunctive

ich bin gelobt worden

I have been praised

du bist gelobt worden

Etc.

ich sei gelobt worden

I (may) have been praised

du seiest gelobt worden

Etc.

PLUPERFECT

ich war gelobt worden

I had been praised

du warst gelobt worden

Etc.

ich wäre gelobt worden

I might have been praised

du wärest gelobt worden

Etc.

FUTURE

ich werde gelobt werden

I shall be praised

du wirst gelobt werden

Etc.

ich werde gelobt werden

I shall be praised

du werdest gelobt werden

Etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

ich werde gelobt worden sein

I shall have been praised

du wirst gelobt worden sein

Etc.

ich werde gelobt worden sein

I shall have been praised

du werdest gelobt worden sein

Etc.

CONDITIONAL

Present

ich würde gelobt werden

I should be praised

du würdest gelobt werden

Etc.

Past

ich würde gelobt worden sein

I should have been praised

du würdest gelobt worden sein

Etc.

PERFECT INFINITIVE

gelobt worden (zu) sein, *to have been praised*

of a transitive verb in the ordinary conjugation is turned into a subject, representing it as enduring or suffering (passive) the action expressed by that verbal form.

Since by the passive form the object of a transitive verb is turned into a subject, passives are, as a rule, made only from transitive verbs, or those that can take a direct object.

2. Formation of the Passive.—The passive voice is formed by adding to the auxiliary *werden*, *to become*, through all its modes and tenses, the perfect participle of a transitive verb. This participle of the transitive verb follows the simple forms of *werden*, but precedes the infinitive *werden*, the present participle *werdend*, and the perfect participle *worden*, in the compound forms.

Conjugation of the Passive of *loben*

3. The forms corresponding to the simple forms of the active voice consist of the simple forms of the auxiliary *werden* and the perfect participle of the transitive verb. Thus, for the verb *loben*, *to praise*, the forms are:

<i>Indicative</i>		<i>Subjunctive</i>
PRESENT		
ich werde gelobt <i>I am praised</i>		ich werde gelobt <i>I (may) be praised</i>
du wirst gelobt		du werdest gelobt
er wird gelobt		er werde gelobt
wir werden gelobt		wir werden gelobt
ihr werdet gelobt		ihr werdet gelobt
sie werden gelobt		sie werden gelobt
PAST		
ich wurde (ward) gelobt <i>I was praised</i>		ich würde gelobt <i>I might be praised</i>
du wurdest (wardst) gelobt		du würdest gelobt
er wurde (ward) gelobt		er würde gelobt
wir wurden gelobt		wir würden gelobt
Etc.		Etc.
IMPERATIVE		
Singular		werde gelobt, <i>be praised</i>
Plural		werdet gelobt, <i>be praised</i>
Singular and plural		werden Sie gelobt, <i>be praised</i>

PRESENT INFINITIVE

gelobt (zu) werden, *to be praised*

PARTICIPLE

*Present*gelobt werdend, *being praised**Past*gelobt worden, *been praised*

4. The forms corresponding to the compound forms of the active voice consist of the compound forms of the auxiliary werden and the perfect participle of the transitive verb. Where the perfect participle of the main verb is joined with the participle geworden of the auxiliary, the latter loses the augment ge, whereby a repetition of the prefix ge, in two succeeding words is avoided.

*Indicative**Subjunctive*

PERFECT

ich bin gelobt worden
I have been praised
 du bist gelobt worden
 Etc.

ich sei gelobt worden
I (may) have been praised
 du seiest gelobt worden
 Etc.

PLUPERFECT

ich war gelobt worden
I had been praised
 du warst gelobt worden
 Etc.

ich wäre gelobt worden
I might have been praised
 du wärest gelobt worden
 Etc.

FUTURE

ich werde gelobt werden
I shall be praised
 du wirst gelobt werden
 Etc.

ich werde gelobt werden
I shall be praised
 du werdest gelobt werden
 Etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

ich werde gelobt worden sein
I shall have been praised
 du wirst gelobt worden sein
 Etc.

ich werde gelobt worden sein
I shall have been praised
 du werdest gelobt worden sein
 Etc.

CONDITIONAL

Present

ich würde gelobt werden
I should be praised
 du würdest gelobt werden
 Etc.

Past

ich würde gelobt worden sein
I should have been praised
 du würdest gelobt worden sein
 Etc.

PERFECT INFINITIVE

gelobt worden (zu) sein, *to have been praised*

TABLE I

gelobt werden,

to be praised

	Indicative	Subjunctive
Present	ich werde gelobt, <i>I am praised</i> du wirst gelobt, <i>thou art praised</i> er wird gelobt, <i>he is praised</i> wir werden gelobt, <i>we are praised</i> ihr werdet gelobt, <i>you are praised</i> sie werden gelobt, <i>they are praised</i>	ich werde gelobt, <i>I may, thou mayst</i> du werdest gelobt, <i>he may</i> er werde gelobt, <i>we may</i> wir werden gelobt, <i>you may</i> ihr werdet gelobt, <i>they may</i> sie werden gelobt, <i>be praised</i>
Past	ich wurde gelobt, <i>I was praised</i> du wurdest gelobt, <i>thou wast praised</i> er wurde gelobt, <i>he was praised</i> wir wurden gelobt, <i>we were praised</i> ihr wurdet gelobt, <i>you were praised</i> sie wurden gelobt, <i>they were praised</i>	ich würde gelobt, <i>I might</i> du würdest gelobt, <i>thou mightst</i> er würde gelobt, <i>he might</i> wir würden gelobt, <i>we might</i> ihr würdet gelobt, <i>you might</i> sie würden gelobt, <i>they might</i> sie würden gelobt, <i>be praised</i>
Perfect	ich bin gelobt worden, <i>I have</i> du bist gelobt worden, <i>thou hast</i> er ist gelobt worden, <i>he has</i> wir sind gelobt worden, <i>we have</i> ihr seid gelobt worden, <i>you have</i> sie sind gelobt worden, <i>they have</i> sie sind gelobt worden, <i>been praised</i>	ich sei gelobt worden, <i>I may</i> du seiest gelobt worden, <i>thou mayst</i> er sei gelobt worden, <i>he may</i> wir seien gelobt worden, <i>we may</i> ihr seiet gelobt worden, <i>you may</i> sie seien gelobt worden, <i>they may</i> sie seien gelobt worden, <i>have been praised</i>
Pluperfect	ich war gelobt worden, <i>I had</i> du warst gelobt worden, <i>thou hadst</i> er war gelobt worden, <i>he had</i> wir waren gelobt worden, <i>we had</i> ihr wart gelobt worden, <i>you had</i> sie waren gelobt worden, <i>they had</i> sie waren gelobt worden, <i>been praised</i>	ich wäre gelobt worden, <i>I might</i> du wärest gelobt worden, <i>thou mightst</i> er wäre gelobt worden, <i>he might</i> wir wären gelobt worden, <i>we might</i> ihr wäret gelobt worden, <i>you might</i> sie wären gelobt worden, <i>they might</i> sie wären gelobt worden, <i>have been praised</i>
Future	ich werde gelobt werden, <i>I shall</i> du wirst gelobt werden, <i>thou wilt</i> er wird gelobt werden, <i>he will</i> wir werden gelobt werden, <i>we shall</i> ihr werdet gelobt werden, <i>you will</i> sie werden gelobt werden, <i>they will</i> sie werden gelobt werden, <i>be praised</i>	ich werde gelobt werden, <i>I shall</i> du werdest gelobt werden, <i>thou wilt</i> er werde gelobt werden, <i>he will</i> wir werden gelobt werden, <i>we shall</i> ihr werdet gelobt werden, <i>you will</i> sie werden gelobt werden, <i>they will</i> sie werden gelobt werden, <i>be praised</i>
Future Perfect	ich werde gelobt worden sein, <i>I shall</i> du werdest gelobt worden sein, <i>thou wilt</i> er werde gelobt worden sein, <i>he will</i> wir werden gelobt worden sein, <i>we shall</i> ihr werdet gelobt worden sein, <i>you will</i> sie werden gelobt worden sein, <i>they will</i> sie werden gelobt worden sein, <i>have been praised</i>	ich werde gelobt worden sein, <i>I shall</i> du werdest gelobt worden sein, <i>thou wilt</i> er werde gelobt worden sein, <i>he will</i> wir werden gelobt worden sein, <i>we shall</i> ihr werdet gelobt worden sein, <i>you will</i> sie werden gelobt worden sein, <i>they will</i> sie werden gelobt worden sein, <i>have been praised</i>

lobt werden,

to be praised

Conditional	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
<p> <i>it</i> } <i>I should</i> <i>thou wouldst</i> <i>he would</i> <i>we should</i> <i>you would</i> <i>they would</i> } <i>be praised</i> </p>	<p> <i>werde gelobt,</i> <i>be praised</i> </p> <p> <i>werdet gelobt,</i> <i>be praised</i> </p>	<p> <i>gelobt (zu)</i> <i>werden,</i> <i>to be praised</i> </p>	<p> <i>gelobt</i> <i>werdend,</i> <i>being</i> <i>praised</i> </p>
<p> <i>it</i> } <i>I should</i> <i>thou wouldst</i> <i>he would</i> <i>we should</i> <i>you would</i> <i>they would</i> } <i>have been</i> <i>praised</i> </p>		<p> <i>gelobt worden</i> <i>(zu) sein,</i> <i>(to) have been</i> <i>praised</i> </p>	<p> <i>gelobt</i> <i>worden,</i> <i>been praised</i> </p>

TABLE I

gelobt werden,

to be praised

	Indicative		Subjunctive
Present	ich werde gelobt, <i>I am praised</i> du wirst gelobt, <i>thou art praised</i> er wird gelobt, <i>he is praised</i> wir werden gelobt, <i>we are praised</i> ihr werdet gelobt, <i>you are praised</i> sie werden gelobt, <i>they are praised</i>		ich werde gelobt, <i>I may.</i> du werdest gelobt, <i>thou mayst</i> er werde gelobt, <i>he may</i> wir werden gelobt, <i>we may</i> ihr werdet gelobt, <i>you may</i> sie werden gelobt, <i>they may</i>
Past	ich wurde gelobt, <i>I was praised</i> du wurdest gelobt, <i>thou wast praised</i> er wurde gelobt, <i>he was praised</i> wir wurden gelobt, <i>we were praised</i> ihr wurdet gelobt, <i>you were praised</i> sie wurden gelobt, <i>they were praised</i>		ich würde gelobt, <i>I might</i> du würdest gelobt, <i>thou mightst</i> er würde gelobt, <i>he might</i> wir würden gelobt, <i>we might</i> ihr würdet gelobt, <i>you might</i> sie würden gelobt, <i>they might</i>
Perfect	ich bin gelobt worden, <i>I have</i> du bist gelobt worden, <i>thou hast</i> er ist gelobt worden, <i>he has</i> wir sind gelobt worden, <i>we have</i> ihr seid gelobt worden, <i>you have</i> sie sind gelobt worden, <i>they have</i>	been praised	ich sei gelobt worden, <i>I may</i> du seiest gelobt worden, <i>thou mayst</i> er sei gelobt worden, <i>he may</i> wir seien gelobt worden, <i>we may</i> ihr seiet gelobt worden, <i>you may</i> sie seien gelobt worden, <i>they may</i>
Pluperfect	ich war gelobt worden, <i>I had</i> du warst gelobt worden, <i>thou hadst</i> er war gelobt worden, <i>he had</i> wir waren gelobt worden, <i>we had</i> ihr wart gelobt worden, <i>you had</i> sie waren gelobt worden, <i>they had</i>	been praised	ich wäre gelobt worden, <i>I might</i> du wärest gelobt worden, <i>thou mightst</i> er wäre gelobt worden, <i>he might</i> wir wären gelobt worden, <i>we might</i> ihr wäret gelobt worden, <i>you might</i> sie wären gelobt worden, <i>they might</i>
Future	ich werde gelobt werden, <i>I shall</i> du wirst gelobt werden, <i>thou wilt</i> er wird gelobt werden, <i>he will</i> wir werden gelobt werden, <i>we shall</i> ihr werdet gelobt werden, <i>you will</i> sie werden gelobt werden, <i>they will</i>	be praised	ich werde gelobt werden, <i>I shall</i> du werdest gelobt werden, <i>thou wilt</i> er werde gelobt werden, <i>he will</i> wir werden gelobt werden, <i>we shall</i> ihr werdet gelobt werden, <i>you will</i> sie werden gelobt werden, <i>they will</i>
Future Perfect	ich werde gelobt worden sein, <i>I shall</i> du werdest gelobt worden sein, <i>thou wilt</i> er werde gelobt worden sein, <i>he will</i> wir werden gelobt worden sein, <i>we shall</i> ihr werdet gelobt worden sein, <i>you will</i> sie werden gelobt worden sein, <i>they will</i>	have been praised	ich werde gelobt worden sein, <i>I shall</i> du werdest gelobt worden sein, <i>thou wilt</i> er werde gelobt worden sein, <i>he will</i> wir werden gelobt worden sein, <i>we shall</i> ihr werdet gelobt worden sein, <i>you will</i> sie werden gelobt worden sein, <i>they will</i>

TABLE I

gelobt werden,

to be praised

	Indicative	Subjunctive
Pre-sent	ich werde gelobt, <i>I am praised</i> du wirst gelobt, <i>thou art praised</i> er wird gelobt, <i>he is praised</i> wir werden gelobt, <i>we are praised</i> ihr werdet gelobt, <i>you are praised</i> sie werden gelobt, <i>they are praised</i>	ich werde gelobt, <i>I may.</i> du werdest gelobt, <i>thou mayst</i> er werde gelobt, <i>he may</i> wir werden gelobt, <i>we may</i> ihr werdet gelobt, <i>you may</i> sie werden gelobt, <i>they may</i>
Past	ich wurde gelobt, <i>I was praised</i> du wurdest gelobt, <i>thou wast praised</i> er wurde gelobt, <i>he was praised</i> wir wurden gelobt, <i>we were praised</i> ihr wurdet gelobt, <i>you were praised</i> sie wurden gelobt, <i>they were praised</i>	ich würde gelobt, <i>I might</i> du würdest gelobt, <i>thou mightst</i> er würde gelobt, <i>he might</i> wir würden gelobt, <i>we might</i> ihr würdet gelobt, <i>you might</i> sie würden gelobt, <i>they might</i>
Perfect	ich bin gelobt worden, <i>I have</i> du bist gelobt worden, <i>thou hast</i> er ist gelobt worden, <i>he has</i> wir sind gelobt worden, <i>we have</i> ihr seid gelobt worden, <i>you have</i> sie sind gelobt worden, <i>they have</i>	ich sei gelobt worden, <i>I may</i> du seiest gelobt worden, <i>thou mayst</i> er sei gelobt worden, <i>he may</i> wir seien gelobt worden, <i>we may</i> ihr seiet gelobt worden, <i>you may</i> sie seien gelobt worden, <i>they may</i>
Pluperfect	ich war gelobt worden, <i>I had</i> du warst gelobt worden, <i>thou hadst</i> er war gelobt worden, <i>he had</i> wir waren gelobt worden, <i>we had</i> ihr wart gelobt worden, <i>you had</i> sie waren gelobt worden, <i>they had</i>	ich wäre gelobt worden, <i>I might</i> du wärest gelobt worden, <i>thou mightst</i> er wäre gelobt worden, <i>he might</i> wir wären gelobt worden, <i>we might</i> ihr wäret gelobt worden, <i>you might</i> sie wären gelobt worden, <i>they might</i>
Future	ich werde gelobt werden, <i>I shall</i> du wirst gelobt werden, <i>thou wilt</i> er wird gelobt werden, <i>he will</i> wir werden gelobt werden, <i>we shall</i> ihr werdet gelobt werden, <i>you will</i> sie werden gelobt werden, <i>they will</i>	ich werde gelobt werden, <i>I shall</i> du werdest gelobt werden, <i>thou wilt</i> er werde gelobt werden, <i>he will</i> wir werden gelobt werden, <i>we shall</i> ihr werdet gelobt werden, <i>you will</i> sie werden gelobt werden, <i>they will</i>
Future Perfect	ich werde gelobt worden sein, <i>I shall</i> du wirst gelobt worden sein, <i>thou wilt</i> er wird gelobt worden sein, <i>he will</i> wir werden gelobt worden sein, <i>we shall</i> ihr werdet gelobt worden sein, <i>you will</i> sie werden gelobt worden sein, <i>they will</i>	ich werde gelobt worden sein, <i>I shall</i> du werdest gelobt worden sein, <i>thou wilt</i> er werde gelobt worden sein, <i>he will</i> wir werden gelobt worden sein, <i>we shall</i> ihr werdet gelobt worden sein, <i>you will</i> sie werden gelobt worden sein, <i>they will</i>

5. Use of the Passive.—In German the auxiliary *werden* is combined with the past participle to express a passive action. In English, however, verb phrases consisting of the perfect participle and the auxiliary *be*, are not always passive. Such phrases often express merely a state or the result of an action, the verb *to be* being an independent verb and the perfect participle being used as a predicative adjective. German expresses this latter idea by the verb *sein*, *to be*, and has thus a manifest advantage over the English passive. Thus, if the sentence *This paper is sold*, be translated into German, it will be rendered, *dieses Papier wird verkauft*, when it is desired to express passive action; if the intention, however, be merely to mark the state of the thing as that of having been sold, the German will be, *dieses Papier ist verkauft*.

6. The Passive of Intransitive Verbs.—Intransitive verbs can only be used impersonally in the passive. This impersonal passive can seldom be literally translated into English; a circumlocution must usually be employed. Thus,

Es wird getanzt, *There is dancing.*

Es darf hier nicht gesprochen werden, *Talking is not allowed here.*

Es wurde viel gesungen, *There was much singing.*

7. Substitutes for the Passive.—In German, the passive form is less frequently used than in English. It is often replaced by the impersonal pronoun *man* with an active construction. Thus,

Man hat mir erzählt, *I was told.*

Gestern hat man den Gefangenen entlassen, *Yesterday the prisoner was dismissed.*

Man hat sich entschlossen, *It has been decided.*

Sometimes a reflexive verb form is used as a substitute for a passive construction. Thus,

Der Handschuh hat sich gefunden, *The glove has been found.*

Das versteht sich, *That is understood.*

REFLEXIVE VERBS

8. A verb is said to be **reflexive** when it represents the subject as acting upon itself. Thus, in the sentence, *Der Knabe wäscht sich*, *The boy washes himself*, the subject and the object are identical, the action of the verb being reflected upon its subject. It is evident that any transitive verb may thus become a reflexive verb by being connected with the reflexive pronouns *mir*, *dir*, *sich*, *uns*, *euch*, *sich* (see Part 2, Art. 98). Therefore *sich*, before an infinitive is generally used to mark a reflexive verb.

9. Strictly speaking, however, only those verbs are accounted reflexives in German that cannot be otherwise used. Some of them require the reflexive pronoun to be in the dative and generally have a second object in the accusative or in the form of an infinitive phrase. But with most of the reflexive verbs, the reflexive pronoun is in the accusative. Many such verbs, though reflexive in form, are no longer so in meaning. This is clear from the fact that their English equivalents, with few exceptions, are not reflexive; as, *sich freuen*, *to rejoice*; *sich wundern*, *to wonder*.

1. Some of the reflexive verbs having the pronoun in the dative case are:

sich anmaßen, *to presume, to usurp*
sich ausbedingen, *to reserve to oneself by stipulation*
sich einbilden, *to imagine*
sich getrauen, *to dare, to venture*
sich schmeicheln, *to flatter oneself*
sich vornehmen, *to propose to oneself*
sich widersprechen, *to contradict oneself*

2. The most common verbs having the reflexive pronoun in the accusative case are:

sich anschiden, *to be about*
sich äußern, *to express one's opinion*
sich bedanken, *to thank*
sich bedenken, *to reflect*
sich begeben, *to betake (oneself), to happen*
sich freuen, *to rejoice*
sich wundern, *to wonder*

10. Conjugation of Reflexive Verbs.—The conjugation of the reflexive verbs is not difficult. The reflexive pronoun, as object, has the usual place of an ordinary object in the sentence; that is, it precedes an infinitive or participle, but elsewhere follows the verb form. The auxiliary of the perfect and pluperfect tenses of a reflexive verb is always *haben*.

Model Verb *sich freuen*

11. The simple forms of the verb *sich freuen* are:

<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
PRESENT	
ich freue mich, <i>I rejoice</i>	ich freue mich, <i>I may rejoice</i>
du freust dich, <i>thou rejoicest</i>	du freuest dich, <i>thou mayst rejoice</i>
er freut sich, <i>he rejoices</i>	er freuet sich, <i>he may rejoice</i>
wir freuen uns, <i>we rejoice</i>	wir freuen uns, <i>we may rejoice</i>
ihr freut euch, <i>you rejoice</i>	ihr freuet euch, <i>you may rejoice</i>
sie freuen sich, <i>they rejoice</i>	sie freuen sich, <i>they may rejoice</i>
PAST	
ich freute mich <i>I rejoiced</i>	ich freute mich <i>I might rejoice</i>
du freuteſt dich Etc.	du freuteſt dich Etc.
IMPERATIVE	
freue dich, <i>rejoice</i>	
freuet euch, <i>rejoice</i>	
freuen Sie sich, <i>rejoice</i>	
PRESENT INFINITIVE	
<i>sich (zu) freuen, to rejoice</i>	
PARTICIPLE	
<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>
<i>sich freuend, rejoicing</i>	<i>sich gefreut, rejoiced</i>

12. The compound forms of the reflexive *sich freuen* are:

<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
PERFECT	
ich habe mich gefreut <i>I have rejoiced</i>	ich habe mich gefreut <i>I may have rejoiced</i>
du haſt dich gefreut Etc.	du habest dich gefreut Etc.

PLUPERFECT

ich hatte mich gefreut
I had rejoiced
 du hättest dich gefreut
 Etc.

ich hätte mich gefreut
I might have rejoiced
 du hättest dich gefreut
 Etc.

FUTURE

ich werde mich freuen
I shall rejoice
 du wirst dich freuen
 Etc.

ich werde mich freuen
I shall rejoice
 du werdest dich freuen
 Etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

ich werde mich gefreut haben
I shall have rejoiced
 du wirst dich gefreut haben
 Etc.

ich werde mich gefreut haben
I shall have rejoiced
 du werdest dich gefreut haben
 Etc.

CONDITIONAL

Present

ich würde mich freuen
I should rejoice
 du würdest dich freuen
 Etc.

Past

ich würde mich gefreut haben
I should have rejoiced
 du würdest dich gefreut haben
 Etc.

PERFECT INFINITIVE

sich gefreut (zu) haben, *to have rejoiced*

13. The reflexive verbs having the reflexive pronoun in the dative are inflected in like manner. Thus, the indicative forms of the different tenses are as follows:

PRESENT

ich schmeichle mir, *I flatter myself*
 du schmeichlest dir, *thou flatterest thyself*
 er schmeichelt sich, *he flatters himself*
 wir schmeicheln uns, *we flatter ourselves*
 ihr schmeichelt euch, *you flatter yourselves*
 sie schmeicheln sich, *they flatter themselves*

PAST

ich schmeichelte mir, *I flattered myself, etc.*

PERFECT

ich habe mir geschmeichelt, *I have flattered myself, etc.*

PLUPERFECT

ich hatte mir geschmeichelt, *I had flattered myself, etc.*

10. Conjugation of Reflexive Verbs.—The conjugation of the reflexive verbs is not difficult. The reflexive pronoun, as object, has the usual place of an ordinary object in the sentence; that is, it precedes an infinitive or participle, but elsewhere follows the verb form. The auxiliary of the perfect and pluperfect tenses of a reflexive verb is always *haben*.

Model Verb *sich freuen*

11. The simple forms of the verb *sich freuen* are:

<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
PRESENT	
ich freue mich, <i>I rejoice</i>	ich freue mich, <i>I may rejoice</i>
du freust dich, <i>thou rejoicest</i>	du freuest dich, <i>thou mayst rejoice</i>
er freut sich, <i>he rejoices</i>	er freuet sich, <i>he may rejoice</i>
wir freuen uns, <i>we rejoice</i>	wir freuen uns, <i>we may rejoice</i>
ihr freut euch, <i>you rejoice</i>	ihr freuet euch, <i>you may rejoice</i>
sie freuen sich, <i>they rejoice</i>	sie freuen sich, <i>they may rejoice</i>
PAST	
ich freute mich <i>I rejoiced</i>	ich freute mich <i>I might rejoice</i>
du freuteſt dich Etc.	du freuteſt dich Etc.
IMPERATIVE	
freue dich, <i>rejoice</i>	
freuet euch, <i>rejoice</i>	
freuen Sie sich, <i>rejoice</i>	
PRESENT INFINITIVE	
<i>sich (zu) freuen, to rejoice</i>	
PARTICIPLE	
<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>
<i>sich freuend, rejoicing</i>	<i>sich gefreut, rejoiced</i>

12. The compound forms of the reflexive *sich freuen* are:

<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
PERFECT	
ich habe mich gefreut <i>I have rejoiced</i>	ich habe mich gefreut <i>I may have rejoiced</i>
du haſt dich gefreut Etc.	du habest dich gefreut Etc.

PLUPERFECT

ich hatte mich gefreut
I had rejoiced
 du hättest dich gefreut
 Etc.

ich hätte mich gefreut
I might have rejoiced
 du hättest dich gefreut
 Etc.

FUTURE

ich werde mich freuen
I shall rejoice
 du wirst dich freuen
 Etc.

ich werde mich freuen
I shall rejoice
 du werdest dich freuen
 Etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

ich werde mich gefreut haben
I shall have rejoiced
 du wirst dich gefreut haben
 Etc.

ich werde mich gefreut haben
I shall have rejoiced
 du werdest dich gefreut haben
 Etc.

CONDITIONAL

Present

ich würde mich freuen
I should rejoice
 du würdest dich freuen
 Etc.

Past

ich würde mich gefreut haben
I should have rejoiced
 du würdest dich gefreut haben
 Etc.

PERFECT INFINITIVE

sich gefreut (zu) haben, *to have rejoiced*

13. The reflexive verbs having the reflexive pronoun in the dative are inflected in like manner. Thus, the indicative forms of the different tenses are as follows:

PRESENT

ich schmeichle mir, *I flatter myself*
 du schmeichelst dir, *thou flatterest thyself*
 er schmeichelt sich, *he flatters himself*
 wir schmeicheln uns, *we flatter ourselves*
 ihr schmeichelt euch, *you flatter yourselves*
 sie schmeicheln sich, *they flatter themselves*

PAST

ich schmeichelte mir, *I flattered myself, etc.*

PERFECT

ich habe mir geschmeichelt, *I have flattered myself, etc.*

PLUPERFECT

ich hatte mir geschmeichelt, *I had flattered myself, etc.*

FUTURE

ich werde mir schmeicheln, *I shall flatter myself, etc.*

FUTURE PERFECT

ich werde mir geschmeichelt haben, *I shall have flattered myself, etc.*

PRESENT INFINITIVE

sich (zu) schmeicheln, *to flatter oneself*

PERFECT INFINITIVE

sich geschmeichelt (zu) haben, *to have flattered oneself*

CONSTRUCTION AND USES OF THE REFLEXIVES

14. 1. The reflexive verbs that have the pronoun in the accusative case take no other accusative object. But many of them are construed with an object in the genitive. Thus,

Wir freuen uns **des Lebens**, *We rejoice in life.*

Er schämt sich **seines Bruders**, *He is ashamed of his brother.*

2. Other reflexive verbs are construed with an object in the dative. Thus,

Seine Lehrzeit naht sich **ihrem Ende**, *The time of his apprenticeship is drawing to a close.*

3. With other verbs the complementary object is expressed by a prepositional phrase. Thus,

Er sehnt sich **nach der Heimat**, *He longs for home.*

Wir fürchten uns **vor Verrat**, *We are afraid of treachery.*

4. Some intransitive verbs are often construed with a reflexive pronoun in the accusative and a factitive predicate. Thus,

sich tot lachen, *to laugh oneself to death (to laugh oneself dead)*

sich müde reden, *to weary oneself with talking (to talk oneself tired)*

sich satt essen, *to gorge oneself (to eat oneself full)*

5. Reflexives often become the equivalents of passives (see Art. 7). Thus,

Der Handschuh **hat sich gefunden**, *The glove has been found.*

6. Some transitive verbs, when made reflexive, undergo certain changes in their meaning. For example note the following differences:

TRANSITIVE

bedenken, *to consider*bescheiden, *to assign*finden, *to find*fürchten, *to fear*hüten, *to guard*stellen, *to place*verantworten, *to answer for*vergehen, *to pass away*verlassen, *to leave*

REFLEXIVE

sich bedenken, *to take counsel with oneself*sich bescheiden, *to be contented*sich finden (in etwas), *to accommodate oneself to a thing*sich fürchten, *to be afraid (of)*sich hüten, *to beware*sich stellen, *to pretend, to feign*sich verantworten, *to defend oneself*sich vergehen, *to commit a fault*sich verlassen, *to rely on*

IMPERSONAL VERBS

15. Impersonal verbs are so called because, lacking the first and second persons singular and the whole plural, they are confined to the third person singular, and have for their grammatical subject the indefinite pronoun *es*, *it*. These forms express a verbal idea without reference to a personal subject.

1. Verbs used to express phenomena of nature are impersonal. Thus,

es regnet, *it rains**es* schneit, *it snows**es* donnert, *it thunders**es* blüht, *it lightens**es* hagelt, *it hails**es* friert, *it freezes**es* taut, *it thaws**es* tagt, *it dawns*

2. Some verbs and verb phrases denoting a state of body or mind are used impersonally, and the noun or pronoun denoting the person experiencing the state, is put in the accusative or dative case after them. Thus,

es hungert mich, *I feel hungry**es* durstet mich, *I am thirsty**es* friert mich, *I feel cold**es* dünkt mich (or mir), *it seems to me**es* graut mir, *I dread**es* schwindelt mir, *I am dizzy**es* bangt mir, *I feel afraid**es* ist mir, *I feel*

FUTURE

ich werde mir schmeicheln, *I shall flatter myself, etc.*

FUTURE PERFECT

ich werde mir geschmeichelt haben, *I shall have flattered myself, etc.*

PRESENT INFINITIVE

sich (zu) schmeicheln, *to flatter oneself*

PERFECT INFINITIVE

sich geschmeichelt (zu) haben, *to have flattered oneself*

CONSTRUCTION AND USES OF THE REFLEXIVES

14. 1. The reflexive verbs that have the pronoun in the accusative case take no other accusative object. But many of them are construed with an object in the genitive. Thus,

Wir freuen uns **des Lebens**, *We rejoice in life.*

Er schämt sich **seines Bruders**, *He is ashamed of his brother.*

2. Other reflexive verbs are construed with an object in the dative. Thus,

Seine Lehrzeit naht sich **ihrem Ende**, *The time of his apprenticeship is drawing to a close.*

3. With other verbs the complementary object is expressed by a prepositional phrase. Thus,

Er sehnt sich **nach der Heimat**, *He longs for home.*

Wir fürchten uns **vor Verrat**, *We are afraid of treachery.*

4. Some intransitive verbs are often construed with a reflexive pronoun in the accusative and a factitive predicate. Thus,

sich tot lachen, *to laugh oneself to death (to laugh oneself dead)*

sich müde reden, *to weary oneself with talking (to talk oneself tired)*

sich satt essen, *to gorge oneself (to eat oneself full)*

5. Reflexives often become the equivalents of passives (see Art. 7). Thus,

Der Handschuh **hat sich gefunden**, *The glove has been found.*

6. Some transitive verbs, when made reflexive, undergo certain changes in their meaning. For example note the following differences:

TRANSITIVE

bedenken, *to consider*bescheiden, *to assign*finden, *to find*fürchten, *to fear*hüten, *to guard*stellen, *to place*verantworten, *to answer for*vergehen, *to pass away*verlassen, *to leave*

REFLEXIVE

sich bedenken, *to take counsel with oneself*sich bescheiden, *to be contented*sich finden (in etwas), *to accommodate oneself to a thing*sich fürchten, *to be afraid (of)*sich hüten, *to beware*sich stellen, *to pretend, to feign*sich verantworten, *to defend oneself*sich vergehen, *to commit a fault*sich verlassen, *to rely on*

IMPERSONAL VERBS

15. Impersonal verbs are so called because, lacking the first and second persons singular and the whole plural, they are confined to the third person singular, and have for their grammatical subject the indefinite pronoun *es*, *it*. These forms express a verbal idea without reference to a personal subject.

1. Verbs used to express phenomena of nature are impersonal. Thus,

*es regnet, it rains**es schneit, it snows**es donnert, it thunders**es blüht, it lightens**es hagelt, it hails**es friert, it freezes**es taut, it thaws**es tagt, it dawns*

2. Some verbs and verb phrases denoting a state of body or mind are used impersonally, and the noun or pronoun denoting the person experiencing the state, is put in the accusative or dative case after them. Thus,

*es hungert mich, I feel hungry**es durstet mich, I am thirsty**es friert mich, I feel cold**es dünkt mich (or mir), it seems to me**es graut mir, I dread**es schwindelt mir, I am dizzy**es bangt mir, I feel afraid**es ist mir, I feel*

3. Some other verbs, not ordinarily used impersonally, form impersonal idiomatic expressions. Thus,

- es giebt, *there is*
 es klopf, *some one is knocking*
 es läutet, *some one is ringing*
 es thut mir leid, *I am sorry*
 es versteht sich, *naturally, or it follows as a matter of course*
 es geht mir gut, *I am doing well*
 es ist mir unwohl, *I feel ill*
 es gelingt mir, *I succeed*
 es fragt sich, *it is a question*
 es fehlt mir etwas, *something ails me, etc.*
 es heißt, *it is said*

4. The English phrases *there is, there are*, are rendered by the impersonal verb phrase *es giebt*, when the sense is vague and indefinite. This phrase is always used in the singular—even though the following predicative noun stands in the plural. Thus,

Es giebt etwas Neues, *There is something new.*

Es wird Regen geben, *There will be a shower.*

Es hat viele Leute gegeben, welche glaubten, *There were many people, who believed, etc.*

16. **Conjugation of the Impersonal Verb.**—The conjugation of an impersonal verb is the same as that of an ordinary verb, except that it has only the forms of the third person singular. Thus, the indicative forms of the impersonal verb *es regnet* are:

PRESENT

es regnet, *it rains*

PAST

es regnete, *it rained*

PERFECT

es hat geregnet, *it has rained*

PLUPERFECT

es hatte geregnet, *it had rained*

FUTURE

es wird regnen, *it will rain*

FUTURE PERFECT

es wird geregnet haben, it will have rained

Almost all impersonal verbs employ the auxiliary *haben* in the formation of the perfect tenses.

COMPOUND VERBS

17. Various German derivative verbs are produced by the union of simple words with prefixes. Prefixes are particles or invariable words, like adverbs and prepositions that are combined with simple words to modify their signification. Most of these prefixes are separable; that is, they must stand, in certain verb-forms, apart from the simple verbs or radicals to which they are joined; some, however, are found to be inseparable; that is, the particle always precedes the verb and forms one word with it. Some prefixes are either separable or inseparable, according to circumstances.

INSEPARABLE COMPOUNDS

18. There are seven prefixes that are never separated from their radicals. These do not even allow the augment syllable *ge* of the past participle to intervene, which in consequence, must be omitted. The accent is always on the radical verb. The inseparable prefixes are: *be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ge*, *ver*, *zer*.

19. **Meanings of the Inseparable Prefixes.** — 1. The German prefix *be* has the same power belonging to the English *be*; that is, it usually makes intransitive verbs transitive, and is used in making verbs from adjectives and nouns. Thus,

klagen, to wail
denken, to think
fallen, to fall
folgen, to follow
arbeiten, to labor
lachen, to laugh
frei, free
Glück, happiness
Wirt, host

bestla'gen, to bewail
bedenken, to consider
befal'ten, to befall
befol'gen, to follow after, to obey
bear'beiten, to labor upon
bela'chen, to laugh at
befrei'en, to set free
beglück'en, to make happy
bewir'ten, to entertain

2. The prefix **ent** indicates separation and privation; **emp** is probably only another form of **ent** and occurs only in three verbs; namely, *empfinden*, *to feel*, *empfangen*, *to receive*, and *empfehlen*, *to recommend*. Thus,

<i>gehen</i> , <i>to go</i>	<i>entge'hen</i> , <i>to escape</i>
<i>ziehen</i> , <i>to draw</i>	<i>entzie'hen</i> , <i>to withdraw</i>
<i>binden</i> , <i>to bind</i>	<i>entbin'den</i> , <i>to unbind</i>
<i>Haupt</i> , <i>head</i>	<i>enthaup'ten</i> , <i>to behead</i>
<i>Kraft</i> , <i>power</i>	<i>entträf'ten</i> , <i>to deprive of power</i>

3. The prefix **er** sometimes conveys the idea of getting or gaining by means of the action expressed by the verb; but oftener it means *forth*, *up*, *up out of*. Thus,

<i>bitten</i> , <i>to beg</i>	<i>erbit'ten</i> , <i>to get by begging</i>
<i>finden</i> , <i>to find</i>	<i>erfin'den</i> , <i>to invent</i>
<i>raten</i> , <i>to guess</i>	<i>errä'ten</i> , <i>to get by guessing</i>
<i>lernen</i> , <i>to learn</i>	<i>erler'nen</i> , <i>to get by learning</i>
<i>stehen</i> , <i>to stand</i>	<i>erste'hen</i> , <i>to arise</i>
<i>bauen</i> , <i>to build</i>	<i>erbau'en</i> , <i>to erect</i>

4. The prefix **ver** denotes the opposite of **er**; that is, it marks what is against the subject's interest. It generally has the meaning of *forth*, *away*. Thus,

<i>spielen</i> , <i>to play</i>	<i>verspie'len</i> , <i>to lose by gambling</i>
<i>kaufen</i> , <i>to buy</i>	<i>verkau'fen</i> , <i>to sell</i>
<i>führen</i> , <i>to lead</i>	<i>verfüh'ren</i> , <i>to mislead, to lead away</i>
<i>mauern</i> , <i>to make a wall</i>	<i>vermau'ern</i> , <i>to wall up</i>
<i>raten</i> , <i>to advise</i>	<i>verra'ten</i> , <i>to misadvise, to betray</i>
<i>salzen</i> , <i>to salt</i>	<i>verjal'gen</i> , <i>to oversalt</i>

5. **Er** and **ver** are also used in converting nouns and adjectives into verbs expressive of transition from one state or condition into another. Thus,

<i>kalt</i> , <i>cold</i>	<i>erfal'ten</i> , <i>to become cold</i>
<i>lahm</i> , <i>lame</i>	<i>erlah'men</i> , <i>to become lame</i>
<i>klar</i> , <i>clear</i>	<i>erklä'ren</i> , <i>to explain</i>
<i>edel</i> , <i>noble</i>	<i>vere'beln</i> , <i>to ennoble</i>
<i>Gott</i> , <i>God</i>	<i>vergöt'tern</i> , <i>to deify</i>
<i>alt</i> , <i>old</i>	<i>veral'ten</i> , <i>to grow old, obsolete</i>

The prefix *zer* adds the sense of asunder, in pieces, to the verb with which it is joined. Thus,

brechen, to break
reißen, to tear
fallen, to fall

zerbrechen, to break in pieces
zerreißen, to tear in pieces
zerfallen, to fall in pieces

7. The original meaning of the prefix *ge* is that of *keeping together*. This meaning, however, has been lost in many compounds and varied in others, so that it is almost impracticable to give all the different significations of this prefix.

20. **Conjugation of Inseparable Verbs.**—The inseparable verbs are conjugated like their primitive verbs, except that the perfect participle is formed without the prefix *ge*.

Model Verb *betrachten*

21. The principal parts of *betrachten* are:

Present infinitive	betrachten
First person of the past indicative	ich betrachtete
Past participle	betrachtet

22. The simple forms of the verb *betrachten* are:

<i>Indicative</i>	PRESENT	<i>Subjunctive</i>
<i>ich betrachte</i> <i>I consider</i>		<i>ich betrachte</i> <i>I may consider</i>
<i>du betrachtest</i> Etc.		<i>du betrachtest</i> Etc.
	PAST	
<i>ich betrachtete</i> <i>I considered</i>		<i>ich betrachtete</i> <i>I might consider</i>
<i>du betrachtetest</i> Etc.		<i>du betrachtetest</i> Etc.
	IMPERATIVE	
Singular		<i>betrachte, consider</i>
Plural		<i>betrachtet, consider</i>
Singular and plural		<i>betrachten Sie, consider</i>
	PARTICIPLE	
<i>Present</i>		<i>Past</i>
<i>betrachtend, considering</i>		<i>betrachtet, considered</i>

23. The compound forms are:

<i>Indicative</i>		<i>Subjunctive</i>
	PERFECT	
ich habe betrachtet <i>I have considered</i>		ich habe betrachtet <i>I may have considered</i>
du hast betrachtet Etc.		du habest betrachtet Etc.
	PLUPERFECT	
ich hatte betrachtet <i>I had considered</i>		ich hätte betrachtet <i>I might have considered</i>
du hattest betrachtet Etc.		du hättest betrachtet Etc.
	FUTURE	
ich werde betrachten <i>I shall consider</i>		ich werde betrachten <i>I shall consider</i>
du wirst betrachten Etc.		du werdest betrachten Etc.
	FUTURE PERFECT	
ich werde betrachtet haben <i>I shall have considered</i>		ich werde betrachtet haben <i>I shall have considered</i>
du wirst betrachtet haben Etc.		du werdest betrachtet haben Etc.
	CONDITIONAL	
<i>Present</i>		<i>Perfect</i>
ich würde betrachten <i>I should consider</i>		ich würde betrachtet haben <i>I should have considered</i>
du würdest betrachten Etc.		du würdest betrachtet haben Etc.
	INFINITIVE	
<i>Present</i>		<i>Perfect</i>
betrachten, <i>to consider</i>		betrachtet haben, <i>to have considered</i>

SEPARABLE COMPOUNDS

24. There are a number of prepositions and adverbs, which, when used as prefixes of compound verbs, are separable; that is, the particle is liable to be separated from the verb. Such a prefix always has the principal accent. Thus, *ab'nehmen*, *to take off*; *ich nehme ab'*, *I take off*; *ich habe ab'genommen*, *I have taken off*.

The separation of the prefix from the verb takes place in the present and past tense if the verb occurs in a principal clause, and in the imperative. The prefix is, then, put at the end of the clause. Thus,

Ich nehme den Hut **ab**, *I take the hat off.*
 Du nimmst den Hut **ab**, *You took the hat off.*
 Nimm den Hut **ab**, *Take your hat off.*

But, when such a compound verb occurs in a dependent clause and is moved to the end of the sentence, the prefix is written in one word before the verb, even in simple tenses. Thus,

Er schlief noch, als ich **aufftand**, *He was still asleep, when I got up.*
 Wenn er heute **mitkäme**, würde er sich gut unterhalten, *If he would come along today, he would enjoy it.*

The prefix is always written in one word with the verb before the infinitive and the participles, therefore in all compound tenses. Thus,

Ich habe den Hut **abgenommen**, *I have taken off the hat.*
 Er wird den Hut **abnehmen**, *He will take off the hat.*

The augment *ge* of the past participle and *zu* when used with the infinitive are put between the prefix and the verb. Thus,

Der Knabe hat das Buch **aufgeschlagen**, *The boy has opened the book.*
 Die Knaben wurden geheißen, die Bücher **aufzuschlagen**, *The boys were ordered to open the books.*

25. The most common separable prefixes are:

ab, from, off, down
an, to, on, at
auf, on, upon, up
aus, out, out of
bei, by, near, to
da, there, at
dar, there, in view
ein, in, into
empor, up, upwards
fest, fast, firm
fort, away, forwards
her, hither, here

absetzen, to set down
ansehen, to look at
aufweden, to wake up
ausbleiben, to stay out
beistehen, to stand by
da bleiben, to remain there
darreichen, to reach there, to offer
eingeben, to give in
emporsehen, to look up
festhalten, to hold fast
fortfahren, to drive on, continue
herkommen, to come here

compounds. *Hin* denotes motion away from the speaker toward some other point described by hence, from here, thither, there, that way. *Her* has the opposite meaning; it denotes motion from another point toward the speaker, described by thence, from there, hither, here, this way. Thus,

hingehen, to go thither; hertommen, to come hither.
er sieht her, he looks this way; er sieht hin, he looks that way.

28. Conjugation of the Separable Compounds.—In Table II, pages 20 and 21, the complete conjugation of the verb *anfangen* is given, which shows all the peculiarities of the separable compounds.

VERBS SEPARABLE OR INSEPARABLE

29. The prefixes *durch, through; über, over, across; um, round, about; unter, under; and wieder, again*, may be either separable or inseparable. When used in their primitive or literal sense, as defined above, they are separable; when used in a derived or figurative sense, they are inseparable. Thus,

SEPARABLE	INSEPARABLE
<i>durch'laufen, to run through</i>	<i>durchlau'fen, to peruse hastily</i>
<i>durch'bohren, to bore through</i>	<i>durchboh'ren, to penetrate</i>
<i>ü'bergehen, to go over</i>	<i>überge'hen, to pass by</i>
<i>ü'bersetzen, to ferry over</i>	<i>überset'zen, to translate</i>
<i>ü'berlegen, to lay over</i>	<i>überle'gen, to consider</i>
<i>um'gehen, to associate with</i>	<i>umge'hen, to walk around</i>
<i>um'schreiben, to write over</i>	<i>umschrei'ben, to circumscribe</i>
<i>un'terhalten, to hold under</i>	<i>unterhal'ten, to entertain</i>
<i>wie'derholen, to fetch back</i>	<i>wiederho'len, to repeat</i>

Examples:

Die Soldaten erreichten um 10 Uhr den Fluß und setzten bald über,
The soldiers arrived at the river at 10 o'clock and ferried over at once.

Die Schüler übersetzten Ciceros Reden, *The pupils translated Cicero's orations.*

Halte das Glas unter! Hold the glass under!

Unterhalten Sie die Damen! Entertain the ladies.

TABLE II

anfangen,

to begin

	Indicative		Subjunctive	
Present	ich fange an, I begin		ich fange an, I may begin	
	du fangst an, thou beginst		du fangest an, thou mayst begin	
	er fangt an, he begins		er fange an, he may begin	
	wir fangen an, we begin		wir fangen an, we may begin	
	ihr fangt an, you begin		ihr fanget an, you may begin	
	ſie fangen an, they begin		ſie fangen an, they may begin	
Past	ich fing an, I began		ich finge an, I might begin	
	du fingſt an, thou didſt begin		du fingeſt an, thou mightſt begin	
	er fingt an, he began		er finge an, he might begin	
	wir fingten an, we began		wir fingen an, we might begin	
	ihr fingtet an, you began		ihr finget an, you might begin	
	ſie fingten an, they began		ſie fingen an, they might begin	
Future	ich werde anfangen, I shall begin		ich habe	angefangen, I may thou mayſt he may we may you may they may
	du werdeſt anfangen, thou wilt begin		du habeſt	
	er werde anfangen, he will begin		er habe	
	wir werden anfangen, we shall begin		wir haben	
	ihr werdet anfangen, you will begin		ihr habet	
	ſie werden anfangen, they will begin		ſie haben	
Future	ich werde anfangen, I shall begin		ich hätte	angefangen, I might thou mightſt he might we might you might they might
	du werdeſt anfangen, thou wilt begin		du hätteſt	
	er werde anfangen, he will begin		er hätte	
	wir werden anfangen, we shall begin		wir hätten	
	ihr werdet anfangen, you will begin		ihr hättet	
	ſie werden anfangen, they will begin		ſie hätten	
Future	ich werde anfangen, I shall begin		ich werde anfangen, I shall begin	
	du werdeſt anfangen, thou wilt begin		du werdeſt anfangen, thou wilt begin	
	er werde anfangen, he will begin		er werde anfangen, he will begin	
	wir werden anfangen, we shall begin		wir werden anfangen, we shall begin	
	ihr werdet anfangen, you will begin		ihr werdet anfangen, you will begin	
	ſie werden anfangen, they will begin		ſie werden anfangen, they will begin	
Future	ich werde anfangen, I shall begin		ich werde	angefangen, I shall thou wilt he will we shall you will they will
	du werdeſt anfangen, thou wilt begin		du werdeſt	
	er werde anfangen, he will begin		er werde	
	wir werden anfangen, we shall begin		wir werden	
	ihr werdet anfangen, you will begin		ihr werdet	
	ſie werden anfangen, they will begin		ſie werden	

TERMS COMPOUNDED WITH NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

30. A number of compounds are produced by joining verbs with nouns or adjectives. Some of them are separable, some inseparable. Thus:

SEPARABLE VERBS

einbringen : to bring in	from <i>ein</i> and <i>bringen</i>
einbrechen : to break in	from <i>ein</i> and <i>brechen</i>
einbringen : to put in	from <i>ein</i> and <i>bringen</i>
einsetzen : to set in	from <i>ein</i> and <i>setzen</i>
einsetzen : to set in	from <i>ein</i> and <i>setzen</i>

INSEPARABLE VERBS

einbringen : to bring in	from <i>ein</i> and <i>bringen</i>
einbrechen : to break in	from <i>ein</i> and <i>brechen</i>
einbringen : to put in	from <i>ein</i> and <i>bringen</i>
einsetzen : to set in	from <i>ein</i> and <i>setzen</i>
einsetzen : to set in	from <i>ein</i> and <i>setzen</i>

The inseparable verbs given above take the augment syllable *ge-* in the perfect participle before the inseparable prefix. Thus *gebrannt*, *gebrannt*, *geliebt*, etc.

Das Umstandswort

The Adverb

31. **Function of the Adverb.**—The adverb has been defined as a word used to modify the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb. Thus in the sentence, *Die Kinder spielen draußen*, *The children are playing outside*, the adverb *draußen*, *outside*, modifies the verb *spielen*, *are playing*, with respect to place; in the sentence, *Mein Freund ist sehr krank*, *My friend is very sick*, the adverb *sehr*, *very*, modifies the adjective *krank*, *sick*, with regard to the degree of the sickness; while in the sentence, *Dieses Mädchen singt recht gut*, *This girl sings quite well*, the adverb *recht*, *quite*, modifies the adverb *gut*, *well*.

32. **Classification of Adverbs According to Meaning.**—Adverbs in German are innumerable and of the most

s meanings and uses. They have been divided, with to meaning, into the following classes:

Adverbs of Place.—The most important of these, are:

<i>ere</i>	<i>born, before</i>	<i>hinein, in, into</i>
<i>whither</i>	<i>hinten, behind</i>	<i>fort, away</i>
<i>whence</i>	<i>draußen, outside</i>	<i>vorwärts, forwards</i>
<i>re</i>	<i>drinnen, inside</i>	<i>rückwärts, backwards</i>
<i>e</i>	<i>daheim, at home</i>	<i>hinweg, away</i>
<i>ere</i>	<i>links, at the left</i>	<i>her, hither</i>
<i>everywhere</i>	<i>rechts, at the right</i>	<i>herab, down</i>
<i>bove</i>	<i>hin, thither</i>	<i>herauf, up</i>
<i>below</i>	<i>hinauf, upwards</i>	<i>herein, in</i>

Adverbs of Time.—The most important are:

<i>when</i>	<i>spät, late</i>	<i>immer, ever</i>
<i>ze, how long</i>	<i>morgen, tomorrow</i>	<i>oft, often</i>
<i>how often</i>	<i>gestern, yesterday</i>	<i>wieder, again</i>
<i>ever</i>	<i>heute, today</i>	<i>selten, seldom</i>
<i>w</i>	<i>balb, soon</i>	<i>gegenwärtig, presently</i>
<i>, never</i>	<i>nachher, afterwards</i>	<i>bereits, already</i>
<i>rlly</i>	<i>vorher, before</i>	

Adverbs of Manner.—Some of them are:

<i>v</i>	<i>anders, otherwise</i>	<i>fürwahr, truly</i>
	<i>gern, willingly</i>	<i>wirklich, really</i>
<i>as</i>	<i>wohl, well</i>	<i>gewiß, certainly</i>

Adverbs of Degree.—Some of them are:

<i>ich</i>	<i>mehr, more</i>	<i>beinahe, nearly</i>
<i>little</i>	<i>ungemein, exception-</i>	<i>kaum, hardly</i>
<i>ry</i>	<i>ally</i>	<i>genug, enough</i>
<i>ile</i>	<i>fast, almost</i>	

mples:

liegt Lincoln begraben, Where lies Lincoln buried?

ier vorwärts müssen wir streben, We must always strive

Sie jemals in Hamburg gewesen? Have you ever been in

ies Buch ist ebenso schön wie jenes, This book is just as beautiful

in am liebsten daheim, I like it best at home.

ist wirklich wahr, That is really true.

33. Classification of Adverbs With Respect to Origin.—The origin of their origin adverbs may be divided into four groups:

1. Adverbs that are primitive words, such as

hier, <i>here</i>	da, <i>there</i>	schon, <i>soon</i>
unter, <i>under</i>	über, <i>over</i>	in, <i>in</i>
unter, <i>under</i>	unter, <i>under</i>	da, <i>there</i>

2. Adverbs that are compounds of primitive adverbs, such as

unter, <i>under</i>	unter, <i>under</i>	weiter, <i>over there</i>
unter, <i>under</i>	unter, <i>under</i>	weiter, <i>over so</i>

3. Adverbs that are derivatives of nouns, adjectives, etc. formed by means of suffixes, as,

in, <i>in</i>	hin, <i>thence</i>	vorwärts, <i>ahead</i>
aus, <i>out</i>	hin, <i>thence</i>	links, <i>to the left</i>

4. Adverbs that are adjectives in the stem-form; as,

gut, <i>well</i>	schnell, <i>rapidly</i>	schön, <i>beautifully</i>
------------------	-------------------------	---------------------------

34. Comparison of Adverbs.—Many of those adverbs that are simply adjectives used in their stem-forms and denote manner of action, are capable of comparison. The forms of the different degrees are the same in adverbs as in adjectives. Thus, the comparative of such an adverb ends in *er*; as,

Die Amerikaner kämpften tapferer als die Spanier, *The Americans fought more bravely than the Spaniards.*

Dieser Vogel singt schöner als jener, *This bird sings more beautifully than that one.*

In the superlative, the form with *am* is used when actual comparison is expressed. Thus,

Ich singe gut, du singst besser, aber sie singt am besten, *I sing well, you sing better, but she sings best.*

Er schreibt am schönsten, *He writes the most beautiful (of all).*

35. When, however, it is intended not to compare individuals with one another, but merely to denote a very high degree or extreme eminence of an action, there are three ways in which it may be done.

1. By using *auf* (*auf daß*) with the accusative, or *zum* (*zu dem*) with the dative of the superlative. Thus,

Er grüßte aufs freundlichste, He greeted in a very friendly manner.

Der Krieger kämpfte aufs tapferste, aber vergeblich, The warrior fought most bravely but in vain.

2. By using the simple uninflected form of the superlative. Thus,

Dieses Buch ist äußerst langweilig, This book is extremely tedious.
Kommen Sie möglichst bald, Come as soon as possible.

The most frequently used adverbs of this class are:

<i>äußerst, extremely</i>	<i>höflichst, most politely</i>
<i>eiligst, most hastily</i>	<i>innigst, most cordially</i>
<i>ergebenst, most devotedly</i>	<i>jüngst, most recently</i>
<i>gefälligst, kindly, please</i>	<i>längst, long since</i>
<i>gehorsamst, most obediently</i>	<i>meist, mostly</i>
<i>gütigst, most kindly</i>	<i>möglichst, as much as possible</i>
<i>höchst, most highly</i>	

3. By adding to the simple form of the superlative the termination *enß*. Thus,

Ich danke bestenß, I thank you very much.

Es ist höchstens halb drei, It is, at the most, half past two.

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 8)

Das Verhältnisswort.

The Preposition

1. Function of the Preposition.—A preposition is a word used to connect nouns and pronouns with other words of the sentence and bring them into relation. Thus in the sentence, *Ein Haus steht auf dem Berge*, *A house stands on the mountain*, the preposition *auf*, *on*, connects the noun *Berg*, *mountain*, with the verb *steht*, *stands*, and shows the relation between *Haus*, *house*, and *Berg*, *mountain*. In the sentence, *Er geht mit mir*, *He goes with me*, the preposition *mit*, *with*, connects the pronoun *mir*, *me*, with the other parts of the sentence.

The preposition is said to govern the noun or pronoun with the help of which it forms an adjectival or adverbial phrase. By this is meant that the preposition determines the case of the noun or pronoun. Thus some of the prepositions have the noun or pronoun in the genitive case, some in the dative case, others in the accusative case, and some either in the dative or accusative case according to circumstances.

2. Prepositions Governing the Genitive.—The following prepositions govern the genitive case:

anstatt, statt, *instead of*
außerhalb, *without, outside of*
diesseits, *on this side of*
halben, *for the sake of*
halber, *for the sake of*

innerhalb, *within, inside of*
jenseits, *beyond*
kraft, *by virtue of*
laut, *according to*
mittels, *by means of*

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

מִכְּפֶנֶס׃ אֵלַי׃	מִכְּפֶנֶס׃ <i>darving</i>
הֵן׃ מִכְּפֶנֶס׃ לִי׃ הֵן׃ אֵלַי׃	הֵן׃ <i>on account of</i>
הֵן׃ מִכְּפֶנֶס׃ לִי׃ הֵן׃ אֵלַי׃	הֵן׃ <i>along</i>
הֵן׃ מִכְּפֶנֶס׃ לִי׃ הֵן׃ אֵלַי׃	הֵן׃ <i>in consequence of</i>
הֵן׃ מִכְּפֶנֶס׃ לִי׃ הֵן׃ אֵלַי׃	הֵן׃ <i>in spite of</i>

Examples:

הֵן׃ מִכְּפֶנֶס׃ לִי׃ הֵן׃ אֵלַי׃ *I am coming instead of my*

הֵן׃ מִכְּפֶנֶס׃ לִי׃ הֵן׃ אֵלַי׃ *On this side of the*

הֵן׃ מִכְּפֶנֶס׃ לִי׃ הֵן׃ אֵלַי׃ *along the erection of the factory.*

הֵן׃ מִכְּפֶנֶס׃ לִי׃ הֵן׃ אֵלַי׃ *We can live by means of a submarine.*

3. Prepositions Governing the Dative.—The following prepositions govern the dative case:

לְכָבֵד׃	לְכָבֵד׃ <i>next to</i>
לְכָבֵד׃	לְכָבֵד׃ <i>along with</i>
לְכָבֵד׃	לְכָבֵד׃ <i>over, at</i>
לְכָבֵד׃	לְכָבֵד׃ <i>along with</i>
לְכָבֵד׃	לְכָבֵד׃ <i>since</i>
לְכָבֵד׃	לְכָבֵד׃ <i>of, from</i>
לְכָבֵד׃	לְכָבֵד׃ <i>to, at</i>
לְכָבֵד׃	לְכָבֵד׃ <i>contrary to</i>

Examples:

הֵן׃ מִכְּפֶנֶס׃ לִי׃ הֵן׃ אֵלַי׃ *The soldiers returned from the camp.*

הֵן׃ מִכְּפֶנֶס׃ לִי׃ הֵן׃ אֵלַי׃ *The table is made of hard wood.*

הֵן׃ מִכְּפֶנֶס׃ לִי׃ הֵן׃ אֵלַי׃ *Out of love for his fatherland, he sacrificed his life.*

4. Prepositions Governing the Accusative.—The prepositions that are always connected with the accusative are as follows:

בִּישׁ׃	גֵּגֶן׃	עִם׃
בִּישׁ׃	עִם׃	עִם׃
בִּישׁ׃	עִם׃	עִם׃

Examples:

Durch diese hohle Gasse muß er kommen, *Through this narrow alley he must come.*

Er kann **ohne** dich nicht leben, *He cannot live without you.*

Wir gingen **um** den See, *We walked around the lake.*

Die Kolonien kämpften **für** ihre Freiheit, *The colonies fought for their liberty.*

5. Prepositions Governing the Dative or the Accusative.—The following prepositions are construed either with the dative or with the accusative case:

an, on, at, against	in, in, into	unter, under, among
auf, on, upon, up	neben, beside	vor, before
hinter, behind	über, above, across	zwischen, between

These prepositions govern either the dative or the accusative but not without a difference of signification; for when motion toward is indicated, the accusative is required. Thus the accusative will be used in answering the question, whither? When, however, motion or rest in any given place or condition is signified, the dative is used and thus answers the question, where? Thus,

Das Mädchen geht **in den Garten**, *The girl is going into (motion towards) the garden.*

But

Das Mädchen geht **(in dem) im Garten** auf und ab, *The girl is walking up and down in (motion within) the garden.*

This is the general principle that will be found, more or less distinctly, everywhere to prevail in the use of prepositions of this class.

Examples:

an, on, at

Dative	an einem Orte wohnen, <i>to dwell in or at a place</i>
Dative	Er arbeitet an einem Buche, <i>He is working on a book.</i>
Dative	Er leidet an fürchterlichem Zahnweh, <i>He has a terrible toothache.</i>
Dative	am Morgen und am Abend, <i>in the morning and in the evening</i>
Accusative	an einen Freund schreiben, <i>to write to a friend</i>
Accusative	an etwas Schönes denken, <i>to think of something beautiful</i>
Accusative	Ich stelle den Tisch an die Wand, <i>I put the table against the wall.</i>

TABLE II

anfangen,

to begin

	Indicative	Subjunctive								
Present	ich fange an, <i>I begin</i> du fängst an, <i>thou beginst</i> er fängt an, <i>he begins</i> wir fangen an, <i>we begin</i> ihr fangt an, <i>you begin</i> sie fangen an, <i>they begin</i>	ich fange an, <i>I may begin</i> du fangest an, <i>thou mayst begin</i> er fange an, <i>he may begin</i> wir fangen an, <i>we may begin</i> ihr fanget an, <i>you may begin</i> sie fangen an, <i>they may begin</i>								
Past	ich fing an, <i>I began</i> du fingst an, <i>thou didst begin</i> er fing an, <i>he began</i> wir fingen an, <i>we began</i> ihr fingt an, <i>you began</i> sie fingen an, <i>they began</i>	ich finge an, <i>I might begin</i> du fingest an, <i>thou mightst begin</i> er finge an, <i>he might begin</i> wir fingen an, <i>we might begin</i> ihr finget an, <i>you might begin</i> sie fingen an, <i>they might begin</i>								
Perfect	ich habe angefangen, <i>I have begun</i> du hast angefangen, <i>thou hast begun</i> er hat angefangen, <i>he has begun</i> wir haben angefangen, <i>we have begun</i> ihr habt angefangen, <i>you have begun</i> sie haben angefangen, <i>they have begun</i>	ich habe du habest er habe wir haben ihr habet sie haben <table> <tr> <td>anfangen,</td> <td> <i>I may</i> <i>thou mayst</i> <i>he may</i> <i>we may</i> <i>you may</i> <i>they may</i> </td> <td> begun begun begun begun begun begun </td> </tr> </table>	anfangen,	<i>I may</i> <i>thou mayst</i> <i>he may</i> <i>we may</i> <i>you may</i> <i>they may</i>	begun begun begun begun begun begun					
anfangen,	<i>I may</i> <i>thou mayst</i> <i>he may</i> <i>we may</i> <i>you may</i> <i>they may</i>	begun begun begun begun begun begun								
Pluperfect	ich hatte angefangen, <i>I had begun</i> du hättest angefangen, <i>thou hadst begun</i> er hatte angefangen, <i>he had begun</i> wir hatten angefangen, <i>we had begun</i> ihr hättet angefangen, <i>you had begun</i> sie hatten angefangen, <i>they had begun</i>	ich hätte du hättest er hätte wir hätten ihr hättet sie hätten <table> <tr> <td>anfangen,</td> <td> <i>I might</i> <i>thou mightst</i> <i>he might</i> <i>we might</i> <i>you might</i> <i>they might</i> </td> <td> begun begun begun begun begun begun </td> </tr> </table>	anfangen,	<i>I might</i> <i>thou mightst</i> <i>he might</i> <i>we might</i> <i>you might</i> <i>they might</i>	begun begun begun begun begun begun					
anfangen,	<i>I might</i> <i>thou mightst</i> <i>he might</i> <i>we might</i> <i>you might</i> <i>they might</i>	begun begun begun begun begun begun								
Future	ich werde anfangen, <i>I shall begin</i> du wirst anfangen, <i>thou wilt begin</i> er wird anfangen, <i>he will begin</i> wir werden anfangen, <i>we shall begin</i> ihr werdet anfangen, <i>you will begin</i> sie werden anfangen, <i>they will begin</i>	ich werde anfangen, <i>I shall begin</i> du werdest anfangen, <i>thou wilt begin</i> er werde anfangen, <i>he will begin</i> wir werden anfangen, <i>we shall begin</i> ihr werdet anfangen, <i>you will begin</i> sie werden anfangen, <i>they will begin</i>								
Future Perfect	ich werde du wirst er wird wir werden ihr werdet sie werden <table> <tr> <td>anfangen</td> <td>haben,</td> <td> <i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i> </td> <td> begun begun begun begun begun begun </td> </tr> </table>	anfangen	haben,	<i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i>	begun begun begun begun begun begun	ich werde du werdest er werde wir werden ihr werdet sie werden <table> <tr> <td>anfangen</td> <td>haben,</td> <td> <i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i> </td> <td> begun begun begun begun begun begun </td> </tr> </table>	anfangen	haben,	<i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i>	begun begun begun begun begun begun
anfangen	haben,	<i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i>	begun begun begun begun begun begun							
anfangen	haben,	<i>I shall</i> <i>thou wilt</i> <i>he will</i> <i>we shall</i> <i>you will</i> <i>they will</i>	begun begun begun begun begun begun							

vor, before

Dative Die Eiche steht vor dem Hause, *The oak stands in front of the house.*

Dative die Zustände vor dem Kriege, *the conditions before the war*

Accusative Ich trat vor die Thür, *I stepped in front of the door.*

Accusative vor den Richter bringen, *to bring before the justice*

zwischen, between

Dative der Krieg zwischen der Türkei und Rußland, *the war between Turkey and Russia*

Dative Die Zeitung liegt zwischen den Büchern, *The paper lies between the books.*

Accusative Ich trat zwischen beide, *I stepped between the two.*

Accusative Ich legte das Blatt zwischen die Bücher, *I put the leaf between the books.*

Das Bindewort.**The Conjunction**

6. Function of the Conjunction.—The conjunction has been defined as a word used to connect sentences or sentential elements that are used alike. Like the preposition, it is a connective; but it differs from the preposition in two important points.

In the first place, its usual and principal office is to connect two sentences together. Thus,

Er sprach **und** sie hörten, *He spoke and they listened.*

Er wird spielen, **wenn** Sie es wünschen, *He will play if you wish it.*

In these sentences the words **und** and **wenn** connect the different propositions.

In the second place, though some of the conjunctions, like **und**, *and*, **oder**, *or*, **aber**, *but*, often connect words in the same sentence, these words are always coordinate, that is to say, they are used alike in the sentence, or have the same construction. Thus,

Er **und** ich rannten um die Wette, *He and I ran a race.*

Seid ihr mit dem Dampfschiff gekommen **oder** mit dem Zuge?
Did you come with the steamer or with the train?

VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

30. A number of compounds are produced by joining verbs with nouns or adjectives. Some of them are separable, some inseparable. Thus,

SEPARABLE VERBS

fehl'schlagen, <i>to miscarry</i>	from fehl and schlagen
frei'sprechen, <i>to acquit</i>	from frei and sprechen
gleich'kommen, <i>to equal</i>	from gleich and kommen
loß'reißen, <i>to tear away</i>	from loß and reißen
statt'finden, <i>to take place</i>	from statt and finden

INSEPARABLE VERBS

fröh'locken, <i>to exult</i>	from fröh and locken
hand'haben, <i>to handle</i>	from hand and haben
lieb'losen, <i>to caress</i>	from lieb and losen
mut'maßen, <i>to suspect</i>	from Mut and maßen
will'fahren, <i>to accede to</i>	from Will and fahren

The inseparable verbs given above take the augment syllable *ge* in the perfect participle before the inseparable prefix. Thus, *gefroh'lockt, gehand'habt, geliebt'ost*, etc.

Das Umstandswort

The Adverb

31. Function of the Adverb.—The adverb has been defined as a word used to modify the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb. Thus in the sentence, *Die Kinder spielen draußen*, *The children are playing outside*, the adverb *draußen*, *outside*, modifies the verb *spielen*, *are playing*, with respect to place; in the sentence, *Mein Freund ist sehr krank*, *My friend is very sick*, the adverb *sehr*, *very*, modifies the adjective *krank*, *sick*, with regard to the degree of the sickness; while in the sentence, *Dieses Mädchen singt recht gut*, *This girl sings quite well*, the adverb *recht*, *quite*, modifies the adverb *gut*, *well*.

32. Classification of Adverbs According to Meaning.—Adverbs in German are innumerable and of the most

various meanings and uses. They have been divided, with regard to meaning, into the following classes:

1. *Adverbs of Place.*—The most important of these, are:

wo, <i>where</i>	vorn, <i>before</i>	hinein, <i>in, into</i>
wohin, <i>whither</i>	hinten, <i>behind</i>	fort, <i>away</i>
woher, <i>whence</i>	draußen, <i>outside</i>	vorwärts, <i>forwards</i>
hier, <i>here</i>	drinnen, <i>inside</i>	rückwärts, <i>backwards</i>
da, <i>there</i>	daheim, <i>at home</i>	hinweg, <i>away</i>
dort, <i>there</i>	links, <i>at the left</i>	her, <i>hither</i>
überall, <i>everywhere</i>	rechts, <i>at the right</i>	herab, <i>down</i>
oben, <i>above</i>	hin, <i>thither</i>	herauf, <i>up</i>
unten, <i>below</i>	hinauf, <i>upwards</i>	herein, <i>in</i>

2. *Adverbs of Time.*—The most important are:

wann, <i>when</i>	spät, <i>late</i>	immer, <i>ever</i>
wie lange, <i>how long</i>	morgen, <i>tomorrow</i>	oft, <i>often</i>
wie oft, <i>how often</i>	gestern, <i>yesterday</i>	wieder, <i>again</i>
jemaß, <i>ever</i>	heute, <i>today</i>	selten, <i>seldom</i>
jetzt, <i>now</i>	balb, <i>soon</i>	gegenwärtig, <i>presently</i>
niemaß, <i>never</i>	nachher, <i>afterwards</i>	bereits, <i>already</i>
früh, <i>early</i>	vorher, <i>before</i>	

3. *Adverbs of Manner.*—Some of them are:

wie, <i>how</i>	anders, <i>otherwise</i>	fürwahr, <i>truly</i>
so, <i>so</i>	gern, <i>willingly</i>	wirklich, <i>really</i>
ebenso, <i>as</i>	wohl, <i>well</i>	gewiß, <i>certainly</i>

4. *Adverbs of Degree.*—Some of them are:

viel, <i>much</i>	mehr, <i>more</i>	beinahe, <i>nearly</i>
wenig, <i>little</i>	ungemein, <i>exception-</i>	kaum, <i>hardly</i>
sehr, <i>very</i>	ally	genug, <i>enough</i>
ganz, <i>quite</i>	fast, <i>almost</i>	

Examples:

Wo liegt Lincoln begraben, *Where lies Lincoln buried?*

Immer vorwärts müssen wir streben, *We must always strive forward.*

Sind Sie jemals in Hamburg gewesen? *Have you ever been in Hamburg?*

Dieses Buch ist ebenso schön wie jenes, *This book is just as beautiful as that one.*

Ich bin am liebsten daheim, *I like it best at home.*

Das ist wirklich wahr, *That is really true.*

33. Classification of Adverbs With Respect to Origin.—With respect to their origin adverbs may be divided into four groups:

1. Adverbs that are primitive words, such as

da, <i>there</i>	wo, <i>where</i>	bald, <i>soon</i>
dort, <i>there</i>	jetzt, <i>now</i>	so, <i>so</i>
hier, <i>here</i>	sehr, <i>very</i>	nie, <i>never</i>

2. Adverbs that are compounds of primitive adverbs, such as:

daher, <i>thence</i>	hierher, <i>hither</i>	darüber, <i>over there</i>
dorthin, <i>thither</i>	wohin, <i>whereto</i>	wiefo, <i>how so</i>

3. Adverbs that are derivatives of nouns, adjectives, etc. formed by means of suffixes, as,

teils, <i>partly</i>	blindlings, <i>blindly</i>	vornwärts, <i>ahead</i>
flugs, <i>swiftly</i>	rechts, <i>to the right</i>	links, <i>to the left</i>

4. Adverbs that are adjectives in the stem-form; as,

gut, <i>well</i>	schnell, <i>rapidly</i>	schön, <i>beautifully</i>
------------------	-------------------------	---------------------------

34. Comparison of Adverbs.—Many of those adverbs that are simply adjectives used in their stem-forms and denote manner of action, are capable of comparison. The forms of the different degrees are the same in adverbs as in adjectives. Thus, the comparative of such an adverb ends in *er*; as,

Die Amerikaner kämpften **tapferer** als die Spanier, *The Americans fought more bravely than the Spaniards.*

Dieser Vogel singt **schöner** als jener, *This bird sings more beautifully than that one.*

In the superlative, the form with **am** is used when actual comparison is expressed. Thus,

Ich singe **gut**, du singst **besser**, aber sie singt **am besten**, *I sing well, you sing better, but she sings best.*

Er schreibt **am schönsten**, *He writes the most beautiful (of all).*

35. When, however, it is intended not to compare individuals with one another, but merely to denote a very high degree or extreme eminence of an action, there are three ways in which it may be done.

1. By using *auf* (*auf daß*) with the accusative, or *zum* (*zu dem*) with the dative of the superlative. Thus,

Er grüßte aufs freundlichste, He greeted in a very friendly manner.

Der Krieger kämpfte aufs tapferste, aber vergeblich, The warrior fought most bravely but in vain.

2. By using the simple uninflected form of the superlative. Thus,

Dieses Buch ist äußerst langweilig, This book is extremely tedious.
Kommen Sie möglichst bald, Come as soon as possible.

The most frequently used adverbs of this class are:

<i>äußerst, extremely</i>	<i>höflichst, most politely</i>
<i>eiligst, most hastily</i>	<i>innigst, most cordially</i>
<i>ergebenst, most devotedly</i>	<i>jüngst, most recently</i>
<i>gefälligst, kindly, please</i>	<i>längst, long since</i>
<i>gehorsamst, most obediently</i>	<i>meist, mostly</i>
<i>gütigst, most kindly</i>	<i>möglichst, as much as possible</i>
<i>höchst, most highly</i>	

3. By adding to the simple form of the superlative the termination *enst*. Thus,

Ich danke bestens, I thank you very much.

Es ist höchstens halb drei, It is, at the most, half past two.

the interjections *ach!* *ah!* and *o!* *oh!* *o!* *oh!* which are found in nearly all languages, may express joy or sorrow, surprise or fear, or almost any emotion—pleasurable or painful. The thought to be inferred must be gathered from the tones, the gestures, and the manner of the speaker, as well as from the occasion on which it is used. But most of the interjections are apt to express only one kind of emotion or feeling, therefore they may be classified according to the nature of the emotion that they indicate.

12. Interjections Classified According to Their Meaning.—The interjections may be divided, in interjections

1. Of joy, glad surprise, pleasant emotion; as *ha!* *ha!* *heia!* *heigho!* *juchhei!* *heigho!*

2. Of painful feeling or suffering; as, *au!* *o!* *ach!* *alas!* *o weh!* *oh!*

3. Of disapproval or contempt; as, *pfui!* *pooh!* *äh!* *poh!* *fi!* *fie!*

4. Of calling attention; as, *ho!* *ho!* *holla!* *hello!* *hem!* *hem!* *hallo!* *hello!*

5. Of quieting or repressing; as, *psit!* *pst!* *hush!* *hush!*

13. List of Interjections.—Some of the most important interjections are the following:

ach! *ah!* *O!* *alas!*

ah! *ah!*

aha! *aha!*

au! *O!*

bah! *bah!*

ch! *ch!*

ei! *oho!*

ha! *ha!*

haha! *haha!*

hallo! *hello!*

he! *O!*

heba! *ho there!*

heia! *heigho!*

hem! *hem!*

ho! *ho!*

hoho! *hoho!*

holla! *hello!*

hu! *whew!*

hui! *whiz!*

hurra! *hurrah!*

juchhe! *heigho!*

na! *well now!*

o! *oh!* *O!* *oh!*

oho! *oho!*

pfui! *pooh!* *fie!*

psit! *pst!* *hush!*

weh! *alas!*

Sometimes other words, as nouns, adjectives, adverbs, verbs, and phrases are used elliptically, in an exclamatory way, as interjections. Such are:

heil! <i>hail!</i>	nun! <i>well!</i>	weiter! <i>go on!</i>
herein! <i>come in!</i>	sieh da! <i>look here!</i>	Gut Heil! <i>hail!</i>
herrlich! <i>splendid!</i>	mohlauf! <i>cheer up!</i>	Gottlob! <i>God be praised!</i>
leider! <i>alas!</i>	weg! fort! <i>away!</i>	bewahre! <i>God forbid!</i>

To the interjections also belong natural exclamations employed to allure or drive away domestic animals—imitations of natural sounds, whether of animal or of animate objects. Such as,

hi! <i>how!</i>	piß paß! <i>bang!</i>	tiktat, tiktat, <i>tick, tick</i>
wau wau! <i>bow wow!</i>	bim bam, <i>ding dong</i>	flipp flapp, (of a
miau! <i>mew!</i>	bum bam, <i>ding dong</i>	windmill)

WORD FORMATION

14. Word Formation in General.—The process of derivation and composition of words from native roots, has been much more largely extended in German than in English. Besides an extraordinary facility in compounding words, the German language has the power of attaching prefixes as well as suffixes; it also makes frequent use of the um- and ablaut which, by modulation of the vowel sound, produces from old stems whole families of offshoots. The accumulation of too many roots would have made the language unwieldy. Far more convenient is a limited number of root words, endowed with an extensive power of self-propagation. Thus the German language imitates the natural relationship of things by an equivalent natural relationship of words; and this reproductive power of every particle of the language is the best proof of its vitality.

DERIVATION OF GERMAN WORDS

15. Derivation in General.—In the derivation of German words three elements must be considered, the *radical syllable* or *root*, the *prefix*, and the *suffix*. A root must always be present; from this a whole family of nouns, adjectives, verbs, or adverbs may be derived by changing the root vowel and by the aid of prefixes and suffixes.

DERIVATION OF NOUNS

16. Derivation of Nouns From Verbs.—No class of German words has proved itself so prolific in derivatives as the irregular verbs being of great antiquity and of most common use. They lend themselves very readily to the making of derivatives. A great number of nouns have come from this source, representing simply the stem of the verb; many others have been formed by a change of the root vowel and the addition of suffixes and prefixes.

17. Nouns Derived From Verbs Without Augments.—Many nouns are derived from strong verbs without the aid of suffixes. The vowel of the root may be changed. Thus,

das Band, *ribbon*, from binden
 der Band, *volume*, from binden
 der Biß, *bite*, from beißen
 der Fall, *fall*, from fallen
 der Gang, *walk*, from gehen
 die Günst, *favor*, from gönnen
 die Hülle, *wrapping*, from hehlen
 die Hüfte, *hip*, from heben
 der Klang, *sound*, from klingen
 die Kunst, *art*, from können
 die Last, *burden*, from lasten
 der Lauf, *course*, from laufen

der Leib, *stomach*, from leben
 das Licht, *light*, from leuchten
 der Schein, *semblance*, from scheinen
 der Schlag, *blow*, from schlagen
 der Sitz, *seat*, from sitzen
 der Schuß, *shot*, from schießen
 der Spruch, *proverb*, from sprechen
 der Stand, *position*, from stehen
 der Trank, *drink*, from trinken
 der Tritt, *step*, from treten
 der Wuchs, *growth*, from wachsen
 der Zug, *draft*, from ziehen

18. Nouns Derived From Verbs With the Aid of Suffixes.—A great number of nouns are formed from verbs by the aid of suffixes. The following are the most noteworthy derivations:

1. *Derivation by -el*.—The termination =el is in the majority of cases employed to express an instrument. Thus,

der Deckel, *cover*, from decken
 der Flugel, *wing*, from fliegen
 der Hebel, *lever*, from heben
 der Wurfel, *cube*, from greifen

der Schlüssel, *key*, from schließen
 die Spindel, *spindle*, from spinnen
 die Klingel, *bell*, from klingen
 der Speichel, *spit*, from speien

2. *Derivation by =er and =erin.*—The two terminations =er (for the masculine) and =erin (for the feminine) signify a person performing an act as a regular occupation. Thus,

der Bäcker, <i>baker</i> , from backen	der Sänger, <i>singer</i> , from singen
der Bauer, <i>farmer</i> , from bauen	der Schlächter, <i>butcher</i> , from schlachten
der Brauer, <i>brewer</i> , from brauen	
der Läufer, <i>runner</i> , from laufen	der Zeiger, <i>hand of a clock</i> , from zeigen
der Reiter, <i>rider</i> , from reiten	

The feminine forms of Bauer and Sänger are die Bäuerin, die Sängerin.

3. *Derivation by =sal and =sel.*—The terminations =sal and =sel serve to form nouns that are mostly neuter, seldom feminine. Thus,

das Drangsal, <i>oppression</i> , from drängen	das Schicksal, <i>fate</i> , from scheiden
das Labial, <i>comfort</i> , from laben	das Scheusal, <i>monster</i> , from scheuen
die Mühsal, <i>trouble</i> , from mühen	die Trübsal, <i>affliction</i> , from trüben
das Rätsel, <i>riddle</i> , from raten	das Überbleibsel, <i>remnant</i> , from überbleiben

4. *Derivation by =en.*—The termination =en serves to form many masculine and a few neuter nouns. Thus,

der Graben, <i>ditch</i> , from graben	der Hafen, <i>harbor</i> , from haben
der Glaube, <i>belief</i> , from glauben	der Schrecken, <i>fright</i> , from schrecken
der Haken, <i>hook</i> , from haben	

5. *Derivation by =ei.*—This termination, applied to a verbal root, forms a noun of action. Thus,

die Heuchelei, <i>dissimulation</i> , from heucheln	die Blauderei, <i>chit chat</i> , from plaudern
die Prahlerei, <i>boasting</i> , from prahlen	die Schmeichelei, <i>flattery</i> , from schmeicheln

6. *Derivation by =nis.*—Attached to verbal roots =nis denotes the action, its concrete effect, or the place where it is performed. Thus,

die Ersparnis, <i>saving</i> , from sparen	das Bündnis, <i>league</i> , from binden
die Versäumnis, <i>neglect</i> , from versäumen	das Hindernis, <i>hindrance</i> , from hindern
die Erkenntnis, <i>knowledge</i> , from erkennen	das Vermächtnis, <i>legacy</i> , from vermachen

7. *Derivation by =ung.*—The termination =ung forms nouns that denote action or its effect. Thus,

die Erzählung, <i>narration</i> , from erzählen	die Stellung, <i>position</i> , from stellen
die Erfindung, <i>invention</i> , from erfinden	die Wirkung, <i>effect</i> , from wirken
die Fassung, <i>form</i> , from fassen	die Verwaltung, <i>administration</i> , from verwalten

19. **Nouns Derived From Other Nouns or From Adjectives by the Aid of Suffixes.**—Many nouns are formed from other nouns or from adjectives by the aid of suffixes.

1. *Derivation by =er, =ler, =ner.*—Nouns formed with these terminations denote a resident or functionary. Thus,

der Bürger, <i>citizen</i> , from Burg	der Schäfer, <i>shepherd</i> , from Schaf
der Gärtner, <i>gardner</i> , from Garten	der Kellner, <i>waiter</i> , from Keller
der Töpfer, <i>potter</i> , from Topf	der Künstler, <i>artist</i> , from Kunst

2. *Derivation by =ei.*—This termination serves to form names of countries, of official residences, of places of business, and a few other words. Thus,

die Abtei, <i>abbey</i> , from Abt	die Druderei, <i>printing office</i> , from Drucker
die Brennerei, <i>distillery</i> , from Brenner	die Sklaverei, <i>slavery</i> , from Sklave
die Reiterei, <i>cavalry</i> , from Reiter	die Türkei, <i>Turkey</i> , from Türke

3. *Derivation by =heit and =keit.*—These terminations signify species, race, condition of, or the possession of a quality shared with others. Thus,

die Gesundheit, <i>health</i> , from gesund	die Menschheit, <i>humanity</i> , from Mensch
die Dummheit, <i>stupidity</i> , from dumm	die Christenheit, <i>Christendom</i> , from Christ
die Brauchbarkeit, <i>usefulness</i> , from brauchbar	die Kindheit, <i>childhood</i> , from Kind
die Frömmigkeit, <i>piety</i> , from fromm	die Gottheit, <i>deity</i> , from Gott

4. *Derivation by =schaft.*—Nouns formed with this termination are abstracts and collectives. Thus,

die Botschaft, <i>message</i> , from Bote	die Feindschaft, <i>enmity</i> , from Feind
die Bereitschaft, <i>readiness</i> , from bereit	die Mannschaft, <i>crew</i> , from Mann
die Bürgerschaft, <i>citizens</i> , from Bürger	die Herrschaft, <i>dominion</i> , from Herr

5. *Derivation by =lein and =chen.*—These are the two chief diminutive syllables in German. The termination =lein is more general in words of South German origin, while the termination =chen is more common in the North. Thus,

das Häuschen, <i>little house</i> , from Haus	das Mädchen, <i>little girl</i> , from Magd
das Dörfchen, <i>little village</i> , from Dorf	das Büchlein, <i>little book</i> , from Buch
das Männchen, <i>manikin</i> , from der Mann	das Püblein, <i>little boy</i> , from Pube

6. *Derivation by =ling.*—This termination forms many class names. Thus,

der Jüngling, <i>youth</i> , from jung	der Fremdling, <i>stranger</i> , from fremd
der Günstling, <i>favorite</i> , from Gunst	der Sprößling, <i>scion</i> , from Sproß
der Feigling, <i>coward</i> , from feige	der Liebling, <i>favorite</i> , from lieb

7. *Derivation by =in.*—The termination =in forms feminine from masculine nouns, whereby the root vowel is generally modified. Thus,

die Bäuerin, <i>female peasant</i> , from Bauer	die Köchin, <i>female cook</i> , from Koch
die Fürstin, <i>princess</i> , from Fürst	die Gemahlin, <i>spouse</i> , from Gemahl
die Löwin, <i>lioness</i> , from Löwe	die Schneiderin, <i>dressmaker</i> , from Schneider

8. *Derivation by =niß.*—The termination =niß, formerly spelled niß, is applied to adjectives to denote a concrete manifestation of the quality. Thus,

die Finsterniß, <i>darkness</i> , from finster	die Betrübniß, <i>affliction</i> , from betrübt
die Fäulniß, <i>rottenness</i> , from faul	die Wildniß, <i>wilderness</i> , from wild

9. *Derivation by =tum.*—=tum is applied to nouns to denote estate, province, sphere, and to adjectives to denote a manifestation of the quality. Thus,

das Bürgertum, <i>citizenship</i> , from Bürger	das Heiligtum, <i>sanctuary</i> , from heilig
das Fürstentum, <i>principality</i> , from Fürst	das Eigentum, <i>property</i> , from eigen
das Altertum, <i>antiquity</i> , from Alter	der Reichtum, <i>riches</i> , from reich

nämlich, <i>namely</i>	überdies, <i>besides</i>
natürlich, <i>of course</i>	übrigens, <i>moreover</i>
noch, <i>yet, still</i>	vielleicht, <i>perhaps</i>
nun, <i>now</i>	vielmehr, <i>rather</i>
so, <i>so</i>	wohl, <i>perhaps, I presume</i>
sogar, <i>even</i>	zudem, <i>besides</i>
sogleich, <i>directly</i>	zuerst, <i>first</i>
sonst, <i>else, formerly</i>	zuletzt, <i>last</i>
teils . . . teils, <i>partly . . . partly</i>	zunächst, <i>next</i>
trotzdem, <i>nevertheless</i>	zwar, <i>to be sure</i>

Examples:

Zuerst war ich in Berlin, dann hielt ich mich einige Wochen in Paris auf und zuletzt besuchte ich London, *First I was in Berlin, then I stayed for some weeks in Paris, at last I visited London.*

Es regnete, daher wollte ich nicht kommen, *It rained, therefore I would not come.*

Am Abend traf Verstärkung ein, sonst wäre die Schlacht verloren gewesen, *In the evening reinforcements arrived, otherwise the battle would have been lost.*

Ihr habt viel Schaden angerichtet, doch wollen wir diese Thatfache außer acht lassen, *You have done much damage, still we will overlook that fact.*

10. Subordinating conjunctions introduce dependent clauses; that is, they make one of the clauses that they connect a mere modifier of the other. The subordinate clauses have the value of adverbs and generally modify the meaning of the entire independent or principal clause. The subordinating conjunctions require, that the personal verb of the clause in which they occur stand at the end. The most important of the subordinating conjunctions are:

als, <i>when, as, than</i>	indess, <i>while</i>
als ob	inwiefern, <i>how far</i>
als wenn } <i>as if</i>	inwiefern, <i>how far</i>
bevor, <i>before</i>	je, <i>the</i>
bis, <i>until</i>	je nachdem, <i>according as</i>
da, <i>as, since</i>	nachdem, <i>after</i>
damit, <i>so that</i>	ob, <i>whether</i>
daß, <i>that</i>	obgleich, <i>though</i>
ehe, <i>before</i>	ob schon, <i>though</i>
falls, <i>in case</i>	obwohl, <i>though</i>
indem, <i>while</i>	seitdem, <i>since</i>

so, if	wenn auch, <i>even if, although</i>
sonie, <i>just as, as</i>	wennleich, <i>though</i>
so, as . . . as	während, <i>while</i>
während, <i>while</i>	wie, <i>how, as</i>
wann, <i>when</i>	wo, <i>where</i>
warum, <i>why</i>	woher, <i>whence</i>
weil, <i>because</i>	wohin, <i>whither</i>
wenn, <i>if, when</i>	wofern, <i>so far as</i>
wenn, <i>when, whenever</i>	zumal, <i>especially as</i>

Examples:

Obgleich Amerika größer ist als ganz Europa, so hat es doch weniger Einwohner, *Although America is larger than the whole of Europe, it still has less inhabitants.*

Nachdem Columbus Amerika entdeckt hatte, wanderten viele Familien aus Europa nach diesem Lande aus, *After Columbus discovered America many families emigrated from Europe to that country.*

Ich war in der Kirche, **bevor** ich hierher kam, *I was in church before I came here.*

Das Empfindungswort.

The Interjection

11. Function of the Interjection.—The word *interjection* comes from the Latin word *interfectio*, a throwing in. Thus, an interjection is a word that is *thrown in* the sentence to express sudden thought or emotion, but which has no grammatical relation to other words in the sentence. It changes neither the structure of a sentence nor its signification, but is merely a sign of strong and sudden emotion. In the sentence, *Ach, daß ist schön! Ah, that is beautiful!* the interjection *ach, ah*, expresses the feeling of joy or glad surprise without having relation to any word in the statement, *Daß ist schön, That is beautiful.* It is entirely independent from this sentence and does not influence its structure. In a way, the interjection is a substitute for an entire sentence expressing emotion.

The pure interjection is almost entirely empty of meaning in itself, and is often dependent for significance on the tone and the circumstance, in which it is uttered. For example,

the interjections *ach!* *ah!* and *o!* *oh!* *o!* *oh!* which are found in nearly all languages, may express joy or sorrow, surprise or fear, or almost any emotion—pleasurable or painful. The thought to be inferred must be gathered from the tones, the gestures, and the manner of the speaker, as well as from the occasion on which it is used. But most of the interjections are apt to express only one kind of emotion or feeling, therefore they may be classified according to the nature of the emotion that they indicate.

12. Interjections Classified According to Their Meaning.—The interjections may be divided, in interjections

1. Of joy, glad surprise, pleasant emotion; as *ha!* *ha!* *heija!* *heigho!* *juchhe!* *heigho!*

2. Of painful feeling or suffering; as, *au!* *o!* *ach!* *alas!* *o weh!* *oh!*

3. Of disapproval or contempt; as, *pfui!* *pooh!* *äh!* *poh!* *fi!* *fie!*

4. Of calling attention; as, *ho!* *ho!* *holla!* *hello!* *hem!* *hem!* *hallo!* *hello!*

5. Of quieting or repressing; as, *psit!* *pst!* *hush!* *hush!*

13. List of Interjections.—Some of the most important interjections are the following:

ach! *ah!* *O!* *alas!*

ah! *ah!*

aha! *aha!*

au! *O!*

bah! *bah!*

eh! *eh!*

ei! *oho!*

ha! *ha!*

haha! *haha!*

hallo! *hello!*

he! *O!*

heba! *ho there!*

heija! *heigho!*

hem! *hem!*

ho! *ho!*

hohu! *hoho!*

holla! *hello!*

hu! *whew!*

hui! *whiz!*

hurra! *hurrah!*

juchhe! *heigho!*

na! *well now!*

o! *oh!* *O!* *oh!*

oho! *oho!*

pfui! *pooh!* *fie!*

psit! *pst!* *hush!*

weh! *alas!*

Sometimes other words, as nouns, adjectives, adverbs, verbs, and phrases are used elliptically, in an exclamatory way, as interjections. Such are:

heil! <i>hail!</i>	nun! <i>well!</i>	weiter! <i>go on!</i>
herein! <i>come in!</i>	sieh da! <i>look here!</i>	Gut Heil! <i>hail!</i>
herrlich! <i>splendid!</i>	wohlauf! <i>cheer up!</i>	Gottlob! <i>God be praised!</i>
leider! <i>alas!</i>	weg! fort! <i>away!</i>	bewahre! <i>God forbid!</i>

To the interjections also belong natural exclamations employed to allure or drive away domestic animals—imitations of natural sounds, whether of animal or of animate objects. Such as,

hi! <i>how!</i>	piß paß! <i>bang!</i>	tiktak, tiktak, <i>tick, tick</i>
wau wau! <i>bow wow!</i>	bim bam, <i>ding dong</i>	flipp flapp, (of a
miau! <i>mew!</i>	bum bam, <i>ding dong</i>	windmill)

WORD FORMATION

14. Word Formation in General.—The process of derivation and composition of words from native roots, has been much more largely extended in German than in English. Besides an extraordinary facility in compounding words, the German language has the power of attaching prefixes as well as suffixes; it also makes frequent use of the um- and ablaut which, by modulation of the vowel sound, produces from old stems whole families of offshoots. The accumulation of too many roots would have made the language unwieldy. Far more convenient is a limited number of root words, endowed with an extensive power of self-propagation. Thus the German language imitates the natural relationship of things by an equivalent natural relationship of words; and this reproductive power of every particle of the language is the best proof of its vitality.

DERIVATION OF GERMAN WORDS

15. Derivation in General.—In the derivation of German words three elements must be considered, the *radical syllable* or *root*, the *prefix*, and the *suffix*. A root must always be present; from this a whole family of nouns, adjectives, verbs, or adverbs may be derived by changing the root vowel and by the aid of prefixes and suffixes.

the interjections *ach!* *ah!* and *o!* *oh!* *o!* *oh!* which are found in nearly all languages, may express joy or sorrow, surprise or fear, or almost any emotion—pleasurable or painful. The thought to be inferred must be gathered from the tones, the gestures, and the manner of the speaker, as well as from the occasion on which it is used. But most of the interjections are apt to express only one kind of emotion or feeling, therefore they may be classified according to the nature of the emotion that they indicate.

12. Interjections Classified According to Their Meaning.—The interjections may be divided, in interjections

1. Of joy, glad surprise, pleasant emotion; as *ha!* *ha!* *heija!* *heigho!* *juchhei!* *heigho!*

2. Of painful feeling or suffering; as, *au!* *o!* *ach!* *alas!* *o weh!* *oh!*

3. Of disapproval or contempt; as, *pfui!* *pooh!* *äh!* *poh!* *fi!* *fie!*

4. Of calling attention; as, *ho!* *ho!* *holla!* *hello!* *hem!* *hem!* *hallo!* *hello!*

5. Of quieting or repressing; as, *psit!* *psit!* *hush!* *hush!*

13. List of Interjections.—Some of the most important interjections are the following:

ach! *ah!* *O!* *alas!*

ah! *ah!*

aha! *aha!*

au! *O!*

bah! *bah!*

eh! *eh!*

ei! *oho!*

ha! *ha!*

haha! *haha!*

hallo! *hello!*

he! *O!*

heba! *ho there!*

heija! *heigho!*

hem! *hem!*

ho! *ho!*

hohu! *hoho!*

holla! *hello!*

hu! *whew!*

hui! *whiz!*

hurra! *hurrah!*

juchhei! *heigho!*

na! *well now!*

o! *oh!* *O!* *oh!*

ohu! *oho!*

pfui! *pooh!* *fie!*

psit! *psit!* *hush!*

weh! *alas!*

Sometimes other words, as nouns, adjectives, adverbs, verbs, and phrases are used elliptically, in an exclamatory way, as interjections. Such are:

heil! <i>hail!</i>	nun! <i>well!</i>	weiter! <i>go on!</i>
herein! <i>come in!</i>	sieh da! <i>look here!</i>	Gut Heil! <i>hail!</i>
herrlich! <i>splendid!</i>	wohlauf! <i>cheer up!</i>	Gottlob! <i>God be praised!</i>
leider! <i>alas!</i>	weg! fort! <i>away!</i>	bewahre! <i>God forbid!</i>

To the interjections also belong natural exclamations employed to allure or drive away domestic animals—imitations of natural sounds, whether of animal or of animate objects. Such as,

hi! <i>how!</i>	piß paß! <i>bang!</i>	tiktat, tiktat, <i>tick, tick</i>
wau wau! <i>bow wow!</i>	bim bam, <i>ding dong</i>	flipp flapp, (of a
miau! <i>mew!</i>	bum bam, <i>ding dong</i>	windmill)

WORD FORMATION

14. Word Formation in General.—The process of derivation and composition of words from native roots, has been much more largely extended in German than in English. Besides an extraordinary facility in compounding words, the German language has the power of attaching prefixes as well as suffixes; it also makes frequent use of the um- and ablaut which, by modulation of the vowel sound, produces from old stems whole families of offshoots. The accumulation of too many roots would have made the language unwieldy. Far more convenient is a limited number of root words, endowed with an extensive power of self-propagation. Thus the German language imitates the natural relationship of things by an equivalent natural relationship of words; and this reproductive power of every particle of the language is the best proof of its vitality.

DERIVATION OF GERMAN WORDS

15. Derivation in General.—In the derivation of German words three elements must be considered, the *radical syllable* or *root*, the *prefix*, and the *suffix*. A root must always be present; from this a whole family of nouns, adjectives, verbs, or adverbs may be derived by changing the root vowel and by the aid of prefixes and suffixes.

DERIVATION OF NOUNS

16. Derivation of Nouns From Verbs.—No class of German words has proved itself so prolific in derivatives as the irregular verbs; being of great antiquity and of most common use, they lend themselves very readily to the making of derivations. A great number of nouns have come from this source, representing simply the stem of the verb; many others have been formed by a change of the root vowel and the addition of suffixes and prefixes.

17. Nouns Derived From Verbs Without Augments.—Many nouns are derived from strong verbs without the aid of suffixes. The vowel of the root may be changed. Thus,

das Band, *ribbon*, from binden
 der Band, *volume*, from binden
 der Biß, *bite*, from beißen
 der Fall, *fall*, from fallen
 der Gang, *walk*, from gehen
 die Gunst, *favor*, from gönnen
 die Hülle, *wrapping*, from hehlen
 die Hüfte, *hip*, from heben
 der Klang, *sound*, from klingen
 die Kunst, *art*, from können
 die Last, *burden*, from lasten
 der Lauf, *course*, from laufen

der Leib, *stomach*, from leben
 das Licht, *light*, from leuchten
 der Schein, *semblance*, from scheinen
 der Schlag, *blow*, from schlagen
 der Sitz, *seat*, from sitzen
 der Schuß, *shot*, from schießen
 der Spruch, *proverb*, from sprechen
 der Stand, *position*, from stehen
 der Trank, *drink*, from trinken
 der Tritt, *step*, from treten
 der Wuchs, *growth*, from wachsen
 der Zug, *draught*, from ziehen

18. Nouns Derived From Verbs With the Aid of Suffixes.—A great number of nouns are formed from verbs by the aid of suffixes. The following are the most noteworthy derivations:

1. *Derivation by =el.*—The termination =el is in the majority of cases employed to express an instrument. Thus.

der Deckel, *cover*, from decken
 der Flügel, *wing*, from fliegen
 der Hebel, *lever*, from heben
 der Griffel, *grip*, from greifen

der Schlüssel, *key*, from schließen
 die Spindel, *spindle*, from spinnen
 die Klingel, *bell*, from klingen
 der Speichel, *spit*, from speien

2. *Derivation by =er and =erin.*—The two terminations =er (for the masculine) and =erin (for the feminine) signify a person performing an act as a regular occupation. Thus,

der Bäcker, <i>baker</i> , from backen	der Sänger, <i>singer</i> , from singen
der Bauer, <i>farmer</i> , from bauen	der Schlächter, <i>butcher</i> , from schlachten
der Brauer, <i>brewer</i> , from brauen	
der Läufer, <i>runner</i> , from laufen	der Zeiger, <i>hand of a clock</i> , from zeigen
der Reiter, <i>rider</i> , from reiten	

The feminine forms of Bauer and Sanger are die Bäuerin, die Sangerin.

3. *Derivation by =sal and =sel.*—The terminations =sal and =sel serve to form nouns that are mostly neuter, seldom feminine. Thus,

das Drangsal, <i>oppression</i> , from drängen	das Schicksal, <i>fate</i> , from scheiden
das Labial, <i>comfort</i> , from laben	das Scheusal, <i>monster</i> , from scheuen
die Mühsal, <i>trouble</i> , from mühen	die Trübsal, <i>affliction</i> , from trüben
das Rätsel, <i>riddle</i> , from raten	das Überbleibsel, <i>remnant</i> , from überbleiben

4. *Derivation by =en.*—The termination =en serves to form many masculine and a few neuter nouns. Thus,

der Graben, <i>ditch</i> , from graben	der Hafen, <i>harbor</i> , from haben
der Glaube, <i>belief</i> , from glauben	der Schrecken, <i>fright</i> , from schrecken
der Haken, <i>hook</i> , from haben	

5. *Derivation by =ei.*—This termination, applied to a verbal root, forms a noun of action. Thus,

die Heuchelei, <i>dissimulation</i> , from heucheln	die Blauderei, <i>chit chat</i> , from plaudern
die Prahlerei, <i>boasting</i> , from prahlen	die Schmeichelei, <i>flattery</i> , from schmeicheln

6. *Derivation by =nis.*—Attached to verbal roots =nis denotes the action, its concrete effect, or the place where it is performed. Thus,

die Ersparnis, <i>saving</i> , from sparen	das Bündnis, <i>league</i> , from binden
die Versäumnis, <i>neglect</i> , from versäumen	das Hindernis, <i>hindrance</i> , from hindern
die Erkenntnis, <i>knowledge</i> , from erkennen	das Vermächtnis, <i>legacy</i> , from vermachen

7. *Derivation by =ung.*—The termination =ung forms nouns that denote action or its effect. Thus,

die Erzählung, <i>narration</i> , from erzählen	die Stellung, <i>position</i> , from stellen
die Erfindung, <i>invention</i> , from erfinden	die Wirkung, <i>effect</i> , from wirken
die Fassung, <i>form</i> , from fassen	die Verwaltung, <i>administration</i> , from verwalten

19. **Nouns Derived From Other Nouns or From Adjectives by the Aid of Suffixes.**—Many nouns are formed from other nouns or from adjectives by the aid of suffixes.

1. *Derivation by =er, =ler, =ner.*—Nouns formed with these terminations denote a resident or functionary. Thus,

der Bürger, <i>citizen</i> , from Burg	der Schäfer, <i>shepherd</i> , from Schaf
der Gärtner, <i>gardner</i> , from Garten	der Kellner, <i>waiter</i> , from Keller
der Töpfer, <i>potter</i> , from Topf	der Künstler, <i>artist</i> , from Kunst

2. *Derivation by =ei.*—This termination serves to form names of countries, of official residences, of places of business, and a few other words. Thus,

die Abtei, <i>abbey</i> , from Abt	die Druckerei, <i>printing office</i> , from Drucker
die Brennerei, <i>distillery</i> , from Brenner	die Sklaverei, <i>slavery</i> , from Sklave
die Reiterei, <i>cavalry</i> , from Reiter	die Türkei, <i>Turkey</i> , from Türke

3. *Derivation by =heit and =keit.*—These terminations signify species, race, condition of, or the possession of a quality shared with others. Thus,

die Gesundheit, <i>health</i> , from gesund	die Menschheit, <i>humanity</i> , from Mensch
die Dummheit, <i>stupidity</i> , from dumm	die Christenheit, <i>Christendom</i> , from Christ
die Brauchbarkeit, <i>usefulness</i> , from brauchbar	die Kindheit, <i>childhood</i> , from Kind
die Frömmigkeit, <i>piety</i> , from fromm	die Gottheit, <i>deity</i> , from Gott

4. *Derivation by =schaft.*—Nouns formed with this termination are abstracts and collectives. Thus,

die Botschaft, <i>message</i> , from Bote	die Feindschaft, <i>enmity</i> , from Feind
die Bereitschaft, <i>readiness</i> , from bereit	die Mannschaft, <i>crew</i> , from Mann
die Bürgerschaft, <i>citizens</i> , from Bürger	die Herrschaft, <i>dominion</i> , from Herr

5. *Derivation by =lein and =chen.*—These are the two chief diminutive syllables in German. The termination =lein is more general in words of South German origin, while the termination =chen is more common in the North. Thus,

das Häuschen, <i>little house</i> , from Haus	das Mädchen, <i>little girl</i> , from Magd
das Dörfchen, <i>little village</i> , from Dorf	das Büchlein, <i>little book</i> , from Buch
das Männchen, <i>manikin</i> , from der Mann	das Büblein, <i>little boy</i> , from Bube

6. *Derivation by =ling.*—This termination forms many class names. Thus,

der Jüngling, <i>youth</i> , from jung	der Frembling, <i>stranger</i> , from fremd
der Günstling, <i>favorite</i> , from Gunst	der Sprößling, <i>scion</i> , from Sproß
der Feigling, <i>coward</i> , from feige	der Liebling, <i>favorite</i> , from lieb

7. *Derivation by =in.*—The termination =in forms feminine from masculine nouns, whereby the root vowel is generally modified. Thus,

die Bäuerin, <i>female peasant</i> , from Bauer	die Köchin, <i>female cook</i> , from Koch
die Fürstin, <i>princess</i> , from Fürst	die Gemahlin, <i>spouse</i> , from Gemahl
die Löwin, <i>lioness</i> , from Löwe	die Schneiderin, <i>dressmaker</i> , from Schneider

8. *Derivation by =niß.*—The termination =niß, formerly spelled niß, is applied to adjectives to denote a concrete manifestation of the quality. Thus,

die Finsterniß, <i>darkness</i> , from finster	die Betrübniß, <i>affliction</i> , from betrübt
die Fäulniß, <i>rottenness</i> , from faul	die Wildniß, <i>wilderness</i> , from wild

9. *Derivation by =tum.*—=tum is applied to nouns to denote estate, province, sphere, and to adjectives to denote a manifestation of the quality. Thus,

das Bürgertum, <i>citizenship</i> , from Bürger	das Heiligtum, <i>sanctuary</i> , from heilig
das Fürstentum, <i>principality</i> , from Fürst	das Eigentum, <i>property</i> , from eigen
das Altertum, <i>antiquity</i> , from Alter	der Reichtum, <i>riches</i> , from reich

7. *Derivation by =ung.*—The termination =ung forms nouns that denote action or its effect. Thus,

die Erzählung, <i>narration</i> , from erzählen	die Stellung, <i>position</i> , from stellen
die Erfindung, <i>invention</i> , from erfinden	die Wirkung, <i>effect</i> , from wirken
die Fassung, <i>form</i> , from fassen	die Verwaltung, <i>administration</i> , from verwalten

19. **Nouns Derived From Other Nouns or From Adjectives by the Aid of Suffixes.**—Many nouns are formed from other nouns or from adjectives by the aid of suffixes.

1. *Derivation by =er, =ler, =ner.*—Nouns formed with these terminations denote a resident or functionary. Thus,

der Bürger, <i>citizen</i> , from Burg	der Schäfer, <i>shepherd</i> , from Schaf
der Gärtner, <i>gardner</i> , from Garten	der Wäflner, <i>wailer</i> , from Keller
der Töpfer, <i>potter</i> , from Topf	der Künstler, <i>artist</i> , from Kunst

2. *Derivation by =ei.*—This termination serves to form names of countries, of official residences, of places of business, and a few other words. Thus,

die Abtei, <i>abbey</i> , from Abt	die Druckerei, <i>printing office</i> , from Drucker
die Brennerei, <i>distillery</i> , from Brenner	die Sklaverei, <i>slavery</i> , from Sklave
die Reiterei, <i>cavalry</i> , from Reiter	die Türkei, <i>Turkey</i> , from Türke

3. *Derivation by =heit and =keit.*—These terminations signify species, race, condition of, or the possession of a quality shared with others. Thus,

die Gesundheit, <i>health</i> , from gesund	die Menschheit, <i>humanity</i> , from Mensch
die Dummheit, <i>stupidity</i> , from dumm	die Christenheit, <i>Christendom</i> , from Christ
die Brauchbarkeit, <i>usefulness</i> , from brauchbar	die Kindheit, <i>childhood</i> , from Kind
die Frömmigkeit, <i>piety</i> , from fromm	die Gottheit, <i>deity</i> , from Gott

4. *Derivation by =schaft.*—Nouns formed with this termination are abstracts and collectives. Thus,

die Botschaft, <i>message</i> , from Bote	die Feindschaft, <i>enmity</i> , from Feind
die Bereitschaft, <i>readiness</i> , from bereit	die Mannschaft, <i>crew</i> , from Mann
die Bürgerschaft, <i>citizens</i> , from Bürger	die Herrschaft, <i>dominion</i> , from Herr.

5. *Derivation by =lein and =chen.*—These are the two chief diminutive syllables in German. The termination =lein is more general in words of South German origin, while the termination =chen is more common in the North. Thus,

das Häuschen, <i>little house</i> , from Haus	das Mädchen, <i>little girl</i> , from Magd
das Dörfchen, <i>little village</i> , from Dorf	das Büchlein, <i>little book</i> , from Buch
das Männchen, <i>manikin</i> , from der Mann	das Bublein, <i>little boy</i> , from Bube

6. *Derivation by =ling.*—This termination forms many class names. Thus,

der Jüngling, <i>youth</i> , from jung	der Fremdling, <i>stranger</i> , from fremd
der Günstling, <i>favorite</i> , from Gunst	der Sprößling, <i>scion</i> , from Sproß
der Feigling, <i>coward</i> , from feige	der Liebling, <i>favorite</i> , from lieb

7. *Derivation by =in.*—The termination =in forms feminine from masculine nouns, whereby the root vowel is generally modified. Thus,

die Bäuerin, <i>female peasant</i> , from Bauer	die Köchin, <i>female cook</i> , from Koch
die Fürstin, <i>princess</i> , from Fürst	die Gemahlin, <i>spouse</i> , from Gemahl
die Löwin, <i>lioness</i> , from Löwe	die Schneiderin, <i>dressmaker</i> , from Schneider

8. *Derivation by =niß.*—The termination =niß, formerly spelled niß, is applied to adjectives to denote a concrete manifestation of the quality. Thus,

die Finsterniß, <i>darkness</i> , from finster	die Betrübniß, <i>affliction</i> , from betrübt
die Fäulniß, <i>rottenness</i> , from faul	die Wildniß, <i>wilderness</i> , from wild

9. *Derivation by =tum.*—=tum is applied to nouns to denote estate, province, sphere, and to adjectives to denote a manifestation of the quality. Thus,

das Bürgertum, <i>citizenship</i> , from Bürger	das Heiligtum, <i>sanctuary</i> , from heilig
das Fürstentum, <i>principality</i> , from Fürst	das Eigentum, <i>property</i> , from eigen
das Altertum, <i>antiquity</i> , from Alter	der Reichtum, <i>riches</i> , from reich

20. Nouns Formed by the Aid of Prefixes. — A number of German nouns are derived by the aid of prefixes, of which the most important are *Ge-*, *Ur-*, *Erz-*, *Un-*, *Miß-*, *Ant-*.

1. *Derivation by the Prefix Ge-*. — *Ge-* is the most common prefix of the German language. When before nouns, it makes them collectives. Thus,

das Gebüsch, <i>shrubbery</i> , from Busch	das Gewässer, <i>waters</i> , from Wasser
das Gestirn, <i>constellation</i> , from Stern	das Gewölke, <i>clouds</i> , from Wolken
das Gehölz, <i>wood</i> , from Holz	der Gespieler, <i>playmate</i> , from Spiel

from verbs

das Gebrüll, <i>roaring</i> , from brüllen	das Gebäude, <i>building</i> , from bauen
das Gerede, <i>talk</i> , from reden	der Gesang, <i>song</i> , from singen
das Geschenk, <i>present</i> , from schenken	der Geruch, <i>smell</i> , from riechen

2. *Derivation by the Prefix Ur-*. — This prefix means *very ancient, original, primitive*. Thus,

die Ursache, <i>cause</i> , from Sache	der Urmenich, <i>primeval man</i> , from Mensch
die Ursprache, <i>original language</i> , from Sprache	der Urquell, <i>original source</i> , from Quelle
die Urkunde, <i>document</i> , from Kunde	die Urwelt, <i>primitive world</i> , from Welt

3. *Derivation by the Prefix Erz-*. — The prefix *Erz-*, the same as the English *arch*, is prefixed to hierarchs, dukes, angels, etc. Thus,

der Erzengel, <i>archangel</i> , from Engel	der Erzbischof, <i>archbishop</i> , from Bischof
der Erzherzog, <i>archduke</i> , from Herzog	der Erzbösewicht, <i>arch-villain</i> , from Bösewicht

! 4. *Derivation by the Prefix Un-*. — The prefix *Un-* has the same force as the English *un*. It is a negative prefix and is often used before nouns to reverse their meaning, or to denote something prodigious. Thus,

der Unnenich, <i>monster</i> , from Mensch	die Unzahl, <i>countless numbers</i> , from Zahl
das Unrecht, <i>wrong</i> , from Recht	das Unkraut, <i>weeds</i> , from Kraut
das Un Ding, <i>absurdity</i> , from Ding	der Unsinn, <i>nonsense</i> , from Sinn

5. *Derivatives by the Prefix Miß=.*—This prefix, cognate with the English *mis* in mistake, means *wrong, amiss*. Thus, der Mißbrauch, *abuse*, from Brauch Mißgunst, *disfavor*, from Gunst
Mißgeburt, *monstrosity*, from Ge- der Mißmut, *ill-humor*, from Mut
burt

6. *Derivatives by the Prefix Ant=.*—This prefix occurs only in two derivatives. Antliß, *face*, and Antwort, *reply*.

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES

21. A large proportion of adjectives is underived and must be recognized as primitive words; most of them are monosyllabic. Such are: alt, *old*; neu, *new*; gut, *good*; schlecht, *bad*; reich, *rich*; arm, *poor*; etc. There are, however, a large number of adjectives derived from verbs, nouns, or other adjectives by the aid of suffixes and prefixes.

22. *Derivation of Adjectives by the Aid of Suffixes.*—Most derivated adjectives are formed by means of suffixes. The most important of these derivations are:

1. *Derivation by =ig.*—The termination =ig is one of the commonest of suffixes and is attached to nouns, adjectives, and verbal roots. Thus,

blutig, *bloody*, from Blut
freudig, *joyful*, from Freude
einig, *united*, from ein
mutig, *brave*, from Mut

spitzig, *pointed*, from spitz
schläfrig, *sleepy*, from schlafen
fällig, *due*, from fallen
gehörig, *proper*, from gehören

2. *Derivation by =lich.*—=lich arose out of gleich, *like*. This suffix is, next to =ig, the most frequent suffix; it denotes resemblance, character and the like. Thus,

bräunlich, *brownish*, from braun
ältlich, *oldish*, from alt
rötlich, *reddish*, from rot
fürstlich, *princely*, from Fürst
männlich, *manly*, from Mann

weiblich, *feminine*, from Weib
thunlich, *feasible*, from thun
sterblich, *mortal*, from sterben
kenntlich, *knowable*, from kennen
wissentlich, *knowing*, from wissen

20. Nouns Formed by the Aid of Prefixes.—A number of German nouns are derived by the aid of prefixes, of which the most important are *Ge-*, *Ur-*, *Erz-*, *Un-*, *Miß-*, *Unt-*.

1. *Derivation by the Prefix Ge-*.—*Ge-* is the most common prefix of the German language. When before nouns, it makes them collectives. Thus,

das Gebüsch, <i>shrubby</i> , from Busch	das Gewässer, <i>waters</i> , from Wasser
das Gestirn, <i>constellation</i> , from Stern	das Gewölke, <i>clouds</i> , from Wolken
das Gehölz, <i>wood</i> , from Holz	der Gespieler, <i>playmate</i> , from Spiel

from verbs

das Gebrüll, <i>roaring</i> , from brüllen	das Gebäude, <i>building</i> , from bauen
das Gerede, <i>talk</i> , from reden	der Gesang, <i>song</i> , from singen
das Geschenk, <i>present</i> , from schenken	der Geruch, <i>smell</i> , from riechen

2. *Derivation by the Prefix Ur-*.—This prefix means *very ancient, original, primitive*. Thus,

die Ursache, <i>cause</i> , from Sache	der Urmensch, <i>primeval man</i> , from Mensch
die Ursprache, <i>original language</i> , from Sprache	der Urquell, <i>original source</i> , from Quelle
die Urkunde, <i>document</i> , from Kunde	die Urwelt, <i>primitive world</i> , from Welt

3. *Derivation by the Prefix Erz-*.—The prefix *Erz-*, the same as the English *arch*, is prefixed to hierarchs, dukes, angels, etc. Thus,

der Erzengel, <i>archangel</i> , from Engel	der Erzbischof, <i>archbishop</i> , from Bischof
der Erzherzog, <i>archduke</i> , from Herzog	der Erzbösewicht, <i>arch-villain</i> , from Bösewicht

4. *Derivation by the Prefix Un-*.—The prefix *Un-* has the same force as the English *un*. It is a negative prefix and is often used before nouns to reverse their meaning, or to denote something prodigious. Thus,

der Unmensch, <i>monster</i> , from Mensch	die Unzahl, <i>countless numbers</i> , from Zahl
das Unrecht, <i>wrong</i> , from Recht	das Unkraut, <i>weeds</i> , from Kraut
das Un Ding, <i>absurdity</i> , from Ding	der Unsinn, <i>nonsense</i> , from Sinn

5. *Derivatives by the Prefix Miß=.*—This prefix, cognate with the English *mis* in *mistake*, means *wrong, amiss*. Thus, *der Mißbrauch, abuse*, from *Brauch* *Mißgunst, distavor*, from *Gunst*
Mißgeburt, monstrosity, from *Ge-* *der Mißmut, ill-humor*, from *Mut*
burt

6. *Derivatives by the Prefix Ant=.*—This prefix occurs only in two derivatives. *Antliß, face*, and *Antwort, reply*.

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES

21. A large proportion of adjectives is underived and must be recognized as primitive words; most of them are monosyllabic. Such are: *alt, old*; *neu, new*; *gut, good*; *schlecht, bad*; *reich, rich*; *arm, poor*; etc. There are, however, a large number of adjectives derived from verbs, nouns, or other adjectives by the aid of suffixes and prefixes.

22. *Derivation of Adjectives by the Aid of Suffixes.*—Most derivated adjectives are formed by means of suffixes. The most important of these derivations are:

1. *Derivation by =ig.*—The termination *=ig* is one of the commonest of suffixes and is attached to nouns, adjectives, and verbal roots. Thus,

blutig, bloody, from *Blut*
freudig, joyful, from *Freude*
einig, united, from *ein*
mutig, brave, from *Mut*

spitzig, pointed, from *spitz*
schläfrig, sleepy, from *schlafen*
fällig, due, from *fallen*
gehörig, proper, from *gehören*

2. *Derivation by =lich.*—*=lich* arose out of *gleich, like*. This suffix is, next to *=ig*, the most frequent suffix; it denotes resemblance, character and the like. Thus,

bräunlich, brownish, from *braun*
ältlich, oldish, from *alt*
röthlich, reddish, from *rot*
fürstlich, princely, from *Fürst*
männlich, manly, from *Mann*

weiblich, feminine, from *Weib*
thunlich, feasible, from *thun*
sterblich, mortal, from *sterben*
kenntlich, knowable, from *kennen*
wissentlich, knowing, from *wissen*

3. *Derivation by =iich.*—The suffix =iich denotes *relating to, similar to, belonging to*, etc. Thus,

nordiich, *northern*, from Norden
russiich, *Russian*, from Ruße
luteriich, *Lutheran*, from Luther
kindiich, *childish*, from Kind

weibiich, *womanish*, from Weib
heuchleriich, *hypocritical*, from
Heuchler

4. *Derivation by =icht.*—A few adjectives of quality are formed from nouns by means of the suffix =icht. Thus,

thöricht, *foolish*, from Thor

ölicht, *oily*, from Öl

5. *Derivation by =en and =ern.*—=en and =ern are the ordinary terminations of adjectives of metallic or other material qualities. Thus,

eisern, *of iron*, from Eisen
hölzern, *wooden*, from Holz
steinern, *stony*, from Stein

kupfern, *of copper*, from Kupfer
gläsern, *of glass*, from Glas
eichen, *of oak*, from Eiche

6. *Derivation by =sam.*—This suffix forms adjectives with passive and active meaning. Thus,

furchtsam, *timid*, from Furcht
sorgsam, *careful*, from Sorge
ratsam, *advisable*, from Rat

gemeinsam, *common*, from gemein
biegsam, *flexible*, from biegen
schweigsam, *silent*, from schweigen

7. *Derivation by =bar.*—=bar forms adjectives from verbs and nouns. Thus,

fruchtbar, *fertile*, from Frucht
schiffbar, *navigable*, from Schiff
ehrbar, *honorable*, from Ehre

offenbar, *evident*, from offen
dankbar, *thankful*, from danken
eßbar, *eatable*, from essen

8. *Derivation by =haft.*—=haft expresses participation in the qualities of something or somebody. Thus,

riesenhaft, *like a giant*, from Riese
mannhaft, *manly*, from Mann

mangelhaft, *defective*, from Mangel
wahrhaft, *true*, from wahr

23. *Derivation of Adjectives by Prefixes.*—A large number of adjectives are formed by the aid of prefixes, such as erz-, ge-, un-, and ur-.

1. The prefix erz- forms absolute superlatives; such as erzfaul, *extremely lazy*.

2. The prefix *ge-* forms adjectives from verbal roots and other adjectives. Thus,

gerecht, righteous, from *recht*
getreu, faithful, from *treu*

gemäß, conformable, from *maßen*
genehm, acceptable, from *nehmen*

3. The prefix *un-* is negative and is used much the same way as the English *un-*. Thus,

unruhig, uneasy
uneinig, disunited

unfruchtbar, unfruitful
unrichtig, incorrect

4. The prefix *ur-* has in adjectives the same meaning as in nouns, that is, very ancient, original, primitive. Thus, *uralt, very ancient*.

DERIVATION OF VERBS

24. Derivation of Verbs in General.—The nature of all derived verbs is indicated by the rule that they follow the weak conjugation and that they are generally transitive, especially when formed by inseparable prefixes or by umlaut. But when a derived verb happens to be transitive and intransitive, it generally has two forms for the imperfect and the perfect participle—a weak and a strong form. The weak form has the transitive, the strong form the intransitive meaning. Thus, *erschrecken, erschreckte, erschreckt*, is transitive; *erschrecken, erschraf, erschroden*, intransitive.

25. Derivation of Verbs by Suffixes.—The following suffixes are employed in German for coining weak verbs: *-en, -igen, -eln, -ern, -zen, -schen, -eien, -ieren*.

1. *Derivation by -en and -igen.*—The suffixes *-en* and *-igen* serve to make verbs out of nouns and adjectives; they have no especial meaning. Thus,

fischen, to fish, from *Fisch*
grasen, to cut grass, from *Graß*
küssen, to kiss, from *Kuß*
sättigen, to satiate, from *satt*
bürsten, to brush, from *Bürste*

bilden, to form, from *Bild*
hämmern, to hammer, from *Hammer*
kreuzigen, to crucify, from *Kreuz*

2. *Derivation by -en.*—Verbs formed by the suffix *-en* express *voluntariness and necessity* in the action. Thus,

<i>suchen</i> to seek from <i>suchen</i>	<i>besuchen</i> to visit from <i>suchen</i>
<i>ändern</i> to alter from <i>ändern</i>	<i>besuchen</i> to care from <i>suchen</i>
<i>dingen</i> to hire from <i>dingen</i>	<i>besuchen</i> to visit from <i>suchen</i>
<i>finden</i> to find from <i>finden</i>	<i>dingen</i> to hire from <i>dingen</i>

3. *Derivation by -en.*—The suffix *-en* forms *iteratives and intensives*. Thus,

<i>schicken</i> to send from <i>schicken</i>	<i>schicken</i> to harass from <i>schmal</i>
<i>schicken</i> to send from <i>schicken</i>	<i>schicken</i> to harass from <i>schmal</i>
<i>schicken</i> to send from <i>schicken</i>	<i>schicken</i> to harass from <i>schmal</i>

4. *Derivation by -en.*—The verbs ending in *-en* mean to utter the word or sound denoted by the base. Thus,

<i>schicken</i> to send from <i>schicken</i>	<i>schicken</i> to sigh
<i>schicken</i> to send from <i>schicken</i>	<i>schicken</i> to sob

5. *Derivation by -en and -ieren.*—These are foreign terminations that are attached to verbs of Latin and French origin. Thus,

<i>prophezen</i> to prophesy	<i>spazieren</i> to walk
<i>vermalen</i> to curse	<i>amüfieren</i> to amuse
<i>regieren</i> to reign	<i>disputieren</i> to dispute
<i>hachieren</i> to chase	<i>fabrizieren</i> to fabricate

26. *Derivation of Verbs by Prefixes.*—Prefixes attached to verbs are, as it has been shown in Part 7, either separable or inseparable. A very large number of verbs are compound with the inseparable prefixes *be-*, *ent-*, *er-*, *ver-*, *zer-*, *ge-*, which modify variously the meaning of the primitive.

1. *Derivation by the Prefix be-.*—*Be-*, when prefixed to a verbal root, has an *intensive force* and changes an *intransitive* into a *transitive verb*. Thus,

<i>beruhen</i> to rest in, from <i>ruhen</i>	<i>besitzen</i> to possess, from <i>sitzen</i>
<i>beharren</i> to abide by, from <i>harren</i>	<i>bestehen</i> to consist of, from <i>stehen</i>
<i>bebauen</i> to build upon, from <i>bauen</i>	<i>betreten</i> to enter, from <i>treten</i>
<i>belehren</i> to instruct, from <i>lehren</i>	<i>bezahlen</i> to pay, from <i>zahlen</i>
<i>beladen</i> to load upon, from <i>laden</i>	

When prefixed to a noun or adjective, *be-* forms verbs generally with active sense. Thus,

begeistern, <i>to inspire</i> , from Geist	befähigen, <i>to qualify</i> , from fähig
bevölkern, <i>to populate</i> , from Volk	betäuben, <i>to deafen</i> , from taub
beenden, <i>to finish</i> , from Ende	bewillkommen, <i>to welcome</i> , from willkommen
befruchten, <i>to fructify</i> , from Frucht	
bereichern, <i>to make rich</i> , from reich	

2. *Derivation by the Prefix ent-*. — *Ent-* in connection with verbal roots denotes the beginning of an action, separation, or removal. Thus,

entblühen, <i>to come to blossom</i> , from blühen	entgehen, <i>to escape</i> , from gehen
entbrennen, <i>to take fire</i> , from brennen	entreißen, <i>to tear away</i> , from reißen
entschlafen, <i>to fall asleep</i> , from schlafen	entdecken, <i>to discover</i> , from decken
	entsagen, <i>to abdicate</i> , from sagen
	entzünden, <i>to inflame</i> , from zünden

Ent- is also attached to roots of nouns and adjectives to form derivatives. Thus,

enthüllen, <i>to unveil</i> , from Hülle	entwalden, <i>to cut down the forest</i> , from Wald
entkräften, <i>to weaken</i> , from Kraft	entblößen, <i>to expose</i> , from bloß
entschädigen, <i>to indemnify</i> , from Schaden	entfremden, <i>to alienate</i> , from fremd
entschuldigen, <i>to excuse</i> , from Schuld	entäußern, <i>to alienate</i> , from außer

3. *Derivation by the Prefix er-*. — *Er-* is the same prefix as *ur-* in *Urteil*. It generally denotes acquisition by means of the action of the simple verb, or the growing or passing into a condition. Sometimes it also expresses loss of life from various causes. Thus,

erbetteln, <i>to obtain by begging</i> , from betteln	erröten, <i>to blush</i> , from rot
erjagen, <i>to obtain by hunting</i> , from jagen	erstarken, <i>to grow strong</i> , from stark
erkämpfen, <i>to obtain by fighting</i> , from kämpfen	ertrinken, <i>to be drowned</i> , from trinken
	erstechen, <i>to stab</i> , from stechen

4. *Derivation by the Prefix ver=.*—*Ver=* expresses a progress out of a place; also error, prevention, finally destruction. Thus,

verjagen, to chase away, from jagen	verrechnen, to make a mistake in reckoning, from rechnen
verschwinden, to disappear, from schwinden	verbrennen, to destroy by burning, from brennen
verwelken, to wither away, from welken	verspielen, to lose by playing, from spielen
versehen, to overlook, from sehen	

Derivatives from nouns and adjectives have factitive force. Thus,

verbittern, to embitter, from bitter	verlängern, to make longer, from länger
vergolden, to gild, from Gold	
vergöttern, to idolize, from Gott	verewigen, to eternalize, from ewig

5. *Derivation by the Prefix zer=.*—*Zer=* denotes dispersion and dissolution. Thus,

zerreißen, to tear to pieces, from reißen	zerreiben, to grind, to rub, from reiben
zerfallen, to fall to pieces, from fallen	zerstören, to destroy, from stören

6. *Derivation by the Prefix ge=.*—*Ge=* has the meaning of together, of fitness, of perfect action and sometimes of a permanent condition. Thus,

gebrauchen, to make use of, from brauchen	gefrieren, to congeal, from frieren
gedenken, to think of, from denken	gehörchen, to obey, from hören

DERIVATION OF ADVERBS

27. A large number of adverbs are derivated from nouns, adjectives, pronouns, or verbs by the aid of suffixes. The most important of these derivations are given in the following:

28. *Adverbs Derived From Nouns.*—Adverbs are formed from nouns

1. By affixing the genitive sign *ſ*. Thus,

morgens, <i>in the morning</i> , from Morgen	teils, <i>partly</i> , from Teil
abends, <i>in the evening</i> , from Abend	flugs, <i>swiftly</i> , from Flug
tagſ, <i>in the day</i> , from Tag	anfangſ, <i>in the beginning</i> , from Anfang
nachtſ, <i>in the night</i> , from Nacht	keineſwegſ, <i>by no means</i>

2. By adding the termination *=weiſe*. Thus,

haufenweiſe, <i>in heaps</i> , from haufen	ſtückweiſe, <i>piecemeal</i> , from Stück
ruckweiſe, <i>by starts</i> , from Ruck	pfundweiſe, <i>in pounds</i> , from Pfund

29. Adverbs Formed From Adjectives. — Many adverbs are derived from adjectives

1. By the addition of the genitive sign <i>ſ</i> . Thus,	
rechtſ, <i>on the right side</i> , from recht	beſonderſ, <i>particularly</i> , from beſonder
linſ, <i>on the left side</i> , from lin	
anderſ, <i>otherwise</i> , from ander	ſtetſ, <i>continually</i> , from ſtet
bereitſ, <i>already</i> , from bereit	

2. By the addition of the suffix *=lich*, cognate to the English *ly*. Thus,

freilich, <i>to be sure</i> , from frei	hoffentlich, <i>as may be hoped</i> , from hoffen
ſchwerlich, <i>hardly</i> , from ſchwer	
ſicherlich, <i>surely</i> , from ſicher	wiſſentlich, <i>knowingly</i> , from wiſſen
währlich, <i>truly</i> , from wahr	ſenb

3. By the addition of the termination *=enſ*. Thus,

erſtenſ, <i>firstly</i> , from erſt	höchſtenſ, <i>at most</i> , from höchſt
drittenſ, <i>thirdly</i> , from dritte	ſpäteſtenſ, <i>at latest</i> , from ſpäteſt
beſtenſ, <i>at best</i> , from beſt	früheſtenſ, <i>at earliest</i> , from früheſt
meiſtenſ, <i>mostly</i> , from meiſt	wenigſtenſ, <i>at least</i> , from wenigſt

COMPOSITION OF GERMAN WORDS

30. The faculty of German for compounding words is greater than that of most other languages. It is limited, however, to words whose ideas are ordinarily closely associated by nature. The accidental combination of ideas cannot be expressed by means of a compounded word. A knowledge of the process of composition from native roots is of much greater practical importance in German for the acquisition of a vocabulary, and for the exposition of the relations and meanings of words than in any other language.

COMPOUND NOUNS

31. Compound Nouns in General.—Compound nouns consist of two or more words, of which the last is nearly always a noun. The first word may be any part of speech, a noun, verbal adjective, adverb, or preposition; it always has the principal accent and generally limits or determines the second component. The last component takes only a secondary accent, but determines the gender and declension of the compound.

32. Compounds Formed of Two Nouns.—Compounds consisting of two nouns are in German more numerous than in English. They are formed in various ways.

1. Two nouns may be joined together in their stem forms. Thus,

der Briefkasten, *the letter box*
 der Bleistift, *the pencil*
 der Apfelbaum, *the apple tree*

die Hauptstadt, *the capital*
 die Landkarte, *the map*
 die Hausfrau, *the mistress*

2. A connecting vowel may be used between the two components. Thus,

das Badezimmer, *the bathroom*
 der Pferdestall, *the horse stable*

das Tagebuch, *the day book*
 die Hundekette, *the dog chain*

3. The first component part may stand in the plural. Thus,

das Bücherbrett, *the book shelf*
 die Hühnerzucht, *the poultry-rearing*
 das Wörterbuch, *the dictionary*

das Blumenbeet, *the flower bed*
 die Straßenecke, *the street corner*
 der Taubenschlag, *the dove cot*

4. The first component part may be in the genitive case. Thus,

die Gottesfurcht, *the fear of God*
 die Manneszucht, *the discipline*
 der Gerichtshof, *the court of justice*

das Wirtshaus, *the inn*
 der Herzogstitel, *the title of duke*
 der Reichstag, *the imperial diet*

5. The genitive ending (e)ß is often applied to the first component part, although its regular genitive does not end in (e)ß. Thus,

die Einbildungskraft, <i>the phantasy</i>	der Geburtstag, <i>the birthday</i>
der Freundschaftsbund, <i>the union</i>	die Wahrheitsliebe, <i>the love of truth</i>
	<i>of friendship</i>

33. Compounds Formed of an Adjective and a Noun.—In compound nouns consisting of an adjective and a noun, the adjective is either uninflected or inflected.

1. The adjective is uninflected in nouns like

die Altstadt, <i>the old town</i>	die Großmutter, <i>the grandmother</i>
das Hochland, <i>the highland</i>	der Edelmut, <i>the magnanimity</i>
der Geheimschreiber, <i>the private</i>	der Schwarzwald, <i>the Black Forest</i>
<i>secretary</i>	das Rotkehlchen, <i>the robin</i>
die Hochzeit, <i>the wedding</i>	

2. In a few compounds the adjective is inflected. Thus,

der Hohepriester, <i>the high priest</i>	die Langeweile, <i>the tedium</i>
das Armenhaus, <i>the poorhouse</i>	das Krankenzimmer, <i>the sick room</i>

34. Compounds Formed of a Verb and a Noun. In compounds formed of a verb and a noun, the root of the verb is simply prefixed to a noun. Thus,

das Fahrrad, <i>bicycle</i>	das Lesebuch, <i>the reading book</i>
die Reitbahn, <i>the riding ground</i>	der Hebebaum, <i>the lever</i>
das Schreibpapier, <i>the writing</i>	die Steigeleiter, <i>the steps</i>
<i>paper</i>	

35. Compounds Formed of an Adverb or Preposition and a Noun.—A large number of German compound nouns consist of an adverb or preposition and a noun. Some of them are:

die Anhöhe, <i>the acclivity</i>	die Jetztzeit, <i>the present time</i>
der Ablaut, <i>the change of a sound</i>	der Mißton, <i>the discordance</i>
der Ausgang, <i>the exit</i>	das Unglück, <i>the misfortune</i>
der Eingang, <i>the entrance</i>	der Mitschüler, <i>the schoolmate</i>
der Ausflug, <i>the excursion</i>	der Umgang, <i>the procession</i>

COMPOUND ADJECTIVES

36. Besides a very large number of derived adjectives, the German language has a number of adjectives that are compound words. The last part of these compounds is always an adjective, while the first part may be a noun, an adjective, or another compound word. These combinations are so numerous and of such variety that only the most important are being given here.

37. **Compound Adjectives Consisting of a Noun and an Adjective.**—In these combinations the noun may be in the nominative or in the genitive case. Thus,

goldgelb, <i>gold-yellow</i>	goldgelb, <i>yellow as gold</i>
schmerzlos, <i>without pain</i>	schmerzlos, <i>without sorrow</i>
menschenfeind, <i>man-hater</i>	menschenfeind, <i>misanthropic</i>
süßwie, <i>as sweet as</i>	süßwie, <i>sweet as sugar</i>
luftrecht, <i>air-right</i>	luftrecht, <i>air-right</i>

38. **Compound Adjectives Consisting of Two Adjectives or of an Adverb and an Adjective.**—Not a few adjectives are compounded of two adjectives or of an adverb and an adjective. Thus,

taubstumm, <i>deaf and dumb</i>	taubstumm, <i>deaf and dumb</i>
neugeboren, <i>new-born</i>	neugeboren, <i>new-born</i>
hochdeutsch, <i>high German</i>	hochdeutsch, <i>high German</i>
einäugig, <i>one-eyed</i>	einäugig, <i>one-eyed</i>

39. **Compound Adjectives Consisting of a Verb and an Adjective.**—Compositions of adjectives with verbs are rare. The verb may appear in the root form or in the infinitive used substantively in the genitive. Thus,

denkwürdig, <i>memorable</i>	lobenswert, <i>praiseworthy</i>
mißbegierig, <i>eager to know</i>	liebenswert, <i>amiable</i>

COMPOUND VERBS

40. A large number of compound verbs consist of a primitive verb and an adverb or preposition that perform the office of a separable prefix. This class of compound verbs was treated in Part 7. There are, however, a number of compound verbs that deserve special attention. Their

first component part is either a noun or an adjective or an adverbial phrase which from constant association with the verb have come to form a compound with it. In some cases these elements are considered as separable prefixes. Thus,

teilhaben, <i>to partake</i> , ich habe teil	totschlagen, <i>to kill</i> , ich schlage tot
haushalten, <i>to keep house</i> , ich halte haus	wahrnehmen, <i>to perceive</i> , ich nehme wahr
gleichstellen, <i>to equalize</i> , ich stelle gleich	fehlschlagen, <i>to miscarry</i> , es schlug fehl
festhalten, <i>to hold fast</i> , ich halte fest	

In other compounds certain words have formed with the verb a new verb-stem, which is inflected like a simple verb-stem having always a weak inflection. Thus,

lustwandeln, <i>to walk for pleasure</i> , ich lustwandle	mutmaßen, <i>to conjecture</i> , ich mutmaße
brand[sch]agen, <i>to ravage</i> , ich brand[sch]age	handhaben, <i>to handle</i> , ich handhabe
	will[sch]ahren, <i>to gratify</i> , ich will[sch]ahre

2. *Derivation by =eln.*—Verbs formed by the suffix =eln express weakness and meanness in the action. Thus,

lächeln, <i>to smile</i> , from lachen	streicheln, <i>to caress</i> , from streichen
tänzeln, <i>to dance</i> , from tanzen	brecheln, <i>to turn</i> , from drehen
schneiteln, <i>to carve</i> , from schnitzen	kräufeln, <i>to curl</i> , from krausen
frösteln, <i>to shiver</i> , from frosten	güngeln, <i>to fork</i> , from zungen

3. *Derivation by =ern.*—The suffix =ern forms iteratives and intensives. Thus,

plätschern, <i>spatter</i> , from platschen	schmälern, <i>to narrow</i> , from schmal
glimmern, <i>glimmer</i> , from glimmen	räuchern, <i>to fumigate</i> , from rauchen
bessern, <i>to meliorate</i> , from besser	

4. *Derivation by =zen.*—The verbs ending in =zen mean to utter the word or sound denoted by the base. Thus,

duzen, <i>to address with du</i>	seufzen, <i>to sigh</i>
ächzen, <i>to groan</i> , from ach	schluchzen, <i>to sob</i>

5. *Derivation by =eien and =ieren.*—These are foreign terminations that are attached to verbs of Latin and French origin. Thus,

prophezeien, <i>to prophesy</i>	spazieren, <i>to walk</i>
vermalebeien, <i>to curse</i>	amüsieren, <i>to amuse</i>
regieren, <i>to reign</i>	disputieren, <i>to dispute</i>
barbieren, <i>to shave</i>	fabrizieren, <i>to fabricate</i>

26. *Derivation of Verbs by Prefixes.*—Prefixes attached to verbs are, as it has been shown in Part 7, either separable or inseparable. A very large number of verbs are compound with the inseparable prefixes be-, ent-, er-, ver-, zer-, ge-, which modify variously the meaning of the primitive.

1. *Derivation by the Prefix be-.*—Be-, when prefixed to a verbal root, has an intensive force and changes an intransitive into a transitive verb. Thus,

beruhen, <i>to rest in</i> , from ruhen	besitzen, <i>to possess</i> , from sitzen
beharren, <i>to abide by</i> , from harren	bestehen, <i>to consist of</i> , from stehen
bebauen, <i>to build upon</i> , from bauen	betreten, <i>to enter</i> , from treten
belehren, <i>to instruct</i> , from lehren	bezahlen, <i>to pay</i> , from zahlen
beladen, <i>to load upon</i> , from laden	

When prefixed to a noun or adjective, *be=* forms verbs generally with active sense. Thus,

begeistern, to inspire, from Geist
bevölkern, to populate, from Volk
beenden, to finish, from Ende
befruchten, to fructify, from Frucht
bereichern, to make rich, from reich

befähigen, to qualify, from fähig
betäuben, to deafen, from taub
bewillkommen, to welcome, from willkommen

2. *Derivation by the Prefix ent=.* — *Ent=* in connection with verbal roots denotes the beginning of an action, separation, or removal. Thus,

entblühen, to come to blossom, from blühen
entbrennen, to take fire, from brennen
entschlafen, to fall asleep, from schlafen

entgehen, to escape, from gehen
entreißen, to tear away, from reißen
entdecken, to discover, from decken
entsagen, to abdicate, from sagen
entzünden, to inflame, from zünden

Ent= is also attached to roots of nouns and adjectives to form derivatives. Thus,

enthüllen, to unveil, from Hülle
entkräften, to weaken, from Kraft
entschädigen, to indemnify, from Schaden
entschuldigen, to excuse, from Schuld

entwalden, to cut down the forest, from Wald
entblößen, to expose, from bloß
entfremden, to alienate, from fremd
entäußern, to alienate, from außer

3. *Derivation by the Prefix er=.* — *Er=* is the same prefix as *ur=* in *Urteil*. It generally denotes acquisition by means of the action of the simple verb, or the growing or passing into a condition. Sometimes it also expresses loss of life from various causes. Thus,

erbetteln, to obtain by begging, from betteln
erjagen, to obtain by hunting, from jagen
erkämpfen, to obtain by fighting, from kämpfen

erröten, to blush, from rot
erstarken, to grow strong, from stark
ertrinken, to be drowned, from trinken
erstechen, to stab, from stechen

4. *Derivation by the Prefix ver=.*—*Ver=* expresses a progress out of a place; also error, prevention, finally destruction. Thus,

verjagen, <i>to chase away</i> , from jagen	verrechnen, <i>to make a mistake in reckoning</i> , from rechnen
verschwinden, <i>to disappear</i> , from schwinden	verbrennen, <i>to destroy by burning</i> , from brennen
verwelken, <i>to wither away</i> , from welken	verspielen, <i>to lose by playing</i> , from spielen
versehen, <i>to overlook</i> , from sehen	

Derivatives from nouns and adjectives have factitive force. Thus,

verbittern, <i>to embitter</i> , from bitter	verlängern, <i>to make longer</i> , from länger
vergolden, <i>to gild</i> , from Gold	
vergöttern, <i>to idolize</i> , from Gott	verewigen, <i>to eternalize</i> , from ewig

5. *Derivation by the Prefix zer=.*—*Zer=* denotes dispersion and dissolution. Thus,

zerreißen, <i>to tear to pieces</i> , from reißen	zerreiben, <i>to grind, to rub</i> , from reiben
zerfallen, <i>to fall to pieces</i> , from fallen	zerstören, <i>to destroy</i> , from stören

6. *Derivation by the Prefix ge=.*—*Ge=* has the meaning of *together*, of fitness, of perfect action and sometimes of a permanent condition. Thus,

gebrauchen, <i>to make use of</i> , from brauchen	gefrieren, <i>to congeal</i> , from frieren
gedenken, <i>to think of</i> , from denken	gehörtchen, <i>to obey</i> , from hören

DERIVATION OF ADVERBS

27. A large number of adverbs are derivated from nouns, adjectives, pronouns, or verbs by the aid of suffixes. The most important of these derivations are given in the following:

28. **Adverbs Derived From Nouns.**—Adverbs are formed from nouns

1. By affixing the genitive sign &. Thus,

morgens, <i>in the morning</i> , from Morgen	teils, <i>partly</i> , from Teil
abends, <i>in the evening</i> , from Abend	flugs, <i>swiftly</i> , from Flug
tags, <i>in the day</i> , from Tag	anfangs, <i>in the beginning</i> , from Anfang
nachts, <i>in the night</i> , from Nacht	keineswegs, <i>by no means</i>

2. By adding the termination =weise. Thus,

haufenweise, <i>in heaps</i> , from haufen	stückweise, <i>piecemeal</i> , from Stück
rudweise, <i>by starts</i> , from Rud	pfundweise, <i>in pounds</i> , from Pfund

29. Adverbs Formed From Adjectives. — Many adverbs are derived from adjectives

rechts, <i>on the right side</i> , from recht	besonders, <i>particularly</i> , from be-sonder
links, <i>on the left side</i> , from linl	sonder
anders, <i>otherwise</i> , from ander	stets, <i>continually</i> , from stet
bereits, <i>already</i> , from bereit	

2. By the addition of the suffix =lich, cognate to the English *ly*. Thus,

freilich, <i>to be sure</i> , from frei	hoffentlich, <i>as may be hoped</i> , from hoffend
schwerlich, <i>hardly</i> , from schwer	
sicherlich, <i>surely</i> , from sicher	wissentlich, <i>knowingly</i> , from wissend
wahrlich, <i>truly</i> , from wahr	

3. By the addition of the termination =stens. Thus,

erstens, <i>firstly</i> , from erst	höchstens, <i>at most</i> , from höchst
drittens, <i>thirdly</i> , from dritte	spätestens, <i>at latest</i> , from spätest
bestens, <i>at best</i> , from best	frühestens, <i>at earliest</i> , from frühest
meistens, <i>mostly</i> , from meist	wenigstens, <i>at least</i> , from wenigst

COMPOSITION OF GERMAN WORDS

30. The faculty of German for compounding words is greater than that of most other languages. It is limited, however, to words whose ideas are ordinarily closely associated by nature. The accidental combination of ideas cannot be expressed by means of a compounded word. A knowledge of the process of composition from native roots is of much greater practical importance in German for the acquisition of a vocabulary, and for the exposition of the relations and meanings of words than in any other language.

COMPOUND NOUNS

31. Compound Nouns in General.—Compound nouns consist of two or more words, of which the last is nearly always a noun. The first word may be any part of speech, a noun, verbal adjective, adverb, or preposition; it always has the principal accent and generally limits or determines the second component. The last component takes only a secondary accent, but determines the gender and declension of the compound.

32. Compounds Formed of Two Nouns.—Compounds consisting of two nouns are in German more numerous than in English. They are formed in various ways.

1. Two nouns may be joined together in their stem forms. Thus,

der Briefkasten, *the letter box*
 der Bleistift, *the pencil*
 der Apfelbaum, *the apple tree*

die Hauptstadt, *the capital*
 die Landkarte, *the map*
 die Hausfrau, *the mistress*

2. A connecting vowel may be used between the two components. Thus,

das Badezimmer, *the bathroom*
 der Pferdestall, *the horse stable*

das Tagebuch, *the day book*
 die Hundekette, *the dog chain*

3. The first component part may stand in the plural. Thus,

das Bücherbrett, *the book shelf*
 die Hühnerzucht, *the poultry-rearing*
 das Wörterbuch, *the dictionary*

das Blumenbeet, *the flower bed*
 die Straßenecke, *the street corner*
 der Taubenschlag, *the dove cot*

4. The first component part may be in the genitive case. Thus,

die Gottesfurcht, *the fear of God*
 die Manneszucht, *the discipline*
 der Gerichtshof, *the court of justice*

das Wirtshaus, *the inn*
 der Herzogstitel, *the title of duke*
 der Reichstag, *the imperial diet*

5. The genitive ending (e)s is often applied to the first component part, although its regular genitive does not end in (e)s. Thus,

die Einbildungskraft, <i>the phantasy</i>	der Geburtstag, <i>the birthday</i>
der Freundschaftsbund, <i>the union</i>	die Wahrheitsliebe, <i>the love of truth</i>
	<i>of friendship</i>

33. Compounds Formed of an Adjective and a Noun.—In compound nouns consisting of an adjective and a noun, the adjective is either uninflected or inflected.

1. The adjective is uninflected in nouns like

die Altstadt, <i>the old town</i>	die Großmutter, <i>the grandmother</i>
das Hochland, <i>the highland</i>	der Edelmut, <i>the magnanimity</i>
der Geheimschreiber, <i>the private</i>	der Schwarzwald, <i>the Black Forest</i>
<i>secretary</i>	das Rotkehlchen, <i>the robin</i>
die Hochzeit, <i>the wedding</i>	

2. In a few compounds the adjective is inflected. Thus,

der Hohepriester, <i>the high priest</i>	die Langeweile, <i>the tedium</i>
das Armenhaus, <i>the poorhouse</i>	das Krankenzimmer, <i>the sick room</i>

34. Compounds Formed of a Verb and a Noun. In compounds formed of a verb and a noun, the root of the verb is simply prefixed to a noun. Thus,

das Fahrrad, <i>bicycle</i>	das Lesebuch, <i>the reading book</i>
die Reitbahn, <i>the riding ground</i>	der Hebebaum, <i>the lever</i>
das Schreibpapier, <i>the writing</i>	die Steigeleiter, <i>the steps</i>
<i>paper</i>	

35. Compounds Formed of an Adverb or Preposition and a Noun.—A large number of German compound nouns consist of an adverb or preposition and a noun. Some of them are:

die Anhöhe, <i>the acclivity</i>	die Jetztzeit, <i>the present time</i>
der Ablaut, <i>the change of a sound</i>	der Mißton, <i>the discordance</i>
der Ausgang, <i>the exit</i>	das Unglück, <i>the misfortune</i>
der Eingang, <i>the entrance</i>	der Mitschüler, <i>the schoolmate</i>
der Ausflug, <i>the excursion</i>	der Umgang, <i>the procession</i>

COMPOUND ADJECTIVES

36. Besides a very large number of derived adjectives, the German language has a number of adjectives that are compounds. The last part of these compounds is always an adjective, while the first part may be a noun, an adjective, an adverb, or some other word. These combinations are so numerous and of such variety that only the most important can be given here.

37. Compound Adjectives Consisting of a Noun and an Adjective.—In these combinations the noun may be in the stem form or in the genitive case. Thus,

blitzschnell, <i>quick as lightning</i>	goldgelb, <i>yellow as gold</i>
blutrot, <i>red as blood</i>	tummerlos, <i>without sorrow</i>
geistreich, <i>clever, spiritual</i>	menschenfeind, <i>misanthropic</i>
grasgrün, <i>green as grass</i>	schneeweiß, <i>white as snow</i>
hoffnungsvoll, <i>hopeful</i>	luftdicht, <i>air-tight</i>

38. Compound Adjectives Consisting of Two Adjectives or of an Adverb and an Adjective.—Not a few adjectives are compounded of two adjectives or of an adverb and an adjective. Thus,

hellgrün, <i>bright green</i>	taubstumm, <i>deaf and dumb</i>
dunkelrot, <i>dark red</i>	neugeboren, <i>newborn</i>
altmodisch, <i>old-fashioned</i>	hochdeutsch, <i>high German</i>
wohlwollend, <i>benevolent</i>	einaugig, <i>one-eyed</i>

39. Compound Adjectives Consisting of a Verb and an Adjective.—Compositions of adjectives with verbs are rare. The verb may appear in the root form or in the infinitive used substantively in the genitive. Thus,

denkwürdig, <i>memorable</i>	lobenswert, <i>praiseworthy</i>
wißbegierig, <i>eager to know</i>	liebenswert, <i>amiable</i>

COMPOUND VERBS

40. A large number of compound verbs consist of a primitive verb and an adverb or preposition that perform the office of a separable prefix. This class of compound verbs was treated in Part 7. There are, however, a number of compound verbs that deserve special attention. Their

first component part is either a noun or an adjective or an adverbial phrase which from constant association with the verb have come to form a compound with it. In some cases these elements are considered as separable prefixes. Thus,

teilhaben, <i>to partake</i> , ich habe teil	tötschlagen, <i>to kill</i> , ich schlage tot
haushalten, <i>to keep house</i> , ich halte haus	wahrnehmen, <i>to perceive</i> , ich nehme wahr
gleichstellen, <i>to equalize</i> , ich stelle gleich	fehlschlagen, <i>to miscarry</i> , es schlug fehl
festhalten, <i>to hold fast</i> , ich halte fest	

In other compounds certain words have formed with the verb a new verb-stem, which is inflected like a simple verb-stem having always a weak inflection. Thus,

lustwandeln, <i>to walk for pleasure</i> , ich lustwandle	mutmaßen, <i>to conjecture</i> , ich mutmaße
brandschätzen, <i>to ravage</i> , ich brandschätze	handhaben, <i>to handle</i> , ich handhabe
	willfahren, <i>to gratify</i> , ich willfahre

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 9)

SYNTAX

1. **Syntax** treats of the arrangement and combination of words in the expression of thought. Many of the leading principles and rules of German syntax have already been stated and illustrated; we here take them up in a more connected and systematic way, repeating some things that have been discussed before, but adding many others that are new.

Der Satz.

The Sentence

2. **The Sentence Defined.**—A word is usually defined as the sign of an idea. Thus the word *Knabe*, *boy*, calls up in the mind a mental image or representation of a particular kind of object, and the word *geht*, *walks*, a mental picture of an action performed by something that acts. Considered separately, these mind pictures are ideas. But when we bring two or more ideas into proper relation, we have a thought, provided certain essential elements are present; and when either by speech or in writing, we join properly the words that call up these ideas, the result is a *sentence*. Hence, it appears that a sentence does for a thought just what a word does for an idea; that is, as a spoken or written word is the sign of an idea, a spoken or written sentence is the sign of a thought.

A **sentence**, therefore, is a collection of uttered or written words arranged in such order or relation as to express a complete thought.

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

3. Uses or Functions of Sentences.—In the communication of thought among men, only three different uses or purposes are served by sentences:

1. *To Make a Statement or Declaration.*—If a person has some knowledge or information that he wishes to convey to others, that is, if he wishes to tell something, he makes use of a form of sentence called a *statement* or *declaration*. Thus:

Die Erde ist eine Kugel, *The earth is a sphere.*

Wir werden die Stadt während der Feiertage besuchen, *We shall visit the city during the holidays.*

A **declarative sentence** is a sentence used to declare or tell something.

2. *To Ask a Question.*—A person may desire some information that he believes another can furnish. In order to obtain it, he employs a form of sentence called a *question* or *interrogation*. Thus,

Ist die Erde eine Kugel? *Is the earth a sphere?*

Werden Sie die Stadt während der Feiertage besuchen? *Shall you visit the city during the holidays?*

An **interrogative sentence** is a sentence used to ask a question.

3. *To Express a Command or an Earnest Wish or Entreaty.* A person may wish to impose his will on others, or to have it known that he has a strong desire that something shall or shall not be done. To accomplish this object, he expresses his thought in such form as to indicate that it is a command or a wish.

Lerne deine Aufgabe! *Study your lesson!*

Verlasse mich hier nicht! *Do not abandon me here!*

An **imperative sentence** is a sentence used to express a command, a wish, or an earnest entreaty.

SENTENTIAL ELEMENTS

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE

4. A Sentence Must Have Two Parts. — We may say of nearly everything that can be pictured by the mind that it is capable of being or doing something or other; or we may deny that it has any such capacity of being or doing. Thus of the things denoted by the words *die Erde*, *the earth*, and *der Knabe*, *the boy*, many things may be affirmed and denied. Thus,

Die Erde $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ist eine Kugel,} \\ \text{wird von der Sonne} \\ \text{beleuchtet,} \end{array} \right. \quad \text{The earth} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{is a sphere.} \\ \text{is lighted by the sun.} \end{array} \right.$

Der Knabe $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ist nicht fleißig,} \\ \text{kann nicht schwimmen,} \end{array} \right. \quad \text{The boy} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{is not diligent.} \\ \text{cannot swim.} \end{array} \right.$

These are declarative sentences. The declarative is more frequently used than any other form of sentence. By some slight change, declarative sentences may be made interrogative.

Ist die Erde eine Kugel, *Is the earth a sphere?*

Wird die Erde von der Sonne beleuchtet, *Is the earth lighted by the sun?*

Ist der Knabe nicht fleißig, *Is not the boy diligent?*

Kann der Knabe nicht schwimmen, *Can not the boy swim?*

Each of these sentences contains a verb and a noun. No sentence can be made without a verb, for the verb is the only part of speech that asserts, declares, or predicates. All that is absolutely necessary besides a verb to make a complete assertion or a full sentence, is the name of some person or thing about which the assertion is made. This name must be either a noun or a pronoun (the usual substitute of a noun) or some other part of speech used substantively, or with the value of a pronoun.

As this name is the subject of a statement, or that about which the statement is made, it is called in grammar the

subject of the sentence (*Satzgegenstand*); and the verb is called the *predicate* (*Satzausſage*); that is, the thing stated or asserted.

The **subject** of a declarative sentence is the word or words denoting that of which something is affirmed or denied.

The **predicate** of a declarative sentence is the word or words denoting what is affirmed or denied of that which the subject denotes.

The subject and the predicate of a sentence are called the *principal parts* of the sentence (*Hauptſteile*). In the imperative sentence, the subject is often omitted, as in, *Have Geduld! Have patience!* But it is clearly implied; without it there could be no thought expressed, and, therefore, no sentence. In the above sentence the subject implied is *du*, thus, *Have (du) Geduld! Have (thou) patience!*

5. Relations Between Subject and Predicate.—1. Since the verb is the essential part of every sentence, or the part that makes the assertion, the subject of the sentence is also called the subject of the verb. And every verb, since it implies a statement, must have associated with it, a subject—a word showing about what the statement is made.

2. A sentence composed only of a verb and its subject is called a *simple naked sentence* (*ein nackter einfacher Satz*). Thus,

Gott regiert, God rules.

Kinder spielen, Children play.

Carl lernt, Charles learns.

3. The subject of a sentence must always be in the nominative case.

4. Since the German verb has different forms for the various persons and numbers, the form to be used must be of the same person and number as the subject; if the subject is a noun, the verb will always be in the third person. Therefore, the verb agrees in person and number with its subject. Thus,

Ich gehe, I go.

Er geht, He goes.

Der Mann geht, The man goes.

Wir gehen, We go.

5. A verb sometimes has for its subject the pronoun *es*, *it*—not as standing for any real actor, but as helping to signify that a certain condition or action exists or is going on. Thus,

Es regnet, It rains.

Es schneet, It snows.

Es ist Nacht, It is night.

Es ist sieben Uhr, It is seven o'clock.

Expressions like these are called **Impersonal**.

PREDICATE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

6. Many verbs are not in themselves complete predicates. Such verbs are rarely used alone with a subject, and when so used a sentence is made that seems not to have a full meaning. The reader or the listener expects something more to be added.

One class of these verbs calls for something more to be added relative to the subject in order to further describe or qualify it. For example: *Ich bin . . . , I am . . . ; Wir waren . . . , We were . . .* Such statements may be completed by adding a noun or an adjective. Thus,

Ich bin arm, I am poor.

Wir waren Freunde, We were friends.

A noun or an adjective thus used in the predicate is called a **predicate noun** or a **predicate adjective**, or the noun or adjective is said to stand in the predicate, or to be used predicatively. This is because it completes in a manner the predication or assertion made by the verb; it qualifies the subject by being made a part of the assertion respecting the subject; it does so by the help of the verb which brings it into close connection with the subject.

A predicate noun and adjective may be known by the fact that it always denotes the same person or thing as the subject. Thus, in the first sentence given above, the words *ich* and *arm* refer to the same person.

7. Verbs Taking a Predicative Adjective or Noun.

The number of German verbs thus taking a predicative adjective or noun is very limited. They are:

sein, <i>to be</i>	scheinen, <i>to appear, to look</i>
bleiben, <i>to remain, to stay</i>	bünten, <i>to seem</i>
werden, <i>to become</i>	heißen, <i>to be called</i>

Thus,

Der Opal ist ein Stein, *The opal is a stone.*

Sie sind Soldaten gewesen, *They have been soldiers.*

Karl blieb schweigsam, *Charles remained silent.*

Ich wurde krank, *I became ill.*

Es scheint ein Rätsel und doch ist es kein, *It seems a riddle and yet it is none.*

Ich heiße der reichste Mann in der Stadt, *I am called the richest man in the city.*

8. Predicate Adjective or Noun Always in the Nominative.—Since the predicate adjective and the predicate noun qualify the subject of the sentence, they must be in the same case with it; that is, they must always be in the nominative. They are, therefore, often called **predicate nominatives**. Thus,

Der Knabe wurde ein Mann, *The boy became a man.*

Die Raupe wird ein Schmetterling, *The caterpillar becomes a butterfly.*

OBJECT OF A VERB

9. Object in General.—Besides the original elements of the sentence, the subject and the predicate, there may be other elements which serve to fill out the meaning of the verb. For example, there is a very large class of verbs that are seldom used with a subject alone to form a sentence. Such verbs call for the addition of some other word to name some person or thing upon which the action they signify is exerted. Thus, in the sentences, *Ich lobe . . . , I praise . . . ; Der Gute hilft . . . , The good man helps . . .*, additions are expected telling who or what is praised, or whom the good man

helps; the sense is made complete in some such way as this: *Ich lobe den Knaben, I praise the boy*, and *Der Gute hilft dem Armen, The good man helps the poor*.

A word thus added to complete the meaning of a noun is always the name of something, a noun, pronoun, or other equivalent of a noun. It is called the object (*Ergänzung*) of the verb, because it signifies that toward which the action of the verb is directed, that which receives or endures or suffers the effect of the action, of whatever kind it may be.

10. Three Kinds of Objects.—In German, the object of a verb may stand in the accusative, in the dative, or in the genitive case, according to the meaning to be conveyed. There are, then, *three kinds of objects*.

11. Object in the Accusative Case.—Many German verbs require the object to be in the accusative case, in order to answer the questions *Wen? whom?* or *Was? what?* If, for instance, we have the sentence, *Ich liebe, I love*, and we want to complete the meaning of the verb and want to find out the person or object that receives the action of *lieben, love*, we ask the question *Wen or Was liebe ich?* In answering this question we add an object in the accusative case. Thus, *Ich liebe meine Eltern, I love my parents*.

A verb taking such an object in the accusative to complete its meaning, is termed a **transitive verb**, because its action, instead of being merely asserted of the subject, passes over and affects another noun—the object noun. Hence we say that a transitive verb governs the accusative case, or governs a noun in that case; that is, the object of a transitive verb is necessarily put in the accusative case.

On the other hand there are verbs that do not properly take after them such an object in the accusative case; thus, *sitzen, to sit; fallen, to fall; laufen, to run; helfen, to help; denken, to think of*. Such verbs are called **intransitives**. The meaning of some of these verbs may be completed by an adverbial phrase; others, by an object in the dative or genitive case.

In certain peculiar constructions, however, even some intransitive verbs take an object in the accusative case; the object may express in noun form the action, or a variety of actions, signified by the verb itself. Thus,

Er schläft **den letzten Schlaf**, *He sleeps his last sleep.*

Ich habe **einen guten Kampf** gekämpft, *I have fought a good fight.*

The kind of object that we have thus far considered, that is, the object in the accusative case, is also called a **direct object** (*nähere Ergänzung*). It is so named because its relation to the governing verb is closer and more immediate than that of any other kind of object.

12. Object in the Dative Case.—Many German verbs require the object to be in the dative case, in answer to the question *Wem?* *to whom?* If in the sentence, *Die Reisenden folgten . . .*, *The travelers followed . . .*, the meaning of the verb *folgten* is to be completed, we ask, *Wem folgten die Reisenden?* *Whom did the travelers follow?* and we may answer, *Die Reisenden folgten dem Führer*, *The travelers followed the guide.* The object *dem Führer*, (*to*) *the guide*, is here in the dative case.

This object in the dative, representing persons or things, stands in less close relation to the action than the object in the accusative. In English this relation is often expressed by a prepositional phrase with *to* or *for*.

Some transitive verbs take, besides an object in the accusative, another object in the dative. Thus,

Er gab **mir** das Buch, *He gave me the book.*

Ich machte **ihm** einen Rock, *I made him a coat.*

Wir geben es **dir**, *We give it to you.*

In the first sentence, **mir**, *me*, points out to whom the gift was made; in the second, **ihm**, *him*, shows for whom the action of making the coat was performed. Such an object in the dative case is called an **indirect object**, because it represents what is less directly affected by the action of the verb, and also because the same relation may be (and often is) expressed by a preposition.

13. Object in the Genitive Case.—A number of German verbs require the object to be in the genitive case, in answer to the question *Wessen?* *whose?* Thus, in the sentence, *Er gedachte der Worte seines Vaters*, *He thought of the words of his father*, the verb *gedachte* requires the object *der Worte* to be in the genitive case. Like the object in the dative case, this object stands in less close relation to the action than the accusative or direct object, and is therefore also called an **indirect object**. Other examples are:

Der Kranke bedarf der Ruhe, *The sick (man) needs rest.*

Der Knabe spottete unserer Worte, *The boy mocked about our words.*

The genitive object occurs also in connection with an accusative object to complete the meaning of a verb. Thus,

Der König würdigte ihn keines Blickes, *The king did not deign to look at him.*

Wer von euch kann mich einer Sünde zeihen? *Who of you can accuse me of a sin?*

ATTRIBUTIVE AND APPOSITIVE ADJECTIVE AND NOUN

14. It has already been shown that a noun may be qualified or described by an adjective or a noun used predicatively; that is, in the way of an assertion to indicate that a certain quality or state, character or office, or the like, belongs to it—a relation demanding a word of assertion, a verb, to express the peculiar relation.

15. Attributive Adjective.—But an adjective also, and much oftener, qualifies a noun more directly, being simply added to the noun to describe it; the quality and so on is not asserted, but only mentioned as belonging to that which the noun expresses. Thus in the sentence, *Dieser Mann ist alt*, *This man is old*, the age of the man is asserted; but in *dieser alte Mann*, *this old man*, the age is made a part of the description of the person, about whom another assertion may be marked, as, *Dieser alte Mann hat weiße Haare*, *This old man has white hairs*, where we use another adjective to describe also the object *Haare*, *hairs*.

An adjective thus used to describe a noun without being part of the assertion or predication made about it, is called an **attribute** or an **attributive adjective**, or is said to be used **attributively**.

While a predicate adjective qualifies only the subject or the direct object of a verb, an attributive adjective may qualify a noun in any situation whatever and is generally put before the noun. Thus,

Der Oberst des zweiten Regiments ist gestorben. *The colonel of the second regiment has died.*

In diesem schönen Buche giebt es viele Bilder. *In this beautiful book there are many illustrations.*

16. The Noun as an Attribute.—A noun often becomes also a qualifying, descriptive, or limiting addition to another noun, much as if it were an attributive adjective. It is then either put in the genitive case or is joined with the qualified noun by a preposition. Thus,

Uhdant ist der Welt Lohn. *Ungratefulness is the world's reward.*

Die Liebe einer Mutter ist stärker als die Liebe eines Vaters. *A mother's love is stronger than a father's.*

Der Hörer an der Wand hört seine eigene Schand'. *The listener at the wall hears his own disgrace.*

Often we can put an adjective in place of such an attributive noun, with little or no difference in meaning; thus, die Krone des Königs, *the king's crown*; die Eigenschaften des Menschen, *the properties of man*, may also be described as, die königliche Krone, *the royal crown*; die menschlichen Eigenschaften, *the human properties*.

17. The Appositive Noun.—A noun is, much less often, used to describe another noun in a way somewhat similar to this. Thus, in the sentence, Mein Freund, der Jäger, trägt seine Waffe, ein Gewehr, auf seiner Schulter, *My friend, the hunter, carries his weapon, a rifle, on his shoulder*, the nouns Freund and Waffe are limited or described by the addition of Jäger and Gewehr. There are implied in the sentence the two assertions, mein Freund ist ein Jäger, and

feine Waffe ist ein Gewehr; but they are only implied, not actually made. Nouns used like Jäger and Gewehr are called **appositives**, or are said to be **in apposition** with other nouns.

In apposition means in position by the side of, or set alongside; because the appositive noun seems less closely connected with the noun it describes, less dependent on it, than the attributive adjective; it is, rather, an independent word added to the other for the purpose of further describing the same thing.

An appositive noun must always be in the same case as the noun which it describes. Thus,

Paris, die Hauptstadt Frankreichs, ist eine der ältesten Städte Europas, *Paris, the capital of France, is one of the oldest cities of Europe.*

Dieses Haus gehört meinem Freunde, dem Professor Schmidt, *This house belongs to my friend, Professor Schmidt.*

18. The Appositive Adjective.—An adjective is also often joined to a noun in a looser and more indirect way, so much like that of the appositive noun that it is also called an **appositive adjective**. The appositive adjective, like the appositive noun, has its place usually after the noun it describes, but it is uninflected, except when the definite article is repeated before it. Thus,

Der Page, jung, hübsch und klug, war der Liebling des Hauses, *The page, young, handsome, and clever, was the darling of the house.*

But,

Er kennt die ganze deutsche Literatur, die alte und neue, *He knows all German literature, ancient and modern.*

THE ADVERB AND ADVERBIAL PHRASES

19. Besides the parts named, the simple sentence may contain another part that describes the circumstances or conditions under which the action of the verb takes place. It may determine the time, place, manner, or degree of the action. This part of the sentence is called, in German, der

Umstand, *the circumstance*, and may be expressed either by an adverb, or by a phrase used adverbially. Thus, the predicate of a sentence can be enlarged

1. By an adverb. Thus,

Leonidas kämpfte **tapfer**, *Leonidas fought bravely.*

Der Sturm wütete **furchtbar**, *The storm raged furiously.*

2. By a prepositional phrase. Thus,

Er marschierte **mit einem großen Heere**, *He marched with a large army.*

3. By a noun in the accusative case. Thus,

Er fährt **jeden Tag** aus, *He drives out every day.*

4. By a participle used adverbially. Thus,

Er starb tapfer **kämpfend**, *He died fighting bravely.*

5. By a combination of several of these ways. Thus,

Am Mittag scheint die Sonne **am wärmsten**, *At noon the sun shines the warmest.*

20. With regard to the signification of the adverbial adjuncts the predicate may be completed in its meaning

1. By adjuncts of time. Thus,

Er kam **gestern**, *He came yesterday.*

Ich stehe **mit Sonnenaufgang** auf, *I get up at sunrise.*

2. By adjuncts of place. Thus,

Wir wohnen **in New York**, *We live in New York.*

Er fährt **nach Boston**, *He goes to Boston.*

3. By adjuncts of mode and manner. Thus,

Die Vögel fliegen **schnell**, *Birds fly fast.*

Es thut mir **außerordentlich** leid, *I am exceedingly sorry.*

4. By adjuncts of cause and effect. Thus,

Er starb **vor Hunger**, *He perished from hunger.*

Das Auge ist **zum Sehen** geschaffen, *The eye is made for seeing.*

SUMMARY OF SYNTACTIC COMBINATION

21. In the preceding paragraphs, the different parts of speech which combine with one another to form simple sentences have been treated and the ways in which their combinations are made have been shown. In these ways, the necessary elements of the sentence, the bare subject and predicate, are so extended and filled up as to express a thought in a more complete and detailed manner. The process of combination may be summed up as follows:

1. The original elements of the sentence are the subject and the verb.

2. The meaning of the verb may be filled out by an object; also by a predicate adjective or noun, or it may be modified by an adverb or adverbial phrase.

3. A noun in any construction in the sentence may be qualified by an adjective, or by another noun in apposition, or in the genitive, or joined to it by a preposition.

4. An adjective may be modified by an adverb or by a prepositional phrase.

5. Any adverb in the sentence may be modified by another adverb or by an adverbial phrase.

The words and phrases thus added to the bare subject and to the verb, or bare predicate, are in either case called its *modifiers*, or adjuncts, or, collectively, its complement. The bare subject or predicate with its adjuncts, or modifiers, is called the *complete subject* or predicate. Therefore, a *modifier* is any word or expression used with another word to narrow its application and to denote its meaning more exactly—to reduce or lessen the extent or measure in which its sense is to be taken.

In these ways the simple sentence is made up of one subject and of one predicate; but either of them may be drawn out and filled up to any extent by the various kinds of modifiers. But in practice, the length of a sentence is kept within limits by the fear that it will become awkward and clumsy, or even unintelligible. The ideas that we want to express by speech are put, by preference, into a series of

brief sentences, or separate statements. The relation of these separate statements to one another is often determined by means of connecting words—conjunctions—which bind together simple sentences more or less completely into a whole. Combinations of simple sentences made in this way are called *compound* and *complex sentences*.

COMPOUND AND COMPLEX SENTENCES

22. It has been shown that a sentence, while still remaining simple, can be filled up and made more completely expressive of a thought by expanding its subject or its predicate or both—that is, by adding to them a variety of modifying words or phrases according to certain regular methods of combination. But there are also ways by which we put together simple sentences, each having its own subject and predicate, and make of them a kind of whole, a longer and more intricate sentence. If we say, for example, *Der Winter kommt, und die Tage werden kürzer*, *The winter is coming and the days become shorter*; or *Die Tage werden kürzer, weil der Winter kommt*, *The days become shorter, because the winter is coming*, there are in each case two subject nouns, *der Winter* and *die Tage*, each of which has its own predicate verb, *kommt* and *werden kürzer*, respectively. The assertions or statements are therefore two. But there have been used between them certain connecting words which so unite them that they may be looked upon as, after all, forming only one sentence. A sentence thus composed is no longer simple. It is either compound or complex.

The connecting words that bind sentences together are the conjunctions, and the relative pronouns and relative nominal adjectives, which are also called conjunctive because they do the duty of conjunctions. A sentence that is joined with other sentences to make a larger sentence is called a **clause**.

23. Degrees of Combination.—The combination of clauses into sentences is of two degrees, one close and the other less close. In the latter case, the clauses are put

side by side and loosely tied together, as it were, each keeping its own value as an independent assertion; in the former case, one clause is made a part or member of another, or becomes dependent on it.

24. The Compound Sentence.—If by the use of connectives clauses are put in such relation that they stay independent from one another and each of them has the value of a separate assertion in the larger sentence, this composition is called a *compound sentence*, *Satzverbindung*. Thus,

Die Sonne geht auf **und** die Natur erwacht, *The sun rises and nature is awakening.*

Die Griechen kämpften tapfer, **aber** die Übermacht der Perser war zu groß, *The Greeks fought bravely, but the superior force of the Persians was too large.*

The single clauses of these sentences, though joined one to another, have an independent value in the compound sentence. They are, therefore, called **independent** or **principal clauses**, *Hauptsätze*. With relation to one another, again, they are called coordinate, *beigeordnet*; that is, of equal rank or order. The conjunctions that join clauses in this way, leaving to each its own original character, not making either dependent on the other, are called the **coordinating conjunctions**, *beordnende Bindewörter*.

A **compound sentence** is a sentence that is made up of two or more independent clauses.

25. These independent clauses may be:

1. Copulative coordinate; that is, they may be connected by the copulative conjunctions or their equivalents. Thus,

Der Mensch denkt **und** Gott lenkt, *Man proposes and God disposes.*

2. Adversative coordinate; that is, although contrasted with each other they are united to form one thought. Thus,

Er hat mich **zwar** beleidigt, **aber** ich habe ihm verziehen, *He has insulted me, it is true, but I have forgiven him.*

3. Disjunctive coordinate; that is, the two clauses composing the entire sentence are united in one whole, but one of them excludes the other. Thus,

Sei fleißig, sonst wirst du später Hunger leiden, *Be industrious, otherwise you will suffer from hunger later.*

4. Causal coordinate; that is, they may be so arranged that the latter may denote a cause or reason on the one hand, or an effect or inference on the other. Thus,

Das Land ist fruchtbar, deshalb ist die Ernte gut, *The land is fertile, therefore the crops are good.*

26. The Complex Sentence.—If by the use of connectives two or more sentences are put in such relation, that one of them is more important than the others and has alone the value of a separate assertion while the others define and explain it, the combination is called a *complex sentence*, *Satzgefüge*. Thus,

Der Vogel kann nicht fliegen, weil er verwundet ist, *The bird cannot fly, because it is wounded.*

Er berichtete, daß der König gestorben sei, *He reported that the king died.*

In the first sentence the only real assertion is: Der Vogel kann nicht fliegen, the clause weil er verwundet ist giving only the reason of *could not fly*; it means the same as the adverb phrase *on account of its wound*. In the second sentence the only assertion is, er berichtete, while the clause, daß der König gestorben sei, defines only the object of the first clause. When a clause is thus made to play the part of a word, a single part of speech, in another clause, it is said to be dependent on that other or to be **subordinated** to it, and is called a **dependent** or **subordinate clause**, *Nebensatz*. The conjunctions that join clauses in this way, making one dependent on the other are called **subordinating conjunctions**, *unterordnende Bindewörter*.

27. Different Classes of Subordinate Clauses. Subordinate clauses stand in the place of a substantive, or of an adjective, or of an adverb, and therefore must be

regarded as substantives, adjectives, or adverbs expanded into a sentence. Accordingly, there are three classes of subordinate sentences; substantive clauses, adjective clauses, and adverbial clauses.

28. Substantive Clauses.—A substantive clause can be used, like an ordinary substantive (noun)

1. As the subject of a preposition. Thus,

Daß die Ernte gut sein wird, ist offenbar, That the crop will be good is evident.

2. As the predicative complement of a sentence. Thus,

Seine Klage war, daß du ihn betrogen hättest, His complaint was, that you had deceived him.

3. As the object of a verb. Thus,

Er glaubt, daß wir ihm geschadet haben, He believes that we have done him harm.

29. Adjective Clauses.—Adjective clauses are adjectives or participles expanded into a sentence, and like adjectives, they express a more exact definition of a substantive or substantive pronoun. They are usually introduced by relative pronouns. Thus,

Die Bäume, welche ich gepflanzt habe, blühen jetzt, The trees that I planted are blooming now.

Ich habe das Buch verloren, welches du mir gegeben hast, I have lost the book that you gave me.

30. Adverbial clauses are adverbs, expanded into sentences. Like the adverb, they express a full explanation of place, time, reason, and manner. Accordingly we have:

1. Adverbial clauses of place beginning with the conjunctions: *wo, wohin, woher*, etc. Thus,

Ich weiß nicht, woher er kam, I do not know whence he came.

2. Adverbial clauses of time beginning with conjunctions like: *als, wann, sobald, während, bis*, etc. Thus,

Mein Freund kam, als wir im Theater waren, My friend arrived, while we were in the theater.

3. Adverbial clauses of cause or reason introduced by conjunctions like *weil*, *da*, *damit*, etc. Thus,

Er ist nicht beliebt, weil er sehr anmaßend ist, He is not liked because he is very arrogant.

4. Adverbial clauses of manner introduced by conjunctions like *wie*, *je . . . desto*, etc. Thus,

Er that es so, wie es gethan werden sollte, He did it just as it ought to be done.

ORDER OF WORDS

31. In the arrangement of words in sentences, the German differs widely from the English. Many differences of collocation, accordingly, have been noted and explained in various parts of this Grammar. But as in German every word and member of a sentence takes its position according to a definite law of arrangement, and cannot, without great offense to euphony, be thrown out of its proper place, some general rules on the order of words are given below.

32. Word Order in General.—There are three types of word order according to the position of the principal elements of the sentence:

1. The normal order: *Der Knabe lernt fleißig.*
2. The inverted order: *Lernt der Knabe fleißig?*
3. The transposed order: *(Ich weiß, daß) der Knabe fleißig lernt.*

In the first of these three sentences, the finite verb *lernt* follows the subject *der Knabe* immediately; in the second sentence, the finite verb *lernt* precedes the subject; and in the third sentence, the finite verb occupies the last place in the sentence.

By *finite verb* or *verb* is here and in the following meant only the personal part of the verb; by *subject* is meant the subject with its modifiers or adjuncts.

The normal order, in which the verb closely follows the subject, is used chiefly in independent declarative sentences, which begin with the subject. The inverted order, in which

the verb closely precedes the subject, is also used chiefly in independent sentences, which begin with any other element than the subject. The transposed order, in which the verb stands at the end of its clause, is used only in dependent clauses.

The forms for the three different arrangements will therefore be:

NORMAL ORDER—Subject—Verb—Adjuncts of verb

INVERTED ORDER—Verb—Subject—Adjuncts of verb

TRANSPPOSED ORDER—Subject—Adjuncts—Verb

THE NORMAL ORDER

33. The normal order of words is the natural and usual order of all independent assertive sentences in which no other element precedes the subject. The arrangement of the three essential parts of the sentence is:

(1) Subject	(2) Verb	(3) Adjunct
Er	hat	ein Haus.
<i>He</i>	<i>has</i>	<i>a house.</i>
Die Blume	ist	sehr schön.
<i>The flower</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>very beautiful.</i>
Der Bauer	pflügt	das Feld.
<i>The farmer</i>	<i>plows</i>	<i>the field.</i>
Der Vater	will	arbeiten.
<i>The father</i>	<i>wishes</i>	<i>to work.</i>

1. In the normal order no adjunct of the verb can intervene between the subject and the verb, as it often occurs in English. Thus, the English *He seldom wears a black hat*, must be in German, **Er trägt**—selten einen schwarzen Hut.

2. The subject, however, may consist of a number of words, phrases, and even clauses; the verb will always immediately follow this complex subject. Thus,

Der jüngste Knabe in dieser Klasse—**ist**—zehn Jahre alt, *The youngest boy of this class is ten years old.*

Die Königin Elisabeth von England, welche auch die jungfräuliche Königin genannt wird,—**regierte**—fünfundvierzig Jahre, *Queen Elizabeth of England, who is also called the virgin queen, reigned forty-five years.*

3. The non-finite part of the verb, that is, the infinitive or participle of compound tenses, stands at the end of the sentence. When both occur the participle precedes the infinitive. Thus,

Der Freund meines Bruders ist-abgereist, The friend of my brother has departed.

Der Präsident-wird-gewählt werden, The president will be elected.

4. When one or more adjuncts are joined with the verb, they are placed after the finite verb but precede the infinitive and participle of a compound tense. The arrangement of these adjuncts among themselves will be treated later. Thus,

Mein Vater-hat-dort auf dem Berge ein Haus-gebaut, My father has built a house on yonder mountain.

Der König-wird-heute noch nach Berlin-kommen, The king will yet come to Berlin today.

5. The separable prefix of a compound verb stands at the end in simple tenses. In compound tenses it is written in one word with the participle or infinitive. Thus,

Er-kommt-morgen zurück, He comes back tomorrow.

Er-wird-morgen zurückkommen, He will come back tomorrow.

Wir-sind-gestern zurückgekommen, We came back yesterday.

6. In English, a clause modifying the predicate is often placed between the subject and the verb. This cannot be done in German. Thus,

The city, after having been conquered by the enemy, was pillaged and burnt.

must be translated

Die Stadt-wurde, nachdem sie vom Feinde erobert worden war, -geplündert und niedergebrannt.

34. Use of the Normal Order.—While the normal order is the natural and usual order of the independent declarative sentences, which begin with the subject, it is also frequently used

1. In independent interrogative sentences which begin with the subject. Thus,

Er will nicht kommen? *He will not come?*

Wer hat das gesagt? *Who has said this?*

Was ist gestern hier geschehen? *What happened here yesterday?*

2. In independent declarative sentences that have an imperative force. Thus,

Sie gehen hinein! *You go in!*

Du schreibst den Brief! *You write the letter!*

3. In independent optative sentences, when the verb is in the third person. Thus,

Gott gebe, daß er gesund werde! *God grant that he recover!*

Jeder Mann erfülle seine Pflicht, *Let every man do his duty.*

4. In dependent objective clauses, when the conjunction daß is omitted. Thus,

Ich weiß, **du** bist fleißig, *I know you are diligent.*

Er glaubte, **du** seiest krank, *He thought, you were ill.*

5. In dependent concessive clauses, where the conjunctive is omitted. Thus,

Es mag regnen oder schneien, wir werden doch abreisen, *It may rain or snow, we shall depart anyway.*

THE INVERTED ORDER

35. The **inverted order** of words, in which the verb closely precedes the subject, is used chiefly for independent declarative sentences, in which for emphasis or variety's sake some adjunct of the verb comes first in the order of words. The arrangement of these sentences is:

(1) Adjunct	(2) Verb	(3) Subject
Heute	kommt	er.
<i>Today</i>	<i>comes</i>	<i>he.</i>
Dort oben	scheint	die Sonne.
<i>Up there</i>	<i>shines</i>	<i>the sun.</i>
Geld	habe	ich.
<i>Money</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>I.</i>

1. The adjunct placed at the beginning of the sentence may be an adverb, an adverbial phrase, an object, or a part of the verb itself. Only one such adjunct may precede the verb but it may consist of several words, forming only one element of the sentence. Thus,

Vor hundert Jahren war Amerika den Europäern noch unbekannt. *One hundred years ago America was yet unknown to Europeans.*

Es waren auch so viele alte Städte. *There are many old cities in it.*

When such an adjunct begins the sentence, neither the subject nor any second adjunct may be placed before the verb, as is often the case in English. The verb must have its usual place. Thus, the English

He will come tomorrow.
He will come to-morrow.

is thus translated

Er wird er morgen kommen.
He will he come have you right.

2. However, if the subject is a noun, an unemphatic adjunct or phrase contained in the sentence may often precede the subject near the verb. Thus,

Es wird die kalte Jahreszeit anfangen. *Here the cold season will begin.*

Die Kinder werden die Kinder am meisten freuen. *The children will be most joyful (the children had the greatest joy).*

Die Kinder werden die Zeit vieles geändert haben. *In a little time the children will have changed.*

3. A subordinate clause preceding the principal and having the value of an object or an adverb, will have the subject and predicate inverted and cause the inversion of the principal clause. Such a clause is often resumed by a conjunctive pronoun, such as, *so, dann, da, der, die, das*, which may also be regarded as separate elements. Thus,

Was die Kinder nicht wissen wird das wissen wir nicht. *What the children do not know we do not know.*

Als er von dem Mädchen verabschiedet wurde, verließ ihn das Kind. *When he was saying good-bye to the girl, he deserted him.*

Daß er das Kind liebte, ist ihm bekannt. *That he loved the child, is known to him.*

For the same reason also, parenthetical sentences as *sagte er, said he; antwortete er, replied he*, are inverted; for what precedes is the object of this sentence. Thus,

Was wollt ihr? fragte er, What do you want, he asked.

Dieser Mann ist ein Dieb, dachte ich, This man is a thief, I thought.

5. When an appositive precedes the noun, the order of words is also inverted; for this appositive is treated like an adjunct of the verb. Thus,

Müde und enttäuscht kehrte er nach Hause zurück, Wearied and disappointed he returned home.

Lachend verließ er das Zimmer, Laughing he left the room.

6. When two or more inverted clauses having the same subject are joined by the connective *und*, the subject must be repeated in the second sentence if another element precedes the second verb, while it may be omitted, if the verb follows *und* immediately. Thus,

Bald kam ein Bote und meldete die Niederlage des Königs, Soon a messenger arrived and announced the defeat of the king.

But,

Gestern kehrte ich aus Berlin zurück und sogleich besuchte ich meinen kranken Freund, Yesterday I returned from Berlin and at once I paid a visit to my sick friend.

7. An exception to the general rule of inversion is permitted in the case of certain words, which may or may not cause inversion. Such words are:

doch, yet, still, but

freilich, to be sure

jedoch, yet, however

zwar, it is true

entweder, either

erstens, first

gewiß, certainly

zweitens, secondly

nämlich, namely

These and other adverbs may be separated by a pause from what follows and thus lose their inverting force. Thus,

Er kam spät, doch er kam, He came late, still he came.

Freilich, er hat recht, It is true, he is right.

Gewiß, die deutsche Sprache ist sehr schwer, Certainly the German language is very difficult.

Interjections used with parenthetical force at the beginning of a sentence are wholly separated in construction from the rest of the sentence and cause no inversion. Some of them are:

fürwahr! <i>forsooth</i>	endlich! <i>at last</i>	ja, yes, <i>in fact</i>
leider! <i>alas</i>	nun, <i>well</i>	im Gegenteil, <i>on the contrary</i>

Thus,

Fürwahr! **Alexander war** ein großer Feldherr, *Forsooth, Alexander was a great strategist.*

Leider! **die Schlacht ist** verloren, *Alas! the battle is lost.*

Initial adverbs, modifying or emphasizing the subject and not the verb or the sentence, are also excepted from the rule and cause no inversion. Such adverbs are:

auch, <i>also, too</i>	selbst, <i>even</i>
nur, <i>only, alone</i>	sogar, <i>even</i>

Thus,

Auch **Cäsar war** ein großer Feldherr, *Cæsar, too, was a great strategist.*

Selbst **Könige müssen** sterben, *Even kings must die.*

General connectives like *und, aber, allein, sondern, denn, entweder—oder*, etc. are not adjuncts of the verb and precede, therefore, the subject without causing inversion.

36. Use of the Inverted Order.—The inverted order is regularly used:

1. In independent declarative sentences, in which some adjunct of the verb takes the first place in the sentence. Thus,

Auf dem Marktplatz **hatten** sich viele Leute eingefunden, *In the market place, many people had gathered.*

Mit großer Mehrheit von Stimmen **wurde** Roosevelt zum Präsidenten gewählt, *With great plurality of votes, Roosevelt was elected President.*

2. In all independent interrogative sentences that begin with any other element than the subject. Thus,

Was hast du gestern gethan? *What have you done yesterday?*

Ist Cäsar eines natürlichen Todes gestorben? *Has Cæsar died a natural death?*

Wann war die Schlacht bei Waterloo? *When was the battle of Waterloo?*

3. In imperative sentences when the subject is expressed. Thus,

Sehen Sie nicht fort! *Do not go away!*

Verlasse du uns nicht, o Gott! *Do not forsake us, O God!*

Thue jeder das Rechte! *Let everybody do the right!*

4. In independent optative sentences. Thus,

Hätte ich nur die Stadt erst erreicht, *Would that I had reached the city.*

Wöchstest du doch deine Meinung ändern, *May you change your opinion.*

5. In dependent conditional clauses, when the conjunction *wenn* or *ob* is omitted. Thus,

Hätte Blücher nicht Hilfe gebracht, so wäre die Schlacht bei Waterloo verloren gegangen, *If Blücher had not brought reenforcement, the battle of Waterloo would have been lost.*

Wären wir gesund, so könnten wir ausgehen, *If we were healthy, we could go out.*

6. In dependent concessive clauses. Thus,

Mag es wahr sein oder nicht, du solltest es nicht erzählen, *It may be true or not, you should not tell it.*

Sei er noch so reich, er wird doch immer unglücklich bleiben, *Though he be ever so rich, he will always remain unhappy.*

7. In emphatic or exclamatory sentences, the verb being usually followed by *doch*. Thus,

Wie schön ist doch die Welt! *How beautiful the world is!*

Hat er doch all sein Geld verloren! *He has lost all his money!*

THE TRANSPOSED ORDER

37. The **transposed order** is that order of words in which the verb stands at the end of its clause and may or may not follow the subject closely. The transposed order occurs exclusively in dependent clauses that are introduced

by a subordinating element, as a relative pronoun, indirect interrogative pronoun or adjective, or a subordinating conjunction. The introductory connectives will always have the first place in the order of words. Thus,

(Es war schon Nacht,)

- | | | | |
|---------------|------------|------------|----------|
| 1. Connective | 2. Subject | 3. Adjunct | 4. Verb |
| als | wir | im Dorfe | ankamen, |
- It was night already, when we arrived in the village.*

(Das ist der Mann,)

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|---------|
| 1. & 2. Connective and Subject | 3. Adjuncts | 4. Verb |
| welcher | mich gestern gerettet | hat, |
- This is the man who saved me yesterday.*

1. When the subject is not the first element in a dependent clause, it usually stands right after the introductory connective. But when a short unemphatic pronoun or adverb occurs in the sentence, it may be placed between the connective and the subject when this is a noun. Thus,

Wir wissen nicht, **wohin** uns das **Schicksal** führen wird, *We do not know whereto fate will lead us.*

Obgleich damals das **Heer** in guter Stellung war, konnte es sich nicht gegen die feindliche Übermacht halten, *Although the army was then in a good position, it could not hold out against the plurality of the enemy.*

2. A sentence is often logically but not formally dependent and thus stands without a subordinating conjunction in the normal order of words. Thus,

Friedrich der Große sagte, **der König** sei der erste Diener des Staates, *Frederick the Great said the king is the first servant of the State.*

Wir glaubten, **du** seiest krank, *We believed, that you were ill.*

3. When two infinitives stand together in a dependent clause, the finite verb must be placed immediately before them and not at the end of the clause. This occurs regularly with the compound tenses of the modal auxiliaries, where the infinitive is substituted for the past participle. Thus,

Ich weiß, daß er diese Arbeit hätte thun können, *I know that he could have done this work.*

Man sagte, daß er nicht hat schwören wollen, *They say that he has not been willing to take the oath.*

4. When several coordinate dependent clauses occur in the same sentence and have the same finite verb, this is used only in the last clause and is omitted in all others. Thus,

Er sagte, daß er unsern Freund gesehen (hätte) und mit ihm gesprochen hätte, *He said that he had seen our friend and talked with him.*

5. The personal forms of the auxiliaries haben and sein may be omitted at the end of a dependent clause, if no misunderstanding can arise. Thus,

Er erzählte mir, daß er den Kaiser gesehen (habe), *He told me that he had seen the emperor.*

Man sagt, daß er in Berlin gewesen, *They say that he has been in Berlin.*

POSITION OF ADJUNCTS

38. The arrangement of the subordinate elements of a sentence is not, generally, so rigidly fixed as the position of subject and verb, and is substantially the same in all three orders. These elements comprise the adjuncts of the noun and the adjuncts of the verb.

ADJUNCTS OF THE NOUN

39. **Attributive Adjuncts of the Noun.**—An attributive adjective or participle usually precedes the noun and is preceded by its own modifiers. Thus,

Ein sehr alter Baum steht vor unserem ganz neuen Landhause, *A very old tree stands in front of our entirely new country house.*

Der in der Schlacht bei Lützen gefallene Schwedenkönig hieß Gustav Adolph, *The Swedish king who fell in the battle of Lützen was named Gustave Adolph.*

Das von Wilhelm Busch verfaßte humoristische Buch enthält viele künstlerisch ausgestattete Illustrationen, *The humorous book written by William Bush contains many illustrations artistically executed.*

From these examples it appears that in German a much greater number of adjective modifiers are allowed to stand before a noun than in English, and they are always arranged so that the modifier precedes the word it modifies.

40. Appositive Adjuncts of the Noun.—1. Appositive adjuncts usually follow their noun. Thus,

Friedrich der Große war ein berühmter Sächsischer. Der erste Präsidenten der Vereinigten Staaten. *Frederick the Great was an admirer of Washington the first President of the United States.*

2. But the appositive adjuncts may precede the noun. In this case they are regarded as separate elements and cause inversion. Thus,

Von seinen Freunden verlassen, führte er ein einsames Leben. *Deserted by his friends, he lived a solitary life.*

3. The preceding adjective appositive usually follows its own modifiers, but may precede them for stylistic reason. Thus,

Geliebt und verehrt von allen, die ihn kannten, starb er im hohen Alter. *Loved and honored by all who knew him, he died at an advanced age.*

41. Adjective Phrases With Nouns.—1. Adjective phrases with prepositions follow the noun. Thus,

Frankfurt an der Oder, Frankfurt on the Oder
die Hütte im Thale, the hut in the valley

2. A limiting genitive usually follows its noun; however, a personal genitive will often precede the noun, taking the place of the article. This usage is especially extended in poetry. Thus,

Wir haben Schillers Werke gekauft. *We have bought Schiller's works.*

Des Lebens ungemischte Freude ward keinem Sterblichen zu teil. *Life's unaltered happiness never fell to mortal's lot.*

ADJUNCTS OF THE VERB

42. General Principle.—The adjuncts of the verb—the non-personal parts of the verbs, the objects, and the adverbs—are generally so arranged that the more weighty or important elements stand nearer the end of the sentence

than the less important. This explains the final position of the non-personal parts of the verb—the participle, infinitive, and separable prefix—which when contained in a sentence, are the most important parts after the personal verb.

43. Non-Personal Parts of the Verb.—1. The infinitive or participle of a compound tense, being felt as parts of the verbs, are of course highly essential elements of the predication, and are therefore put at the end of the sentence. Thus,

Der Kaufmann hat die Waren **verkauft**, *The merchant has sold the goods.*

Das Konzert wird schon **angefangen haben**, wenn wir kommen, *The concert will have already begun, when we arrive.*

2. Adjectives, adverbs, nouns, or phrases, that form one verbal idea with the verb and are, therefore, as intimately associated with the personal verb as its non-personal parts are, also stand nearest to the end. Thus,

Der Tod unseres Freundes machte alle Hoffnungen **zunichte**, *The death of our friend destroyed all hopes.*

Der König zog in dieser Angelegenheit den Kanzler **zu Rate**, *The king consulted the chancellor in this affair.*

3. A predicate noun or a predicate adjective will usually be placed after all other adjuncts. Thus,

Der Soldat war gegen seine Vorgesetzten immer **gehorfam**, *The soldier was always obedient to his superiors.*

Gestern war wegen der Hochzeit **ein Feiertag**, *Yesterday there was a holiday on account of the wedding.*

44. Position of Objects.—1. If two objects, one indirect and the other direct, follow a verb and both are nouns, the direct object, being of more importance than the indirect object, comes nearer the end; that is, it follows the indirect object. Thus,

Der Vater gab dem Knaben **einen Ball**, *The father gave the boy a ball.*

2. But if both objects are persons, the order may be reversed. Thus,

Wir übergaben **den Gefangenen** dem Richter, *We delivered the prisoner to the judge.*

3. A prepositional phrase taking the place of the indirect object follows the direct object. Thus,

Er schickte das Geld **an seine Verwandten**, *He sent the money to his relatives.*

4. Of two pronominal objects, a personal pronoun precedes a demonstrative; the least emphatic pronouns are *es* and the reflexive; hence these precede all other objects. When *es* and a reflexive occur together, the reflexive generally precedes. Thus,

Wir stellten **uns ihm** vor, *We introduced ourselves to him.*

Er erinnerte **sich seiner**, *He recollected.*

Sie hat **es ihm** gegeben, *She has given it to him.*

5. A pronoun object always precedes a noun object. Thus,

Er stellte **ihn seinem Freunde** vor, *He introduced him to his friend.*

6. A pronoun object will often precede the subject and cause inversion. Thus,

Ihm reichte der Vater das Schwert, *To him the father presented the sword.*

45. Position of Adverbs.—1. Adverbs and adverbial phrases, which in reality must be considered as separable prefixes of the verb, are placed at the end of the sentence, since they are of the greatest importance after the verb (see Art. 33, 5).

2. Next in importance is the adverb of negation, *nicht*. It is placed either at the end of a sentence or, if there is a non-personal verbal element in the sentence, last among the adjuncts. Thus,

Der Richter verurteilte den Angeklagten **nicht**, *The judge did not sentence the accused.*

Er sagte, daß er in dieses Dorf **nicht** zurückkommen wird, *He said that he will not return to this village.*

3. Since an adverb of manner is usually more important than an adverb of place, and an adverb of place more important than an adverb of time, the order of these adverbs will be: (1) time, (2) place, (3) manner. However, the position may be largely influenced by emphasis. Of two adverbs of like kind, the more general usually precedes the more specific. The rules for adverbs apply also to the corresponding adverb phrases. Thus,

Mein Bruder wird **heute hier mit meiner Schwester** ankommen, *My brother will arrive here today with my sister.*

Ich werde **morgen nach New York** fahren, *I shall go to New York tomorrow.*

46. Position of Dependent Infinitives. — 1. A simple infinitive with or without *zu*, dependent on the verb, holds the same position held by the infinitives in compound tenses; that is, in the regular order of words it will stand at the end. Thus,

Der Präsident soll **verunglückt sein**, *The President is said to have met with an accident.*

Ich wünsche meine Schwester **zu besuchen**, *I want to pay a visit to my sister.*

2. But if an infinitive is accompanied by adjuncts of its own, it will stand outside the limits of the principal construction and will be treated as a distinct clause. This is done to avoid too great complexity of construction. Thus,

Er reiste nach Berlin, **um dort Geschäfte zu erledigen**, *He went to Berlin to attend to business there.*

Der Kapitän befahl, die Rettungsboote **auszusetzen**, *The captain ordered the boats to be set out.*

3. All dependent infinitives are preceded by their own modifiers.

4. If two or more infinitives follow each other, the governing infinitive regularly stands last. Thus,

Man hätte ihn **bestrafen lassen sollen**, *They should have let him be punished.*

Sie habt mich **ermorden lassen wollen**, *You have tried to have me murdered.*

5. Short infinitive phrases are often incorporated in the main sentence. Thus,

Es fängt schon zu dunkeln an, It is growing dark already.

47. Position of Dependent Clauses.—Dependent clauses have the value of nouns, adjectives, or adverbs and their position is regulated by the rules already given for these words. Thus,

1. An adverbial clause should not stand between subject and verb in the normal order. Since this often occurs in English, especial attention must be paid in translating. Thus,

The enemy, although he had suffered defeat, was not discouraged,
must be translated:

Der Feind war nicht entmutigt, **obgleich** er eine Niederlage erlitten hatte.

2. A German sentence must not begin with more than one adverbial clause. Several introductory adverbial clauses are not uncommon in English sentences.

3. A dependent clause may be incorporated in the structure of the main clause, if the latter does not thereby lose clearness. Thus,

Der Mann lief, **so schnell er konnte**, die Straße entlang, *The man ran as fast as he could through the street.*

PUNCTUATION

48. The period is used

1. At the end of declarative sentences, and of headings of chapters.

2. Generally after abbreviations and after the ordinal numbers. Thus,

Napoleon III. wurde in Sedan gefangen genommen, *Napoleon III. was taken prisoner at Sedan.*

z. B. = zum Beispiel, *for example*

u. f. w. = und so weiter, *and so forth*

But the period is generally omitted after abbreviations of the decimal system: m = Meter, g = Gramm, kg = Kilogramm; also after M = Mark.

49. The comma is used

1. Between coordinate parts of a sentence, if they are not connected by the conjunctions *und* and *oder*. Thus,

Wir haben deutsche, französische, spanische und englische Bücher, We have German, French, Spanish, and English books.

2. Between coordinate clauses. Thus,

Die Luft ist kühl, und es dunkelt, und ruhig fließet der Rhein, The air is cool, and it darkens, and calmly flows the Rhine.

3. Before and after parenthetical statements. Thus,

„Ich bin,“ sprach er, „zum Sterben bereit,“ „I am,“ he said, „willing to die.“

4. Before and after vocatives and such exclamations that do not require an exclamation point. Thus,

Freund, warum hast du das gethan? Friend, why did you do this?

Ei, Mutter, was siehst du so böse? Ah, mother, why do you look so angry?

5. After *ja*, *nein*, *freilich*, *nun*, and similar words beginning a sentence. Thus,

Nein, es ist nicht wahr, No, it is not true.

Nun, was giebt es? Now, what is the matter?

6. Before and after appositives, adjectives, and participles that follow their nouns as appositives. Thus,

Alexander der Große, der König von Macedonien, gründete ein großes Reich, Alexander the Great, the king of Macedonia, founded a great empire.

7. Before pronouns and adverbs that, somewhat like appositives, repeat the idea of the preceding word or words. Thus,

Doch vor dem hohen Thore, da hält der Sängergreis, But before the high gate, there the old bard stops.

8. Before all subordinate clauses, including restrictive relative clauses, where no comma is used in English. Thus,

Wer nicht hören will, muß fühlen, He who will not obey must suffer.

Interjections used with parenthetical force at the beginning of a sentence are wholly separated in construction from the rest of the sentence and cause no inversion. Some of them are:

fürwahr! <i>forsooth</i>	endlich! <i>at last</i>	ja, yes, <i>in fact</i>
leider! <i>alas</i>	nun, <i>well</i>	im Gegenteil, <i>on the contrary</i>

Thus,

Fürwahr! **Alexander war** ein großer Feldherr, *Forsooth, Alexander was a great strategist.*

Leider! **die Schlacht ist** verloren, *Alas! the battle is lost.*

Initial adverbs, modifying or emphasizing the subject and not the verb or the sentence, are also excepted from the rule and cause no inversion. Such adverbs are:

auch, <i>also, too</i>	selbst, <i>even</i>
nur, <i>only, alone</i>	sogar, <i>even</i>

Thus,

Auch **Cäsar war** ein großer Feldherr, *Cæsar, too, was a great strategist.*

Selbst **Könige müssen** sterben, *Even kings must die.*

General connectives like *und, aber, allein, sondern, denn, entweder—oder*, etc. are not adjuncts of the verb and precede, therefore, the subject without causing inversion.

36. Use of the Inverted Order.—The inverted order is regularly used:

1. In independent declarative sentences, in which some adjunct of the verb takes the first place in the sentence. Thus,

Auf dem Marktplatz **hatten** sich viele Leute eingefunden, *In the market place, many people had gathered.*

Mit großer Mehrheit von Stimmen **wurde** Roosevelt zum Präsidenten gewählt, *With great plurality of votes, Roosevelt was elected President.*

2. In all independent interrogative sentences that begin with any other element than the subject. Thus,

Was hast du gestern gethan? *What have you done yesterday?*

Ist Cäsar eines natürlichen Todes gestorben? *Has Cæsar died a natural death?*

Wann war die Schlacht bei Waterloo? *When was the battle of Waterloo?*

3. In imperative sentences when the subject is expressed. Thus,

Gehen Sie nicht fort! *Do not go away!*

Verlasse du uns nicht, o Gott! *Do not forsake us, O God!*

Thue jeder das Rechte! *Let everybody do the right!*

4. In independent optative sentences. Thus,

Hätte ich nur die Stadt erst erreicht, *Would that I had reached the city.*

Wüßtest du doch deine Meinung ändern, *May you change your opinion.*

5. In dependent conditional clauses, when the conjunction *wenn* or *ob* is omitted. Thus,

Hätte Blücher nicht Hilfe gebracht, so wäre die Schlacht bei Waterloo verloren gegangen, *If Blücher had not brought reenforcement, the battle of Waterloo would have been lost.*

Wären wir gesund, so könnten wir ausgehen, *If we were healthy, we could go out.*

6. In dependent concessive clauses. Thus,

Mag es wahr sein oder nicht, du solltest es nicht erzählen, *It may be true or not, you should not tell it.*

Sei er noch so reich, er wird doch immer unglücklich bleiben, *Though he be ever so rich, he will always remain unhappy.*

7. In emphatic or exclamatory sentences, the verb being usually followed by *doch*. Thus,

Wie schön ist doch die Welt! *How beautiful the world is!*

Hat er doch all sein Geld verloren! *He has lost all his money!*

THE TRANSPOSED ORDER

37. The **transposed order** is that order of words in which the verb stands at the end of its clause and may or may not follow the subject closely. The transposed order occurs exclusively in dependent clauses that are introduced

belong to the text, or to add an explanation, or to make reference to an authority. Thus,

Dieser König (Friedrich der Große) war ein großer Freund . . . , *This King (Frederick the Great) was a great friend . . .*

57. The quotation marks are used in German about as in English, but their form is different, as will appear from the following examples:

Der König rief: „Laßt mir herein den Alten!“ *The king called: “Let the old man come in.”*

„Ich bin,“ sprach er, „zum Sterben bereit,“ *“I am,” he said, “willing to die.”*

58. The apostrophe is used

1. To indicate that one or more letters usually written have been dropped. Thus,

heil'ge Nacht, *holy night.*

geht's—ist's—was giebt's?

2. To indicate the genitive of nouns already ending in s. Thus,

Boß' Luise, Demostenes' Reden.

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 10)

SYNTAX—(Continued)

SYNTAX OF THE ARTICLE

1. The German article, whether definite or indefinite, is generally employed wherever the corresponding article would be used in English.

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

2. Use of the Definite Article.—To a great extent the use of the definite article coincides closely with the use of the English *the*. In many cases, however, the idiomatic construction of the two languages is not similar, and *der*, *die*, *das* is often employed where in English *the* is omitted. Thus the definite article is more largely used in German than in English.

1. The definite article is used before nouns of abstract or generic signification, before nouns of material and of class, before infinitives used as nouns, and some others, whenever the word is taken in a general and not in any specific sense. Thus,

Das Leben ist kurz, **die Kunst** ist lang, *Life is short, art is long.*

Die Tugend führt zum Glück, *Virtue leads to happiness.*

Der Mensch ist sterblich, *Man is mortal.*

Das Gold ist dehnbar, *Gold is ductile.*

Das Fahren über diese Brücke ist verboten, *Driving across this bridge is forbidden.*

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

2. The definite article is used before the names of seasons, months, days of the week, and before the names of streets. Thus,

Der Winter ist im Anzuge, *Winter is coming.*

Im Juni sind die Tage am längsten, *In June, the days are the longest.*

Am Sonntag war ich auf dem Lande, *Sunday, I was in the country.*

In der Wilhelmstraße wohnt ein Zahnarzt, *In William Street, lives a dentist.*

But after *seit* and in certain phrases, the article is omitted before the name of a month; as, *seit März, Anfang April, Mitte Juni, Ende September.* Thus,

Mein Freund wird **Mitte Juni** nach Europa reisen, *My friend will go to Europe in the middle of June.*

Er wohnt **seit April** in Berlin, *He has been living in Berlin since April.*

3. The definite article is used before a few feminine names of countries; and before one neuter name. Thus,

die Lausitz, *Lusatia*

die Pfalz, *the Palatinate*

die Schweiz, *Switzerland*

die Türkei, *Turkey*

die Walachei, *Walachia*

das (der)-Elsaß, *Alsace*

The name of one city, *der Haag, The Hague*, also takes the definite article. Names of mountains take the article even though it be omitted in English. Thus,

der Vesuv, *Mt. Vesuvius*

der Glockner, *Mt. Glockner*

4. The definite article is used before proper names, when preceded by an adjective. Thus,

der treuherzige Götz; der junge Goethe

The definite article before proper names sometimes denotes familiarity or inferiority. Thus,

Der Karl ist nicht zu Hause, *Charles is not at home.*

Rufe doch **den Wagner** herein! *Call Wagner in, please!*

5. The definite article must often be used to indicate the case of names that are not inflected. Thus,

die Werke des Horaz, *the works of Horaz*

Ich ziehe Goethe dem Schiller vor, *I prefer Goethe to Schiller.*

6. The definite article may take the place of a possessive, when the possessor is clearly pointed out by the context. This substitution is especially common in speaking of the parts of the body or the clothing. Thus,

Er nahm den Stod in die Hand, *He took the stick in his hand.*

Er steckte das Buch in die Tasche, schüttelte mir die Hand, setzte den Hut auf und ging hinaus, *He put the book in his pocket, shook my hand, put on his hat, and went out.*

7. The definite article is used, in German, with a distributive sense, where in English the indefinite article is employed. This construction is most frequently found in expressions relative to price. Thus,

Dieser Wein kostet zwei Mark der Liter, *This wine costs two marks a liter.*

Mein Freund geht zweimal die Woche nach der Stadt, *My friend goes to town twice a week.*

8. In certain prepositional phrases the definite article is used in German, where it is omitted in English. Thus,

in die Schule gehen, <i>to go to school</i>	vor dem Frühstück, <i>before breakfast</i>
zur Schule gehen, <i>to go to school</i>	vor dem Mittagessen, <i>before dinner</i>
in der Schule, <i>at school</i>	in der letzten Woche, <i>last week</i>
in die Kirche gehen, <i>to go to church</i>	im letzten Monat, <i>last month</i>
in der Kirche, <i>at church</i>	im Himmel, <i>in heaven</i>
zum Beispiel, <i>for example</i>	zum Teil, <i>in part</i>

3. Omission of the Definite Article.—In some instances the definite article is omitted in German, where it is used in English. Thus,

1. Before certain formal or technical phrases. Thus,

<i>Beklagter, the defendant</i>	<i>Kläger, the plaintiff</i>
<i>Bittsteller, the petitioner</i>	<i>Überbringer dieses, the bearer of this</i>

2. Before certain adjective and participial phrases. Thus,

<i>ersterer, the former</i>	<i>letzterer, the latter</i>
<i>befagter, the aforesaid</i>	<i>folgender, the following</i>

3. In prepositional phrases expressing direction to or from the points of the compass. Thus,

<i>gegen Süden, toward the south</i>	<i>gegen Norden, toward the north</i>
<i>von Westen, from the west</i>	<i>von Osten, from the east</i>

4. In a few other prepositional phrases. Thus,

<i>nach alter Weise, in the old way</i>	<i>vor Augen, before the eyes</i>
<i>in Gegenwart meines Vaters, in the presence of my father</i>	<i>auf Wunsch, at the request</i>

4. In other cases of the omission of the definite article, German and English usage coincides. Thus,

1. The definite article is regularly omitted before a noun preceded by a depending genitive; in such case the limiting genitive itself must have the article. Thus,

des Vaters Befehl, the father's command

des Landes Wohl, the land's welfare

des Königs Macht, the king's power

2. The definite article is omitted in proverbial and abridged phrases consisting of two or more nouns belonging to the same category and connected by *und*. Thus,

über Stod und Stein, over stick and stone

durch Stadt und Land, through town and country

über Berg und Thal, over mountain and valley

Junge und Alte, Arme und Reiche, young and old, poor and rich people

3. The definite article is omitted before nouns taken in a partitive or limited sense. Thus,

Wir hatten Suppe, Fleisch und Gemüse zum Mittagessen, *We had soup, meat, and vegetables for dinner.*

4. There are a number of prepositional phrases in which, both in English and German, the article is omitted. The most common are:

bei Tisch, <i>at table</i>	nach Hause, <i>home</i>
bei Hofe, <i>at court</i>	zu Hause, <i>at home</i>
bei Tage, <i>by day</i>	von Hause, <i>from home</i>
bei Nacht, <i>by night</i>	zu Wasser, <i>at sea</i>
mit Freuden,	zu Lande, <i>on land</i>
mit Vergnügen, } <i>with pleasure</i>	mit Genugthuung, <i>with satisfaction</i>
zu Pferde, <i>on horseback</i>	

and

Durst haben, <i>to be thirsty</i>	zu Grunde gehen, <i>to be ruined</i>
Hunger haben, <i>to be hungry</i>	zu Bett gehen, <i>to go to bed</i>
Abschied nehmen, <i>to take leave</i>	zu Grabe tragen, <i>to bury</i>

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE

5. Omission of the Indefinite Article.—1. The indefinite article is usually omitted before a predicate noun denoting vocation, profession, occupation, or condition, or before a descriptive noun after *als*. Thus,

Mein Vater ist Kaufmann, *My father is a merchant.*

Ich bin Soldat geworden, *I have become a soldier.*

Als Gelehrter ist er nicht bekannt, *As a scholar he is not known.*

2. German again differs from English in not using an article in such phrases as are equivalent to *a few, a thousand, a hundred*. The corresponding German expressions are: *wenige, tausend, hundert*.

3. In certain phrases, the indefinite article is omitted in German, where it is used in English. Thus,

mit starker Stimme, <i>with a strong voice</i>	Ich habe Kopfschmerz, <i>I have a headache.</i>
in Eile, <i>in a hurry</i>	Ich habe Zahnschmerz, <i>I have a toothache.</i>
in Wut, <i>in a passion</i>	
ich habe Lust, <i>I have a mind</i>	

REPETITION OF THE ARTICLE

6. **The Article Repeated.**—If the first of two or more connected nouns in the same construction be preceded by a form of the definite article, the definite article must be repeated with each of the following nouns whenever there is a change of gender. Thus,

Der Mut und die Ausdauer der Bürger rettete die Stadt, *The courage and perseverance of the citizens saved the city.*

Wir haben einen Hasen, eine Gans und ein Huhn gekauft, *We have bought a hare, a goose, and a chicken.*

7. **The Article Not Repeated.**—If there be no change of gender in two or more connected nouns, the definite article may usually be omitted; it must be omitted if the two nouns refer to the same person or thing. Thus,

Die Höhe, Breite und Länge des Gebäudes, *the height, width, and length of the building*

Der Kaiser und König, *the emperor and king*

Der Erschaffer und Erhalter der Welt, *the Creator and Preserver of the world*

SYNTAX OF THE NOUN

GENDER OF NOUNS

8. **Gender In General.**—Strictly speaking, the *masculine gender* belongs exclusively to words denoting males; the *feminine* to those denoting females; and the *neuter* to such only as are neither male nor female. And in English accordingly, with comparatively little exception, this is found to be actually the case. Not so, however, in German; for there

the names of many inanimate things are considered to be, and are treated as, of the masculine or feminine gender, on account of their real or supposed possession of qualities pertaining to living things. Often, moreover, words indicating inanimate things are deemed masculine or feminine merely from some resemblance in form to some male or female thing; or for some other reason, known or unknown. Hence, there arises, in grammar, the distinction between the natural and the grammatical gender of nouns.

Were merely the natural gender of a word to be considered, it would be necessary only to know its meaning in order to name its gender; but since this is not the case, we are often obliged to determine gender chiefly by the form of the word itself. The principal rules for determining grammatical gender from the meaning or form of a word follow.

9. Gender Determined by Meaning.—The gender of a noun depends, first, on its meaning.

1. The following groups of words are masculine:

(a) Names of male beings, including the name of God, and the names of angels. Thus,

der Mann, <i>the man</i>	der Löwe, <i>the lion</i>	der Hirsch, <i>the deer</i>
der Bär, <i>the bear</i>	der Hahn, <i>the cock</i>	der Hock, <i>the buck</i>

(b) Names of days. Thus,

der Montag, <i>Monday</i>	der Dienstag, <i>Tuesday</i>
der Mittwoch, <i>Wednesday</i>	der Sonntag, <i>Sunday</i>

(c) Names of months.

der Januar, <i>January</i>	der Februar, <i>February</i>
----------------------------	------------------------------

(d) Names of seasons. Thus,

der Winter, <i>the winter</i>	der Frühling, <i>the spring</i>
-------------------------------	---------------------------------

(e) Names of winds. Thus,

der Nordwind, <i>the north wind</i>	der Südwind, <i>the south wind</i>
-------------------------------------	------------------------------------

(f) Names of points of the compass. Thus,

der Norden, *the north*

der Osten, *the east*

(g) Names of mountains. Thus,

der Harz, *the Hartz mountains*

der Atlas, *the Atlas mountains*

(h) Names of stones. Thus,

der Kiesel, *the flint*

der Granit, *the granite*

2. The following groups of words are feminine:

(a) Names of female beings. Thus,

die Frau, *the woman*

die Tochter, *the daughter*

die Kuh, *the cow*

die Henne, *the hen*

(b) Names of most German rivers. Thus,

die Elbe, *the Elbe*

die Donau, *the Danube*

die Oder, *the Oder*

die Weser, *the Weser*

(c) Names of most trees, plants, flowers. Thus,

die Eiche, *the oak*

die Birke, *the birch*

die Lilie, *the lily*

die Nelke, *the pink*

(d) Nearly all abstract terms. Thus,

die Tapferkeit, *bravery*

die Tugend, *virtue*

die Stärke, *strength*

die Schande, *shame*

Exceptions to these rules are: **das Weib**, *the woman*; **das Mädchen**, *the girl*; **das Fräulein**, *the young lady*. The names of three German rivers are masculine: **der Rhein**, **der Main**, **der Neckar**. Non-German rivers are mostly masculine, thus, **der Nil**, *the Nile*; **der Po**, *the Po*.

3. The following groups of words are neuter:

(a) Names of cities and countries. Thus,

das alte Nürnberg, *old Nuremberg*

das schöne Berlin, *beautiful Berlin*

das junge Deutschland, *young Germany*

das große Amerika, *the great America*

(b) Most names of materials and metals. Thus,

das Holz, *wood*

das Silber, *silver*

das Blei, *lead*

das Glas, *glass*

(c) Names of the letters of the alphabet. Thus,

das A, *A*

das B, *B*

(d) Infinitives and other words not properly nouns that are used as nouns. Thus,

das Schreiben, *the act of writing*

das Gute, *the good (thing)*

das Wiedersehen, *the seeing again*

das Aber, *the "but"*

(e) Names that designate the young of man and animals, or the species without having any reference to sex. Thus,

das Kind, *the child*

das Pferd, *the horse*

das Kalb, *the calf*

das Kamel, *the camel*

But these rules are not without exceptions.

10. Gender Determined by Form.—To a certain extent, also, the gender of German nouns can be determined by their endings. Thus,

1. The following groups are masculine:

(a) Most strong derivatives, that is, most monosyllabic derivatives formed of verb roots without suffix. Thus,

der Fall, *the fall*

der Gang, *the walk*

der Ruf, *the call*

der Schein, *the semblance*

der Stand, *the position*

der Klang, *the sound*

(b) Nouns ending in =ig, =ich, =ling, =m, and =rich. Thus,

der Teppich, *the carpet*

der Sprössling, *the sprout*

der Honig, *the honey*

der Atem, *the breath*

(c) Nouns ending in =er, =ler, =ner, being primary derivatives denoting agency or station. Thus,

der Heber, *the siphon*

der Wechsel, *the exchanger*

der Leuchter, *the candlestick*

der Bohrer, *the borer*

(d) Nouns ending in =el, denoting instrument, and those in =en that are not infinitives. Thus,

der Hebel, *the lever*
der Bogen, *the bow*

der Hentel, *the handle*
der Faden, *the thread*

2. The following groups of words are feminine:

(a) A large number of primary derivatives, ending in =e, =de, =te, =t. Thus,

die Binde, *the tie*
die Macht, *the power*

die Sprache, *the speech*
die Hütte, *the hut*

(b) A few nouns in =niß and =fal. Thus,

die Betrübniß, *the sorrow*
die Fäulniß, *the rottenness*

die Trübsal, *the tribulation*
die Mühfal, *the affliction*

(c) All derivatives formed by means of the suffixes =ei, =erei, =heit, =keit, =in, =schaft, =ung. Thus,

die Druckerei, *the printery*
die Schönheit, *the beauty*
die Hündin, *the bitch*
die Stärkung, *the strengthening*

die Bildhauerei, *the sculpture*
die Tapferkeit, *the bravery*
die Gesellschaft, *the society*
die Labung, *the refreshment*

(d) Nouns having the foreign suffixes =age, =ie, =(t)ion, =it. Thus,

die Massage, *the massage*
die Station, *the station*

die Manie, *the mania*
die Musik, *the music*

3. The following groups of words are neuter:

(a) Most derivatives ending in =fal, =fel, =niß, and =tum. Thus,

das Schicksal, *the fate*
das Gleichniß, *the parable*

das Rätsel, *the riddle*
das Altertum, *the old age*

(b) Most diminutives in =chen and =lein. Thus,

das Häuschen, *the little house*
das Dörflein, *the little village*

das Mädchen, *the little girl*
das Fräulein, *the young lady*

(c) Those nouns having the augment *Ge-*. Thus,

das Gebäude, *the building*
das Gemälde, *the painting*

das Gespräch, *the talk*
das Gelächter, *the laughter*

There are exceptions also to these rules; thus, for instance, there are a few nouns in *-tum*, that are masculine; as, *der Reichtum, the riches, der Irrtum, the error*. A few nouns with the prefix *Ge-* are masculine or feminine; as *der Gesang, the song, die Gemeinde, the community*.

11. Gender of Compound Nouns.—Compound nouns in general adopt the gender of their last component. Thus,

der Kirchhof, the churchyard *die Windmühle, the windmill*
das Rathaus, the council house *das Tintenfaß, the inkstand*

There are, however, a few exceptions to this rule.

1. Compounds whose last component part is the word *der* (or *das*) *Teil*, have a fixed gender; some of them are masculine. Thus,

der Anteil, the share *der Vorteil, the advantage*
der Nachteil, the disadvantage

Others are neuter. Thus,

das Gegenteil, the counterpart *das Erbteil, the inheritance*

2. A few other words. Thus,

die Antwort, the answer, from *das Wort*
der Abscheu, the horror, from *die Scheu*
der Mittwoch, Wednesday, from *die Woche*

3. A few compounds of *der Mut*. Thus,

die Demut, humility *die Großmut, magnanimity*
die Behmut, sadness *die Sanftmut, gentleness*

12. Gender of Foreign Words.—Foreign words adopted in the German language, generally retain their original gender. Thus,

der Titel, the title, from the Latin *titulus*
die Karte, the card, from *carta*
die Bibliothek, the library, from the Greek *bibliotheke*
das Kloster, the convent, from *claustrum*

Nouns, however, that have been Germanized, often acquire a different gender as they acquire a different form. Thus,

der Körper, *the body*, from *corpus*, which is neuter.

das Fenster, *the window*, from *fenestra*, which is feminine

13. Nouns With Double Gender.—Some nouns have but one form, although having different genders and meanings. The most important cases are:

1. With the same plural:

der Chor, *the chorus*

das Chor, *the choir*

der Heide, *the heathen*

die Heide, *the heath*

der Flur, *the floor*

die Flur, *the field*

der Erbe, *the heir*

das Erbe, *the inheritance*

der Schild, *the shield*

das Schild, *the sign*

der See, *the lake*

die See, *the sea*

die Steuer, *the tax*

das Steuer, *the rudder*

der Teil, *the part*

das Teil, *the share*

der Verdienst, *the merit*

das Verdienst, *the pay*

die Wehr, *the defense*

das Wehr, *the weir*

2. With different plurals:

SINGULAR

der Band, *the volume*

das Band, *the tie, the bond*

der Bund, *the union*

das Bund, *the bundle*

der Bauer, *the farmer*

das Bauer, *the cage*

der Schild, *the shield*

das Schild, *the sign*

der Thor, *the fool*

das Thor, *the gate*

der Gehalt, *the contents*

das Gehalt, *the salary*

PLURAL

die Bände

die Bänder

die Bünde

die Bunde

die Bauern

die Bauer

die Schilder

die Schilde

die Thoren

die Thore

die Gehalte

die Gehälter

NUMBER OF THE NOUN

14. Nouns Used Only in the Singular.—In German, as in English, some nouns are used only in the singular.

1. Names of materials. Thus,

die Butter, <i>butter</i>	das Heu, <i>hay</i>	das Silber, <i>silver</i>
das Fleisch, <i>meat</i>	das Glas, <i>glass</i>	das Papier, <i>paper</i>

Some of these words may be used in the plural meaning "kinds of." Thus,

die Weine, <i>kinds of wine</i>	die Tinten, <i>kinds of ink</i>
die Biere, <i>kinds of beer</i>	die Salze, <i>kinds of salt</i>

Some form a plural having a concrete meaning. Thus,

die Gläser, <i>the glasses</i>	die Papiere, <i>the documents</i>
--------------------------------	-----------------------------------

2. Nouns of abstract meaning. Thus,

das Lob, <i>the praise</i>	der Tadel, <i>the blame</i>
der Rat, <i>the counsel</i>	die Güte, <i>the goodness</i>
die Kälte, <i>the cold</i>	die Vernunft, <i>the reason</i>

For many of these nouns a plural sense may be expressed by compounds. Thus,

die Lobeserhebungen, <i>praises</i>	die Ratschläge, <i>the counsels</i>
die Lebensgeschichten, <i>the lives</i>	

3. Some names of plants. Thus,

der Kohl, <i>cabbage</i>	der Hopfen, <i>hops</i>
--------------------------	-------------------------

4. All infinitives employed as nouns, as also all neuter adjectives so employed. Thus,

das Lesen, <i>the act of reading</i>	das Denken, <i>the act of thinking</i>
das Verlangen, <i>the wish</i>	das Gute, <i>the good</i>

15. Nouns Used Only in the Plural.—A number of nouns are used only, or usually, in the plural:

die Alpen, <i>the Alps</i>	die Leute, <i>people</i>
die Eltern, <i>the parents</i>	die Masern, <i>the measles</i>
die Fasten, <i>Lent</i>	die Rollen, <i>whew</i>
die Ferien, <i>the vacation</i>	die Röteln, <i>the measles</i>
die Gebrüder, <i>the brothers</i>	die Trümmer, <i>the ruins</i>
die Geschwister, <i>the brothers and sisters</i>	die Schranken, <i>the bounds</i>
die Gliedmaßen, <i>the limbs</i>	die Speßen, <i>the expenses</i>
die Einkünfte, <i>the revenue</i>	die Studien, <i>the studies</i>
die Hosen, <i>the trousers</i>	Pfingsten, <i>Whitsuntide</i>
die Kosten, <i>the expenses</i>	Ostern, <i>Easter</i>
	Weihnachten, <i>Christmas</i>

The plural *Leute* merely expresses plurality of persons. In this it differs from *Menschen* (human beings) which has regard to the kind or species, as also from *Männer* (men) which denotes particularly the sex. Some compounds, however, which have, in the singular, *Mann* for the last component part, generally take *Leute* instead of *Männer* in the plural. Thus,

SINGULAR	PLURAL
der Arbeitsmann, <i>the workman</i>	die Arbeitsleute
der Edelmann, <i>the nobleman</i>	die Edelleute
der Kaufmann, <i>the merchant</i>	die Kaufleute
der Landmann, <i>the countryman</i>	die Landleute

16. Nouns With Double Form in the Plural.—1. Some nouns, having a double meaning in the singular, form a separate plural for each meaning. To those enumerated in Part 2, Art. 62, may be added:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
das Licht, <i>the light</i>	die Lichter, <i>the lights</i>
das Licht, <i>the candle</i>	die Lichte, <i>the candles</i>
der Strauß, <i>the nosegay</i>	die Sträuße, <i>the nosegays</i>
der Strauß, <i>the ostrich</i>	die Strauße, <i>the ostriches</i>
der Zoll, <i>the inch</i>	die Zölle, <i>the inches</i>
der Zoll, <i>the toll</i>	die Zölle, <i>the tolls</i>

2. Several nouns have two plural forms with different meanings. Thus,

das Horn, <i>the horn</i>	{ die Hörner, <i>the horns</i> { die Hörne, <i>sorts of horn</i>
der Mann, <i>the man</i>	{ die Männer, <i>the men</i> { die Mannen, <i>the vassals</i>
das Land, <i>the land</i>	{ die Länder, <i>the states</i> { die Lande, <i>the regions</i>
der Ort, <i>the place</i>	{ die Örter, <i>the places</i> (particular) { die Orte, <i>the places</i> (collectively)
das Wort, <i>the word</i>	{ die Wörter, <i>the words</i> (single) { die Worte, <i>the words</i> (connected)

17. Use of the Singular Instead of the Plural.

1. Masculine and neuter nouns denoting measure, weight, height, quantity, extent, usually stand in the singular after numerals; the noun denoting the substance measured or weighed follows uninflected. Thus,

dreier Glas Wein, *three glasses of wine*
fünf Pfund Zucker, *five pounds of sugar*
zwei Liter Essig, *two liters of vinegar*
zehn Fuß lang, *ten feet long*

2. Nouns denoting measure of time, however, as, Jahr, *year*, Monat, *month*, etc., and the nouns Schritt, *pace*, and Pfennig, *penny*, are commonly put in the plural after numerals. Thus,

dreier Jahre, *three years* zweier Monate, *two months*
fünf Schritte, *five paces* zwanzig Pfennige, *twenty pennies*

3. The feminine noun die Mark, *the mark*, is always used in the singular; but feminine nouns of measure stand in the plural when denoting more than one. Thus,

Er hat zehn Mark dafür bezahlt, *He has paid ten marks for it.*

But,

Er wohnt drei Meilen von hier, *He lives three miles from here.*
Geben Sie mir zwei Ellen Tuch, *Give me two yards of cloth.*

4. Nouns denoting the substance measured are either put in the genitive, or in apposition, when modified by an adjective. Thus,

ein Faß guten Weines, *a cask of good wine*

ein Glas kalten Wassers, or kaltes Wasser, *a glass of cold water*

Ich kaufte zwei Meter schwarze Seide, *I bought two meters of black silk.*

18. Plural of Proper Nouns.—With regard to the formation of the plural of proper nouns the following points must be marked.

1. Family names ending in a sibilant add =e in the plural; thus,

die Schweidnitz, die Opitz

2. Family names ending in other consonants add =s, or =e, or remain unchanged; thus,

die Walldorfs, die Wagners, die Lessing, die Schiller, etc.

3. Family names in =e generally take an =s in the plural; thus,

die Goethes, die Schulzes

4. Masculine Christian names ending in a consonant generally take =e in the plural; thus,

die Gottfriede, die Thomase

5. Feminine Christian names ending in =e take =n; those ending in =a take =s; those ending in a consonant take =e. Thus,

die Sophien, die Annas, die Berthas, die Elisabethe

DECLENSION OF NOUNS

19. Names of Countries, Cities, Etc.—1. Names of countries, provinces, cities, and also of months, follow a noun of general designation directly and without inflection. Thus,

das Königreich Preußen, *the kingdom of Prussia*

die Republik Frankreich, *the republic of France*

die Stadt Berlin, *the city of Berlin*

das Bad Ems, *the watering place Ems*

der Monat Mai, *the month of May*

2. When several names belonging to the same person come together and are not preceded by the article, the last name only is declined. Thus,

Friedrich Schillers Werke, *Frederick Schiller's Works*

Johann Gottlieb Herders Abhandlungen, *John Gottlieb Herder's Essays*

If, however, they are preceded by the article, none of them are inflected. Thus,

die Gedichte des Johann Wolfgang von Goethe, *The poems of John Wolfgang von Goethe*

3. When a Christian name is separated from a family name by a preposition, like von, the Christian name alone is inflected. Thus,

die Gedichte Friedrichs von Schiller, *The poems of Frederick von Schiller*

But if the genitive precedes the governing noun, the family name is declined. Thus,

Friedrich von Schillers Werke, *Frederick von Schiller's works*

4. When a common and a proper name of the same person are used together and are preceded by the article, the common noun alone is inflected. Thus,

Die Regierung des Königs Ludwig, *the reign of King Louis*

If, however, no article precedes, the proper noun is declined. Thus,

König Ludwigs Regierung, *King Louis' reign*

20. Titles.—1. The usual forms employed in addressing a person are: *Herr, Mr.; Frau, Mrs.; Fräulein, Miss;* followed by the proper name. Thus,

Herr Schwarz, Mr. Schwartz Frau Korn, Mrs. Korn

If, however, the name is omitted, the following forms are used: *Mein Herr, Sir; Madame* or *gnädige Frau, Madam; Fräulein* or *mein Fräulein*, or *gnädiges Fräulein, Miss; meine Herren, Gentlemen.*

2. The wife of an official is often addressed with her husband's title with the noun *Frau* preceding it. Thus, *Frau Professor, Frau Hauptmann*, etc., or when merely spoken of but not addressed: *die Frau Professor Otto; die Frau Hauptmann Klein.*

SYNTAX OF THE CASES

NOMINATIVE

21. The nominative case is the case of the subject, the case of address or exclamation, and the case of the predicate noun with intransitive verbs or with the passive of verbs that, in the active voice, take two accusatives.

22. The Nominative as Subject.—A noun or a pronoun that is the subject of a sentence must be in the nominative case. Thus,

Der Mensch denkt, Gott lenkt, Man proposes, God disposes.

Ihr habt recht, You are right.

23. The Nominative in the Predicate.—A noun or pronoun used as a predicate noun after certain intransitive and passive verbs stands in the nominative case. Thus,

Er ist ein Freund der Armen, He is a friend of the poor.

Dieser Knabe wird ein großer Schauspieler werden, This boy will become a great actor.

Cicero wurde der Vater des Vaterlandes genannt, Cicero was called the father of his country.

The verbs that take a predicate nominative are: *sein*, *to be*; *werden*, *to become*; *bleiben*, *to continue*; *heißen*, *to be called*; *scheinen*, *to seem*, *to appear*; and a few others of the same kind; and passive verbs of calling that take in the active a second accusative as the complementary object; such as, *nennen*, *to call*; *taufen*, *to baptize*; etc. Thus,

Er ist **Alexander** getauft worden, *He has been christened Alexander.*

24. The Nominative in Address and Exclamation.

The nominative is also the case of direct address or exclamation—either independent or as vocative. Thus,

Kameraden! wir müssen siegen oder sterben, *Comrades! We must gain the victory or die.*

Sei ruhig, bleibe ruhig, **mein Kind**, *Be quiet, keep quiet, my child!*

25. The Nominative in Apposition.—A word in apposition with a nominative—subject, predicate, or vocative—will also stand in the nominative. Thus,

Kant, der Philosoph, war Professor in Königsberg, *Kant, the philosopher, was a Professor in Königsberg.*

Ich, ein armer Mann, kann das nicht bezahlen, *I, a poor man, cannot pay that.*

26. The Nominative With *als* and *wie*.—A predicate nominative with *als* or with *wie*, denoting the character or the manner in which the subject appears as acting may follow a great number of verbs. It may be considered as the subject of an implied verb. Thus,

Ich handle hier als dein Vorgesetzter und nicht **als dein Freund**, *I act here as your superior and not as your friend.*

Er sprach **wie ein Mann**, *He spoke like a man.*

27. Remark.—In connection with these rules the following point must be marked:

Werden, in the sense of *be changed into*, *turn into*, is commonly construed with *zu* and the dative. Thus,

Dies wird mir zur Gewohnheit, *This becomes a habit to me.*

GENITIVE

28. Uses of the Genitive.—The genitive has many widely different uses. It limits or complements the meaning of nouns, adjectives, pronouns, verbs, and prepositions; it may also be used with an interjection in exclamations.

29. The Genitive With Nouns.—The genitive depends on nouns in a variety of ways:

1. The *possessive genitive* denotes the owner, proprietor, or the author of a thing. Thus,

der Garten **meines Vaters**, *the garden of my father*

die Blätter **des Baumes**, *the leaves of the tree*

der Baum **seiner Laub**, *the tree's foliage*

2. The *objective genitive* denotes the object of the action denoted by verbal nouns. Thus,

die Freisprechung **des Angeklagten**, *the acquittal of the accused*

die Teilung **des Erbes**, *the partition of the heritage*

3. The *subjective genitive* denotes the subject of the action denoted by verbal nouns. Thus,

der Donner **der Kanonen**, *the thundering of the cannon*

das Singen und Pfeifen **der Vögel**, *the singing and whistling of the birds*

In order to avoid ambiguity and to distinguish the objective from the subjective relation, the objective relation will often be expressed by a preposition. Thus,

die Liebe **zu den Eltern**, *love for parents*

die Furcht **vor der Strafe**, *the fear of punishment*

This is especially the case when the verb that corresponds to the verbal noun is construed with a preposition. Thus,

der Gedanke **an die Freunde**, *the thought of the friends*

4. The genitive may denote quality, character, or manner. Thus,

Bibliothek ist ein Wort **griechischen Ursprungs**, *Bibliothek is a word of Greek origin.*

Das ist ein Mensch **edler Denkungsart**, *This is a man of noble mind.*

This genitive often stands alone in the predicate, the governing noun being omitted. Thus,

Er war **guten Mutes**, *He was in good spirits.*

More commonly, however, a quality or characteristic is expressed by **von** with the dative. Thus,

ein Mensch **von edler Denkungsart**, *a man of noble mind*

eine Münze **von großem Werte**, *a coin of great value*

5. The partitive genitive names the whole of which a part is taken. Thus,

Die **Hälfte meines Geldes** will ich dir geben, *I will give you half of my money.*

Ein **Glas guten Weines**, *a glass of good wine*

After nouns of measure, weight, number, or quantity, a simple noun is usually put in apposition without case declension. Thus,

zwei Glas Wein, *two glasses of wine*

eine Flasche Wasser, *a bottle of water*

ein Duzend Äpfel, *a dozen apples*

But if the noun is modified by an adjective, either the genitive or the appositive construction, or **von** with the dative may be used. Thus,

zwei Glas guten Weines, *two glasses of good wine*

ein Duzend von diesen Früchten, *a dozen of these fruits*

eine Anzahl gute or guter Freunde, *a number of good friends*

30. Preposition Used Instead of the Genitive.
The English preposition *of* after a noun is, in many cases, translated by **von** with the dative instead of the genitive. This occurs in the following cases:

1. In certain terms of rank and title. Thus,

der König von Preußen, *the King of Prussia*

der Bürgermeister von Berlin, *the mayor of Berlin*

2. Before names of materials and characteristics. Thus,

Auf diese Bank von Stein will ich mich setzen, *On this bench of stone, I will sit down.*

Er ist ein Mensch von strengen Sitten, *He is a man of rigorous manners.*

3. Whenever the genitive is not made clear by inflection. Thus,

die Stadtverwaltung von Paris, *the city administration of Paris*

die Straßen und Plätze von Linz, *the streets and places of Linz*

4. Often before cardinal numbers and other declinables. Thus,

Er ist der Verwalter von vier Fabriken, *He is the superintendent of four factories.*

Dieser Edelstein ist von geringem Wert, *This jewel is of little value.*

5. Sometimes to avoid a succession of genitives. Thus,

der jüngste von den Söhnen des Präsidenten, *the youngest of the sons of the President*

6. The English idiomatic expressions, *this friend of mine* must be translated simply by *mein Freund*; and *a brother of mine* must be given by *einer meiner Brüder*.

31. Genitive With Adjectives.—The genitive is used with many adjectives expressing ideas of power, possession, knowledge, capacity, etc. The genitive, in such cases, complements the meaning of the adjective. Such adjectives are:

ansichtig, *in sight*

bar, *bare*

bedürftig, *in need*

begierig, *greedy*

bewußt, *conscious*

bloß, *bare*

eingedenk, *mindful*

fähig, *capable*

frei, *free*

froh, *glad*

gewiß, *certain*
 gewahr, *aware*
 gewärtig, *expectant*
 gewohnt, *used*
 habhaft, *in possession*
 inne, *percipient*
 kundig, *acquainted*
 lebig, *free*
 leer, *empty*
 loß, *free*
 mächtig, *master (of)*

müde, *tired*
 satt, *sated, full*
 schuldig, *guilty*
 sicher, *certain, sure*
 theilhaft, *partaking*
 überdrüssig, *weary*
 verdächtig, *suspicious*
 verlustig, *lacking*
 voll (voller), *full*
 wert, *worth*
 würdig, *worthy*

Thus,

Der Angeklagte ist sich keiner Schuld bewußt, *The accused does not feel conscious of any guilt.*

Dieser Greis ist des Lebens überdrüssig, *This old man is weary of life.*

NOTE.—Some of the above adjectives may take an accusative while others may be construed with a preposition. Thus, *begierig nach*; *frei von*; *voll von*.

32. Genitive With Verbs.—The limiting or defining object of some verbs is put in the genitive. This genitive may be:

1. *The Sole Object of a Verb.*—As such it occurs especially in classical writing after the following verbs:

achten, <i>to heed</i>	ermangeln, <i>to be without</i>
bedürfen, <i>to need</i>	harren, <i>to wait for</i>
denken } <i>to think</i>	lachen, <i>to laugh</i>
gedenken }	schonen, <i>to spare</i>
entbehren, <i>to lack, to do without</i>	spotten, <i>to mock</i>
erwähnen, <i>to mention</i>	walten, <i>to manage</i>

Thus,

Er gedachte der Wohlthaten, *He remembered the benefits.*

Dieser Arme bedarf der Unterstützung, *This poor man needs help.*

Some of the above verbs are also construed with an accusative or with a preposition; thus *an etwas denken*, *etwas bedürfen*, *über etwas lachen*.

2. *The Secondary Object of a Verb.*—Some German verbs, in addition to the direct object in the accusative, take also a second object in the genitive. In English such verbs are generally followed by *of*. Some of these verbs are:

entsetzen, to alarm	entsetzen, to dispossess
bereuen, to regret	ermöglichen, to enable
bedauern, to regret	erwerben, to buy
beiden trauern, to mourn	freisprechen, to acquit
bedrücken, to oppress	mahnen, to admonish
entsetzen, to terrify	überführen, to convict
entlassen, to release	überzeugen, to convince
entlassen, to dismiss	versichern, to assure (insure)
entlassen, to dismiss	würdigen, to deem worthy
entlassen, to exempt	zählen, to accuse

Thus,

Er beschuldigt ihn eines Verbrechens, *He accuses him of a crime.*

Man entsetzte ihn seines Amtes, *He was removed from his office.*

In the passive construction of these verbs the genitive becomes the sole object. Thus,

Er ist eines Verbrechens beschuldigt worden, *He was accused of a crime.*

3. *The Secondary Object of Reflexive Verbs.*—A number of reflexive verbs are connected with a genitive like a secondary object, the reflexive pronoun being the direct object. Some of these verbs are:

sich annehmen, to take interest (in)	sich erfreuen, to enjoy
sich bedienen, to make use of	sich erwehren, to keep from
sich beileidigen, to attend to	sich rühmen, to boast
sich bemächtigen, to take possession of	sich schämen, to be ashamed
sich befinden, to recollect	sich überheben, to boast
sich erinnern, to remember	sich entschlagen, to get rid of
sich erbarmen, to take pity on	sich enthalten, to abstain from

Thus,

Der Feind hatte sich der Festung bemächtigt, *The enemy had taken possession of the fortress.*

Er rühmte sich seiner großen Stärke, *He was boasting of his great strength.*

4. *The Secondary Object of Impersonal Verbs.*—Some impersonal verbs expressing feeling take the genitive as secondary object, a personal pronoun being the direct object. Some of them are:

es dauert mich, *I pity*

es reuet mich, *I regret*

es erbarmt mich, *I pity*

es verbrießt mich, *I am annoyed.*

es jammert mich, *I pity*

es verlohnt sich, *It pays.*

Thus,

Es jammert mich der Armen, *I pity the poor.*

Es verlohnt sich der Mühe, *It is worth the trouble.*

33. *The Adverbial Genitive.*—The genitive may express various adverbial relations and denote:

1. *Place.* Thus,

Er wohnt rechter Hand, *He is living on the right hand (side).*

Laßt mich meines Weges gehen, *Let me go my way.*

2. *Time.* The genitive is frequently used in indefinite expressions of time, as in the following phrases: des Morgens, des Abends, des Nachts, vormittags, nachmittags, neuerdings, etc. Thus,

Des Morgens besuche ich die Schule, *In the morning I go to school.*

Des Nachmittags gehen wir spazieren, *In the afternoon we take a walk.*

3. *Manner and degree.* Thus,

Meines Wissens ist er nach Berlin gereist, *So far as I know, he traveled to Berlin.*

Er lehrte unverrichteter Sache zurück, *He returned without having accomplished anything.*

34. The Genitive in Exclamations.—The genitive is often used, depending on an interjection, in exclamations. Thus,

£, der unglückseligen That! *Oh, the unhappy deed!*
 Wui des Übelthäters! *Woe to the villain!*

35. The Genitive With Prepositions.—The genitive case is, as the student knows already, very often dependent upon a preposition or a prepositional adverb. A partial list of these prepositions was given in Part 8, Art. 2; the list is completed in Part 12.

DATIVE

36. The dative case, from the Latin *casus dativus*, is the case of the indirect object, which may be expressed in English by the prepositions *to* or *for*. But often the English indirect object is put in the objective case and is not distinguished by form. In German, on the other hand, it is known by its dative case form. But besides its function as the case of the indirect object, the dative is used to complement the meaning of adjectives, prepositions, and nouns; it also appears in exclamations in connection with interjections.

37. The Dative With Verbs.—The dative depends on verbs in various ways.

1. The dative is used as sole object with many intransitive verbs. Some of them are:

antworten, <i>to answer</i>	gleichen, <i>to resemble</i>
begegnen, <i>to meet</i>	helfen, <i>to help</i>
danken, <i>to thank</i>	nützen, <i>to benefit</i>
dienen, <i>to serve</i>	passen, <i>to fit</i>
drohen, <i>to threaten</i>	schaden, <i>to injure</i>
erliegen, <i>to succumb</i>	schmeicheln, <i>to flatter</i>
fehlen, <i>to be wanting, ail</i>	tözen, <i>to defy</i>
folgen, <i>to follow</i>	trauen, <i>to trust</i>
gefallen, <i>to please</i>	weichen, <i>to yield</i>
gehörchen, <i>to obey</i>	widerstehen, <i>to be angry</i>
glauben, <i>to believe</i>	

Thus,

Wir sind ihm begegnet, *We have met him.*

Dieser Knabe antwortete dem Lehrer, *This boy answered the teacher.*

In many of the above instances the German indirect object appears in English as the direct object; other verbs require in English a preposition, usually *to*.

An indirect object of an intransitive verb cannot become the subject of a passive verb; such intransitive verbs can, therefore, be made passive only in the impersonal form. Thus,

Den Armen und Kranken wird geholfen, *The poor and sick are supported.*

2. The dative as secondary object is used with many transitive verbs; as

anbieten, *to offer*

anzeigen, *to announce*

bringen, *to bring*

empfehlen, *to recommend*

erklären, *to declare, to explain*

erlauben, *to allow*

erzählen, *to tell*

geben, *to give*

leihen, *to lend*

mitteilen, *to communicate*

nehmen, *to take, to deprive*

raten, *to advise*

reichen, *to offer*

sagen, *to tell*

schreiben, *to write*

senden, *to send*

schenken, *to give*

schicken, *to send*

verbieten, *to forbid*

versichern, *to assure*

versprechen, *to promise*

verzeihen, *to forgive*

zeigen, *to show*

Thus,

Er bot mir seine Hilfe an, *He offered me his support.*

Der Vater vergieh ihm seinen Ungehorsam, *His father forgave him for his disobedience.*

When the above verbs are made passive the direct or accusative object becomes the subject of the verb, while the indirect or dative object remains in the dative. Thus,

Dieses Hotel ist mir empfohlen worden, *This hotel has been recommended to me.*

3. The dative follows a great number of compound verbs whose prefix is one of the prepositions *ab*, *an*, *auf*, *aus*, *bei*, *ein*, *emgegen*, *nach*, *unter*, *vor*, *zu*, or of the inseparable syllables *be-*, *ent-*, *er-*, *ge-*, *miß-* and *wider*.

Thus,

Es ist mir aufgefallen. *This has surprised me.*

Die Mehrzahl der Anwesenden stimmte ihm bei. *The majority of those present agreed with him.*

4. The dative is used with many verbal phrases and with a number of verbs that form incomplete compounds with adjectives and nouns. Some of them are:

leid thun, to cause sorrow

wehe thun, to give pain

wohl thun, to benefit

wohl wollen, to wish well

gleich kommen, to equal

zu gute kommen, to benefit

zu Hülfe kommen, to come to one's aid

zu teil werden, to fall to one's share

Troß bieten, to bid defiance

Thus,

Es thut mir leid, daß ich gehen muß. *I am sorry that I must go.*

Es wird ihm zu gute kommen. *That will be to his advantage.*

Was fehlt dir? *What ails you?*

5. The dative case is required by some impersonal verbs. Thus,

es ahnt mir, I forebode

es graut mir, I am afraid

es beliebt mir, I choose

es efelt mir, I feel disgusted

es gebricht mir, I lack

es schwindelt mir, I feel giddy

es bangt mir, I feel anxious

es träumt mir, I dream

The dative is also required by a number of impersonal phrases of *sein*, *werden*, *bleiben*, *geschehen*, *gehen*, etc. Thus,

Es ist mir lieb. *I am pleased.*

Es geschieht dir recht. *It serves you right.*

Es geht uns sehr gut. *We are doing very well.*

Es schmeckt mir nicht. *It does not taste good to me.*

Mir ist es einerlei. *It is all the same to me.*

38. Dative With Adjectives.—1. The dative is used with a large number of adjectives and with many participles used as adjectives; in English these words are usually followed by the prepositions *to* or *for*. Many of these adjectives are derived from verbs that govern the dative; as

entsprechend, <i>corresponding</i>	überlegen, <i>superior</i>
passend, <i>fitting</i>	behülflich, <i>helpful</i>
angemessen, <i>adapted</i>	dankebar, <i>thankful</i>
geneigt, <i>inclined</i>	bienlich, <i>serviceable</i>
geneigt, <i>favorable</i>	gehorsam, <i>obedient</i>
gewachsen, <i>equal to</i>	nützlich, <i>useful</i>
verhaßt, <i>hateful</i>	schädlich, <i>hurtful</i>

Thus,

Der Sohn ist dem Vater gehorsam, *The son is obedient to his father.*

Du bist mir in dieser Sache überlegen, *You are superior to me in this.*

2. Other adjectives signify nearness, likeness, inclination, etc., as,

abhold, <i>unfriendly</i>	gnädig, <i>gracious</i>
ähnlich, <i>similar</i>	heilsam, <i>salutary</i>
angehörig, <i>belonging</i>	hold, <i>favorable</i>
angenehm, <i>pleasant</i>	lästig, <i>troublesome</i>
bekannt, <i>known</i>	lieb, <i>dear</i>
benachbart, <i>neighboring</i>	nahe, <i>near</i>
eigen, <i>peculiar</i>	neidisch, <i>envious</i>
feindlich, <i>hostile</i>	schuldig, <i>owing</i>
fremd, <i>strange</i>	teuer, <i>dear</i>
folgsam, <i>obedient</i>	treu, <i>true</i>
gelegen, <i>opportune</i>	wert, <i>dear</i>
gemeinsam, <i>common</i>	widrig, <i>adverse</i>
gleich, <i>like</i>	willkommen, <i>welcome</i>
gut, <i>kindly disposed</i>	

Thus,

Sei deinem Herrn treu, *Be faithful to your master.*

Das Wetter ist uns nicht günstig, *The weather is not favorable to us.*

Many of the above adjectives may take a preposition and a noun instead of the dative: thus, *Er ist treu gegen mich, gut zu mir*, etc.

39. Dative of Interest.—The dative is often used to denote the person concerned in or affected by an action or its result. This use is called the *dative of interest* or the *ethical dative* and is employed:

1. To denote the person for or against whom something is done. Thus,

Übersetzen Sie **mir** das, *Translate this for me.*

Kommen Sie **mir** nicht damit, *Do not bother me with that.*

Wer hat **mir** das gethan? *Who has done me that?*

2. To replace the English possessive pronoun. Thus,

Gehen Sie **mir** aus dem Wege, *Go out of my way.*

Der Barbier schneidet **mir** das Haar, *The barber cuts my hair.*

3. With passive verbs and the active *geschehen*; sometimes also after *werden* in the sense of *zu teil werden*. Thus,

Was ist **ihm** gesagt worden? *What has been told him?*

Es ist **ihm** recht geschehen, *It served him right.*

Ihm ist Gerechtigkeit geworden, *Justice was done him.*

4. To indicate the interest in the action taken by the person speaking or spoken to. Thus,

Ihr geht **mir** nicht aus, *You do not go out, I will not have it.*

Kommen Sie **mir** nicht wieder, *Do not come here again, I tell you.*

40. Dative in Exclamations.—The dative is dependent on some interjections as, *wohl*, *Heil*, *wehe*, etc. Thus,

Wohl ihm! *Well for him!*

Heil dem König! *Hail to the king!*

Wehe mir! *Woe to me!*

Psui dem Elenden! *Out with the wretched!*

41. Dative With Prepositions.—The dative case, as shown in Part 8, Art. 3, is very often dependent on a preposition or a prepositional adverb.

ACCUSATIVE

42. The **accusative** is the case of the direct object; but, it may also be used in adverbial phrases and absolute.

43. The **Accusative With Verbs**.—In association with verbs, the accusative case may have various functions.

1. *Direct Object*.—With all transitive verbs, the following noun is put in the accusative as the direct object. Thus,

Ehre das Alter! Honor old age!

Included in this rule are all those impersonal and reflexive verbs that take an accusative; as,

mich schläfert, <i>I am drowsy</i>	mich durstet, <i>I am thirsty</i>
mich dünkt, <i>methinks</i>	es friert mich, <i>I am cold</i>
mich hungert, <i>I am hungry</i>	es schaudert mich, <i>I am horrified</i>

The verb *ankommen*, in the sense of *to come over* occurs oftener with the accusative than with the dative. Thus,

Eine große Furcht kam ihn an.

2. *The Accusative as Secondary Object*.—There are a few verbs that take two objects in the accusative—one of the person and one of the thing. Such verbs are:

lehren, <i>to teach</i>	and sometimes	fragen, <i>to ask</i>
kosten, <i>to cost</i>		bitten, <i>to beg</i>

Thus,

Er lehrte meinen Bruder die Geographie, He taught my brother geography.

Sie fragte mich eine schwere Frage, She asked me a difficult question.

3. A number of verbs take two accusatives, both concerning the same object. The one accusative gives the thing named and the other the name. These verbs are:

nennen, }	schelten, <i>to scold</i>
heißen, } <i>to call</i>	schimpfen, <i>to scold</i>
taufen, <i>to baptize</i>	

Thus.

Das Volk nennt ihn seinen Freund, *The people call him their friend.*

Er nennt ihn einen Lügner, *He called him a liar.*

But verbs of choosing, making, appointing, which in English take two accusatives, in German take the second object in the dative with *zu*, which is contracted with the singular articles. These verbs are:

wählen, } to elect	bestimmen, to appoint
ernennen, } to elect	bezeichnen, to appoint
ernennen, to name, to appoint	salben, to anoint
machen, to make	schlagen, to dub

Thus.

Man wählte ihn zum Präsidenten, *They elected him president.*

Der König schlug ihn zum Ritter, *The king dubbed him knight.*

Certain verbs of regarding and representing, such as *halten*, *ausgeben*, *ansiehen*, *erklären*, which in English take two accusatives, are, in German, usually followed by *für* with the accusative. Thus.

Ich halte es für Unrecht, das Kind zu bestrafen, *I think it an injustice to punish the child.*

4. The accusative may be the cognate object of a verb. Some properly intransitive verbs may take an object in the accusative case, simply to repeat in the noun the idea of the verb. Thus,

Er geht seinen letzten Gang, *He is taking his last walk.*

Ich träumte einen schönen Traum, *I dreamed a beautiful dream.*

44. The Adverbial Accusative.—The accusative is used in adverbial expressions denoting time, distance, price, weight, etc., to answer the questions: *how far, how long, how much*, etc. This accusative occurs with verbs of duration, measure, or motion, such as, *dauern, to last; bleiben, to*

stay; wiegen, to weigh; kosten, to cost; etc., and with adjectives like lang, breit, hoch, dick, schwer, tief, weit, etc. Thus,

Die Vorstellung dauerte den ganzen Nachmittag, The performance lasted the whole afternoon.

Dieser Mann ist fünf Meilen gelaufen, This man has walked five miles.

Dieser Baum ist zehn Meter hoch, This tree is ten meters high.

The accusative also expresses a definite time answering the question *when*. Thus,

Er studiert jeden Abend, He is studying every night.

Alle drei Minuten fährt ein Zug hier vorbei, Every three minutes a train passes here.

45. The Accusative Absolute.—The accusative case is often used absolutely; that is, it is given an independent construction. This occurs:

1. With a perfect participle. Thus,

Diesen Umstand ausgenommen, finde ich alles recht, This circumstance excepted, I find everything right.

2. Or without participle. Thus,

Den Stock in der Hand, die Cigarre im Munde, trat er ins Zimmer, Thus he entered the room, his cane in his hand, a cigar in his mouth.

46. The accusative case, like the genitive and dative cases, is very often dependent on a preposition. The list of the prepositions governing the accusative was given in Part 8.

SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE

USE OF ADJECTIVES

47. Adjectives Used Only Attributively.—A number of adjectives are used attributively only. When occurring in the predicate they are to be construed attributively, or are replaced by a prepositional phrase. Such adjectives are:

1. Adjectives denoting place and time, adjectives of material in =en, =ern, and some adjectives in =iſch, =iſch. As,

balbig, <i>speedy</i>	eisern, <i>of iron</i>
heutig, <i>of today</i>	ſilbern, <i>of silver</i>
morgig, <i>of tomorrow</i>	jährlich, <i>yearly</i>
geſtrig, <i>of yesterday</i>	irbiſch, <i>earthly</i>
jeßig, <i>of now</i>	himmlifch, <i>heavenly</i>

Thus,

Daß iſt ein ſilberner Ring, *This is a silver ring.*

But

Dieſer Ring iſt von Silber, *This ring is of silver.*

2. All ordinal numbers, superlatives, and most pronominal adjectives. Thus,

Dieſeß iſt der höchſte Baum, *This is the highest tree.*

But,

Dieſer Baum iſt der höchſte, *This tree is the tallest.*

48. Adjectives Used Only Predicatively. — Some German adjectives are never used otherwise than predicatively; see Part 4, Art. 4.

INFLECTION OF ADJECTIVES

NOTE. — To the rules given for the inflection of adjectives in Part 4, the following must be added.

49. The Attributive Adjective Uninflected. — 1. An adjective is sometimes uninflected before a masculine or neuter noun in the accusative. This construction, however, is rarely found, and then only in poetry and in a limited number of phrases; thus, Gut Wetter! *Good weather!* Gut Heil! Lieb Knabe!

2. An attributive adjective following its noun is not declined; thus, Köſlein rot; ein Schloß ſo hoch und hehr.

3. When two or more adjectives occur together and mark one definition, sometimes only the last adjective is inflected. Thus,

Die schwarze und weiße Fahne, *the black and white flag*

This occurs especially often in titles. Thus,

Die Kaiserlich Deutsche Post, *The Imperial German Mail*

In poetry this style is very often employed and must be distinguished from those cases in which the first adjective is used adverbially to modify the meaning of the following.

50. The Substantive Adjectives. — 1. When preceded by an adjective with strong ending that sufficiently indicates the case, substantive adjectives sometimes take the weak instead of the strong endings—especially in the neuter and in the genitive plural. Thus,

ein schönes Äußere, *a beautiful exterior*

im Kreise vieler Bekannten, *in a circle of many acquaintances*

But also

im Kreise vieler Bekannter

This substitution of the weak for the strong endings occurs also in other cases. Thus,

ihm als nahesten Verwandten, *to him as a near relative*

Special attention must be given to the use of the weak ending in the neuter genitive singular after an indeclinable pronominal word preceded by a preposition. The strong ending would, in such case, make the word appear like an accusative. Thus,

wegen etwas Guten, *on account of something good*

2. Certain adjectives are uninflected when used substantively in phrases without the article. They are now often written with small initials. Thus,

Alt und jung, groß und klein war auf dem Marktplatz, *Old and young, great and small were in the market place.*

Gleich und gleich gesellt sich gern, *Birds of a feather flock together.*

reich und arm, hoch und niedrig, *rich and poor, high and low*

SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUN

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

51. The declension and the general rules for personal pronouns were treated in Parts 2 and 3. The following special points are to be added:

1. In German, the grammatical gender of the personal pronoun, as of pronouns in general, agrees with that of the noun to which the pronoun refers. Thus,

Wo ist mein Hut? Ich kann ihn nicht finden. Er hängt an der Wand. *Where is my hat? I cannot find it. It hangs on the wall.*

Ich habe eine Uhr gekauft. Sie kostet zehn Dollar. *I have bought a watch. It costs ten dollars.*

But with nouns like das Fräulein, das Mädchen, das Weib, das Söhnchen, the natural gender generally prevails. Thus,

Wir gaben dem Weibe ein Almosen; doch sie dankte nicht dafür. *We gave alms to the woman, but she did not thank us for them.*

2. The pronoun es, besides being used as the subject of impersonal verbs, is often employed as the indefinite subject of verbs without a known agent, sometimes conveying the idea of something mysterious. Thus,

Du bist ein Schurke, wisperte es ihm in die Ohren, *You are a villain, it whispered into his ears.*

3. Es is often used as the indefinite subject or object, just as the English *things, matters, it*, etc. are used. Thus,

Es mußte so kommen, *Things had to turn this way.*

Wie man's treibt, so geht's, *Things go as you drive them.*

4. Finally es is used as an expletive subject with intransitive verbs in the passive and reflexive forms. Thus,

Es wird geläutet, *They are ringing the bell.*

Es wird heute getanzt, *There will be dancing today.*

5. The prepositions *halben*, *wegen*, *willen* are joined with the genitive of the personal pronoun, *et* or *t* being inserted, to form adverbs. Thus,

meinethalben, *meinetwegen*, *um meinetwillen*, *for my sake*, *on my account* or *behalf*

beinethalben, *beinetwegen*, *um beinetwillen*, *on your account*, *for your sake*

unserthalben, *unsertwegen*, *um unserwillen*, *on our account*, *for our sake*

Meinethalben, *meinetwegen*, (*um*) *meinetwillen*, often means, especially in colloquial language, *I don't care*.

6. In the compounds *meineßgleichen*, *deineßgleichen*, *my compeers*, *my equals*, etc., the adjective *gleich*, *like*, governs a preceding genitive of the personal pronoun.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

52. The forms and uses of the reflexive pronoun were treated in Part 2. Here the following points may be added.

1. In a simple independent sentence the form of the reflexive of the third person is always *sich*, for the dative and for the accusative.

Mein Bruder hatte einen Freund bei sich, *My brother had a friend with him*.

Der Soldat hat keine Waffe mit sich, *The soldier has no weapon with him*.

2. A reflexive pronoun is sometimes so closely united with its verb that the two form one notion and the reflexive meaning is no more apparent. Though these verbs are reflexive in form, their original reflexive action has disappeared. The English equivalents of these verbs are generally not reflexive; as,

sich freuen, *to rejoice*

sich ärgern, *to be vexed*

sich schämen, *to be ashamed*

sich wundern, *to wonder*

3. In a subordinate clause, *sich* always refers to the subject of that clause. When reference shall be taken to the subject of the principal clause, a personal pronoun must be used. Thus,

Er nannte uns die Namen derjenigen, die *sich* treu gegen ihn bewiesen hatten, *He gave us the names of those who had shown themselves faithful to him.*

4. When a dependent clause is represented by an infinitive or an adjective, *sich* refers to the logical subject of the infinitive, and the subject of the principal clause is referred to by a personal pronoun. Thus,

Der Führer forderte die Soldaten auf, *sich* ruhig zu verhalten und ihm zu folgen, *The guide asked the soldiers to be quiet and to follow him.*

5. In order to avoid a possible reciprocal meaning of the reflexive *sich*, *selbst* is often used in connection with it without having special emphasis. Thus, the sentence, *Diese Kinder lieben sich*, has an ambiguous sense. It may mean, *These children love themselves*, or *The children love each other*. To remove this uncertainty, we add *selbst*, if we wish to say, *These children love themselves*. Thus, *Diese Kinder lieben sich selbst*. But if we wish to make this statement in a reciprocal sense, we generally use the true reciprocal *einander*; thus, *Die Kinder lieben einander*, *These children love each other*.

6. The emphatic pronoun *selbst* before a noun has the sense of *even*. Thus,

Selbst seine Freunde vertrauten ihm nicht mehr, *Even his friends did not trust him any longer.*

But,

Der König *selbst*, *the king himself*

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

53. The declension and principal uses of the **possessive pronoun** and adjective were treated in Part 3. Only a few points remain to be added.

1. For the agreement of the possessive with its antecedent in gender, the same rule holds that was given for the personal pronoun in Art. 52. Thus,

Diese Stadt hat ihre Vorrechte verloren, This city has lost its privileges.

Jenes Fräulein hat ihren Schirm vergessen, That young lady has forgotten her umbrella.

2. The possessive pronouns *der meine*, etc., and *der meinige*, etc., are often used as nouns and are, then, capitalized. Their meaning is, in the plural, *persons, friends*, etc.; in the neuter singular, abstractly, *property, duty*, etc. Thus,

Die Seinigen haben ihn besucht, His relatives have visited him.

Ich habe das Meinige gethan, I have done my duty.

3. The adverbial phrase *seiner Zeit*, meaning not only *in his time*, or *its time*, but *in her time*, *in our time*, or simply *in due time*, is idiomatic.

4. *Seine* and *seiner* before titles and in letter addresses are often abbreviated to *Se.* and *Er.*; and *euer, eure*, to *Eu.*; as, *Se. Königliche Hoheit, His Royal Highness*; *Er. Gnaden dem Bischof, to His Grace the bishop*; *Eu. Gnaden, your Grace*.

5. The use of the definite article instead of the possessive was discussed in Art. 2, 6.

6. For the repetition of a possessive the same rules must be applied that were given for the repetition of the definite article. See Arts. 6 and 7.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

54. The declension and the chief uses of the **demonstratives** were treated in Part 3; only a few points need to be added.

1. The pronouns *dieser* and *jener* differ in that *dieser* designates the nearer, *this, the latter*, and *jener* the more remote, *that, the former*. The English *one* in connection with a

demonstrative is not translated. Thus, *this one here*, dieser hier; *that one there*, jener da.

2. The pronoun *der*, *die*, *das* is often used before a genitive or a phrase with *von* to replace a noun previously mentioned. Thus,

Die Felder meines Vaters und die meines Onkels sind die besten im Dorfe, *The fields of my father and those of my uncle are the best in the village.*

Die Bevölkerung Berlins ist nicht so groß wie die von Paris, *The population of Berlin is not as great as that of Paris.*

The pronoun *derjenige* also occurs in this sense, although less correctly, while *dieser* and *jener* must never be thus used.

3. The dative and accusative forms of *das* with a preposition, not referring to a living object, are usually replaced by a compound of *da* and a preposition; as *damit*, *davon*, *darüber*, *darunter*. Thus,

Darüber haben wir nicht gesprochen, *We have not talked about this.*

Ich bin nicht stolz *darauf*, *I am not proud of this.*

4. In like manner a case-form of *dieß* with a preposition may be replaced by a compound of *hier*; as, *hiermit*, *hiernach*, *hierüber*, etc. Thus,

Hiermit können wir nichts thun, *With this we cannot do anything.*

Desgleichen and *dergleichen* are indeclinable pronominal adjectives meaning *the like of that*, *such like*.

5. The pronoun *derselbe* refers to something already mentioned. It is often used as substitute for *er*, *sie*, *es*, when these pronouns stand in the genitive or dative case and refer to inanimate things. Thus,

Diese Feder ist gut; man kann mit *derselben* sehr schnell schreiben, *This pen is good; one can write very rapidly with it.*

The genitive *dessen* is also used as substitute in such cases. Thus,

Ich schäme mich *dessen* nicht, *I am not ashamed of it.*

6. The demonstratives *der* and *derselbe* must always be used to refer to a foregoing object of the sentence, while the personal or possessive is used to refer to the subject only. Thus,

Er begegnete seinem Bruder und dessen Frau, He met his brother and his sister-in-law.

Der Mann gab dem Bettler ein Almosen; aber derselbe dankte ihm nicht, The man gave alms to the beggar, but he did not thank him.

7. Note the idiomatic expressions: *am selben Tag*=*an demselben Tage, at the same day*; *zur selben Zeit*=*zu derselben Zeit, at the same time*.

8. The pronouns *solcher* and *solch* imply a correlative idea and often occur in connection with *wie, such . . . as*. Thus,

Solche Zeitungen wie diese giebt es in Europa nicht, There are no such papers as these in Europe.

solch eine Blume wie diese, such a flower as this

Such before an adjective must be translated by the adverb *so*; *as, such a short time, eine so kurze Zeit*.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

55. The declension and chief uses of **interrogative pronouns** were treated in Part 3; the following points need to be added.

1. The interrogative *wer* is always used substantively and corresponds to the English *who*? The interrogative *was* when substantive or indefinite, becomes *was*; when adjective or indefinite, *welcher*. The English interrogative *which* is always *welcher*.

2. The singular of *welcher* is sometimes used in the sense of *some*. Thus,

Haben Sie Brot?—Ja, ich habe welches, Have you bread?—Yes, I have some.

3. The neuter form *welches* is sometimes used absolutely without reference to any preceding noun. Thus,

Er fragte mich, *welches* der höchste Berg sei, *He asked me, which the highest mountain is.*

4. *Was* is very common in the sense of *warum*, *why*, or *wie*, *how*; and is sometimes used instead of *etwas*, especially before an adjective. Thus,

Was läufst du so schnell, *Why dost thou run so fast?*

Was Sie schnell laufen können, *How fast you can run!*

Ich weiß *was* Neues, *I know something new.*

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

56. The declension and chief uses of the **relative pronouns** were treated in Part 3; the following points must be added.

1. The pronoun *der* as relative is of secondary origin, being originally the demonstrative pronoun *der*. Hence, in simple narrative, especially in fairy tales, German often uses the demonstrative *der*, where one would expect a relative. Thus,

Es war einmal ein Prinz, *der* war krank, *There was once a prince, who was sick.*

2. The regular genitive forms *welches*, *welcher*, *welche* of the relative pronoun *welcher* must be employed when the relative is used adjectively, as in the following sentence:

Er lobte meine Tapferkeit, *welcher* Tugend ich mich nicht rühmen kann, *He praised my bravery, of which virtue I cannot boast.*

3. The implied antecedent of the indefinite *wer* and *was* may be expressed, for emphasis, by means of a demonstrative following the relative clause, it must be expressed if there is a change of construction.

Thus,

Was ich habe, *das* gebe ich dir, *What I have, I give you.*

Wer einmal lügt, *dem* glaubt man nicht, *Who once tells a falsehood, is never again believed.*

4. *Was* and *daß* . . . *was* are sometimes used in referring to persons, especially in familiar language. Thus,

Früh übt sich, was ein Meister werden will, He who wishes to become a master practices early.

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

57. The indefinite pronouns were treated in Part 3; only a few points need to be added.

1. The indeclinable *man* is never referred to by the pronoun *er*. The indefinite *man* must be repeated, and if any other case than the nominative be required, a form of *einer* must be used. Thus,

Wenn man gesund bleiben will, muß man mäßig sein im Essen und Trinken, If one wishes to remain healthy, one must be moderate in eating and drinking.

2. The pronoun *einer*, *some one*, *any one*, is also used as an indefinite subject, but less generally than *man*. Thus,

Da könnte einer sagen . . . , Here one could say

It may also take the place of (irgend) *jemand*. Thus,

Dort wird einer begraben, Somebody is being buried.

3. The neuter form *einß* and the neuter singular pronouns *daß*, *was*, *jedeß*, *alleß*, *keineß*, *keiñß*, etc. may be used of persons. Thus,

Einß wartete auf daß andere, The one waited for the other.

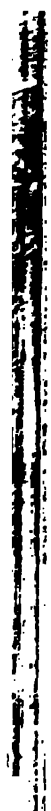
Jedeß wollte zuerst dort sein, Everybody wanted to be there first.

4. The English *another*, meaning *one more*, must be translated by *noch einer*, etc. Thus,

Give me another cup of coffee, Geben Sie mir noch eine Tasse Kaffee.

5. The adverb *irgend* is often used with indefinites, like *einer*, *jemand*, *etwas*, *welcher*, to add the notion of *any*, *at all*, *ever*, *soever*. Thus,

Wenn irgend jemand dieß thut, wird er bestraft werden, If anybody does it, he will be punished.



GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 11)

SYNTAX—(Continued)

SYNTAX OF THE VERB

NUMBER OF THE VERB

1. Concordance of Number.—1. A verb agrees with its subject in number. Thus,

Jeder Augenblick ist kostbar, *Every moment is precious.*

Die Bäume blühen im Frühling, *The trees bloom in the spring.*

When a verb is said to agree with its subject nominative, it is meant that it is in the same person and number with it. This is what is called in grammatical language *concord*.

2. Collective nouns take a singular verb in German oftener than in English. But when modified by a plural defining noun in which the idea of plurality is predominant, the verb usually stands in the plural. Thus,

Eine große Volksmenge **versammelte** sich vor dem Palaste, *A great multitude of people gathered in front of the palace.*

But,

Eine große Anzahl Bürger **waren** versammelt, *A great number of citizens were assembled.*

Eine Menge Bücher **wurden** verbrannt, *A number of books were burned.*

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

3. With two or more singular subjects connected by *und*, or not connected by any conjunction, the verb is regularly in the plural, if it implies the joint action of several subjects. Thus,

Rußland und Frankreich **vereinigten** sich zu einem Freundschaftsbunde, *Russia and France formed an alliance.*

4. But when each of several subjects is represented as acting separately, the verb is preferably put in the singular. Thus,

Wald und Feld, Wies' und Au **erschallt** vom Gesange der Vögel, *Forest and field, meadow and heather resound with the singing of birds.*
 Pferd und Wagen **ist** verkauft, *Horse and carriage are sold.*

5. When the verb precedes the subjects, it is more likely to be in the singular. Thus,

Da trat der König und die Königin in den Saal, *Then entered the king and the queen into the hall.*

6. If the subjects denote person, the verb must be in the plural except when it precedes these subjects; in the latter case, the singular is preferred. Thus,

Mein Bruder und sein Freund **waren** hier, *My brother and his friend were here.*

But,

War dein Bruder und sein Freund hier? *Was your brother and his friend here?*

7. If one of several subjects is in the plural but the others in the singular, the verb may be in the singular, provided it stands nearest to the singular subject. Thus,

Dort **ist** der Vater und die Kinder, *There is the father and the children.*

8. Singular subjects connected by *oder*, *or*, *weder* . . . *noch*, *neither* . . . *nor*, *nicht nur* . . . *sondern auch*, *not only* . . . *but also*, *sowohl* . . . *als auch*, *as well* . . . *as*, take a singular verb. Thus,

Weber Karl noch Paul war hier, *Neither Charles nor Paul was here.*

Sowohl Bismarck als auch Gladstone gehört zu den bedeutendsten Männern des 19. Jahrhunderts, *Bismarck as well as Gladstone belongs among the most prominent men of the 19th century.*

9. When the pronouns *es*, *dieß*, and *daß*, which often serve as the indefinite subject of some form of *sein*, *to be*, appear with a predicate nominative, the verb agrees in number with the predicate nominative. Thus,

Es sind seine Eltern, *They are his parents.*

Daß werden tüchtige Soldaten werden, *They will become able soldiers.*

PERSON OF THE VERB

2. Congruence of Person.—1. A verb must always agree with its subject in person.

2. When one of two subjects of a sentence is of the first person and the other of the second or third, the verb is put in the first person plural. Thus,

Du und ich **haben** alles verloren, *You and I have lost everything.*

Er und ich **haben** beide Unrecht, *Both he and I are wrong.*

3. If the second and third person are represented, the verb is put in the second person plural. Thus,

Du und dein Vater **seid** hier gewesen, *You and your father have been here.*

Ihr und meine Freunde **seid** eingeladen, *You and my friends are invited.*

4. Usually, however, if the subjects are of different persons, the including plural pronoun will be used before the verb, especially when all the subjects are expressed by pronouns. Thus,

Mein Bruder und ich, **wir** waren in Amerika, *My brother and I, we have been in America.*

Du und dein Bruder, **ihr** habt viel gereist, *You and your brother, you have traveled much.*

Du und ich, **wir** haben alles verloren, *You and I, we have lost everything.*

5. If the verb precedes the subjects, it usually agrees with the nearest subject. Thus,

Gestern **ist** er und ich im Theater gewesen, *Yesterday he and I were at the theater.*

The same construction also occurs when the subjects are connected by *oder, or, weder . . . noch, neither . . . nor, nicht, allein . . . sondern auch, not alone . . . but also, so wohl . . . als auch, as well . . . as.* Thus,

Weder ich noch du **kannst** diese Schwierigkeit überwinden, *Neither I nor you can overcome this difficulty.*

Nicht allein ihr, sondern auch er **hat** diesen Fehler gemacht, *Not alone you, but he also has made this mistake.*

6. A noteworthy exception is the use of plural verbs with singular titles, a peculiarity which sometimes occurs in ceremonious addresses to high dignitaries. Thus,

Eure Majestät **haben** befohlen, *Your Majesty has commanded.*

Eure Excellenz (Hoheit, Durchlaucht) **haben** geruht zu . . . , *Your Excellence (Highness, Serene Highness) has been pleased to . . .*

USES OF THE INDICATIVE TENSES

3. Tenses in General.—The simple indicative tenses of the German verb correspond to the present and past (imperfect) of the English verb; but the compound tenses are, in German, not so complete as in English.

The German verb has no forms corresponding to the English progressive, nor to the emphatic tenses formed with the auxiliary *do*. Thus, the English *I go, I am going, I do go*, are represented in German by the single form *ich gehe*; the forms, *I went, I was going, I did go*, are all represented by *ich ging*; the forms *I have gone, I have been going*, by the simple *ich bin gegangen*. When a German present participle occurs after a form of *sein*, it is felt to be an adjective. The English present participle must, therefore, be carefully distinguished in its uses as a verb and as a participle.

In German, emphatic forms are expressed by emphasis on the verb or by emphatic adverbs; as, *doch* or *wohl*. Thus,

Er hat es doch gesehen, He did see it.

In interrogative and negative forms also *do* and *did* are not translated. Thus,

Where do you go? Wohin gehen Sie?

My friend does not come, Mein Freund kommt nicht.

4. The Present Tense. — 1. The present tense is the tense regularly employed to express action or state in present time, and to make general statements, true without respect to time. Thus,

Dort läuft der Hase, There the hare is running.

England besitzt viele Kolonien, England possesses many colonies.

Die wahre Tapferkeit beschützt den Schwachen, True valor protects the weak.

2. In vivid narration, the present tense is often used for the past; it is then called the **historical present**. Thus,

Schwarze Wolken bedeckten den Himmel; plötzlich scheint der Himmel in Flammen zu stehen, ein Blitzstrahl zuckt auf und schlägt mit Donnergetöse in das Haus.

3. The present is used, oftener than in English, in place of the future, when the true time is sufficiently indicated by the sense of the context; or when, for the sake of emphasis, a future event is regarded and treated as already certain. Thus,

Ich gehe morgen nach der Stadt, I will go to town tomorrow.

Bald sehen Sie uns wieder, You shall see me again soon.

4. The present is often used for the English perfect, to signify that a state, condition, or action begun in the past is continued in the present. In such cases, an adverb of time like *schon*, *already*, *seit*, *since*, etc., is generally added. Thus,

Er ist schon drei Wochen auf dem Lande, He has been in the country three weeks already.

Wie lange kennen Sie ihn schon? How long have you already known him?

5. The present is sometimes used for an emphatic imperative. Thus,

Du legst dich nieder! *Lie down!*

Ihr bleibt stehen! *Stand still!*

5. The Past Tense.—1. The past is the regular tense of narration; referring to a particular past time defined by the sense of the context, it usually expresses a past action having some relation to other past action or circumstance. Thus,

Als die Sonne unterging, erreichten wir die Stadt und suchten bald unseren Freund auf, *As the sun was setting, we reached the city and at once visited our friend.*

2. The past is also used in German where English employs the pluperfect—as the present is used for the English perfect (see Art. 4, 4). Thus,

Der Feind war schon zwei Stunden in Besitz der Stadt, als unsere Truppen sich näherten, *The enemy had been two hours in possession of the city, when our troops arrived.*

6. The Perfect Tense.—1. The perfect tense denotes a past action as completed at the present time. Thus,

Die Schiffe sind angekommen, *The ships have arrived.*

Er ist vor drei Jahren nach Europa gegangen, *He went to Europe three years ago.*

2. The perfect is often used merely to convey information, reporting an isolated past occurrence, without reference to attendant circumstances or to the present time. In such cases English very often employs the simple past. Thus,

Wer hat das Drama „Wallenstein“ geschrieben? *Who wrote the drama Wallenstein?*

Ich habe gestern deinen Bruder gesehen aber nicht mit ihm gesprochen, *I saw your brother yesterday, but did not speak to him.*

3. But if a past action is to be expressed, with reference to other past action or circumstance, the past tense is usually

employed; thus, the past tense becomes the usual tense of historical narrative. Thus,

Meine Eltern **wohnten** noch in Deutschland, als ich **geboren wurde**,
My parents still lived in Germany when I was born.

Als die Sonne **aufging**, **erreichten** wir den Gipfel des Berges und **hielten** dort an, *As the sun was rising, we reached the top of the mountain and stopped there.*

7. The Pluperfect Tense. — The pluperfect tense corresponds closely to the English pluperfect. It is used to denote what had already taken place at some past time described by the context; that is, a past action completed prior to some other past action. Thus,

Ich **hatte** gerade meinen Brief **beendet**, als mein Freund **kam**,
I had just finished my letter, when my friend arrived.

Er **hatte** kaum seinen Fuß vor die Thüre **gesetzt**, als es anfang zu regnen, *He had hardly set foot out of doors, when it began to rain.*

8. The Future and the Future Perfect Tenses.

1. The first future tense is employed merely to express what shall or will take place hereafter; while the future perfect is used to denote what shall have occurred at some future time.

Der Reichstag **wird** morgen seine Sitzungen **eröffnen**, *The Imperial Diet will open its sessions tomorrow.*

Der Präsident **wird** die Stadt schon **verlassen haben**, wenn wir dort **eintreffen werden**, *The president will have left the city when we will arrive there.*

2. The future frequently denotes a present, and the future perfect a past supposition or probability, a usage having no exact parallel in English. Thus,

Er **wird** krank **sein**, *He is probably ill.*

Es **wird** Ihnen bekannt **sein**, *It is probably known to you.*

Es **wird** dein Vater gewesen **sein**, *I suppose it was your father.*

3. The future is also used with imperative force to express a mild command. Thus,

Karl, du **wirst** jetzt lesen und **schreiben**, *Charles, you shall read and write.*

THE INDICATIVE MODE

9. Uses of the Indicative.—1. The **indicative mode** is used in affirming or denying that which is conceived to be certain or undoubted.

Wir werden morgen zurückkommen, We shall return tomorrow.

Since the proper office of the indicative is to express reality, it is employed in absolute or independent sentences to make a direct assertion or interrogation. Even in conditional sentences it is used, if the condition is assumed to be a fact. Thus,

Wenn du Geld hast, bezahle deine Schulden, If you have money, pay your debts.

2. Sometimes the indicative is employed instead of the imperative. Thus,

Sie kommt mit mir, You come with me.

Du gehst jetzt zu Bett, You go to bed now.



THE SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

10. Of the Subjunctive in General.—While the indicative mode is that form or use of a verb by which a direct assertion or interrogation is expressed, the **subjunctive** is the mode of contingency by which a doubtful or merely supposed or conditioned thought is denoted. The indicative presents facts, either affirmatively, negatively, or interrogatively, and is thus the mode of the actual; the subjunctive presents ideas, either as wishes, purposes, or conditions contrary to fact, and is thus the mode of the ideal.

The German subjunctive, also called **conjunctive**, **Konjunktiv**, has no exactly corresponding single equivalent in English. Its English equivalents are to be found in the indicative, the infinitive, and the subjunctive and conditional auxiliaries *may, might, could, should, would*; and in the additional auxiliaries *can, shall, will*, etc. The German subjunctive is therefore very difficult of explanation and its translation requires careful attention.

The subjunctive may be used in German to express wish, purpose, possibility, condition contrary to fact, or a statement that the speaker does not affirm to be a fact. Thus we have five kinds of subjunctive: the *optative subjunctive*, the *subjunctive of purpose*, the *potential subjunctive*, the *conditional or unreal subjunctive*, and the *subjunctive of indirect statement*.

11. The Optative Subjunctive.—1. The present subjunctive is often used to express a wish for what is possible and expected to happen; or to express a request, or even a concession. Thus,

Wüßtet ihr glücklich dort ankommen, *May you arrive there safely.*

Er komme herein, *He may come in.*

Gott segne dich! *God bless you!*

So sei es, *So be it.*

Er lebe hoch! *Long may he live.*

2. The past and pluperfect subjunctives are used to express a wish as unreal or contingent; and are thus almost identical with the conditional or unreal subjunctive. Thus,

Wäre er doch gesund, *Were he only healthy!*

Hätte er doch den Brief nicht geschrieben, *Would that he had not written the letter!*

Wenn er doch fortginge, *I only wish he would go away!*

12. The Subjunctive of Purpose.—The subjunctive is often used to express a more remote wish, a *purpose*, in clauses introduced by *damit*, or *daß*, or *auf daß*, *that*, *so that*, *in order that*, where there is a doubt with respect to the accomplishment of the purpose. If such accomplishment is to be expressed as certain, the indicative mode is used.

Er liest so laut, *damit* ihn jeder **v**erstehe, *He reads so loud in order that everybody may understand him.*

Er floh nach der Schweiz, *damit* man ihn nicht gefangen **n**ähme, *He fled to Switzerland in order that he might not be taken prisoner.*

But,

Lassen Sie ihn einen Wagen nehmen, *damit* er rechtzeitig **a**nkommt, *Let him take a cab, that he arrives at the right time.*

13. The Potential Subjunctive.—1. The subjunctive occasionally expresses possibility or contingency and is to be translated by *may, might, could, would*. Thus,

Wie auch immer das Glück sich drehe, ich bleibe standhaft, *However fortune may turn, I will remain constant.*

Es sei Wahrheit oder Lüge . . . , *Be it truth or fable . . .*

2. The subjunctive mode is also used to express an assertion cautiously. Such an expression is closely related to a conclusion following a supposed condition and, therefore, the verb forms used are confined to the past and pluperfect subjunctives and the conditional modes. The subjunctive so used is often called the **diplomatic subjunctive**. Thus,

Das dürfte wohl wahr sein, *That might be true.*

Ich müßte nicht, *I can't say that I know.*

Ich wäre beinahe gefallen, *I had almost fallen.*

Das dürfte Ihnen bekannt sein, *That is probably known to you.*

3. With the potential subjunctive may also be classed the use of the past or pluperfect subjunctive in exclamatory questions to express an emphatic doubt or denial of a preceding or only presumed assertion. It may also denote a real certainty or assurance under the form of a pretended doubt or hesitation. It is called the **dubitative subjunctive**. Thus,

Und das hätte ich gesagt? *And I had said this?*

Er hatte das gethan? ich glaube es nicht, *Can he have done that? I do not believe it.*

Wer hätte das nicht gehört? *Who wouldn't have heard that?*

Wer könnte das nicht thun? *Who couldn't do that?*

14. The Conditional or Unreal Subjunctive.—1. The subjunctive is often used in sentences expressing that which would or would not be or that which would have been or would not have been, under conditions contrary to fact.

The subjunctive so used is called the **conditional** or **unreal subjunctive**. The verb in the clause stating the condition is put in the past subjunctive or pluperfect subjunctive according as the supposed condition obtains in the present or the past, while the verb in the clause stating the conclusion is put in the past subjunctive or present conditional if the conclusion obtains in the present, but in the pluperfect subjunctive or perfect conditional, if it obtains in the past. The condition may be expressed by means of a conjunction, usually *wenn*, *if*, or by the interrogative order of words. Thus, there are the following four cases:

1. SUPPOSITION IN THE PRESENT	CONCLUSION IN THE PRESENT
Wenn ich fleißiger wäre, or, wäre ich fleißiger, <i>If I were more diligent</i>	so besäße ich jetzt mehr Kenntnisse, <i>I should now know more.</i>
2. SUPPOSITION IN THE PRESENT	CONCLUSION IN THE PAST
Wenn ich sparsamer wäre, or, wäre ich sparsamer, <i>If I were more saving</i>	hätte ich mir schon Reichtümer sammeln können. <i>I could have gathered riches.</i>
3. SUPPOSITION IN THE PAST	CONCLUSION IN THE PRESENT
Wenn ich fleißiger gewesen wäre, or, wäre ich fleißiger gewesen, <i>If I had been more diligent</i>	besäße ich jetzt mehr Kenntnisse, <i>I should now know more.</i>
4. SUPPOSITION IN THE PAST	CONCLUSION IN THE PAST
Wenn ich sparsamer gewesen wäre, or, wäre ich sparsamer gewesen, <i>If I had been more saving</i>	hätte ich mir Reichtümer sammeln können. <i>I should have been able to gather riches.</i>

2. If, however, in a hypothetical sentence, the supposition is not contrary to fact, the indicative must be used. Thus,

Wenn ich gesund bin, so komme ich, *If I am healthy, I will come.*

Wenn du Geld hast, kannst du dir etwas kaufen. *If you have money, you can buy yourself something.*

3. The conditional sentence is often incomplete: for

(a) The condition is sometimes omitted. Thus,

Er ist krank, sonst wenn er nicht krank wäre, wäre er schon gekommen. *He is ill else if he were not sick he would have come.*

Unter solchen Umständen wenn ich unter solchen Umständen hätte handeln sollen hätte ich anders gehandelt. *Under such circumstances if I were to act under such circumstances, I should have acted differently.*

(b) The conclusion may be omitted. This special case of unreal subjunctive is the common construction after *als ob*, *als wenn*, *as if*. Thus,

Er sieht aus, als -als du aussehen würdest, wenn du krank wärest, *You look, as if you were sick.*

Er thut, als wäre er verrückt. *He acts as if he was crazy.*

4. If the conclusion be merely implied, the condition may not be distinguishable from an optative subjunctive. Thus,

Wäre er doch gekommen! *Would that he had come!*

Hätte ich nur mehr Geld! *If I only had more money!*

In these sentences, respectively, the conclusions *he could have heard this himself* and *I should help you*, may be supplied.

5. In poetry, the indicative sometimes takes the place of the unreal subjunctive to express the certainty of the result. Thus,

Mit diesem Pfeil durchschloß ich euch, wenn ich mein Kind getroffen hätte, *With this second arrow I would have shot you through, if I had struck my beloved child.*

6. Here belongs also the use of the subjunctive in a relative sentence to express a hypothetical idea. Such subjunctives are rendered in English by the subjunctive and conditional auxiliaries *could*, *may*, or *might*. The present subjunctive is used when the hypothetical idea is expected to be realized; and the imperfect subjunctive is used when

the speaker is doubtful as to such realization. In English, *may perhaps* or *might perhaps* might be employed in the latter case. Thus,

Ich muß jemanden finden, der ihn das Lateinische lehre, *I must find some one who can teach him Latin.*

Wissen Sie jemanden, der ihn das Lateinische lehrte? *Do you know somebody who may perhaps teach him Latin?*

The conditional mode is also used in such relative sentences. Then, the speaker implies a condition. Thus,

Wissen Sie jemanden, der ihn das Lateinische lehren würde (wenn ich ihn darum bäte)? *Do you know somebody who would teach him Latin (if I should ask him)?*

7. The subjunctive is used also in other clauses than relative, denoting a hypothetical idea. Thus, for instance,

Er ist zu schwach, als daß er diese Arbeit thun könnte, *He is too weak to be able to do this work.*

Ich habe nichts darüber gelesen, daß der Präsident das gesagt hätte, *I have not read anything about the President having said that.*

15. The Subjunctive of Indirect Statement.—1. The subjunctive is employed in the object clause after such verbs as *sagen, to say; erzählen, to tell; fragen, to ask; denken, to think; glauben, to believe; fürchten, to fear; zweifeln, to doubt; hoffen, to hope*, etc., when the speaker wishes to be cautious and reserved in his statement; that is, if he be unwilling to vouch for his statement, or if he be making a statement on some one else's authority. The subjunctive is thus very commonly used in reporting opinions, rumors, etc., without quoting literally. Thus,

Er sagte mir, daß er gestern in Berlin gewesen sei und dort Geschäfte besorgt habe, und daß er morgen nach Breslau gehen werde, *He told me that he had been in Berlin, that he had attended to certain business there, and that he would go to Breslau tomorrow.*

Wir fragten ihn, ob er die Lektion verstehen könne, oder ob er noch einige Erklärungen brauche, *We asked him, if he could understand the lesson or whether he needed additional explanations.*

Es ist keine Hoffnung vorhanden, daß der Knabe genesen werde, *There is no hope that the boy will recover.*

2. When, however, the speaker, makes a statement on his own authority, the contents of which he believes to be a fact, or if he expresses a sentiment of his own, he is necessarily convinced of the truth of it and therefore employs the mode of a direct statement; that is, the indicative. Thus,

Ich erzählte ihm, daß ich krank gewesen bin und daß ich daher nichts habe verdienen können, *I told him, that I was ill and could not earn anything.*

Er sagte ihm, daß ich zu Hause gewesen bin, *He told him, that I was at home.*

Es ist Hoffnung vorhanden, daß er wieder gesund wird, *There is some hope, that he will recover.*

3. Consequently, those verbs that imply certainty, as verbs of knowing, seeing, proving, showing, comprehending, like wissen, *to know*; sehen, *to see*; beweisen, *to prove*; zeigen, *to show*; erkennen, *to recognize*, and phrases such as es ist That-sache, *it is a fact*; es folgt, *it follows*; es ist klar, *it is clear*; es ist bekannt, *it is known*, are followed by the indicative since the uncertainty of the subjunctive would disagree with the certainty of the governing verb. Thus,

Wir wissen, daß unser Freund sehr gut deutsch spricht, *We know that our friend speaks German very well.*

Er hat uns bewiesen, daß er recht hatte, *He has proved to us that he was right.*

Es ist klar, daß die englische Sprache am meisten gesprochen wird, *It is clear that the English language is spoken to the greatest extent.*

Ich hoffe, daß er gesund werden wird, *I hope that he will recover.*

In this last sentence the speaker uses the indicative in order to express the directness and confidence of his own feeling. But if another person were to report that statement, he would give it the form:

Du hoffst, daß er gesund werde, *You hope that he will recover.*

4. When a dependent subjunctive has a clause depending on it, such a clause also stands in the subjunctive if it

belongs to the narration. But if it is not a part of the narration but rests on the narrator's own authority, the indicative will be used. Thus,

Er erzählte mir, daß der Brief, den er geschrieben **habe**, nicht angekommen sei, *He told me that the letter he had written did not arrive.*

But,

Er erzählte mir, daß der Brief, den er geschrieben **hat**, nicht angekommen sei, *He told me that the letter he had written did not arrive.*

In the last case the speaker is sure that the letter had been written, while in the first instance he is merely surmising that fact.

16. Sequence of Tense in Object Clauses.—1. The tense of a dependent subjunctive in object clauses, is usually the same that would be used if the statement were direct instead of indirect. Thus,

DIRECT STATEMENTS

Er **ist** gesund, *He is healthy.*

Sie **hat** das Buch gelesen, *She has read the book.*

Er **wird** mir schreiben, *He will write a letter to me.*

INDIRECT STATEMENTS

(Er sagt), daß er gesund **sei**,
(*He says*), *that he is healthy.*

(Sie schreibt), daß sie das Buch
gelesen **habe**, (*She writes*), *that*
she had read the book.

(Er verspricht), daß er mir schrei-
ben **werde**, *He promised that he*
would write me.

2. There are, however, important exceptions to this rule:

(a) All present forms of the subjunctive that are the same as the corresponding forms of the indicative are replaced by the corresponding forms of the past subjunctive in indirect statement.

Since the perfect tense is generally formed with the help of the present forms of the auxiliary *haben*, and the future tenses with the help of the present forms of *werden*, the

rule given above applies to the perfect and the two future tenses, active and passive, as well as to the present tense. Thus,

DIRECT STATEMENT

Die Knaben **haben** immer ihre Lektionen **gelernt**, **studieren** auch jetzt noch fleißig und **werden** ihr Examen gut bestehen, *The boys have always learned their lesson, are still pursuing their studies ardently, and will pass a good examination.*

Seine Töchter **singen** besser und **spielen** besser Klavier als die meinigen, *His daughters sing better and play better on the piano than do mine.*

Wir **bekommen** schlechtes Wetter und es **wird** einige Tage anhalten, *We shall have bad weather and it will last for some days.*

INDIRECT STATEMENT

(Er sagte, daß) die Knaben immer ihre Lektionen gelernt **hätten** (for haben), auch jetzt noch fleißig **studierten** (for studieren) und ihr Examen gut bestehen **würden** (for werden), *He said that the boys had always studied their lessons, that they still pursue their studies ardently, and that they will pass a good examination.*

(Er glaubt, daß) seine Töchter besser **sängen** (for singen) und besser Klavier **spielten** (for spielen) als die meinigen, (*He believes that*) *his daughters sing better and play better on the piano than do mine.*

(Er fürchtete, daß) wir schlechtes Wetter **bekämen** und daß es einige Tage anhalten **würde**, *He feared that we would have bad weather and that it would last for some days.*

If the governing verb be in the present tense, the indicative of the direct statement usually remains unchanged, retaining more of its direct form. Thus, the second of the above examples may also have the form: Er glaubt, daß seine Töchter besser **singen** und besser Klavier **spielen** als die meinigen.

(b) Past indicatives in direct statements become perfect subjunctives in indirect statements.

While both past and perfect tenses are used in the indicative mode in direct statements, only the perfect subjunctive can be used as an equivalent for both in indirect statements, if the mode of verb must be changed. The past subjunctive is avoided in indirect statements, because it is too commonly used in conditions contrary to fact. Thus,

DIRECT STATEMENT

Seine Freunde **kamen** gestern an und **sind** heute morgen schon wieder abgereist, *His friends arrived yesterday and departed this morning.*

Die Soldaten **marschierten** durch den Fluß und **griffen** den Feind an, *The soldiers marched through the river and attacked the enemy.*

INDIRECT STATEMENT

(Er erzählte, daß) seine Freunde gestern **angekommen (seien)** und heute morgen schon wieder abgereist **seien**, *(He told me, that) his friends had arrived yesterday and (that they) departed this morning.*

(Man sagte, daß) die Soldaten durch den Fluß **marschiert seien** und den Feind **angegriffen hätten**, *(They say that) the soldiers had marched through the river and attacked the enemy.*

In the last example the form **hätten** takes the place of the form **haben** of the perfect subjunctive, because this is the same as the indicative form.

The pluperfect tense of the direct discourse usually remains unchanged when used in an indirect statement.

17. Use of the Subjunctive in Indirect Questions.

After the conjunction „ob“ and the interrogative pronouns or adverbs, when used as conjunctions, the subjunctive is often used in indirect questions in the same manner as in indirect statements. Many dependent sentences after these conjunctions are, however, felt to be direct questions; in such cases the indicative rather than the subjunctive is employed. Whether the indicative or the subjunctive mode should be chosen, is therefore more largely a matter of personal preference than of grammatical rule. But there are a few general rules that will help the student in using either mode correctly.

1. When the governing verb of the main sentence is in the present or future tense, the verb in the dependent indirect question usually stands in the indicative. Thus,

Ich frage dich, warum mein Freund nicht kommen **will**, *I am asking you why my friend will not come.*

Ich weiß nicht, ob du mir **glaubst**, *I don't know whether you believe me.*

Er wird mich fragen, ob wir die Arbeit **gethan haben**, *He will ask me, if we have done the work.*

3. When the governing verb of the main sentence is in the past or perfect, the verb of the dependent indirect question stands in the indicative mode if it is the past tense; but in the subjunctive if it is the present or perfect tense.

In case the indicative and subjunctive forms of the same tense are alike the same substitutions are made in indirect questions as in indirect discourse. Thus,

Ich habe ihn einmal gefragt, ob er John sei. *I once asked him whether he is John.*

Ich frage ihn, ob er immer noch in München war. *I ask him whether he had already been in Munich.*

Er würde mir nicht sagen, ob er nach Berlin gehen könnte. *He would not tell me if he could go to Berlin.*

4. When the governing verb of the main sentence is in the past perfect or pluperfect tense and the verb of the dependent indirect question would be in a future tense in the direct question, the conditional modes are employed in the indirect. Thus,

Ich würde nicht ob er kommen würde. *I did not know whether he would come.*

5. When the assertion made in the indirect quotation is known or represented by the speaker to be a fact, the indicative is retained in the dependent sentence. Thus,

Die Frage, ob die Erde eine Kugel ist, ist längst entschieden worden. *The question whether the earth is a sphere, was decided long ago.*

THE CONDITIONAL MODE

18. The conditional mode present and perfect is in reality a past subjunctive of the future perfect and is chiefly used in the conclusion of conditional sentences contrary to fact. The idea of relative futurity can more clearly be expressed by the auxiliary *würde* than could be done by the subjunctive forms. The present conditional refers to present time and takes the place of the past subjunctive, while the perfect conditional, referring to past time, takes the place of

the pluperfect subjunctive. In most cases there is a free choice between the subjunctive and the conditional, but the former is avoided whenever it has the same form as the indicative and would not therefore be easily distinguished from it. Thus,

CONDITION	CONCLUSION
Wenn ich gesund wäre, Wäre ich gesund, <i>If I were healthy,</i>	so ginge ich aus. so würde ich ausgehen. <i>I should go out.</i>
Wenn du fleißig gewesen wärest, Wärest du fleißig gewesen, <i>If you had been diligent,</i>	so würde ich dich loben, <i>I should praise you,</i> (but not, so lobte ich dich).

THE IMPERATIVE MODE

19. Use of the Imperative.—The imperative mode is used to express a command, entreaty, or exhortation. Properly, it has only two forms, one for the second person singular and one for the second person plural. The third form, as *haben Sie*, is really the third person plural of the present subjunctive used as the second person, while the forms for the first and third persons are identical with the corresponding forms of the present subjunctive. The subjects *du* and *ihr* of the second person are used only for emphasis or contrast; otherwise, they are omitted. Other subjects must be expressed. Thus,

Fürchte Gott und ehre den König, *Fear God and honor the king.*

Seid meine Freunde, *Be my friends.*

Sei du gerecht, wenn er es nicht sein kann, *Be thou just, if he cannot be so.*

bleiben Sie hier! *Stay here!*

Er sei gehorsam seinen Eltern! *Let him be obedient to his parents.*

The imperative is sometimes employed to indicate a condition or concession on which something is said to depend. Thus,

Sei stolz, und du wirst wenig Achtung finden, *Be haughty (i. e., if you be haughty) and you will be slightly regarded.*

20. Substitutes for the Imperative.—Instead of the imperative, other forms may often be used with imperative force. Thus,

1. In order to make a request in a modest and polite manner, the subjunctive of *mögen* or *wollen* is often employed instead of the imperative. Thus,

Du wollest seiner nie vergessen, *Pray, never forget him.*

Mögen Sie meiner gedenken, *May you remember me.*

2. The infinitive without *zu* is used with the force of an imperative, especially in placards and brusque commands. Thus,

Aufpassen! *Pay attention!*

Stillstehen! *Stand still!*

3. Sometimes, by a peculiar ellipsis, the past participle is employed in place of the imperative. Thus,

Nur nicht lange gefragt! *Do not be long in asking!*

An die Arbeit gegangen! *Go to your work!*

Aufgepaßt! *Pay attention!*

Stillgestanden! *Stand still!*

4. The present and future tenses of the indicative are also used with imperative force in mild commands. Thus,

Wilhelm, du hörst jetzt auf zu spielen, *William, stop playing now.*

Du wirst jetzt deine Schularbeiten machen, *You shall learn your lessons now.*

5. The verb *lassen* with the infinitive is used instead of the regular passive imperative. Thus,

Laß dich bekehren, *Be converted.*

Laßt euch von einem Arzt behandeln, *Be treated by a physician.*

THE INFINITIVE

21. The Infinitive In General.—The infinitive is that form of a verb that expresses without respect to person or number, the action or condition asserted by the verb.

It represents the idea of the verb as infinite, that is not limited with regard to person and number of its subject. In the case of the other modes, especially the indicative, changes in person and number occur, and they are for that reason called *finite* modes. By its meaning the infinitive is related to the verb and can have the ordinary modifiers of a verb. But it may also have the construction and relation of a noun.

22. Uses of the Infinitive.—Besides serving to form the compound tenses of the verb, the infinitive may be used in various other ways. Thus, it may be employed as a substantive infinitive or verbal noun, usually corresponding to the English verbal in *ing*; as an infinitive without *zu*, identical in the main with the English infinitive without *to*; and it may also be used with the preposition *zu*, corresponding to the English infinitive with *to*.

23. The Infinitive Used as a Noun.—The infinitive is often used as a noun, and when so used it may take the neuter article and may be modified by adjectives. It is then usually translatable by the verbal in *ing*. Thus,

Das **Turnen** stärkt den Körper, *Gymnastic exercising strengthens the body.*

Das viele **Rauchen** ist der Gesundheit schädlich, *Much smoking is injurious to the health.*

Ihm verging **Hören** und **Sehen**, *Hearing and sight were forsaking him.*

24. The Infinitive Without zu.—The infinitive without *zu* is employed in the following constructions:

1. In connection with the auxiliary verbs of mode *dürfen*, *können*, *mögen*, *müssen*, *sollen*, *wollen*. Thus,

Ich darf **spielen**, *I am permitted to play.*

Du sollst nicht **stehlen**, *Thou shalt not steal.*

2. With *lassen* in the sense of *let*, *cause to*, etc. Thus,

Sie ließen mich vor der Thür **stehen**, *They made me stand in front of the door.*

Er läßt ihn ein Haus **bauen**, *He orders him to build a house.*

When the auxiliary *lassen*, in the sense of *to order*, is followed by an infinitive, but without a pronoun that represents at once the object of *lassen* and the subject of the infinitive, the infinitive, though active in German, must generally be rendered by the passive in English; thus, the last example, without a pronoun, will be:

Er läßt ein Haus **bauen**, *He orders a house to be built.*

Er läßt das Buch **einbinden**, *He orders the book to be bound.*

3. Generally in association with the verbs *heißen*, *to order*; *heißen*, and *nennen*, *to bid*, *to call*; *helfen*, *to help*; *lehren*, *to teach*; *lernen*, *to learn*; and *machen*, *to make*. Thus,

Er hieß mich **gehen**, *He told me to go.*

Er lehrte mich **schwimmen**, *He taught me how to swim.*

4. When the infinitive form is to be joined to certain verbs denoting an exercise of the senses; as: *sehen*, *to see*; *hören*, *to hear*; *fühlen*, *to feel*. Thus,

Ich sah ihn **kommen**, *I saw him coming.*

Wir hörten euch **sprechen**, **singen**, **spielen**, *We heard you talking, singing, playing.*

5. In certain expressions with *haben*, *to have*; *thun*, *to do*, and *finden*, *to find*. Thus,

Ich habe einige Zigarren auf dem Tische **liegen**, *I have some cigars lying on my desk.*

Du hast gut **reden**, *It is easy for you to speak.*

Sie thut nichts als **weinen**, *She does nothing but weep.*

Wir fanden ihn seine Arbeit **thun**, *We found him doing his work.*

6. The infinitive is employed without *zu* in connection with the following verbs: *bleiben*, *to remain*; *gehen*, *to go*, and in some idiomatic expressions with *fahren*, *to ride in a carriage*, and *reiten*, *to ride on horseback*. Thus,

Bleiben Sie **sitzen**! *Keep your seat!*

Er geht **betteln**, *He goes begging.*

Wir fahren **spazieren**, *We are taking a ride.*

Wir gehen **spazieren**, *We are taking a walk.*

7. By a German idiom, the auxiliary verbs of mode—dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen, lassen—and also the verbs heißen, helfen, hören, sehen, lernen, lehren, assume the form of the infinitive instead of the perfect participle, when they are associated with another infinitive. Thus,

Du hättest kommen sollen, *You ought to have come.*

Ihr habt die Feinde Englands kennen lernen, *You have learned to know the enemies of England.*

It is now customary, however, regularly to employ the participle of the verb lernen or lehren instead of the infinitive. Thus,

Er hat ihn kennen gelernt, *He has become acquainted with him.*

Ich habe ihn zeichnen gelehrt, *I have taught him drawing.*

25. The Infinitive With zu.—1. The infinitive with zu is sometimes employed instead of the simple infinitive, as the subject of a proposition, especially when, in an inverted proposition, it follows its predicate. Thus,

Den Eltern zu gehorchen ist den Kindern eine Pflicht, *To obey their parents is a duty of children.*

Es geziemt dem Manne thätig zu sein, *It is becoming for a man to be diligent.*

2. When the infinitive with zu is not the subject of a proposition, it is equivalent to a verbal substantive in an oblique case. It is thus used:

(a) As a complement of substantives—especially such as signify an inclination or affection of the mind, or opportunity, time, etc., as, Neigung, *inclination*; Entschluß, *resolution*; Eifer, *zeal*; Mut, *courage*; Lust, *desire*; Zeit, *time*; Gelegenheit, *opportunity*. Thus,

Er hat Lust zu reisen, zu rasten, *He has an inclination for travel, for rest.*

Es ist Zeit zu arbeiten, zu schlafen, *It is time to work, to sleep.*

Ich hatte bereits das Vergnügen, Sie kennen zu lernen, *I have already had the pleasure of becoming acquainted with you.*

(b) As a complement of adjectives signifying possibility, duty, necessity, easiness, difficulty, and the like; as, *möglich, possible; unmöglich, impossible; verpflichtet, obliged; genötigt, forced; leicht, easy; schwer, difficult; hart, hard*. Thus,

Die Bürde ist schwer zu tragen, *The burden is hard to bear.*

Es war mir unmöglich zu kommen, *It was impossible for me to come.*

This infinitive is very common after adjectives preceded by *zu*; as, *zu alt, too old; zu jung, too young*. In such constructions, the particle *um* is often inserted before the infinitive. Thus,

Diese Nachricht ist zu gut, um wahr zu sein, *This message is too good to be true.*

Dieser Knabe ist zu jung, (um) diese Arbeit zu verrichten, *This boy is too young to do this work.*

(c) As a complement of verbs—generally as the object toward which an implied activity, desire, or emotion of the mind is directed; as, *sich freuen, to rejoice; sich bemühen, to strive; hoffen, to hope; gedenken, to intend; nötigen, to necessitate, to compel; vergessen, to forget; verbieten, to forbid*. Thus,

Es freut uns, Sie zu sehen, *We are glad to see you.*

Er bemühte sich, ihn einzuholen, *He strove to overtake him.*

Ich rate dir zu schweigen, *I advise you to be silent.*

(d) As a complement of many verbs that serve to designate the time or mode of an action; as, *anfangen, to begin; aufhören, to cease; fortfahren, to continue; eilen, to hasten; pflegen, to be wont; vermögen, to be able; brauchen, to need; wissen, to know*, etc.

Er hat bereits angefangen, das Buch zu übersetzen, *He has already begun to translate the book.*

Sie brauchen es nicht zu wissen, *They do not need to know it.*

(e) The infinitive with *zu* is sometimes employed as the predicate of a proposition in connection with the verbs *sein*,

to be; bleiben, to stay, remain; scheinen, to appear; stehen, to remain. The infinitive, in this connection, though active in form, has generally a passive signification. Thus,

Es ist keine Zeit zu verlieren, *There is no time to be lost.*

Er ist nirgends anzutreffen, *He is nowhere to be found.*

Das scheint nicht wahr zu sein, *This does not seem to be true.*

3. The infinitive with *zu* sometimes serves to denote the purpose or design of an action or state expressed by a previous verb, in which case the particle *um* is usually prefixed, in order to add emphasis to the expression. This is especially the case when the infinitive denotes the purpose for which the subject acts. Thus,

Er geht in die Stadt, um seine Freunde zu besuchen, *He goes to town to visit his friends.*

Ich komme, um dir etwas mitzuteilen, *I come to tell you something.*

The infinitive with *zu* is used after the prepositions *ohne, without; (an)statt, instead, and um.* Thus,

Anstatt zu arbeiten hat er geschlafen, *Instead of working he has slept.*

Er ging an mir vorbei, ohne zu grüßen, *He passed by me without bowing.*

THE PARTICIPLE

26. General Remarks.—The participles partake of the nature of the verb and of the adjective and are, therefore, also called verb adjectives. They partake of the nature of the verb in having the meaning and the adjuncts of a verb, while they share in the nature of adjectives in having the same grammatical construction that belongs to adjectives. There are two kinds of German participles; the present participle, as *liebend, loving; lobend, praising*, expressing a continuing action, and the perfect participle, as *geliebt, loved; gelobt, praised*, expressing a completed action. The present participle is of active, the perfect participle of passive meaning.

Participles are declined like adjectives and follow the same rules of inflection; thus, *der liebende Vater, the loving father; ein geliebtes Kind, a beloved child*. Having the nature of adjectives, the present participle in a few and the perfect participle in many instances readily admit of the degrees of comparison. Like adjectives, participles are also used substantively; as, *der Genesene, one who has recovered from sickness; die Sterbende, the dying woman; das Verlangte, that which was wished for; etc.*

27. The Present Participle.—The present participle is used

1. As an adjective; thus either being made the predicate of a proposition, or being joined to a noun in an attributive sense. As an adjective, it agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case; and it may also take a direct or indirect object like the verb from which it is derived. Thus,

Das Wasser ist siedend, The water is boiling.

das siedende Wasser, the boiling water

Die Landschaft ist entzückend, The landscape is charming.

die alles belebende Sonne, the all animating sun

The present participle, however, is seldom otherwise employed with a noun than in an attributive sense. Its predicate use is found only in those words that have so far lost the character of participles that they are commonly recognized only as adjectives. Thus,

reizend, charming

drückend, oppressive

kränkend, mortifying

hinreißend, overpowering

einnehmend, captivating

leidend, ailing

bringend, pressing, urging

Such combinations, therefore, as, *I am reading, we are walking*, and the like, which are so common in English, do not exist in German, except in the case of those participles that have lost their true participial character. Thus,

Das Stück war hinreißend, The piece was overpowering.

2. The present participle may be used adverbially. Thus,

Er hat die Arbeit in **überraschend** kurzer Zeit ausgeführt, *He has executed this work in a surprisingly short time.*

3. The present participle, in connection with the article, is often used substantively, the noun being understood; as *der Lesende, the reader; der Sterbende, the dying.*

4. The participle, however, cannot in German, as in English, be made an abstract verbal noun by means of an article. In rendering properly such phrases as *the reading, the writing* in German, the present infinitive must be used; thus, *das Lesen, das Schreiben.*

5. The present participle may be used appositively, denoting a concomitant circumstance, state or condition. Thus,

Diesem Befehl **folgend**, ging ich zur Stadt, *Following this order I went to town.*

Ihm die Hände **drückend** nahm er Abschied, *Shaking hands, he took leave.*

This construction, however, is not so common in German as in English, and it cannot be used to express mere adverbial relations of time, cause, or manner. The participle of an English sentence so used becomes an adverbial clause in German, especially when the subject of the participle is different from that of the verb, or when, in English, the compound participle is employed. Thus,

Not understanding what he meant, I asked him for some explanations, Da ich nicht verstand, was er meinte, bat ich ihn um einige Erklärungen.

The sun being risen I set out on my journey, Als die Sonne aufgegangen war, reiste ich ab.

After having breakfasted he read his paper, Nachdem er gefrühstückt hatte, las er seine Zeitung.

28. The Perfect Participle.—The perfect participle is used:

1. In the conjugation of the perfect tenses and of the passive voice.

2. As an adjective with nouns. In this construction it is much more common in German than in English, many participles having lost all their original participial character and now being mere adjectives.

Dies ist mein **geliebter** Sohn, *This is my beloved son.*

Dieser Mann ist sehr **gelehrt**, *This man is very learned.*

The perfect participle, when formed from transitive verbs and used as an adjective, always has a passive signification, and is therefore used adjectively only by way of exception. When formed from impersonal or reflexive verbs, it is employed neither in an attributive nor in a predicative sense, but serves simply to form the compound tenses. Thus,

Ich habe mich **gefreut**, **geärgert**, **geschämt**, *I have rejoiced, I have been vexed, ashamed.*

Of intransitive verbs, only those that take the auxiliary *sein* can be used in both the attributive and in the predicative relation. Thus,

Das Haus ist **abgebrannt**, *The house is burned down.*

Das **abgebrannte** Haus wurde wieder aufgebaut, *The house that has burned down, has again been rebuilt.*

3. The perfect participle, like the present participle, is sometimes used in an adverbial manner. Thus,

Er besitzt eine **gemäßigt** liberale Meinung, *He possesses moderate liberal views.*

4. The perfect participle is often used as a noun and is then capitalized. Thus,

Die **Unterworfenen** gaben sich mit ihrem Loos zufrieden, *Those who were brought into subjection, were contented with their lot.*

Er hatte das **Verlangte** nicht auf Lager, *What was wanted, he did not have in stock.*

5. The perfect participle, in the sense of the English present participle *have*, is frequently used with the verb *kommen*. Thus,

Er kommt **gefahren**, *He comes driving in a carriage.*

Sie kamen **gelaufen**, *They came running.*

6. Like the present participle, the perfect participle may be used as an appositional predicate. Thus,

Von zwei Soldaten **begleitet**, schritt er dem Dorfe zu, *Accompanied by two soldiers, he went toward the village.*

Durch die Krankheit **geschwächt**, konnte er nur sehr wenig arbeiten, *Weakened by illness, he could work but very little.*

But,

Da ich nicht verstanden hatte, was er gesagt, richtete ich einige Fragen an ihn, *Not having understood what he had said, I asked him some questions.*

7. In certain expressions, the perfect participle is absolutely used with a noun in the accusative case. Thus,

Das Buch kostet, den Einband **abgerechnet**, zwei Mark, *The book costs two marks, exclusive of the binding.*

Sie seufzet hinaus in die finstere Nacht, das Auge vom Weinen **getrübet**, *She sighs out into the dark night, her eyes bedimmed with tears.*

diesen Fall **ausgenommen**, *this case being excepted*

8. The perfect participle is sometimes used with imperative force. Thus,

Geladen!

Stillgestanden! *Stand still!*

Nur nicht lange **gefragt!** *Do not ask long!*

29. The Gerundive.—The gerundive is made by placing *zu* before the present participle. It can be formed from transitive verbs only, and is to be taken in a future passive sense, denoting *feasibility, obligation, propriety*. Thus,

eine schwer **zu beantwortende** Frage, *a question difficult to answer*
eine **zu lobende** That, *a deed to be praised*

SYNTAX OF THE ADVERB

30. Adverbs serve to modify the signification of verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. They are indeclinable and, as already shown, are primitive words or formed either by derivation or by composition from other parts of speech.

With respect to their function, adverbs may be divided into simple adverbs and adverbial conjunctions. The adverbial conjunctions, besides having the function of a simple adverb, serve at the same time to indicate the logical connection between two clauses.

31. The use of many adverbs and adverbial conjunctions is highly idiomatical and can hardly be determined by rule, but must be learned by practice. In some cases they have a purely modal force expressing attitude of mind and feeling—denoted in English by the tone of voice only. In other cases special senses arise out of particular combinations. The following alphabetical list, with examples, will be found to be of much help to students.

1. **Aber**, *but, however*, may follow a positive or a negative statement; it limits a preceding statement by opposition only. Its cognate *sondern*, *but*, follows a negative statement only and introduces a substitute statement.

Es ist gut, aber nicht schön, *It is good, but not beautiful.*

Es ist nicht neu, aber es ist schön, *It is not new, but still it is beautiful.*

Sie kann es thun; will sie aber auch? *She can do it; will she though?*

Er aber wollte nicht gehen, *He, however, would not go.*

2. **Als**, *when, as, than*; **als ob**, *as if*; after negative words *but, except*; **sowohl als**, *as well as, as*. Thus,

Als er ging, war es Nacht, *When he went, it was night.*

Er sieht aus, als ob er krank wäre, *He looks as if he were ill.*

Ich habe nichts als das Leben, *I have nothing but life.*

Süßer ist nichts als Liebe, *Nothing is sweeter than love.*

Er blieb als Geißel zurück, *He remained as a hostage.*

3. **Also**, *thus, so; consequently, therefore; then*. Thus,

Er hat es mir versprochen, also muß er es thun, *He has promised it; consequently, he must do it.*

Sie kennen ihn also? *You know him then?*

A ist $= B$, B ist $= C$, also ist auch $A = C$.

4. **Auch**, *also, too, moreover, besides; even; wenn auch, even if; auch nicht, nor, neither; wer auch, was auch, wie auch, etc., whoever, whatever, however, etc.* Thus,

Der Vater ist auch hier gewesen, *The father also has been here.*

Sie kennen ihn, ich kenne ihn auch, *You know him? I know him too.*

Sie kennen ihn nicht, ich kenne ihn auch nicht, *You do not know him, neither do I.*

Schrecklich immer, auch in gerechter Sache, ist Gewalt, *Dreadful always, even in a just cause, is violence.*

Wo er auch sein mag, er wird immer unser gedenken, *Wherever he may be, he will always think of us.*

5. **Bald**, *soon, presently; easily, nearly, almost; bald . . . bald, now . . . then.*

Er wird bald ankommen, *He will arrive soon.*

Er wird bald böse, *He is easily provoked.*

Ich wäre bald gefallen, *I almost fell.*

Es ist bald vier Uhr, *It is nearly four o'clock.*

Bald ist er hier, bald dort, *Now he is here, then there.*

6. **Bis**, *till, until; as far as; up to, even to.* Thus,

Warte bis ich zurückkomme, *Wait till I return.*

Er ging bis an die Brücke, *He went as far as the bridge.*

Sie standen bis an den Hals im Wasser, *They stood in the water up to their necks.*

Ich habe ihn bis auf den letzten Pfennig bezahlt, *I have paid him to the last penny.*

Alle bis auf Sie sind zufrieden, *All except you are satisfied.*

Nicht eher endete der Kampf, als bis der letzte Mann gefallen war, *The combat did not come to an end until the last man fell.*

7. **Da**, *then, now; since, as; there; when, while, that; under those circumstances, in that case, so, hence; in that respect, in that point; da-sein, to be at hand, present, here.* Thus,

Da er nicht geht, so gehe ich, *As he does not go, I am going.*

Du standst hier, ich stand da, *You stood here, I stood there.*

Am dem Tage, da er geboren wurde, . . . *On the day, when he was born, . . .*

Da bin ich schon wieder, *Here I am again already.*

Es regnete und da blieb ich lieber zu Hause, *It rained and so I preferred to stay home.*

8. **Dabei**, *thereat, there, near it; at it, in it, in doing so, in saying so; with it, at the same time, along with it, meanwhile.* Thus,

Er laß, und dabei schlief er ein, *He was reading and thereat he fell asleep.*

Er ist noch jung und dabei hoch begabt, *He is young yet and very highly gifted too.*

Dabei sah er mich an, *At the same time he looked at me.*

Dabei soll es nicht bleiben, *The matter shall not rest there.*

9. **Dadurch**, *thereby, by this means, through it.* Thus,

Dadurch wirst du nichts erlangen, *By this you will get nothing.*

Wir reisten zusammen, und dadurch wurde ich bekannt mit ihm, *We traveled together, and thereby I became acquainted with him.*

10. **Dafür**, *for it, for that, for this; in the place, instead, of it; to make up for it; dafürhalten, to be of opinion.* Thus,

Diese Arznei ist gut dafür, *This medicine is good for that.*

Gieb mir den Apfel, ich gebe die diese Blume dafür, *Give me the apple, I will give you this flower for it.*

Ich kann nichts dafür, *It is not my fault.*

Ich halte dafür, daß . . . *I am of opinion that . . .*

11. **Dagegen**, *against it or them, on the other hand, however, in comparison with.* Thus,

Der Wagen stand da und ich rannte dagegen, *The carriage stood there and I ran against it.*

Ich habe nichts dagegen, *I have no objection.*

Er ist krank, ich dagegen bin gesund, *He is ill, I on the other hand am healthy.*

12. **Damit**, *therewith, with it, so saying, by it, thereby; conjunction, in order that, in order to, so that.* Thus,

Was wollen Sie damit sagen? *What do you mean by it?*

Er nahm das Messer und spielte damit, *He took the knife and played with it.*

Es ist aus damit, *There is an end of it.*

Wir werden kommen, damit ihr zufrieden seid, *We will come, in order to satisfy you.*

13. **Daran**, of it, about it; at it, against it; by it; for it; in it. Thus,

Ich dachte nicht daran, *I did not think of it.*

Ein Baum mit vielen Äpfeln daran, *A tree with many apples on it.*

Ich kannte ihn daran, *I knew him by that.*

Daran thut er wohl; *He acts well in this.*

Es liegt nichts daran, *It is of no consequence.*

14. **Darauf**, thereupon, then, afterwards, after that; on it; to it. Thus,

Darauf folgte der Tanz, *Thereupon dancing followed.*

Bald darauf kam er, *Soon after that, he came.*

Dort stand ein Baum und darauf saß ein Vogel, *There stood a tree and on it a bird was sitting.*

Achte darauf, *Pay attention to that.*

15. **Daß**, conjunction, that, so that; daß nicht, lest; ohne daß, without; als daß, rather than.

Er sagte, daß er heute fort geht, *He said that he leaves today.*

Wie lange ist es, daß er hier war, *How long is it since he was here?*

Warte, bis daß er kommt, *Wait till he comes.*

Sie ging, ohne daß sie etwas sagte, *She went, without saying anything.*

Er hungert lieber, als daß er das essen würde, *He remains hungry rather than eat this.*

16. **Dazu**, thereto, for it, with it, in addition, besides, more than that, and that. Thus,

Dazu kommt, daß . . . *Add to this that . . .*

Ich spielte auf der Violine und sie sang dazu, *I played the violin and she sang to it.*

Dazu brauchen wir viel Zeit, *For this we need much time.*

Er gehört mit dazu, *He has a hand in it.*

Er ist arbeitssam und dazu sehr sparsam, *He is industrious, and very saving at that.*

17. **Denn**, conj. for; adv. then, please, pray, tell me, why! then, consequently, of course. Thus,

Ich muß ihn achten, denn er ist ein aufrichtiger Mann, *I must respect him, for he is an upright man.*

Warum geht er denn nicht mit uns? *Why then does he not go with us?*

Wenn das nicht schön ist, was nennst du denn schön, *If this is not beautiful, pray, what do you call beautiful?*

Was willst du denn, *Why what do you want?*

18. **Desto**, in connection with *je*, *je . . . desto, the . . . the.*

19. **Doch**, *yet, still, for all that, however, notwithstanding, nevertheless; really, I am sure, I dare say; I pray, please; at any rate, anyway; at least.* Thus,

Er ist groß, doch nicht groß genug, *He is tall, still not tall enough.*

Das ist doch sonderbar, *That is really singular.*

Ich möchte doch wissen, wo er ist, *Why, I should like to know where he is.*

Gehen Sie doch mit mir! *I pray go with me.*

Ja, doch! Nein doch! *Yes, indeed! No, indeed!*

Er schreibt uns doch nicht, *Anyway he does not write.*

Sie kommen doch, *Surely you will come.*

20. **Eben**, *exactly, accurately, even, just, just now, just then.* Thus,

Sie ist eben so alt wie ich, *She is just as old as I.*

Wir gehen eben aus, *We are just going out.*

Das dachte ich eben, *That is exactly what I thought.*

Eben darum will ich kommen, *For that very reason I will come.*

21. **Ehe**, *ere, before, formerly, rather; eher*, comparative, *sooner.* Thus,

Du kamst, ehe er kam, *You came, before he came.*

Ich möchte eher sterben als so leben, *I would rather die than to live thus.*

Er ging nicht eher, als bis er sie alle gesehen hatte, *He did not go till he had seen them all.*

22. **Einmal**, *once, once upon a time; for once, once for all; pray, just, only; noch einmal, once more, twice again; auf einmal, all at once, suddenly; nicht einmal, not even; noch einmal, once more.* Thus,

Es war einmal ein Mann, *There was once a man.*

Er hat noch einmal soviel als ich, *He has twice as much as I.*

Einmal des Jahres schreibt er, *Once a year he writes.*

Kommen Sie einmal her, *Just come here.*

Es ist nun einmal so, *Since it is thus, it cannot be helped.*

23. **Erst**, *now, for the first time, only just now, not until, not before; first, at first; only; once, as soon as; no more than; no farther than; only to; erst, recht, all the more.* Thus,

Erst bete, dann arbeite, *First pray, then work.*

Sie ist erst zehn Jahre alt, *She is only ten years old.*

Wir haben erst angefangen, *We have only just begun.*

Er wird erst morgen gehen, *He will not go till tomorrow.*

24. **Etwas**, *perhaps, peradventure; about, nearly.* Thus,

Er ist etwa dreißig Jahre alt, *He is about thirty years old.*

Habe ich Sie etwa beleidigt? *Have I perhaps offended you?*

25. **Gar**, (adding force to words) *fully, quite, entirely, very, at all; I hope, perhaps; gar, sogar, even; gar nicht, not at all; gar nichts, nothing at all; gar zu, too.* Thus,

Es ist schon gar lange her . . . *It is very long since . . .*

Er kennt ihn nur gar zu wohl, *He knows him only too well.*

Es ist schädlich, wenn nicht gar gefährlich, *It is injurious, it not even dangerous.*

Ich habe gar keine Furcht, *I have no fear at all.*

Warum nicht gar! *Why, indeed!*

Ich sehe es gar nicht, *I do not see it at all.*

26. **Gerade**, *just, exactly, straight; directly, precisely; without reserve, plainly; gerade zu, gerade fort, even on, straight along.* Thus,

Er kam gerade auf uns zu, *He came straight up to us.*

Es ist gerade drei Uhr, *It is just three o'clock.*

Er ist gerade gekommen, *He came just now.*

Ich war gerade zugegen, *It happened that I was present.*

27. **Gern**, *willingly, gladly*; it often answers to *like, be fond of*; comparative *lieber, rather*; superlative, *am liebsten*, *gar gern, herzlich gern, with all my heart*.

Ich thue es gern. *I do it gladly.*

Sie hören es gern. *They like to hear it.*

Ich trinke gern Milch. *I am fond of milk.*

Wir möchten gern deutsch lernen. *We would like to study German.*

Er hat sie sehr gern. *He likes her very much.*

Dieser Hund beißt gern. *This dog is inclined to bite.*

28. **Gleich**, *immediately, presently, directly*; jetzt gleich, *immediately*; often equivalent to *obgleich, though*. Thus,

Ich habe es gleich gesagt. *I said so at the beginning.*

Wir sind gleich fertig. *We shall be done directly.*

Ob er gleich nicht reich, so ist er doch zufrieden. *Though he is not rich, he is nevertheless contented.*

29. **Immer**, *always, ever; still, yet; nevertheless*; auf immer, *forever*; noch immer, *still*; immer mehr und mehr, *more and more*; immer weiter, *further*; auf immer, *for ever*; immer wieder, *again and again*. Thus,

So sei es immer. *Thus be it ever.*

Er ist noch immer hier. *He is still here.*

Er kann es immer wissen. *He may know it, I don't care.*

Er sage, was er immer wolle. *Let him say what he pleases.*

Su wirst immer stolzer. *You are becoming prouder and prouder.*

30. **Irgend**, adding to the following word the notion of *any, at all, ever, soever*; irgend wo, *anywhere, somewhere*; of an indefinite time, *at any time, ever*; of an indefinite manner, *anyhow, in some way*; nirgends, *nowhere*.

31. **Ja**, *yes, indeed; why, don't you see, don't you know; nay, even; by all means*; ja nicht, *by no means*; ja wohl, *yes, I have, I did, etc.* Thus,

bleiben Sie ja hier. *Stay here by all means.*

Thun Sie es ja nicht. *Do not do it, by any means.*

Ich kann ja nicht lesen. *Why, I cannot read.*

Wenn es ja länger dauern sollte, so . . . *But if it should take longer, so . . .*

Haben Sie es ihm gegeben? Jawohl, *Have you given it to him? I have.*

32. Je, *ever, at any time*; je . . . je . . . , je . . . desto, je . . . umso, *the . . . the*; von je her, *at all times*; je nachdem, *according as*; je mehr, desto besser, *the more, the better*; je nun, *well, well now*. Thus,

Erfahrung hat das von je her bewiesen, *Experience has at all times proved that . . .*

Sind Sie je in Berlin gewesen? *Have you ever been in Berlin?*

Je nachdem er gehandelt hat, wird sein Loos sein, *According as he has acted will his lot be.*

33. **Witten**, *mid, midst*, usually with a preposition. Thus,

Er kam mitten in der Nacht, *He came in the middle of the night.*

Ich habe es mitten durch geschnitten, *I have cut it through the midst.*

34. **Noch**, *still, yet*; noch nicht, *not yet*; noch einmal, *once more*; noch immer, *even now, still*; noch ein, *another*; ehe noch, *before, even before*; weder . . . noch *neither . . . nor*.

Sind Sie noch immer krank? *Are you still ill?*

Ich habe ihn noch nicht gesehen, *I have not yet seen him.*

Singen Sie es noch einmal, *Sing it once more.*

Ich thue es noch heute, *I will do it this very day.*

Er soll noch kommen, *He is still to come.*

Nehmen Sie noch einen Apfel, *Take another apple.*

Beendige eine Sache, wenn sie auch noch so klein scheint, ehe du eine andere anfängst, *Finish one thing if it seems ever so small, before you begin another.*

35. **Nun**, *now, well, very well*. Thus,

Was ist nun zu thun, *What is to be done now.*

Nun was giebt's? *Well, what is the matter?*

Es ist nun einmal so, *Well, it can't be helped.*

36. *Nur, only, but; just, please, pray; at all, even, ever.*
Thus,

Das weiß ich nur zu gut, *That I know but too well.*

Ich habe nur einen Freund, *I have only one friend.*

Laßt ihn nur lesen, *Just let him read.*

Das laß nur hübsch allein, *You had better let it alone.*

37. *Schon, already, even now, even then; schon gut, all right;*
often rendered by a special turn of the English sentence.
Thus,

Sie kommen schon, *They are coming already.*

Ich warte nun schon vier Jahre, *I have been waiting these four years.*

Schon der Anfang war falsch, *The very beginning was wrong.*

Schon um deinetwillen müssen wir es thun, *We must do it, were it merely for your sake.*

Ich werde es ihm schon sagen, *I shall tell him, don't be afraid.*

Es wird schon alles gut werden, *I am sure, all will go well.*

38. *So, so, thus, as follows, in this way; so? is that so, really? so, and so, hence, so then, then; as; eben so, just as; ein so or so ein, such a, so . . . a.* Thus,

Es war so kalt, daß . . . , *It was so cold, that . . .*

So ein Buch sieht man selten, *One seldom sees such a book.*

Wie kann er so etwas glauben? *How can he believe such a thing?*

Wie ist die Welt doch so schön, *How beautiful the world is!*

Er ist hier. So! Ist es möglich? *He is here. Indeed! Is it possible?*

Seine Pferde, sowie seine Wagen, *His horses as well as his carriages.*

39. *Wie, how, what; as when, just as, as well as; like, as if; what? such as.* Thus,

Wissen Sie, wie er singt? *Do you know how he sings?*

Er spricht, wie er denkt, *He speaks as he thinks.*

Sie wollen fort, wie ich höre, *You wish to go away. So I hear.*

Sie singt wie eine Lerche, *She sings like a lark.*

Wie? Du kennst ihn schon? *What? You know him?*

40. **Wohl**, *well, surely; perhaps, probably, I presume, I should say; it is true, indeed.* Thus,

Ich befinde mich wohl, *I am well.*

Mir ist nicht wohl, *I do not feel well.*

Lebe wohl! *Farewell!*

Das thut einem wohl, *That is pleasant for one.*

Du hast uns wohl noch nicht gesehen? *You have not, perhaps, seen us yet?*

Das ist wohl wahr, *That may be so.*

Das ist wohl nicht möglich, *That is scarcely possible.*

Er hat es wohl gehört aber nicht verstanden, *He has heard it indeed, but not understood it.*

41. **Zwar**, *to be sure, it is true, though;* und zwar, *and that.* Thus,

Es ist zwar schon spät, aber er wird doch noch kommen, *It is late already, it is true, but he will come yet.*

Zwar langsam, aber sicher, *Slow, it is true, but sure.*

1

.

.

1

.

1

1

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 12)

SYNTAX—(Continued)

SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITION

1. The term **preposition** is very difficult to define, for there is, perhaps, no word that is used solely as a preposition. All prepositions were originally adverbs; most of them are still very frequently used as such both in English and in German. When so used a preposition can, of course, have no object.

Wir gingen **mit**, *We went along.*

Er blieb **auß**, *He stayed out.*

When, therefore, such words as **mit**, **auß**, are combined with a verb alone, they should be called adverbs; while, when used with a noun, they are properly prepositions. Usually, however, all those words that are commonly used with a noun object to express relation, are called prepositions even though they may sometimes be used as adverbs.

The use of the various prepositions has gradually been extended from mere expression of the relations of place or time to denote a variety of figurative and kindred relations. Enumeration of all their idiomatic uses and acquired meanings is very difficult, perhaps impossible; some of the more important ones are given below.

For notice of copyright, see page immediately following the title page

8. **Dabei**, *thereat, there, near it; at it, in it, in doing so, in saying so; with it, at the same time, along with it, meanwhile.* Thus,

Er laß, und dabei schlief er ein, *He was reading and thereat he fell asleep.*

Er ist noch jung und dabei hoch begabt, *He is young yet and very highly gifted too.*

Dabei sah er mich an, *At the same time he looked at me.*

Dabei soll es nicht bleiben, *The matter shall not rest there.*

9. **Dadurch**, *thereby, by this means, through it.* Thus,

Dadurch wirst du nichts erlangen, *By this you will get nothing.*

Wir reisten zusammen, und dadurch wurde ich bekannt mit ihm, *We traveled together, and thereby I became acquainted with him.*

10. **Dafür**, *for it, for that, for this; in the place, instead, of it; to make up for it; dafürhalten, to be of opinion.* Thus,

Diese Arznei ist gut dafür, *This medicine is good for that.*

Gieh mir den Apfel, ich gebe die diese Blume dafür, *Give me the apple, I will give you this flower for it.*

Ich kann nichts dafür, *It is not my fault.*

Ich halte dafür, daß . . . *I am of opinion that . . .*

11. **Dagegen**, *against it or them, on the other hand, however, in comparison with.* Thus,

Der Wagen stand da und ich rannte dagegen, *The carriage stood there and I ran against it.*

Ich habe nichts dagegen, *I have no objection.*

Er ist krank, ich dagegen bin gesund, *He is ill, I on the other hand am healthy.*

12. **Damit**, *therewith, with it, so saying, by it, thereby; conjunction, in order that, in order to, so that.* Thus,

Was wollen Sie damit sagen? *What do you mean by it?*

Er nahm das Messer und spielte damit, *He took the knife and played with it.*

Es ist aus damit, *There is an end of it.*

Wir werden kommen, damit ihr zufrieden seid, *We will come, in order to satisfy you.*

13. **Daran**, of it, about it; at it, against it; by it; for it; in it. Thus,

Ich dachte nicht daran, *I did not think of it.*

Ein Baum mit vielen Äpfeln daran, *A tree with many apples on it.*

Ich kannte ihn daran, *I knew him by that.*

Daran thut er wohl! *He acts well in this.*

Es liegt nichts daran, *It is of no consequence.*

14. **Darauf**, thereupon, then, afterwards, after that; on it; to it. Thus,

Darauf folgte der Tanz, *Thereupon dancing followed.*

Bald darauf kam er, *Soon after that, he came.*

Dort stand ein Baum und darauf saß ein Vogel, *There stood a tree and on it a bird was sitting.*

Achte darauf, *Pay attention to that.*

15. **Daß**, conjunction, that, so that; daß nicht, lest; ohne daß, without; als daß, rather than.

Er sagte, daß er heute fort geht, *He said that he leaves today.*

Wie lange ist es, daß er hier war, *How long is it since he was here?*

Warte, bis daß er kommt, *Wait till he comes.*

Sie ging, ohne daß sie etwas sagte, *She went, without saying anything.*

Er hungert lieber, als daß er das essen würde, *He remains hungry rather than eat this.*

16. **Dazu**, thereto, for it, with it, in addition, besides, more than that, and that. Thus,

Dazu kommt, daß . . . *Add to this that . . .*

Ich spielte auf der Violine und sie sang dazu, *I played the violin and she sang to it.*

Dazu brauchen wir viel Zeit, *For this we need much time.*

Er gehört mit dazu, *He has a hand in it.*

Er ist arbeitssam und dazu sehr sparsam, *He is industrious, and very saving at that.*

17. **Denn**, conj. for; adv. then, please, pray, tell me, why! then, consequently, of course. Thus,

Ich muß ihn achten, denn er ist ein aufrichtiger Mann, *I must respect him, for he is an upright man.*

Warum geht er denn nicht mit uns? *Why then does he not go with us?*

Wenn das nicht schön ist, was nennst du denn schön, *If this is not beautiful, pray, what do you call beautiful?*

Was willst du denn, *Why what do you want?*

18. **Desto**, in connection with je, je . . . desto, *the . . . the*.

19. **Doch**, *yet, still, for all that, however, notwithstanding, nevertheless; really, I am sure, I dare say; I pray, please; at any rate, anyway; at least.* Thus,

Er ist groß, doch nicht groß genug, *He is tall, still not tall enough.*

Das ist doch sonderbar, *That is really singular.*

Ich möchte doch wissen, wo er ist, *Why, I should like to know where he is.*

Gehen Sie doch mit mir! *I pray go with me.*

Ja, doch! Nein doch! *Yes, indeed! No, indeed!*

Er schreibt uns doch nicht, *Anyway he does not write.*

Sie kommen doch, *Surely you will come.*

20. **Eben**, *exactly, accurately, even, just, just now, just then.* Thus,

Sie ist eben so alt wie ich, *She is just as old as I.*

Wir gehen eben aus, *We are just going out.*

Das dachte ich eben, *That is exactly what I thought.*

Eben darum will ich kommen, *For that very reason I will come.*

21. **Ehe**, *ere, before, formerly, rather; eher*, comparative, *sooner.* Thus,

Du kamst, ehe er kam, *You came, before he came.*

Ich möchte eher sterben als so leben, *I would rather die than to live thus.*

Er ging nicht eher, als bis er sie alle gesehen hatte, *He did not go till he had seen them all.*

22. **Einmal**, *once, once upon a time; for once, once for all; pray, just, only; noch einmal, once more, twice again; auf einmal, all at once, suddenly; nicht einmal, not even; noch einmal, once more.* Thus,

Es war einmal ein Mann, *There was once a man.*

Er hat noch einmal soviel als ich, *He has twice as much as I.*

Einmal des Jahres schreibt er, *Once a year he writes.*

Kommen Sie einmal her, *Just come here.*

Es ist nun einmal so, *Since it is thus, it cannot be helped.*

23. **Erst**, *now, for the first time, only just now, not until, not before; first, at first; only; once, as soon as; no more than; no farther than; only to; erst, recht, all the more.* Thus,

Erst bete, dann arbeite, *First pray, then work.*

Sie ist erst zehn Jahre alt, *She is only ten years old.*

Wir haben erst angefangen, *We have only just begun.*

Er wird erst morgen gehen, *He will not go till tomorrow.*

24. **Etwa**, *perhaps, peradventure; about, nearly.* Thus,

Er ist etwa dreißig Jahre alt, *He is about thirty years old.*

Habe ich Sie etwa beleidigt? *Have I perhaps offended you?*

25. **Gar**, (adding force to words) *fully, quite, entirely, very, at all; I hope, perhaps; gar, sogar, even; gar nicht, not at all; gar nichts, nothing at all; gar zu, too.* Thus,

Es ist schon gar lange her . . . *It is very long since . . .*

Er kennt ihn nur gar zu wohl, *He knows him only too well.*

Es ist schädlich, wenn nicht gar gefährlich, *It is injurious, it not even dangerous.*

Ich habe gar keine Furcht, *I have no fear at all.*

Warum nicht gar! *Why, indeed!*

Ich sehe es gar nicht, *I do not see it at all.*

26. **Gerade**, *just, exactly, straight; directly, precisely; without reserve, plainly; gerade zu, gerade fort, even on, straight along.* Thus,

Er kam gerade auf uns zu, *He came straight up to us.*

Es ist gerade drei Uhr, *It is just three o'clock.*

Er ist gerade gekommen, *He came just now.*

Ich war gerade zugegen, *It happened that I was present.*

27. **Gern**, *willingly, gladly*; it often answers to *like, be fond of*; comparative *lieber, rather*; superlative, *am liebsten, gar gern, herzlich gern, with all my heart*.

Ich thue es gern, *I do it gladly.*

Sie hören es gern, *They like to hear it.*

Ich trinke gern Milch, *I am fond of milk.*

Wir möchten gern deutsch lernen, *We would like to study German.*

Er hat sie sehr gern, *He likes her very much.*

Dieser Hund beißt gern, *This dog is inclined to bite.*

28. **Gleich**, *immediately, presently, directly*; jetzt gleich, *immediately*; often equivalent to *obgleich, though*. Thus,

Ich habe es gleich gesagt, *I said so at the beginning.*

Wir sind gleich fertig, *We shall be done directly.*

ist er gleich nicht reich, so ist er doch zufrieden, *Though he is not rich, he is nevertheless contented.*

29. **Immer**, *always, ever; still, yet; nevertheless*; auf immer, *forever*; noch immer, *still*; immer mehr und mehr, *more and more*; immer weiter, *further*; auf immer, *for ever*; immer wieder, *again and again*. Thus,

So sei es immer, *Thus be it ever.*

Er ist noch immer hier, *He is still here.*

Er kann es immer wissen, *He may know it, I don't care.*

Er sage, was er immer wolle, *Let him say what he pleases.*

Du wirst immer stolzer, *You are becoming prouder and prouder.*

30. **Irgend**, adding to the following word the notion of *any, at all, ever, soever*; irgend wo, *anywhere, somewhere*; of an indefinite time, *at any time, ever*; of an indefinite manner, *anyhow, in some way; nirgends, nowhere*.

31. **Ja**, *yes, indeed; why, don't you see, don't you know; nay, even; by all means*; ja nicht, *by no means*; ja wohl, *yes, I have, I did, etc.* Thus,

Bleiben Sie ja hier, *Stay here by all means.*

Thun Sie es ja nicht, *Do not do it, by any means.*

Ich kann ja nicht lesen, *Why, I cannot read.*

Wenn es ja länger dauern sollte, so . . . *But if it should take longer, so . . .*

Haben Sie es ihm gegeben? Jawohl, *Have you given it to him? I have.*

32. Je, *ever, at any time*; je . . . je . . . , je . . . desto, je . . . umso, *the . . . the*; von je her, *at all times*; je nachdem, *according as*; je mehr, desto besser, *the more, the better*; je nun, *well, well now*. Thus,

Erfahrung hat das von je her bewiesen, *Experience has at all times proved that . . .*

Sind Sie je in Berlin gewesen? *Have you ever been in Berlin?*

Je nachdem er gehandelt hat, wird sein Loos sein, *According as he has acted will his lot be.*

33. **Witten**, *mid, midst*, usually with a preposition. Thus,

Er kam mitten in der Nacht, *He came in the middle of the night.*

Ich habe es mitten durch geschnitten, *I have cut it through the midst.*

34. **Noch**, *still, yet*; noch nicht, *not yet*; noch einmal, *once more*; noch immer, *even now, still*; noch ein, *another*; ehe noch, *before, even before*; weder . . . noch *neither . . . nor*.

Sind Sie noch immer krank? *Are you still ill?*

Ich habe ihn noch nicht gesehen, *I have not yet seen him.*

Singen Sie es noch einmal, *Sing it once more.*

Ich thue es noch heute, *I will do it this very day.*

Er soll noch kommen, *He is still to come.*

Nehmen Sie noch einen Apfel, *Take another apple.*

Beende eine Sache, wenn sie auch noch so klein scheint, ehe du eine andere anfängst, *Finish one thing if it seems ever so small, before you begin another.*

35. **Nun**, *now, well, very well*. Thus,

Was ist nun zu thun, *What is to be done now.*

Nun was giebt's? *Well, what is the matter?*

Es ist nun einmal so, *Well, it can't be helped.*

36. *Nur, only, but; just, please, pray; at all, even, ever.*
Thus,

Das weiß ich nur zu gut, *That I know but too well.*

Ich habe nur einen Freund, *I have only one friend.*

Laßt ihn nur lesen, *Just let him read.*

Das laß nur hübsch allein, *You had better let it alone.*

37. *Schon, already, even now, even then; schon gut, all right;*
often rendered by a special turn of the English sentence.
Thus,

Sie kommen schon, *They are coming already.*

Ich warte nun schon vier Jahre, *I have been waiting these four years.*

Schon der Anfang war falsch, *The very beginning was wrong.*

Schon um beinetwillen müssen wir es thun, *We must do it, were it merely for your sake.*

Ich werde es ihm schon sagen, *I shall tell him, don't be afraid.*

Es wird schon alles gut werden, *I am sure, all will go well.*

38. *So, so, thus, as follows, in this way; so? is that so, really? so, and so, hence, so then, then; as; eben so, just as; ein so or so ein, such a, so . . . a.* Thus,

Es war so kalt, daß . . . , *It was so cold, that . . .*

So ein Buch sieht man selten, *One seldom sees such a book.*

Wie kann er so etwas glauben? *How can he believe such a thing?*

Wie ist die Welt doch so schön, *How beautiful the world is!*

Er ist hier. So! Ist es möglich? *He is here. Indeed! Is it possible?*

Seine Pferde, sowie seine Wagen, *His horses as well as his carriages.*

39. *Wie, how, what; as when, just as, as well as; like, as if; what? such as.* Thus,

Wissen Sie, wie er singt? *Do you know how he sings?*

Er spricht, wie er denkt, *He speaks as he thinks.*

Sie wollen fort, wie ich höre, *You wish to go away. So I hear.*

Sie singt wie eine Lerche, *She sings like a lark.*

Wie? Du kennst ihn schon? *What? You know him?*

40. **Wohl**, *well, surely; perhaps, probably, I presume, I should say; it is true, indeed.* Thus,

Ich befinde mich wohl, *I am well.*

Mir ist nicht wohl, *I do not feel well.*

Lebe wohl! *Farewell!*

Das thut einem wohl, *That is pleasant for one.*

Du hast uns wohl noch nicht gesehen? *You have not, perhaps, seen us yet?*

Das ist wohl wahr, *That may be so.*

Das ist wohl nicht möglich, *That is scarcely possible.*

Er hat es wohl gehört aber nicht verstanden, *He has heard it indeed, but not understood it.*

41. **Zwar**, *to be sure, it is true, though; und zwar, and that.* Thus,

Es ist zwar schon spät, aber er wird doch noch kommen, *It is late already, it is true, but he will come yet.*

Zwar langsam, aber sicher, *Slow, it is true, but sure.*

1. **An** is much oftener used with the dative than with the accusative.

(a) With the dative it denotes place, *at, near, close by, along*. Thus,

Wir sitzen am (an dem) Tische, *We are sitting at the table.*

Das Haus steht am Ufer des Meeres, *The house stands near the shore of the ocean.*

die Bäume am Wege, *the trees along the road*

Frankfurt am Main, *Frankfort on the Main*

An with a superlative denotes the highest degree of an action; it also marks time, specification, etc. in the sense of *at, in, on, by, from, with respect to, with regard to, of*, and is used idiomatically in many phrases. Thus,

am besten, *the best*

reich, arm an, *rich, poor in*

am schnellsten, *the quickest*

erkennen an, *to recognize by*

am Abend, *in the evening*

am Leben sein, *to be living*

am Morgen, *in the morning*

die Reihe ist an mir, *it is my turn*

an der Hand (führen), *by the hand*

(b) With the accusative, it marks motion *to, on, against, at, upon*. Thus,

Er kam an einen Fluß, *He came to a river.*

Wir setzten uns an den Tisch, *We seated ourselves at the table.*

Er hängt den Rock an die Wand, *He hangs the coat on the wall.*

denken an, *to think of*

schreiben an, *to write to*

2. **Auf, on, upon**, is used oftener with the accusative than with the dative.

(a) With the dative, it means *on, upon, on top of; at, in*.

auf dem Meere, *on the ocean*

auf dem Schlosse, *in the castle*

auf dem Dache, *on the roof*

auf der Universität, *at the university*

auf der Reise sein, *to travel*

auf dem Markt, *in the market place*

auf dem Wege, *on the way*

auf der Stelle, *on the spot*

(b) With the accusative, *auf* denotes place and direction, *on, for, up to, to, toward, in direction of*. Thus,

Der Wind trieb uns *auf* das Meer hinaus, *The wind drove us out on the sea.*

Er machte sich *auf* den Weg, *He set out.*

auf die Jagd gehen, *to go hunting*

auf die Reise gehen, *to go traveling*

acht geben *auf*, *to take care of*

auf den Ball gehen, *to go to the ball*

auf das Land gehen, *to go into the country*

Auf, with the accusative, also denotes time and is often used with adjectives denoting direction of mind, *on* or *toward*. Thus,

ein Viertel *auf* eins, *three quarters past twelve*

auf den nächsten Tag verschieben, *to put off for the next day*

auf etwas antworten, *to answer to something*

auf etwas hören, *to listen to something*

sich *auf* etwas verlassen, *to rely on something*

auf vier Wochen verreisen, *to go away for four weeks*

3. **Hinter** is less frequently used with the accusative than with the dative.

(a) With the dative, it means *behind, beyond*.

Die Stadt liegt *hinter* dem Berge, *The city lies beyond the mountain.*

Sie kamen *hinter* der Thür hervor, *They came out from behind the door.*

(b) With the accusative, it means *behind*.

Er trat *hinter* den Vorhang, *He stepped behind the curtain.*

4. **Neben** is used much oftener with the dative than with the accusative.

(a) With the dative, it means *by, by the side of, close by, beside, besides*.

Neben dem Rathaus steht die Kirche, *Close by the city hall stands the church.*

(b) With the accusative, it means *beside, close to, next to*.

Er baute sein Haus neben die Kirche, *He built his house close to the church.*

5. **In** is used oftener with the dative than with the accusative.

(a) With the dative, it means *in, at, within*. Thus,

Die Versammlung wird in dieser Halle abgehalten, *The meeting will take place in this hall.*

(b) With the accusative, it means *into, in*. Thus,

Er war mir treu bis in den Tod, *He has been faithful to me unto death.*

6. **Über** is oftener used with the accusative than with the dative.

(a) With the dative, it means *over, above, beyond*. Thus,
über allen Gipfeln ist Ruh, *Peace is reigning over all mountains.*

(b) With the accusative, it means *over, across, beyond*.
Thus,

Ein Vogel flog über das Haus, *A bird flew over the house.*

7. **Unter** is more frequently used with the dative than with the accusative.

(a) With the dative, it means *under, below, beneath, among*.
Thus,

Unter diesem Baume stand eine Bank, *Under this tree stood a bench.*

unter meinem Schutze, *under my protection*

unter der Bedingung, daß, *under the condition that*

unter anderen, *among other things*

unter uns gesagt, *he it spoken between us*

(b) With the accusative, it means *under, beneath, among*.
Thus,

Der Knabe trat unter diesen Baum, *The boy stepped under this tree.*

8. **Vor** is oftener used with the dative than with the accusative.

(a) With the dative, denoting place, time, etc., it means *before, in front of, in the presence of, at, near; ago; for, with; from, against.*

vor dem König, *before the king*

vor dem Thore, *outside the gate*

vor fünf Jahren, *five years ago*

vor Hunger sterben, *to starve to death*

sich vor jemandem fürchten, *to be afraid of somebody*

vor allem, *above all things*

(b) With the accusative, it means *before, in front of, opposite.* Thus,

Ich trat vor ihn, *I stepped before him.*

9. **Zwischen** is oftener used with the dative than with the accusative.

(a) With the dative, it means *between, amidst, among.* Thus,

Der Brief liegt zwischen den Zeitungen, *The letter lies between the papers.*

(b) With the accusative, it means *between, among.* Thus,

Wir traten zwischen die beiden feindlichen Parteien, *We stepped between the two hostile parties.*

PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

6. There are, in German as in English, a great number of **prepositional phrases** very freely used in the language of daily life. For the most part they consist of verbs or adjectives combined with certain prepositions. Since the prepositions employed in English do not always agree with their German equivalents, a somewhat extended list of English phrases with their German equivalents is given below. Such as are printed in black type are in especially frequent use and should be committed to memory.

VERBS IN CONNECTION WITH PREPOSITIONS

to abide by, in a thing, bleiben bei	to attend to, achten auf
to abide with a person, beharren bei	to avert from, abwenden von
to abound in, with, Überflut haben an	to banish from, verbannen aus
to absolve from, freisprechen von	to become of, werden aus
to abstain from, sich enthalten von	to beg for, bitten um
to account for, erklären acc.	to beg of, erbitten von
to accustom oneself to, sich gewöhnen an	to believe in, glauben an
to acquit of, freisprechen von	to bestow on, verleihen (dat.)
to adapt to, anpassen (dat.)	to beware of, sich hüten vor
to add to, hinzufügen zu	to bind to, binden an
to address to, richten an	to blame for, tadeln wegen
to adhere to, anhängen (dat.)	to blush at, erröten über
to adjoin to, grenzen an	to boast of, sich rühmen
to agree about, übereinkommen über	to border on, grenzen an
to agree with, übereinkommen mit	to bow to, sich verneigen vor
to agree to, einwilligen in	to burn with, brennen vor
to aim at, zielen nach, streben nach	to burst with, bersten vor
to allude to, anspielen auf	to buy of, from, kaufen von
to ally with, verbinden mit	to call on (a friend), at (a house), besuchen bei
to amount to, sich belaufen auf	to call for, rufen nach, abholen
to answer for, einstehen für	to care for, about, sich kümmern um
to appeal to, sich berufen auf	to catch at, greifen, haschen nach
to apply to, sich wenden an	to caution against, warnen vor
to approve a thing, of a thing, etwas billigen	to change for, vertauschen mit
to arise from, herrühren von	to change into, verwandeln in
to ascribe to, zuschreiben (dat.)	to charge with, anklagen (gen.)
to ask after, sich erkundigen nach	to cheat out of, betrügen um
to ask for, bitten um, fragen nach	to cling to, sich anklammern an
to ask of, erbitten von	to compare to, with, vergleichen mit
to aspire to, after, streben nach	to complain of, about, sich beklagen über
to assent to, beipflichten (dat.)	to comply with, willfahren (dat.)
to assign to, zuweisen (dat.)	to conceal from, verbergen vor
to assist at, zugegen sein bei	to conclude from, schließen aus
to atone for, sühnen, vergüten	to confer on, übertragen, verleihen
to attend on, aufwarten (dat.)	to confide in, vertrauen auf
	to confine to, beschränken auf
	to conform to, sich richten nach
	to congratulate on, glückwünschen zu

VERBS IN CONNECTION WITH PREPOSITIONS—(Continued)

to consent to, einwilligen in
to consist of, in, } bestehen
to be composed of, } aus, in
to contend for, streiten um
to contrast with, einen Gegensatz
bilden zu

to converse about, on, sich unter-
halten über

to convert into, verwandeln in

to crave for, flehen um

to cure of, heilen von

to deal in, handeln mit

to decide on, entscheiden über

to decline from, abweichen von

to decrease in, abnehmen an

to defend from, schützen vor

to degenerate into, ausarten in

to deliberate on, beratschlagen über

to delight in, sich erfreuen an

to deliver from, befreien von

to demand of, fordern von

to depart for, abreisen nach

to depend on, abhängen von

to deprive of, berauben (*gen.*)

to derive from, herleiten von

to descend from, abstammen von

to deserve of, sich verdient machen
um

to desire for, verlangen nach

to desist from, absteigen von

to despair of, verzweifeln an

to deter from, abschrecken von

to devolve on, zufallen, zuteil
werden (*dat.*)

to die of, sterben an

to die with, of, sterben vor

to differ from, verschieden sein von

to dig for, graben nach

to direct to, richten an

to disagree with, nicht überein-
stimmen mit

to disapprove of, mißbilligen

to discourse on, reden über

to dismiss from, entlassen aus

to dispense with, verzichten auf

to dispose of, verfügen über

to dispute on, about, streiten über

to dissent from, verschiedener Mei-
nung sein

to dissuade from, abraten von

to distinguish from, unterscheiden
von

to divide into, einteilen in

to divorce from, scheiden von

to doubt of, about, zweifeln an

to dream of, träumen von

to drink to, trinken auf

to dwell on, verweilen bei

to echo with, widerhallen von

to embark for, sich einschif-
fen nach

to encroach upon, eingreifen in

to end in, endigen mit

to engage in, sich beteiligen bei

to enter a room, in ein Zim-
mer treten

to enter into, sich einlassen in

to enter on, eingehen auf

to entrust one with a thing, einem
etwas anvertrauen

to escape from, entweichen aus

to exceed in, übertreffen an

to exchange for, vertauschen gegen

to exclude from, ausschließen aus

to exile from, verbannen aus

to extend to, sich erstrecken auf

to exult over, at, in, frohlocken über

to fall on, herfallen über

to fall to, zufallen (*dat.*)

to fasten to, befestigen an

to feed on, sich nähren von

to find fault with, tadeln (*acc.*)

to fire upon, Feuer geben auf

to fish for, fischen nach

to fit for, befähigen zu

to flee from, fliehen vor

to foam with (rage), schäumen vor
(Wut)

VERBS IN CONNECTION WITH PREPOSITIONS—(Continued)

to follow from, folgen aus
to free from, befreien von
 to frown on, upon, finster an-
 blicken (*acc.*)

to gaze at, on, anstarren
 (*acc.*)

to glance at, anblicken
 to glory in, stolz sein auf
 to glow with, glühen vor
 to grasp at, greifen nach
 to grieve at, for, sich grämen über
 to grumble at, murren über
 to guard against, from, sich hüten
 vor

to hear of, about, hören von,
über

to hear from, hören von

to hide from, verbergen vor

to hinder from, hindern an

to hint at, anspielen auf

to hope for, hoffen auf

to hunt after, for, nachjagen (*dat.*)

to impose on, auferlegen (*dat.*)

to increase in, zunehmen an

to indulge in, sich hingeben (*dat.*)

to inflict on, auferlegen (*dat.*)

to inform of, in Kenntnis setzen von

to ingratiate oneself with, sich be-
 liebt machen bei

to inquire of a person, jemanden
 befragen

to inquire after, for, about, sich
 erkundigen nach

to insist on, bestehen auf

to interfere with, in, sich ein-
 mischen in

to introduce to, vorstellen (*acc.*)

to intrude on, sich aufdrängen (*dat.*)

to involve in, verwickeln in

to issue from, herrühren von

to jest at, scherzen über

to join in, sich beteiligen bei,
an

to join with, to, verbinden mit

to judge from, by, urteilen nach

to judge of, urteilen über

to keep from, bewähren vor

to keep to, bleiben bei

to knock at, klopfen

to know about, of, wissen
über, von

to labor for, sich abmühen um

to labor under, leiden an, unter

to languish for, schmachten nach

to laugh at, lachen über

to lavish on, verschwenden an

to lean against, sich lehnen an

to lean upon, sich stützen auf

to leave for, abreisen nach

to light on, upon, stoßen auf

to limit to, sich beschränken auf

to listen to, horchen auf

to live on, by, leben von

to live with, wohnen bei

to long for, after, sich seh-
nen nach

to look after, sehen nach

to look at, ansehen (*acc.*)

to look for, suchen (*acc.*)

to look about for, sich umsehen nach

to look over, durchlesen, durchsehen

to make of, machen aus

to make up for, ersetzen

to measure by, messen nach

to meddle with, in, sich mischen in

to meditate on, nachdenken über

to meet one, with one, begegnen
 (*acc.*)

to mingle with, in, sich mischen un-
 ter

to mock at, spotten über

to mourn for, over, trau-
ern um, über

to murmur at, against, murren
 über

to muse on, nachsinnen über

to nod at, to one, einem zunicken

to object to, einwenden gegen

VERBS IN CONNECTION WITH PREPOSITIONS—(Continued)

to occur to, begegnen, zu stoßen
(*dat.*)

to pant for, after, sehnen nach

to part with, sich trennen
von

to partake of, teilnehmen,

to participate, teilhaben an

to pay for, bezahlen (*acc.*)

to perish with, by, umkommen vor

to persevere in, beharren bei

to persist in, bestehen auf

to pine at, sich grämen über

to pine for, after, sich sehnen nach

to play at, spielen (ein Spiel,
f. i., at cards)

to play for, spielen um

to ponder on, nachgrübeln über

to praise for, loben wegen

to prepare for, vorbereiten
auf

to present one with a thing, einem
etwas schenken

to preserve from, bewahren vor

to preside over, at, den Vorsitz
führen bei

to prevail over, die Oberhand
haben über

to prevent from, abhalten
von

to pride oneself on, in, sich einbil-
den auf

to proceed from, herrühren von

to profit by, Nutzen ziehen
aus

to protect from, against, schützen
vor, gegen

to quarrel about, sich streiten um

to rail at, spotten über

to rate at, schätzen auf

to reach to, reichen bis zu

to read to, vorlesen

to reconcile to, with, versöhnen
mit

to recover from, of, sich erholen von

to redder at, rot werden über

to reduce to, versetzen in

to refer to, verweisen auf

to reflect on, nachdenken über

to refrain from, sich enthalten (*gen.*)

to rejoice at, sich freuen über

to rejoice in, sich erfreuen an

to relate to, sich beziehen auf

to release } from, befreien von
to relieve }

to rely on, sich verlassen auf

to remind one of, jemanden erin-
nern an

to remove from, entfernen von

to repent of, bereuen (*acc.*)

to reply to, erwidern auf

to reproach one with, einem Vor-
würfe machen wegen

to request, to require of, fordern
von

to rescue from, befreien von

to resound with, widerhallen von

to rest from, ausruhen von

to restrain from, zurückhalten von

to restrict to, beschränken auf

to result from, herrühren von

to retire from, sich zurückziehen von

to revenge on, sich rächen
an

to rid of, from, befreien von

to ring for, klingeln nach, wegen

to rob of, berauben (*gen.*)

to rush upon, herfallen über

to sail for, to, segeln nach

to save from, bewahren vor

to scoff at, spotten über

to scold at, schelten über

to screen from, schützen, schirmen
vor

to search for, after, suchen
nach

to secure from, against, sichern
gegen, vor

to seek for, after, suchen nach

VERBS IN CONNECTION WITH PREPOSITIONS—(Continued)

to send upon, expedite *acc.*
 to send for, **holen lassen**
 to separate from, **trennen von**
 to serve for, **dienen zu**
 to set off, out. for, **sich aufmachen nach**
 to shake with, **zittern vor**
 to share in, **theilen in**
 to shelter, shield, from, **schützen vor**
 to shiver with, **zittern vor**
 to shoot at, **schießen nach**
 to shrink from, at, **schrückschrecken**
 to shudder at, **schauern vor**
 to sigh for, after, **seufzen nach**
 to smell of, **riechen nach**
 to smile at, **lächeln über**
 to sneer at, **spötteln über**
 to speak of, about, **sprechen von, über**
 to speak on, **reden über**
 to speak to, with, **sprechen mit**
 to spend one's time in, **seine Zeit verbringen mit**
 to stand by, **stehen bei**
 to stare at, **anstarren (acc.)**
 to start for, **abreisen nach**
 to starve with (hunger), **umkommen vor**
 to stick to, **festhalten an**
 to strive for, **streben nach**
 to struggle for, **streiten um**
 to substitute for, **an die Stelle setzen von**
 to succeed in, **Erfolg haben in**
 to suffer from, by, **leiden durch, von**
 to surpass in, **übertreffen in**
 to suspect of, in Verdacht haben **wegen**
 to swear to a thing, **beschwören (acc.)**
 to swell with, **anschwellen von**

to take by, **nehmen bei**
 to take for, **halten für**
 to take from, **wegnehmen (dat.)**
 to talk about, of, **sprechen über, von**
 to talk to, with, **sprechen mit**
 to taste of, **schmecken nach**
 to tell of, about, **erzählen von, über**
 to think of, **denken an**
 to think about, on, **nachdenken über**
 to thirst for, after, **dürsten nach**
 to throw at, **werfen nach**
 to tie to, **anbinden an**
 to trade, traffic, in, **Handel treiben mit**
 to translate into, **übersetzen in**
 to tremble with, **zittern vor**
 to tremble at, **zittern bei**
 to trouble oneself about, **sich bekümmern um**
 to trust in, to, **vertrauen auf**
 to trust one with a thing, **einem etwas anvertrauen**
 to turn into, **verwandeln in**
 to turn to, **wenden an, zu**
 to unite with, to, **vereinigen mit**
 to value for, **schätzen wegen**
 to wait for, **warten auf**
 to wait on, **aufwarten (dat.)**
 to want for, **brauchen zu**
 to warn of, **warnen vor**
 to watch for, **lauern auf**
 to weep at, **weinen über**
 to weep for, **beweinen (dat.)**
 to withdraw from, **entziehen (dat.)**
 to wonder at, **sich wundern über**
 to write about, on, **schreiben über**
 to write to, **schreiben an**

**ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES IN CONNECTION WITH
PREPOSITIONS**

absent from, *abwesend von*
 absorbed in, *vertieft, versunken in*
 abundant in, with, *reich an*
 accustomed to, *gewöhnt an*
 adherent to, *zugethan (dat.)*
 adjacent to, *grenzend an*
 advantageous to, *vorteilhaft für*
 affable to, *leutselig gegen*
 affected at, with, *gerührt durch*
 affectionate to, *zärtlich gegen*
 afflicted at, with, by, *bekümmert über, durch*
 afraid of, *banke vor*
 akin to, *verwandt mit*
 alarmed at, by, *beunruhigt über, durch*
 allied to, *verbündet mit*
 amazed at, *erstaunt über*
 ambitious of, *ehrgeizig nach*
 amused with, by, *unterhalten durch*
 angry with one, *böse auf jemanden*
 angry at, about something, *böse über etwas*
 anxious for, about, *besorgt wegen, um*
 apparent from, *ersichtlich aus*
 applicable to, *anwendbar auf*
 apprehensive of, *besorgt wegen*
 apt for, *tauglich zu*
 ashamed of, *beschämt über*
 astonished at, *erstaunt über*
 attached to, *zugethan (dat.)*
 attentive to, *aufmerksam auf*
 averse to, *abgeneigt gegen*
 aware of, *gewahr (gen.)*
 bare of, *entblüßt von*
 beneficent to, *wohlthätig gegen*
 benumbed with, by, *erstarrt von*
 blind of (one eye), *blind auf (ein Auge)*

blind to, *blind gegen*
 blind with, *blind vor*
 bound for, to, *bestimmt nach*
 careful of, *achtſam auf*
 careful for, *besorgt um*
 careless of, about, *unbekümmert um*
 cautious of, *vorsichtig in*
 celebrated for, *berühmt wegen*
 charitable to, toward, *mildthätig gegen*
 charmed with, by, *entzückt vor, über*
 civil to, *höflich gegen*
 clear from, of, *rein von*
 close to, by, *dicht an, bei*
 cold to, *kalt gegen*
 compassionate to, *mitleibig gegen*
 complaisant to, *höflich gegen*
 concerned for, about, *besorgt um*
 concerned in, at, *beteiligt bei*
 consequent to, on, *folgend auf*
 consonant to, with, *übereinstimmen mit*
 content, contented with, *zufrieden mit*
 courteous to, *höflich gegen*
 covetous for, of, *begierig nach*
 cruel to, toward, *grausam gegen*
 curious after, of, *neugierig auf*
 customary with, *gebräuchlich bei*
 dazzled with, by, *geblendet durch*
 dead to, *abgestorben für*
 deaf of (one ear), *taub auf (einem Ohr)*
 deaf to, *taub gegen*
 deficient in, *Mangel haben an*
 delighted with, at, *entzückt über*
 dependent on, *abhängig von*
 desirous of, *verlangend nach*

**ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES IN CONNECTION WITH
PREPOSITIONS—(Continued)**

destructive to, zerstörend, verderblich für

destitute, devoid of, entblößt von
different from, verschieden von

disgusted with, at, mit Widerwillen erfüllt gegen

disloyal to, treulos gegen

dismayed at, erschrocken über

displeased with, at, ungehalten über

distant from, entfernt von
distinct from, unterschieden von

distinguished for, by, ausgezeichnet durch

diverse from, verschieden von
doubtful, dubious of, ungewiß über

eager for, begierig nach

eminent for, ausgezeichnet durch

employed in, beschäftigt mit, bei

empty of, leer an

enamored of, verliebt in

engaged in, beschäftigt mit

engaged to, verlobt mit

enraged at, aufgebracht über

envious of, at, against, neidisch auf

essential to, wesentlich für

exempt from, frei von

expressive of, ausdrücken (*acc.*)

faint with, matt vor

famous, famed, for, berühmt wegen

far from, weit entfernt von

fatigued with, ermüdet vor

favorable to, for, günstig

fertile of, in, fruchtbar, ergiebig an

fit for, tauglich, passend zu

fond of, eingenommen von

forgetful of, vergeßend (*acc.*)

free from, frei von

friendly to, freundlich gegen

frightened at, erschrocken über

fruitful in, of, fruchtbar an

full of, voll von

generous to, großmütig gegen

glad of, froh über

good for, tauglich zu

good to, toward, gut gegen

gracious to, gnädig gegen

greedy of, gierig nach

grieved at, bekümmert über, gekränkt durch

happy at, glücklich über

heedful of, achtam auf

heedless of, unachtsam auf

ignorant of, unbekannt mit

ill of, krank an

impatient at, ungeduldig über

impatient for, begierig nach

inclusive of, einschließend (*acc.*)

independent of, on, unabhängig von

indifferent to, gleichgiltig gegen

indignant at, entrüstet über

indulgent to, nachsichtig gegen

infected with, by, angesteckt von

inferior to, geringer als

inflamed with, entbrannt von

innocent of, unschuldig an

inquisitive about, after, forschend nach

insensible of, to, unempfindlich für

inseparable from, ungetrennlich von

insusceptible of, unempfänglich für

intended for, bestimmt zu

interested in, beteiligt bei

intoxicated with, berauscht von

ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES IN CONNECTION WITH
PREPOSITIONS—(Continued)

irritated at, aufgebracht über
jealous of, eifersüchtig auf
just to, gerecht zu
kind to, gütig gegen
liberal to, freigebig gegen
loyal to, pflichttreu gegen
mad with, toll vor
moved at, with, by, gerührt von,
über, durch
negligent of, vernachlässigend (*acc.*)
noted for, berühmt wegen
notorious for, berüchtigt wegen
obedient to, gehorsam gegen
obsequious to, willfährig gegen
observant of, achtsam auf
offended at, with, aufgebracht über
overcome with, überwältigt von
owing to, herrührend von
pale with, bleich vor
partial to, partiisch gegen
particular about, in, eigen in
penetrated with, durchdrungen von
perfidious to, verräterisch gegen
pleased with, erfreut über
pollte to, höflich gegen
poor in, arm an
popular with, beliebt bei
posterior to, später als
prior to, früher als
prodigal, profuse of, verschwenderisch mit
productive of, hervorbringend
proud of, stolz auf
provoked at, with, by, gereizt durch
qualified for, geeignet zu
ready for, bereit zu
reckless of, unbesümmert um
red with, rot vor
regardless of, unbesümmert um
related to, verwandt mit
relative to, bezüglich auf
remarkable for, merkwürdig wegen

remote from, entfernt von
renowned for, berühmt wegen
rich in, reich an
ripe for, reif zu, für
rude to, unhöflich gegen
safe from, sicher vor
satisfied with, befriedigt von, durch
secure from, sicher vor
seized with, ergriffen von
sensible of, empfänglich für
separate from, getrennt von
severe to, on, with, streng gegen
shocked at, entsetzt über
short of, Mangel leiden an
sick of, krank an
sick with, krank vor
solicitous about, for, besorgt um
sorry for, betrübt wegen
stiff with, steif vor
struck with, ergriffen von
subsequent to, folgend auf
suffocated with, erstickt durch
suitable to, for, angemessen für
superior to, höher als, überlegen (*dat.*)
surprised at, überrascht über
susceptible of, empfänglich für
suspicious of, argwöhnisch auf
taken with, befallen von
thoughtful of, bedacht auf
thoughtless of, unbesümmert um
terrified at, with, by, erschreckt durch
tired with, ermüdet von
tired of, müde, überdrüssig (*dat.*)
touched at, with, gerührt durch
troubled about, beunruhigt wegen
uncertain of, ungewiß über
uneasy about, unruhig wegen
used to, gewöhnt an
usual with, gebräuchlich bei

VERBS IN CONNECTION WITH PREPOSITIONS

to abide by, in (a thing), bleiben bei	to attend to, achten auf
to abide with (a person), beharren bei	to avert from, abwenden von
to abound in, with, Überfluß haben an	to banish from, verbannen aus
to absolve from, freisprechen von	to become of, werden aus
to abstain from, sich enthalten von	to beg for, bitten um
to account for, erklären (acc.)	to beg of, erbitten von
to accustom oneself to, sich gewöhnen an	to believe in, glauben an
to acquit of, freisprechen von	to bestow on, verleihen (dat.)
to adapt to, anpassen (dat.)	to beware of, sich hüten vor
to add to, hinzufügen zu	to bind to, binden an
to address to, richten an	to blame for, tadeln wegen
to adhere to, anhängen (dat.)	to blush at, erröten über
to adjoin to, grenzen an	to boast of, sich rühmen
to agree about, übereinkommen über	to border on, grenzen an
to agree with, übereinstimmen mit	to bow to, sich verneigen vor
to agree to, einwilligen in	to burn with, brennen vor
to aim at, ziehen nach, streben nach	to burst with, bersten vor
to allude to, anspielen auf	to buy of, from, kaufen von
to ally with, verbinden mit	to call on (a friend), at (a house), vorsprechen bei
to amount to, sich belaufen auf	to call for, rufen nach, abholen
to answer for, einstehen für	to care for, about, sich kümmern um
to appeal to, sich berufen auf	to catch at, greifen, haschen nach
to apply to, sich wenden an	to caution against, warnen vor
to approve a thing, of a thing, etwas billigen	to change for, vertauschen mit
to arise from, herrühren von	to change into, verwandeln in
to ascribe to, zuschreiben (dat.)	to charge with, anklagen (gen.)
to ask after, sich erkundigen nach	to cheat out of, betrügen um
to ask for, bitten um, fragen nach	to cling to, sich anklammern an
to ask of, erbitten von	to compare to, with, vergleichen mit
to aspire to, after, streben nach	to complain of, about, sich beklagen über
to assent to, beipflichten (dat.)	to comply with, willfahren (dat.)
to assign to, zuweisen (dat.)	to conceal from, verbergen vor
to assist at, zugegen sein bei	to conclude from, schließen aus
to atone for, sühnen, vergüten	to confer on, übertragen, verleihen
to attend on, aufwarten (dat.)	to confide in, vertrauen auf
	to confine to, beschränken auf
	to conform to, sich richten nach
	to congratulate on, glückwünschen zu

VERBS IN CONNECTION WITH PREPOSITIONS—(Continued)

to consent to, **einwilligen in**
 to consist of, in, } **bestehen**
 to be composed of, } **aus, in**
 to contend for, **streiten um**
 to contrast with, **einen Gegensatz bilden zu**

to converse about, on, **sich unterhalten über**

to convert into, **verwandeln in**

to crave for, **flehen um**

to cure of, **heilen von**

to deal in, **handeln mit**

to decide on, **entscheiden über**

to decline from, **abweichen von**

to decrease in, **abnehmen an**

to defend from, **schützen vor**

to degenerate into, **ausarten in**

to deliberate on, **beratichlagen über**

to delight in, **sich erfreuen an**

to deliver from, **befreien von**

to demand of, **fordern von**

to depart for, **abreisen nach**

to depend on, **abhängen von**

to deprive of, **berauben (gen.)**

to derive from, **herleiten von**

to descend from, **abstammen von**

to deserve of, **sich verdient machen um**

to desire for, **verlangen nach**

to desist from, **abstehen von**

to despair of, **verzweifeln an**

to deter from, **abschrecken von**

to devolve on, **zufallen, zuteil werden (dat.)**

to die of, **sterben an**

to die with, of, **sterben vor**

to differ from, **verschieden sein von**

to dig for, **graben nach**

to direct to, **richten an**

to disagree with, **nicht übereinstimmen mit**

to disapprove of, **mißbilligen**

to discourse on, **reden über**

to dismiss from, **entlassen aus**

to dispense with, **verzichten auf**

to dispose of, **verfügen über**

to dispute on, about, **streiten über**

to dissent from, **verschiedener Meinung sein**

to dissuade from, **abraten von**

to distinguish from, **unterscheiden von**

to divide into, **einteilen in**

to divorce from, **scheiden von**

to doubt of, about, **zweifeln an**

to dream of, **träumen von**

to drink to, **trinken auf**

to dwell on, **verweilen bei**

to echo with, **widerhallen von**

to embark for, **sich einschiffen nach**

to encroach upon, **eingreifen in**

to end in, **endigen mit**

to engage in, **sich beteiligen bei**

to enter a room, in ein **Zimmer treten**

to enter into, **sich einlassen in**

to enter on, **eingehen auf**

to entrust one with a thing, **einem etwas anvertrauen**

to escape from, **entweichen aus**

to exceed in, **übertreffen an**

to exchange for, **vertauschen gegen**

to exclude from, **ausschließen aus**

to exile from, **verbannen aus**

to extend to, **sich erstrecken auf**

to exult over, at, in, **frohloden über**

to fall on, **herfallen über**

to fall to, **zufallen (dat.)**

to fasten to, **befestigen an**

to feed on, **sich nähren von**

to find fault with, **tadeln (acc.)**

to fire upon, **Feuer geben auf**

to fish for, **fischen nach**

to fit for, **befähigen zu**

to flee from, **fliehen vor**

to foam with (rage), **schäumen vor (Wut)**

VERBS IN CONNECTION WITH PREPOSITIONS—(Continued)

to follow from, folgen aus

to free from, befreien vonto frown on, upon, finster an-
blicken (*acc.*)**to gaze at, on, anstarren**
(*acc.*)

to glance at, anblicken

to glory in, stolz sein auf

to glow with, glühen vor

to grasp at, greifen nach

to grieve at, for, sich grämen über

to grumble at, murren über

to guard against, from, sich hüten
vor**to hear of, about, hören von,**
über**to hear from, hören von****to hide from, verbergen vor**

to hinder from, hindern an

to hint at, anspielen auf

to hope for, hoffen aufto hunt after, for, nachjagen (*dat.*)to impose on, auferlegen (*dat.*)

to increase in, zunehmen an

to indulge in, sich hingeben (*dat.*)to inflict on, auferlegen (*dat.*)

to inform of, in Kenntnis setzen von

to ingratiate oneself with, sich be-
liebt machen beito inquire of a person, jemanden
befragento inquire after, for, about, sich
erkundigen nach**to insist on, bestehen auf**to interfere with, in, sich ein-
mischen into introduce to, vorstellen (*acc.*)to intrude on, sich aufdrängen (*dat.*)

to involve in, verwickeln in

to issue from, herrühren von

to jest at, scherzen über

to join in, sich beteiligen bei,
an

to join with, to, verbinden mit

to judge from, by, urteilen nach

to judge of, urteilen über

to keep from, bewähren vor

to keep to, bleiben bei

to knock at, klopfen

to know about, of, wissen
über, von

to labor for, sich abmühen um

to labor under, leiden an, unter

to languish for, schmachten nach

to laugh at, lachen über

to lavish on, verschwenden an

to lean against, sich lehnen an

to lean upon, sich stützen auf

to leave for, abreisen nach

to light on, upon, stoßen auf

to limit to, sich beschränken auf

to listen to, horchen auf

to live on, by, leben von

to live with, wohnen bei

to long for, after, sich seh-
nen nach**to look after, sehen nach****to look at, ansehen (*acc.*)**to look for, suchen (*acc.*)

to look about for, sich umsehen nach

to look over, durchlesen, durchsehen

to make of, machen aus

to make up for, ersetzen

to measure by, messen nach

to meddle with, in, sich mischen in

to meditate on, nachdenken über

to meet one, with one, begegnen
(*acc.*)to mingle with, in, sich mischen un-
ter

to mock at, spotten über

to mourn for, over, trau-
ern um, überto murmur at, against, murren
über

to muse on, nachsinnen über

to nod at, to one, einem zunicken

to object to, einwenden gegen

VERBS IN CONNECTION WITH PREPOSITIONS—(Continued)

to occur to, begegnen, *zufallen*
(*dat.*)

to pant for, after, *sehnen nach*

to part with, *sich trennen von*

to partake of, } *teilnehmen,*
to participate, } *teilhaben an*

to pay for, *bezahlen (acc.)*

to perish with, by, *umkommen vor*

to persevere in, *beharren bei*

to persist in, *bestehen auf*

to pine at, *sich grämen über*

to pine for, after, *sich sehnen nach*

to play at, *spielen (ein Spiel, f. i., at cards)*

to play for, *spielen um*

to ponder on, *nachgrübeln über*

to praise for, *loben wegen*

to prepare for, *vorbereiten auf*

to present one with a thing, *einem etwas schenken*

to preserve from, *bewahren vor*

to preside over, at, *den Vorsitz führen bei*

to prevail over, *die Oberhand haben über*

to prevent from, *abhalten von*

to pride oneself on, in, *sich einbilden auf*

to proceed from, *herrühren von*

to profit by, *Nutzen ziehen aus*

to protect from, against, *schützen vor, gegen*

to quarrel about, *sich streiten um*

to rail at, *spotten über*

to rate at, *schäßen auf*

to reach to, *reichen bis zu*

to read to, *vorlesen*

to reconcile to, with, *versöhnen mit*

to recover from, of, *sich erholen von*

to redder at, *rot werden über*

to reduce to, *versetzen in*

to refer to, *verweisen auf*

to reflect on, *nachdenken über*

to refrain from, *sich enthalten (gen.)*

to rejoice at, *sich freuen über*

to rejoice in, *sich erfreuen an*

to relate to, *sich beziehen auf*

to release } *from, befreien von*
to relieve }

to rely on, *sich verlassen auf*

to remind one of, *jemanden erinnern an*

to remove from, *entfernen von*

to repent of, *bereuen (acc.)*

to reply to, *erwidern auf*

to reproach one with, *einem Vorwürfe machen wegen*

to request, to require of, *fordern von*

to rescue from, *befreien von*

to resound with, *widerhallen von*

to rest from, *ausruhen von*

to restrain from, *zurückhalten von*

to restrict to, *beschränken auf*

to result from, *herrühren von*

to retire from, *sich zurückziehen von*

to revenge on, *sich rächen an*

to rid of, from, *befreien von*

to ring for, *klingeln nach, wegen*

to rob of, *berauben (gen.)*

to rush upon, *herfallen über*

to sail for, to, *segeln nach*

to save from, *bewahren vor*

to scoff at, *spotten über*

to scold at, *schelten über*

to screen from, *schützen, schirmen vor*

to search for, after, *suchen nach*

to secure from, against, *sichern gegen, vor*

to seek for, after, *suchen nach*

VERBS IN CONNECTION WITH PREPOSITIONS—(Continued)

to seize upon, ergreifen (*acc.*)
to send for, holen lassen
 to separate from, trennen von
to serve for, dienen zu
 to set off, out, for, sich aufmachen nach
 to shake with, zittern vor
 to share in, teilhaben in
 to shelter, shield, from, schützen vor
 to shiver with, zittern vor
 to shoot at, schießen nach
 to shrink from, at, zurückschrecken
 to shudder at, schauern vor
 to sigh for, after, seufzen nach
 to smell of, riechen nach
to smile at, lächeln über
 to sneer at, spötteln über
 to speak of, about, sprechen von, über
 to speak on, reden über
 to speak to, with, sprechen mit
 to spend one's time in, seine Zeit verbringen mit
 to stand by, stehen bei
to stare at, anstarren (*acc.*)
to start for, abreisen nach
 to starve with (hunger), umkommen vor
 to stick to, festhalten an
 to strive for, streben nach
 to struggle for, streiten um
 to substitute for, an die Stelle setzen von
 to succeed in, Erfolg haben in
to suffer from, by, leiden durch, von
to surpass in, übertreffen in
 to suspect of, in Verdacht haben wegen
 to swear to a thing, beschwören (*acc.*)
 to swell with, anschwellen von

to take by, fassen bei
to take for, halten für
to take from, wegnehmen (*dat.*)
to talk about, of, sprechen über, von
to talk to, with, sprechen mit
 to taste of, schmecken nach
 to tell of, about, erzählen von, über
to think of, denken an
 to think about, on, nachdenken über
 to thirst for, after, dürsten nach
 to throw at, werfen nach
to tie to, anbinden an
 to trade, traffic, in, Handel treiben mit
 to translate into, übersetzen in
to tremble with, zittern vor
 to tremble at, zittern bei
to trouble oneself about, sich bekümmern um
 to trust in, to, vertrauen auf
 to trust one with a thing, einem etwas anvertrauen
 to turn into, verwandeln in
 to turn to, wenden an, zu
 to unite with, to, vereinigen mit
 to value for, schützen wegen
to wait for, warten auf
 to wait on, aufwarten (*dat.*)
to want for, brauchen zu
 to warn of, warnen vor
to watch for, lauern auf
 to weep at, weinen über
 to weep for, beweinen (*dat.*)
 to withdraw from, entziehen (*dat.*)
 to wonder at, sich wundern über
to write about, on, schreiben über
to write to, schreiben an

**ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES IN CONNECTION WITH
PREPOSITIONS**

absent from, *abwesend von*
 absorbed in, *vertieft, versunken in*
 abundant in, with, *reich an*
 accustomed to, *gewöhnt an*
 adherent to, *zugethan (dat.)*
 adjacent to, *grenzend an*
 advantageous to, *vorteilhaft für*
 affable to, *leutselig gegen*
 affected at, with, *gerührt durch*
 affectionate to, *zärtlich gegen*
 afflicted at, with, by, *bekümmert über, durch*
 afraid of, *banke vor*
 akin to, *verwandt mit*
 alarmed at, by, *beunruhigt über, durch*
 allied to, *verbündet mit*
 amazed at, *erstaunt über*
 ambitious of, *ehrgeizig nach*
 amused with, by, *unterhalten durch*
 angry with one, *böse auf jemanden*
 angry at, about something, *böse über etwas*
 anxious for, about, *besorgt wegen, um*
 apparent from, *ersichtlich aus*
 applicable to, *anwendbar auf*
 apprehensive of, *besorgt wegen*
 apt for, *tauglich zu*
 ashamed of, *beschämt über*
 astonished at, *erstaunt über*
 attached to, *zugethan (dat.)*
 attentive to, *aufmerksam auf*
 averse to, *abgeneigt gegen*
 aware of, *gewahr (gen.)*
 bare of, *entblößt von*
 beneficent to, *wohlthätig gegen*
 benumbed with, by, *erstarrt von*
 blind of (one eye), blind auf (ein Auge)

blind to, *blind gegen*
 blind with, *blind vor*
 bound for, to, *bestimmt nach*
 careful of, *achtsam auf*
 careful for, *besorgt um*
 careless of, about, *unbekümmert um*
 cautious of, *vorsichtig in*
 celebrated for, *berühmt wegen*
 charitable to, toward, *wohlthätig gegen*
 charmed with, by, *entzückt vor, über*
 civil to, *höflich gegen*
 clear from, of, *rein von*
 close to, by, *dicht an, bei*
 cold to, *kalt gegen*
 compassionate to, *mitleibig gegen*
 complaisant to, *höflich gegen*
 concerned for, about, *besorgt um*
 concerned in, at, *beteiligt bei*
 consequent to, on, *folgend auf*
 consonant to, with, *übereinstimmen mit*
 content, contented with, *zufrieden mit*
 courteous to, *höflich gegen*
 covetous for, of, *begierig nach*
 cruel to, toward, *grausam gegen*
 curious after, of, *neugierig auf*
 customary with, *gebräuchlich bei*
 dazzled with, by, *geblendet durch*
 dead to, *abgestorben für*
 deaf of (one ear), *taub auf (einem Ohr)*
 deaf to, *taub gegen*
 deficient in, *Mangel haben an*
 delighted with, at, *entzückt über*
 dependent on, *abhängig von*
 desirous of, *verlangend nach*

ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES IN CONNECTION WITH
PREPOSITIONS—(Continued)

destructive to, zerstörend, verderblich für

destitute, devoid of, entblößt von
different from, verschieden von

disgusted with, at, mit Widerwillen erfüllt gegen

disloyal to, treulos gegen

dismayed at, erschrocken über

displeased with, at, ungehalten über

distant from, entfernt von
distinct from, unterschieden von

distinguished for, by, ausgezeichnet durch

diverse from, verschieden von

doubtful, dubious of, ungewiß über

eager for, begierig nach

eminent for, ausgezeichnet durch

employed in, beschäftigt mit, bei

empty of, leer an

enamored of, verliebt in

engaged in, beschäftigt mit

engaged to, verlobt mit

enraged at, aufgebracht über

envious of, at, against, neidisch auf

essential to, wesentlich für

exempt from, frei von

expressive of, ausdrücken (*acc.*)

faint with, matt vor

famous, famed, for, berühmt wegen

far from, weit entfernt von

fatigued with, ermüdet vor

favorable to, for, günstig

fertile of, in, fruchtbar, ergiebig an

fit for, tauglich, passend zu

fond of, eingenommen von

forgetful of, vergessend (*acc.*)

free from, frei von

friendly to, freundlich gegen

frightened at, erschrocken über

fruitful in, of, fruchtbar an

full of, voll von

generous to, großmütig gegen

glad of, froh über

good for, tauglich zu

good to, toward, gut gegen

gracious to, gnädig gegen

greedy of, gierig nach

grieved at, bekümmert über, getränkt durch

happy at, glücklich über

heedful of, achtam auf

heedless of, unachtam auf

ignorant of, unbekannt mit

ill of, krank an

impatient at, ungeduldig über

impatient for, begierig nach

inclusive of, einschließend (*acc.*)

independent of, on, unabhängig von

indifferent to, gleichgültig gegen

indignant at, entrüstet über

indulgent to, nachsichtig gegen

infected with, by, angesteckt von

inferior to, geringer als

inflamed with, entbrannt von

innocent of, unschuldig an

inquisitive about, after, forschend nach

insensible of, to, unempfindlich für

inseparable from, unzertrennlich von

insusceptible of, unempfänglich für

intended for, bestimmt zu

interested in, beteiligt bei

intoxicated with, berauscht von

ACTIVES AND PARTICIPLES IN CONNECTION WITH
PREPOSITIONS—(Continued)

ted at, aufgebracht über
 ous of, eifersüchtig auf
 to, gerecht zu
 l to, gütig gegen
 l to, freigebig gegen
 to, pflichttreu gegen
 with, toll vor
 d at, with, by, gerührt von,
 r, durch
 gent of, vernachlässigend (acc.)
 for, berühmt wegen
 ious for, berücksichtigt wegen
 llent to, gehorsam gegen
 uious to, willfährig gegen
 vant of, achtsam auf
 led at, with, aufgebracht über
 ome with, überwältigt von
 ; to, herrührend von
 with, gleich vor
 l to, partiisch gegen
 ular about, in, eigen in
 rated with, durchdrungen von
 ious to, verräterisch gegen
 d with, erfreut über
 e to, höflich gegen
 n, arm an
 ar with, beliebt bei
 -ior to, später als
 to, früher als
 gal, profuse of, verschwens-
 sch mit
 ctive of, hervorbringend
 d of, stolz auf
 ked at, with, by, gereizt durch
 ied for, geeignet zu
 y for, bereit zu
 ss of, unbekümmert um
 ith, rot vor
 lless of, unbekümmert um
 d to, verwandt mit
 re to, bezüglich auf
 arkable for, merkwür-
 wegen

remote from, entfernt von
 renowned for, berühmt we-
 gen
 rich in, reich an
 ripe for, reif zu, für
 rude to, unhöflich gegen
 safe from, sicher vor
 satisfied with, befriedigt von, durch
 secure from, sicher vor
 seized with, ergriffen von
 sensible of, empfänglich für
 separate from, getrennt von
 severe to, on, with, streng
 gegen
 shocked at, entsetzt über
 short of, Mangel leiden an
 sick of, krank an
 sick with, krank vor
 solicitous about, for, besorgt um
 sorry for, betrubt wegen
 stiff with, steif vor
 struck with, ergriffen von
 subsequent to, folgend auf
 suffocated with, erstickt durch
 suitable to, for, angemessen für
 superior to, höher als, überlegen
 (dat.)
 surprised at, überrascht über
 susceptible of, empfänglich für
 suspicious of, argwöhnisch auf
 taken with, befallen von
 thoughtful of, bedacht auf
 thoughtless of, unbekümmert um
 terrified at, with, by, erschreckt
 durch
 tired with, ermüdet von
 tired of, müde, überdrüssig (dat.)
 touched at, with, gerührt durch
 troubled about, beunruhigt wegen
 uncertain of, ungewiß über
 uneasy about, unruhig wegen
 used to, gewöhnt an
 usual with, gebräuchlich bei

**ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES IN CONNECTION WITH
PREPOSITIONS—(Continued)**

vexed at, with, <i>verdrüsslich über</i>	weary of, with, <i>müde (gen.)</i>
void of, <i>leer an, ohne</i>	wet with, <i>naß von</i>
watchful of, <i>aufmerksam auf</i>	worn with, out with, <i>er-</i>
wearied with, <i>ermüdet durch</i>	<i>schöpft durch</i>

SYNTAX OF THE CONJUNCTION

7. Conjunctions are words used to connect phrases or sentences. As there are various kinds of connections existing among sentences, it is customary to classify conjunctions according to the nature of the connections that they are employed to indicate. Hence, we have the following classes:

1. Copulatives

<i>und, and</i>	<i>nicht nur . . . sondern auch, not</i>
<i>auch, also</i>	<i>only . . . but also</i>
<i>sowohl . . . als, as well . . . as</i>	<i>ferner, furthermore</i>
<i>zudem, moreover</i>	<i>zugleich, at the same time</i>
<i>außerdem, moreover</i>	

2. Disjunctives

entweder . . . oder, either . . . or

3. Adversatives

<i>aber, but</i>	<i>dennoch, nevertheless</i>
<i>allein, but</i>	<i>sonst, else</i>
<i>sondern, but</i>	<i>vielmehr, rather</i>
<i>doch, jedoch, yet</i>	<i>hingegen, on the contrary</i>

4. Negatives

weder . . . noch, neither . . . nor

5. Comparatives

wie . . . so, as . . . so, thus *gleichwie, just as*

6. Conditionals

wenn, if *falls, in case that* *wofern, provided that*

7. *Causals*denn, *for*weil, da, *since, because*8. *Conclusives*darum, *therefore*deshalb, *therefore*daher, *hence*folglich, *consequently*deswegen, *on that account*9. *Concessives*obwohl, obgleich, *although*obgleich, wenngleich, *although*wiewohl, *although*zwar, *to be sure, indeed*10. *Finals*daß, *that*um zu, *in order to*auf daß, damit, *in order that*

IDIOMATIC PHRASES

8. In German, as well as in other languages, there are numerous idiomatic phrases, that is to say, peculiar constructions in word or phrase, which lie beyond the limits of grammatical explanation. They constitute the most characteristic feature of every language and show, more than anything else, its power and genius. Many of these idiomatic phrases cannot be literally translated into English without great sacrifice of both sense and sound; they can neither be taught nor learned by rules. But the student must be familiar with their meanings and usages. They must, therefore, be so firmly fixed in the memory by constant reading and study that the student will learn not merely to think in German words, but in the German idiom. A list of the most important idioms with *haben* and *sein* follows.

9. The most common idioms with *haben* are:Du hast gut lachen, *You may well laugh.*Er hat recht, sie hat unrecht, *He is right, she is wrong.*Haben Sie Hunger? *Are you hungry?*

Ich habe Zeit. *I am ready.*
 Er hat sein ein neues Journal. *He has a new room.*
 Er hat seine Freunde gern. *He is fond of his friends.*
 Sie haben dir sehr viel. *They are very good to me.*
 Sie haben große Lust. *He has a great taste.*
 Ich habe nur ein Schränkchen. *I possess one.*
 Ich habe Schenkeln auf dem. *I am acquainted with him.*
 Sie haben das Geld nicht. *He does not have of the money.*
 Ich werde nicht auf ihn haben. *I will take care of him.*
 Was haben Sie? *What are you?*
 Ich habe Schmerzen. *I feel a pain.*
 Was haben Sie begehrt? *What requires have you?*
 Sie haben Fieber. *He has feverish.*
 Man hat die Zeit verloren. *They waste sport of time.*
 Es hat keine Zeit. *There is no hurry about it.*

10. The most common idioms with *sein* are:

An wem ist die Karte zu lesen? *Whose turn is it to read?*
 Sie ist an mir. *It is mine.*
 Mir ist sehr kalt; ihm ist zu warm. *I am very cold; he is too warm.*
 Mir ist nicht wohl. *I do not feel well.*
 Was ist dir. *What ails you?*
 Ich weiß nicht, was mir ist. *I don't know what ails me.*
 Sei guten Mutes. *Be of good cheer.*
 Mir ist nicht wohl an Mute. *I do not feel well.*
 Es ist ihm Ernst damit. *He is in earnest about it.*
 Es ist schade, daß er seinem Gegner nicht gewachsen ist. *It is a pity that he is not equal to his antagonist.*
 Das Pferd ist mir nicht feil. *My horse is not for sale.*
 Wem sind diese Kleider? *Whose clothes are these?*
 Sie ist ihm eine Mark schuldig. *She owes him a mark.*
 Bist du imstande, es zu thun? *Are you able to do it?*
 Wer ist schuld daran? *Whose fault is it?*

- Du selbst bist schuld daran, *It is your own fault.*
 Es ist kein solches Gesetz vorhanden, *There is no such law existing.*
 Es ist ihm darum zu thun, *That is his object.*
 Wovon ist die Rede? *What is being spoken of?*
 Das ist mir recht, *I am satisfied with that.*
 Es ist ihnen lieb, *They are glad of it.*
 Ich bin dir herzlich gut, *I love you heartily.*
 Lassen Sie es gut sein, *That is enough of it.*
 Ich weiß, wie du bist, *I know you (your ways).*
 Es sei nun, daß . . . , *Supposing now, that . . .*
 Es ist mir so, als ob ich es gehört hätte, *It seems to me as though I had heard it.*
 Ich will des Todes sein, wenn es nicht wahr ist, *I will die if it is not true.*
 Er ist willens, sie zu besuchen, *He is inclined to visit them.*

LIST OF THE MOST USUAL ABBREVIATIONS

11. The most usual abbreviations are:

a., <i>anno</i> , in the year.	a. M., am Main, on the Main
ab., Abonn., Abonnement, subscription	Anm., Anmerkung, observation
abc, alphabet	Antw., Antwort, answer
A. C., <i>anno Christi</i> , in the year of our Lord	A. T., Altes Testament, Old Testament
A. c., <i>anni currentis</i> , in the current year	Aufl., Auflage, edition
A. D., <i>anno Domini</i> , in the year of our Lord	Aug., August, August
d., <i>a dato</i> , from this day	Ausg., Ausgabe, edition
b., außer Diensten, retired (said of officers)	b., bei, at, at the house of
b., an der, on the (river)	B. A., Bank-Actie, bank share
bd., füge hinzu, add	BB., Bände, volumes
adm., Admiral, admiral	Bd., Band, volume
f., <i>anni futuri</i> , next year	b. d., bei dem, at the
i., <i>ad interim</i> , for the time being	bearb., bearbeitet, prepared, revised
lt. Test., Altes Testament, Old Testament	Beil., Beilage, supplement
	beil., beiliegend, enclosed
	bes., besonders, especially
	bibl., biblisch, biblical
	bot., botanisch, botanical

LIST OF THE MOST USUAL ABBREVIATIONS
(Continued)

St. , Stto. , Brutto , gross (weight)	Dtz. , Dutzend , dozen
C. , Conto , account	d. S. , der Verfasser
c. , <i>cum</i> , with	Ew. , Euer , your
ca. , <i>circa</i> , about	excl. , <i>exclusive</i> , <i>ausschließlich</i> , <i>exclusive</i>
Centn. , Centner , hundredweight	fr. , Fuß , foot
cf. , <i>confer</i> , <i>vergleiche</i> , compare	fr. oder fl. , Florin , Gulden
c. l. , <i>citato loco</i> , at the place cited	Fc. , Fcs. , Frank , Franken , franc, francs
Co. , Compagnie , company	frco. , franco, postpaid
Cour. , Courant , currency	frl. , Fräulein
Ct. , Centner , hundredweight	frhr. , Freiherr , baronet
Com. , Comp. , Compagnie , company	frstl. , fürstlich
D. , doctor, any doctor-title	g. , Gramm
d. ä. , der ältere , the elder	Gb. , Gebrüder
D. C. , <i>da capo</i>	g. D. , gehorsamster Diener , obedient servant
Deb. , Debitor , debtor	geb. , (1) geboren , born; (2) gebunden , bound
Dec. , Dez. , Dezember , December	Geogr. , Geographie , geography
Dept. , Département , department	Geom. , Geometrie , geometry
bergl. , <i>bergleichen</i> , the like	gest. , gestorben , deceased
d. Gr. , der Große , the great	gl. N. , gleichen Namens , of the same name
d. h. , <i>das heißt</i> , that is to say	Gr. , (1) Grad , degree; (2) Gramm , gramme
d. i. , <i>das ist</i> , that is	Grafsch. , Graffschaft , county
Disc. , Disconto , discount	Gramm. , Grammatik , grammar
d. J. , dieses Jahres , of this year	Hamb. , Hamburg
d. l. M. , des letzten Monats , of last month	H. A. P. A. G. , Hamburg-Amerikanische Paket-Actien-Gesellschaft , Hamburg-American Line
D. M. , <i>doctor medicinae</i> , doctor of medicine	heil. , heilig , holy
d. M. , dieses Monats , of this month	herzl. , herzoglich , ducal
do. , <i>ditto</i> , ditto	H. H. , hh. , Herren , gentlemen, Messrs.
Doct. , Doktor , doctor	h. l. , <i>hoc loco</i> , hier , here
D. Ph. , Doktor der Philosophie , doctor of philosophy	Hochw. , Hochwürden , reverend
Dr. , Doktor , doctor	Hpt. , Haupt , chief
Dr. Med. , <i>doctor medicinae</i> , doctor of medicine	Hptst. , Hauptstadt , capital, chief city
Dr. Phil. , <i>doctor philosophiae</i> , doctor of philosophy	hr. , hrrn. , Herr , Herrn , Mr.
ds. Mts. , dieses Monats , of this month	huj. , <i>hujus (mensis)</i> , this month
D. Th. , <i>doctor theologiae</i> , doctor of theology	

LIST OF THE MOST USUAL ABBREVIATIONS (Continued)

i. d. J., in diesem Jahre, in the course of this year	LL. D., <i>doctor utriusque juris</i> , doctor of laws
i. e., <i>id est</i> , that is	I. M., letzten Monats, last month
I. H. S., <i>Jesus hominum salvator</i>	lre., Lire, liard
i. J., im Jahre, in the year	l. s., <i>loco sigilli</i> , in place of seal
incl., <i>inclusis</i> , inclusive	M., (1) Mark, mark; (2) Meile, mile
I. N. R. J., <i>Jesus Nazarennus rex Judæorum</i> , Jesus of Nazareth, king of the Jews	M., <i>mille</i> , thousand
Inh., Inhalt, contents	m, Meter, meter
Insp., Inspektor, inspector	Maj., Majestät, majesty
Int., Interesse, interest	maſc., <i>masculinum</i> , masculine
J., Jahr, year	Math., Mathematik, mathematics
Jan., Januar, January	m. c., <i>mensis currentis</i> , im laufenden Monat, in the course of the month
jüd., jüdisch, jewish	M. D., <i>medicinæ doctor</i> , doctor of medicine
Jul., Juli, <i>Julius</i> , July	m. S., mein Herr, Sir
Jun., Juni, June	m. S. S.; meine Herren, Gentlemen
kais., kaisert., kaiserlich, imperial	Mill., Million, million
Kal., Kalender, calendar	Min., Minute, minute
Kap., Kapitel, chapter	Mr., Mark, mark
Kapt., Kapitän, captain	m. s., man sehe, see
kath., katholisch, catholic	Mspt., MS., Manuscript, manuscript
Kfm., Kaufmann, merchant	Mr., Meister, master
kg., Kilogramm, kilogramme	Mt., Monat, month
kgl., königlich, royal	n. A., neue Ausgabe, new edition
K. K., kaiserlich-königlich	nat., natürlich, natural
Kl., Klasse, class	N. Amer., Nord-Amerika, North America
km, Kilometer, kilometer	N. B., <i>nota bene</i> , wohlgeachtet, take notice
kön., königl., königlich, royal	No., <i>numero</i> , Nummer, number
Kr., Krone, crown	Nov., November, November
L., fünfzig, fifty	Nro., Nummer, <i>numero</i> , number
l., lies, read	N. S., Nachschrift, postscript
lat., lateinisch, Latin	N. T., N. Test., Neues Testament, New Testament
lauf. Mon., lauf. Mts., laufenden Monats, in the course of this month	Netto., netto, neat, net
lb., <i>libra</i> , pound	O., Osten, east
l. c., <i>loco citato</i> , am angeführten Ort, at the place mentioned	
Lfg., Lieferung, part of a serial publication	
l. J., laufenden Jahres, in the present year	

LIST OF THE MOST USUAL ABBREVIATIONS (Continued)

Oct., 1 Octav., octavo; (2) October, October	i. d., siehe dies, look for this
ob., ober, or	Se., Seine, His (Majesty)
öf. Bl., öffentliche Blätter, public papers	Sect., sectio, Abschnitt, section
ord., ordinär, ordinary	iel., ielig, late, deceased
P., <i>pagina</i> , Blattseite, page	iel. Ehe., ielige Witwe, late widow
p. a., <i>per annum</i> , jährlich, by the year	sequ., <i>sequens</i> , der, das folgende, the following
Pf., Pfennig, penny	i. g., iogenannt, so called
Phil., Philoi., Philosophie, philosophy	Ägr., Silbergröden, silver gro-schen
Phy., Physik, physics	sign., <i>signatum</i> , signiert, signed
p. M., per Monat, per month	isp., ipanisch, Spanish
p. m., <i>per mille</i> , by the thousand	s. p., <i>si placet</i> , if you please
pmo., <i>proximo</i> , nächsten Monat, next month	Spei., Speien, charges
pr. m., <i>pro mille</i> , by the thousand	sq., <i>vid. sequ.</i>
Proi., Professor, professor	Er. M., Seiner Majestät, His Majesty
protest., protestantisch, protestant	est
Prov., Provincia, province	h., harh, died
P. S., <i>post scriptum</i> , Nachschrift, postscript	St., (1) Stück, piece; (2) Sterling, sterling
p. t., <i>pro tempore</i> , zur Zeit, for the present	St., <i>Sanctus</i> , saint
publ., <i>publice</i> , öffentlich, publicly	Std., Stück, piece
qm., Quadratmeter, square meter	Sterl., Sterling, sterling
Q. M., Quadratmeile, square mile	i. J., ieiuer Zeit, in due time
Ab., Rabatt, discount	Ta., Tara, tare
Rbl., Rubel, ruble	techn., technologisch, technological
Rec., Recensent, critic	u. A. w. g., um Antwort wird gebeten, an answer is expected
Ref., Referent, informer, reporter	Tag., Tage., Tag, day, Tage
Rel., Religion, religion	Thlr., Thaler, dollar
R. I. P., <i>requiescat in pace</i> , er ruhe in Frieden, may he rest in peace	Ton., Tonne, tun, barrel
Rub., Rubel, ruble	u., und, and
S., Seite, page	u. A., unter Andern, among others
S., <i>Sanctus</i> , saint	u. a., und andere, and others
s., <i>signa</i> , <i>signetur</i> , write, give directions	u. dgl. m., und dergleichen mehr, and similar instances
s. N., südliche Breite, south latitude	u. i., <i>ut infra</i> , as below
Schiff., Schifffahrt, navigation	ult., <i>ultimo</i> , last, ultimo
Schd., Schuß, three score	u. s., <i>ut supra</i> , wie oben, wie vorhin, as before mentioned
	u. i. w., und so weiter, and so on, and so forth

LIST OF THE MOST USUAL ABBREVIATIONS (Continued)

u. v. a., und viele andere, and many others	b. M., vorigen Monats, last month, ult.
v., von, of, from, by	Vol., <i>volumen</i> , Band, volume
v. Chr., vor Christus, before Christ	vorm., vormals, formerly
Berf., Verfasser, author	Vorr., Vorrede, preface
vergl., vergleiche, compare	v. v., <i>vice versa</i> , umgekehrt, in the reverse case
verm. Aufl., vermehrte Auflage, augmented edition	W., Westen, West
Ber. St., Vereinigte Staaten, United States	w. B., westliche Breite, west longitude
vert., <i>verte</i> , turn over	w. G. g. um., wenden Sie gefälligst um, please turn over
vgl., <i>vid.</i> , vergl.	Wwe., Witwe, widow
v. gr., <i>verbi gratia</i> , zum Beispiel, for instance	Z., (1) Zoll, inch; (2) Zeile, line
v. J., vorigen Jahres, of last year	z., zu, zur, zum, by, per
vid., <i>vide</i> , siehe, see	z. B., zum Beispiel, for example
	Ztg., Zeitung, newspaper
	zw., zwischen, between

SPELLING

12. The phonetic principle, to designate each sound heard in direct and distinct enunciation by its appropriate sign, is usually found at the beginning of German spellers. Its application, however, has always been and is still much restricted. Since there is no uniformity of pronunciation throughout the German states, pronunciation cannot be the guide of correct spelling. Moreover, in the different parts of Germany, various means are employed to represent the different changes in the sound of letters and combinations of letters. There was much diversity, and hence much uncertainty, in spelling up to the middle of the 19th century, even the same writer using a varying orthography. Since then, however, grammarians have succeeded in securing some uniformity. Many years ago, orthographic conferences were held in the various states and official spellers were issued by the different governments and schools. These spellers harmonized in most important matters, and the orthography

Ich habe Durst, *I am thirsty.*

Er hat gern ein warmes Zimmer, *He likes a warm room.*

Er hat seine Freunde gern, *He is fond of his friends.*

Sie haben ihn sehr lieb, *They love him very much.*

Wir haben große Eile, *We are in great haste.*

Ich habe ihn in Verdacht, *I suspect him.*

Ich habe Verdacht auf ihn, *I am suspicious of him.*

Wir haben das Geld nötig, *We are in want of the money.*

Ich werde acht auf ihn haben, *I will take care of him.*

Was haben Sie? *What ails you?*

Ich habe Langeweile, *I feel ennui.*

Was haben Sie dagegen? *What objections have you?*

Wir haben Trauer, *We are mourning.*

Man hat ihn zum besten, *They make sport of him.*

Es hat keine Eile, *There is no hurry about it.*

10. The most common idioms with sein are:

An wem ist die Reihe zu lesen? *Whose turn is it to read?*

Sie ist an mir, *It is mine.*

Mir ist sehr kalt; ihm ist zu warm, *I am very cold; he is too warm.*

Mir ist nicht wohl, *I do not feel well.*

Was ist dir, *What ails you?*

Ich weiß nicht, wie mir ist, *I don't know what ails me.*

Sei guten Muts, *Be of good cheer.*

Mir ist nicht wohl zu Mute, *I do not feel well.*

Es ist ihm Ernst damit, *He is in earnest about it.*

Es ist schade, daß er seinem Gegner nicht gewachsen ist, *It is a pity that he is not equal to his antagonist.*

Das Pferd ist mir nicht feil, *My horse is not for sale.*

Wem sind diese Kleider? *Whose clothes are these?*

Sie ist ihm eine Mark schuldig, *She owes him a mark.*

Bist du imstande, es zu thun? *Are you able to do it?*

Wer ist schuld daran? *Whose fault is it?*

Du selbst bist schuld daran, *It is your own fault.*

Es ist kein solches Gesetz vorhanden, *There is no such law existing.*

Es ist ihm darum zu thun, *That is his object.*

Wovon ist die Rede? *What is being spoken of?*

Das ist mir recht, *I am satisfied with that.*

Es ist ihnen lieb, *They are glad of it.*

Ich bin dir herzlich gut, *I love you heartily.*

Lassen Sie es gut sein, *That is enough of it.*

Ich weiß, wie du bist, *I know you (your ways).*

Es sei nun, daß . . . , *Supposing now, that . . .*

Es ist mir so, als ob ich es gehört hätte, *It seems to me as though I had heard it.*

Ich will des Todes sein, wenn es nicht wahr ist, *I will die if it is not true.*

Er ist willens, sie zu besuchen, *He is inclined to visit them.*

LIST OF THE MOST USUAL ABBREVIATIONS

11. The most usual abbreviations are:

A., <i>anno</i> , in the year.	a. M., am Main, on the Main
Ab., Abonn., Abonnement, subscription	Ann., Anmerkung, observation
Abc, alphabet	Antw., Antwort, answer
A. C., <i>anno Christi</i> , in the year of our Lord	A. T., Altes Testament, Old Testament
A. c., <i>anni currentis</i> , in the current year	Aufl., Auflage, edition
A. D., <i>anno Domini</i> , in the year of our Lord	Aug., August, August
a. d., <i>a dato</i> , from this day	Ausg., Ausgabe, edition
a. d., außer Diensten, retired (said of officers)	b., bei, at, at the house of
a. d., an der, on the (river)	B. A., Bank-Actie, bank share
add., füge hinzu, add	Bb., Bände, volumes
Adm., Admiral, admiral	Bd., Band, volume
a. f., <i>anni futuri</i> , next year	b. d., bei dem, at the
a. i., <i>ad interim</i> , for the time being	bearb., bearbeitet, prepared, revised
Alt. Test., Altes Testament, Old Testament	Beil., Beilage, supplement
	beil., beiliegend, enclosed
	bes., besonders, especially
	bibl., biblisch, biblical
	bot., botanisch, botanical

LIST OF THE MOST USUAL ABBREVIATIONS
(Continued)

Bt. , Btto. , Brutto , gross (weight)	Dtz. , Dutzend , dozen
C. , Conto , account	d. B. , der Verfasser
c. , <i>cum</i> , with	Ew. , Euer , your
ca. , <i>circa</i> , about	excl. , <i>exclusive</i> , ausschließlich , <i>exclusive</i>
Centn. , Centner , hundredweight	ƒ. , Fuß , foot
cf. , <i>confer</i> , vergleiche , compare	ƒ. oder fl. , Florin , Gulden
c. l. , <i>citato loco</i> , at the place cited	Fc. , Fcs. , Frank , Franken , franc , francs
Co. , Compagnie , company	ƒco. , franco , postpaid
Cour. , Courant , currency	Frä. , Fräulein
Ct. , Centner , hundredweight	Frhr. , Freiherr , baronet
Com. , Comp. , Compagnie , company	frstl. , fürstlich
D. , doctor , any doctor-title	g. , Gramm
d. ä. , der ältere , the elder	Ob. , Gebrüder
D. C. , <i>da capo</i>	g. D. , gehorsamster Diener , obedient servant
Deb. , Debitor , debtor	geb. , (1) geboren , born; (2) gebunden , bound
Dec. , Dez. , Dezember , December	Geogr. , Geographie , geography
Dept. , Département , department	Geom. , Geometrie , geometry
dergl. , dergleichen , the like	gest. , gestorben , deceased
d. Gr. , der Große , the great	gl. N. , gleichen Namens , of the same name
d. h. , das heißt , that is to say	Gr. , (1) Grad , degree; (2) Gramm , gramme
d. i. , das ist , that is	Graffsch. , Graffschaft , county
Disc. , Disconto , discount	Gramm. , Grammatik , grammar
d. J. , dieses Jahres , of this year	Hamb. , Hamburg
d. l. M. , des letzten Monats , of last month	H. A. P. A. G. , Hamburg-Amerikanische Palet-Aktien-Gesellschaft , Hamburg-American Line
D. M. , <i>doctor medicinae</i> , doctor of medicine	heil. , heilig , holy
d. M. , dieses Monats , of this month	herzgl. , herzoglich , ducal
do. , ditto , ditto	H. H. , hh. , Herrn , gentlemen, Messrs.
Doct. , Doktor , doctor	h. l. , <i>hoc loco</i> , hier , here
D. Ph. , Doktor der Philosophie , doctor of philosophy	Hochw. , Hochwürden , reverend
Dr. , Doktor , doctor	Hpt. , Haupt , chief
Dr. Med. , <i>doctor medicinae</i> , doctor of medicine	Hptst. , Hauptstadt , capital, chief city
Dr. Phil. , <i>doctor philosophiae</i> , doctor of philosophy	hr. , hrn. , Herr , Herrn , Mr.
d8. Mts. , dieses Monats , of this month	huj. , <i>hujus (mensis)</i> , this month
D. Th. , <i>doctor theologiae</i> , doctor of theology	

LIST OF THE MOST USUAL ABBREVIATIONS (Continued)

i. b. J., in diesem Jahre, in the course of this year	LL. D., <i>doctor utriusque juris</i> , doctor of laws
i. e., <i>id est</i> , that is	l. M., letzten Monat, last month
I. H. S., <i>Jesus hominum salvator</i>	lre., Lire, liard
i. J., im Jahre, in the year	l. s., <i>loco sigilli</i> , in place of seal
incl., <i>inclusis</i> , inclusive	M., (1) Mark, mark; (2) Meile, mile
I. N. R. J., <i>Jesus Nazareus rex Judæorum</i> , Jesus of Nazareth, king of the Jews	M., mille, thousand
Inh., Inhalt, contents	m, Meter, meter
Insp., Inspektor, inspector	Maj., Majestät, majesty
Int., Interesse, interest	mask., <i>masculinum</i> , masculine
J., Jahr, year	Math., Mathematik, mathematics
Jan., Januar, January	m. c., <i>mensis currentis</i> , im laufenden Monat, in the course of the month
jüd., jüdisch, jewish	M. D., <i>medicina doctor</i> , doctor of medicine
Jul., Juli, <i>Julius</i> , July	m. H., mein Herr, Sir
Jun., Juni, June	m. H. H.; meine Herren, Gentlemen
kais., kaisert., kaiserlich, imperial	Mill., Million, million
Kal., Kalender, calendar	Min., Minute, minute
Kap., Kapitel, chapter	Mark., Mark, mark
Kapt., Kapitän, captain	m. s., man siehe, see
kath., katholisch, catholic	Manuscr., MS., Manuscript, manuscript
Kfm., Kaufmann, merchant	Meistr., Meister, master
kg., Kilogramm, kilogramme	Mon., Monat, month
kgl., königlich, royal	n. A., neue Ausgabe, new edition
k. k., kaiserlich-königlich	nat., natürlich, natural
Kl., Klasse, class	N. Amer., Nord-Amerika, North America
km, Kilometer, kilometer	N. B., <i>nota bene</i> , wohlgemerkt, take notice
kön., königl., königlich, royal	No., <i>numero</i> , Nummer, number
Kr., Krone, crown	Nov., November, November
L, fünfzig, fifty	Nro., Nummer, <i>numero</i> , number
l., lies, read	N. S., Nachschrift, postscript
lat., lateinisch, Latin	N. T., N. Test., Neues Testament, New Testament
lauf. Mon., lauf. Mt., laufenden Monats, in the course of this month	Netto., netto, neat, net
lb., <i>libra</i> , pound	O., Osten, east
l. c., <i>loco citato</i> , am angeführten Ort, at the place mentioned	
Lfg., Lieferung, part of a serial publication	
l. J., laufenden Jahres, in the present year	

LIST OF THE MOST USUAL ABBREVIATIONS
(Continued)

Oct., (1) Octav, octavo; (2) October, October	f. d., siehe dies, look for this
ob., ober, or	Se., Seine, His (Majesty)
ord., ordinär, ordinary	sel., selig, late, deceased
P., <i>pagina</i> , Blattseite, page	sel. We., selige Witwe, late widow
p. a., <i>per annum</i> , jährlich, by the year	sequ., <i>sequens</i> , der, das Folgende, the following
Pf., Pfennig, penny	f. g., sogenannt, so called
Phil., Philos., Philosophie, philosophy	Ggr., Silbergroßchen, silver gro-schen
Phys., Physik, physics	sign., <i>signatum</i> , signiert, signed
p. M., per Monat, per month	sp., spanisch, Spanish
p. m., <i>per mille</i> , by the thousand	s. p., <i>si placet</i> , if you please
pmo., <i>proximo</i> , nächsten Monats, next month	Spes., Espesen, charges
pr. m., <i>pro mille</i> , by the thousand	sq., <i>vid. sequ.</i>
Prof., Professor, professor	Sr. M., Seiner Majestät, His Majesty
protest., protestantisch, protestant	st., starb, died
Prov., Provinz, province	St., (1) Stück, piece; (2) Sterling, sterling
P. S., <i>post scriptum</i> , Nachschrift, postscript	St., <i>Sanctus</i> , saint
p. t., <i>pro tempore</i> , zur Zeit, for the present	Std., Stück, piece
publ., <i>publice</i> , öffentlich, publicly	Sterl., Sterling, sterling
qm., Quadratmeter, square meter	f. Z., seiner Zeit, in due time
Q. M., Quadratmeile, square mile	Ta., Tara, tare
Rab., Rabatt, discount	techn., technologisch, technological
Rbl., Rubel, ruble	u. A. w. g., um Antwort wird gebeten, an answer is expected
Rec., Recensent, critic	Tg., Tge., Tag, day, Tage
Ref., Referent, informer, reporter	Thlr., Thaler, dollar
Rel., Religion, religion	Ton., Tonne, tun, barrel
R. I. P., <i>requiescat in pace</i> , er ruhe in Frieden, may he rest in peace	u., und, and
Rub., Rubel, ruble	u. A., unter Andern, among others
S., Seite, page	u. a., und andere, and others
S., <i>Sanctus</i> , saint	u. dgl. m., und dergleichen mehr, and similar instances
s., <i>signa</i> , <i>signetur</i> , write, give directions	u. i., <i>ut infra</i> , as below
f. B., südliche Breite, south latitude	ult., <i>ultimo</i> , last, ultimo
Schiff., Schifffahrt, navigation	u. s., <i>ut supra</i> , wie oben, wie vorher, as before mentioned
Schd., Schod, three score	u. f. w., und so weiter, and so on, and so forth

LIST OF THE MOST USUAL ABBREVIATIONS (Continued)

u. v. a., und viele andere, and many others	v. M., vorigen Monats, last month, ult.
v., von, of, from, by	Vol., <i>volumen</i> , Band, volume
v. Chr., vor Christus, before Christ	vorm., vormals, formerly
Berf., Verfasser, author	Vorr., Vorrede, preface
vergl., vergleiche, compare	v. v., <i>vice versa</i> , umgekehrt, in the reverse case
verm. Aufl., vermehrte Auflage, augmented edition	W., Westen, West
Ver. St., Vereinigte Staaten, United States	w. B., westliche Breite, west longitude
vert., <i>verte</i> , turn over	w. S. g. um., wenden Sie gefälligst um, please turn over
vgl., <i>vid.</i> , vergl.	Wwe., Witwe, widow
v. gr., <i>verbi gratia</i> , zum Beispiel, for instance	Z., (1) Zoll, inch; (2) Zeile, line
v. J., vorigen Jahres, of last year	z., zu, zur, zum, by, per
vid., <i>vide</i> , siehe, see	z. B., zum Beispiel, for example
	Ztg., Zeitung, newspaper
	zw., zwischen, between

SPELLING

12. The phonetic principle, to designate each sound heard in direct and distinct enunciation by its appropriate sign, is usually found at the beginning of German spellers. Its application, however, has always been and is still much restricted. Since there is no uniformity of pronunciation throughout the German states, pronunciation cannot be the guide of correct spelling. Moreover, in the different parts of Germany, various means are employed to represent the different changes in the sound of letters and combinations of letters. There was much diversity, and hence much uncertainty, in spelling up to the middle of the 19th century, even the same writer using a varying orthography. Since then, however, grammarians have succeeded in securing some uniformity. Many years ago, orthographic conferences were held in the various states and official spellers were issued by the different governments and schools. These spellers harmonized in most important matters, and the orthography

thus established was employed in school books and has been observed in recent publications. The books of this Course are printed according to the rules prescribed for the Prussian schools.

But many newspapers and not a few books still follow some older system. For the immediate help of students who may have to use books, dictionaries, etc. printed after the old orthography, the more important changes made by the Prussian rules are given below:

1. *Ä, Ö, Ü, Äu*, must be used instead of *Ae, De, Ue, Aeu*—even in Roman type.

2. *Ä* and *äu* must be used in words that have kindred with *a* or *au*; therefore *räcken*, (*Rache*); *Ärmel*, (*Arm*); *räumen*, (*Raum*).

3. *Ë* not *ä* must be used in the words: *echt*, *Grenze*, *Ëring*, *leugnen*, *edel*, *Ëtern*.

4. *Ä* and *e* distinguish words of different meaning; as, *Ähre*, *ear of grain*; but *Ëhre*, *honor*; *Lärche*, *larch*; but *Lerche*, *lark*.

5. *ie*, not *i*, must be used in *gieb*, *giebst*, *gieb* and in the verbal ending *ieren*, as *studieren*. But *i* is used in *ging*, *hing*.

6. The plural of *Änie*, *See*, *Ärnee*, is either *Änien*, *Seen*, *Ärneen*, or *Änieen*, *Seeen*, *Ärneeen*.

7. The use of the double vowel is restricted to a few words. Single vowels for double vowels must be used in:

bar, Barſchaft,	Maß,	Œtoß,
Herb,	quer,	ſelig,
Herde,	Œaſ,	Œtar,
Loß (loſen),	Œham,	Wage,
loß,	Œhale,	Wagen,
Loſung,	Œhar,	Ware.

8. *th* is to be used only in foreign words, as *Ther*, *Thema*, and a few native words, as *Thal*, *Thon*, *Thor*. But *t*, not *th*,

must be used in words where *h* is not necessary to mark a long vowel; as *Tau*, *Tier*, *Teil*, *Nat*, *raten*, *wert*, *Reichtum*, *Mut*, *Armut*, *Not*.

9. *ß*, not *ß*, is to be written in the pronominal forms and the compounds *deß*, *wes*, *dies*, *deswegen*, *deshalb*, *weshalb*, *indeß*; and in the suffix *niß*: *Begräbniß*, but plural, *Begräbnisse*.

13. This revision of orthography, however, was but an imperfect one, acceptable neither to those who demanded a thorough reform, nor to the conservatives. The very government that established it in the schools prohibited its officials from using it. Therefore, further efforts have been made by grammarians to establish a uniform orthography for the entire German empire. In June, 1901, another orthographic conference was held, which created a uniform orthography. The recommendations of this conference are given in Duden's "Orthographisches Wörterbuch." We have taken therefrom a few excerpts that are of exceptional importance.

1. **Über das *th*.**—Das *th* wird nur noch in Fremdwörtern und in Lehnwörtern geschrieben; in allen ursprünglich deutschen Wörtern schreibt man nur noch *t*, also auch in den Wörtern, die bisher noch das *th* bewahrt hatten, *Tal*, *Ton*, *Tor* (der und das), *Tran*, *Träne*, *tun* und *Tür*; ebenso in den von diesen Wörtern gebildeten Ableitungen, z. B. *Taler*, *tönern*, *töricht*, *tranig*, *tränen*, *tätig*, *Untertan*.

Auch in Personennamen deutschen Ursprungs ist bloßes *t* statt des bisherigen *th* zulässig, in einigen selbst vorzuziehen, z. B. in *Berta*, *Bertold*. Gleichberechtigt ist *t* mit *th* in *Günter* und *Walter*.

2. **Über das *ph*.**—Das *ph* wird nur noch in Fremdwörtern geschrieben; in allen ursprünglich deutschen Wörtern und Namen, in denen früher *ph* stand, schreibt man jetzt, *f*, z. B. *Efeu*, *Rudolf*, *Westfalen*, ebenso in den völlig eingebürgerten Fremdwörtern *Elefant*, *Elfenbein*, *Fasan* und *Sofa*.

3. **Über die *S-Laute*.**—Vor *t* und *p* steht—außer in Zusammensetzungen, wie z. B. *Hautstür*, immer *f*, z. B. *fasten*, *Riste*,

Bfoften; Gafte, Luft, Koft; Gafpe, Wefpe, Rofpe, Knoipe, Knuspern.

Wenn hinter ff der tonlofe Vokal e ausfällt, fo muß es, da ff nur zwischen zwei Vokalen ftehen kann, in f verwandelt werden; fo wird z. B. aus angemeffener angemefner, aus wäffrig wäffrig. Dagegen bleibt das f, wenn hinter ihm ein tonlofes e ausfällt unverändert, z. B. unfre ftatt unfere, Drechfler ftatt Drechfeler.

In lateinifcher Schrift fegt man s für f und z ohne Unterfchied, ss für ff.

4. **Zufammentreffen dreier gleicher Konfonanten.**—Wenn bei Zufammenfegungen drei gleiche Konfonanten zufammen treffen, z. B. in Brennneffel, Schiffahrt, Schnellläufer, fo kann man davon einen ausfallen laffen; man darf also fchreiben Brenneffel, Schiffahrt, Schnelläufer. Aber bei Silbentrennung tritt der dritte Konfonant wieder ein, also Brenn-neffel, Schiff-ahrt, Schnell-läufer. In dennoch, Dritteil und Mittag fegt man den Konfonanten immer nur zweimal, auch bei Silbentrennung, also den-noch, Drit-teil, Mit-tag. Nach t (=tt) darf das t und nach z (=zz) darf das z nicht ausfallen; man fchreibt also Rücktehr, Schußzoll.

5. **Über die Silbentrennung (nach dem amtlichen Regelbuch).**—Mehrſilbige Wörter, die man über zwei Zeilen zu verteilen gezwungen ift, trennt man im allgemeinen nach Sprechſilben, d. h. fo, wie ſie ſich beim langſamen Sprechen von ſelbſt zerlegen, z. B. Wör-ter-ver-zeich-niß, Ge-ſchlech-ter, Freun-des-treue, Über-lie-fe-rung; aus einzelnen Buchſtaben beſtehende Silben werden beſſer nicht abgetrennt.

Dabei ſind folgende Regeln zu beachten:

(a) Einfache Wörter. (1) Ein einzelner Mitlaut kommt auf die folgende Zeile, z. B. tre-ten, nä-hen.—ch, ſch, h, ph, th bezeichnen nur einfache Laute und bleiben daher ungetrennt, z. B. Bü-cher, Hä-ſcher, Bu-ße, So-phie, ka-tholiſch.—r und z werden hierbei wie einfache Mitlaute behandelt, z. B. Ge-re, rei-zen. (2) Von mehreren Mitlauten kommt der letzte auf die folgende Zeile, z. B. An-ker, Fin-ger, War-te, Rit-ter, Waſ-fer, Knoſ-pe, tap-fer, kämp-fen, Karp-fen, Ach-fel, krat-zen, Städ-te,

Verwand-te. *t* wird dabei in zwei *k* aufgelöst, z. B. Hat-ke. Nur *st* bleibt immer ungetrennt, z. B. La-sten, be-ste, ko-sten, Klo-ster, mei-ste, Fen-ster, För-ster, Pfing-sten.

(b) Anmerkung.—In einfachen Fremdwörtern gehören die Lautverbindungen von *b*, *p*, *d*, *t*, *g*, *k* mit *l* oder *r* in der Regel auf die folgende Zeile, z. B. Pu-bli-kum, Me-trum, Hy-drant.

(c) Zusammengesetzte Wörter sind nach ihren Bestandteilen zu trennen. Die Bestandteile selbst werden wie die einfachen Wörter behandelt, z. B. Dien-s-tag, Tür-an-gel, Emp-fangs-an-zei-ge, Vor-aus-set-zung. Diese Teilung bleibt auch da geboten, wo sie der gewöhnlichen Aussprache nicht gemäß ist z. B. hier-auf, her-ein, hin-aus, dar-über, war-um, wor-an, be-ob=ach=ten, voll=en=den.

(d) Anmerkung.—Für zusammengesetzte Fremdwörter gilt dieselbe Regel wie für solche deutsche Wörter. Man schreibt also z. B. Atmo-sphäre, Mikro-skop, Inter-esse. Erkennt man die Bestandteile von Fremdwörtern nicht, so richtet man sich nach den Regeln unter (a).

6. Über den Bindestrich (nach dem amtlichen Regelbuch).

(a) Wird bei der Zusammenstellung von zusammengesetzten Wörtern ein ihnen gemeinsamer Bestandteil nur einmal gesetzt, so tritt an den übrigen Stellen statt seiner der Bindestrich ein, z. B. Feld= und Gartenfrüchte, Jugendlust und -leid. (b) Der Bindestrich ist außerdem zulässig (1) in der Zusammensetzung von Eigennamen und in den von solchen oder in ähnlicher Weise gebildeten Eigenschaftswörtern, z. B. Jung=Stilling, Reuß=Greiz, Bergisch=Märkische Eisenbahn; (2) in besonders unübersichtlichen Zusammensetzungen, z. B. Haftpflicht-Versicherungsgesellschaft, aber nicht in leicht übersichtlichen Zusammensetzungen, wie z. B. Turnverein, Kirchenkasse, Prüfungsordnung, Amtsgerichtsrat; (3) in einzelnen Fällen mit Rücksicht auf die Deutlichkeit der Schrift, z. B. Schluß=s, Dehnungs=h, F=Punkt, A=Dur u. a. m.

7. Über den Apostroph (nach dem amtlichen Regelbuch).

(a) Wenn Laute, die gewöhnlich zu sprechen und zu schreiben sind, unterdrückt werden, so deutet man ihre Stelle durch ein

Auslassungszeichen (Apostroph) an, z. B. heil'ge Nacht, ist's, geht's.

Anmerkung. Bei der Verschmelzung von Verhältnißwörtern mit dem Geschlechtswort ist das Auslassungszeichen nicht anzuwenden, z. B. aus, ins, durchs, am, beim, unterm, vom, zum.

(b) Bei den auf einen S-Laut ausgehenden Eigennamen wird der zweite Fall durch das Auslassungszeichen kenntlich gemacht, z. B. Voß' Luise, Demostenes' Reden; ohne dieses Zeichen schreibe man aber z. B. Schillers Gedichte, Goethes Werke, Homers Ilias, Ciceros Briefe.

8. Über das Trema.—Ä, Ö, Ü statt Ae, Öe, Ue.—Das Trema braucht in der deutschen Schrift nur ganz vereinzelt angewendet zu werden. Es ist überall unzulässig, wo ein Mißverständnis nicht möglich ist. So ist es nie anzuwenden zur Trennung von a und e, o und e, u und e, auch nicht im Anfang großgeschriebener Wörter. Denn da hier der Umlaut statt durch Ae, Öe, Ue nur noch durch Ä, Ö, Ü bezeichnet werden darf, so muß Ae, Öe, Ue, stets zweifilbig sein und es kann z. B. Aeronaut nur vierfilbig gelesen werden.

Auch sonst wende man das Trema nur an wo man glaubt, der unrichtigen Aussprache des Geschriebenen vorbeugen zu müssen, z. B. etwa in Äi (Faultier), Äleuten, nicht aber bei Rhomboid, Attheist, Kasein, Wörtern die nicht leicht jemand falsch, d. h. zweifilbig, aussprechen wird.

PROSODY

14. Poetry and Prose.—Poetry differs from prose mainly in the fact that its words are arranged in accordance with a definite principle of order as to the recurrence of long or short sounds, or of accented or unaccented syllables. This principle has not been the same at all times nor in all languages. Among the Greeks and Romans it was based on quantity; i. e., the time occupied in pronouncing the syllables, those that are long taking up twice as much time as those that are short. In the German and English poetry the principle of arrangement consists in the regular recurrence of accented and unaccented syllables. The undulation of sound produced by this continuous flow of accents and non-accents is known as *rhythm*, and this it is that constitutes the essential difference between poetry and prose. Other elements, such as rime and alliteration, are sometimes employed in the way of embellishment and as aids to the rhythm.

Again these two distinctive forms of literary composition differ with respect to their object: for the chief aim of the poet is to give pleasure, while the prose writer usually has one or more other objects in view.

15. Kinds of Poetry.—The earliest compositions in all languages were metrical. Bards, or poets, are to be found among all nations just emerging from the barbaric state. It was their duty to sing traditional odes on great national, religious, or athletic festivals; and to celebrate the achievements of their own heroes and the stirring events of the day in original composition. In course of time their rude *lyric* compositions were gathered together and interspersed with additional lines to give unity to the collection, and this resultant form became the *epic*. On national holidays the celebration of the deeds of past heroes in song, as well as

the chanting of hymns to the gods, formed the chief feature of public gatherings. A rude stage was erected, and performers chanted the national odes in chorus. Gradually, in order to vary the entertainments, soliloquies and dialogues were introduced—the first form of the *drama*.

16. The different kinds of poetry may be briefly considered under the following heads:

1. *Lyric Poetry* is so called because it was originally intended to be sung to the accompaniment of the lyre. It comprehends several different classes; as, the *ode*, the *ballad*, the *hymn*, the *song*, and the *elegy*.

2. *Epic, or Heroic, Poetry*.—This term is applied only to great and lengthy narrative poems, in which the dramatic element is also introduced in the form of impassioned harangue, detailing some important national enterprise or the adventure of some distinguished hero. Homer's "*Iliad*" and "*Odyssey*" and Goethe's "*Hermann und Dorothea*" belong to this class of poetry.

3. *Dramatic Poetry*.—The word drama means action, and the term dramatic poetry is applied to that species of composition written in the forms of dialogue; it is generally intended to be acted.

4. *Descriptive Poetry*.—Description enters into every kind of poetical composition; but some poems are purely descriptive; as, for instance, Schiller's "*Der Spaziergang*."

5. *Didactic Poetry*.—Under this head are included all poems whose prime object, beyond the giving of pleasure, is to instruct—whether in arts, morals, or philosophy.

17. Verse is but a special form of poetry. It is characterized by hard and fast rules governing its melody and rhythm. While all highly imaginative and artistic prose may properly be termed poetry, the popular conception of the word *poetry* restricts its meaning and identifies it with verse.

18. The Field of Prosody.—The word *prosody* comes from two Greek words meaning accent. Strictly speaking, prosody denotes merely that musical tone or melody which accompanies utterance, but the word is used both by classical and modern grammarians to include not only the doctrines of accent and quantity but also the laws governing metrical composition and versification.

GERMAN VERSE

19. Elements of German Verse.—The elements of verse are *syllables* which, grouped together in twos or threes, form *feet*, and these in combination form *verses*, or *lines*.

A **syllable** is a word or a part of a word uttered by one effort of the organs of speech. There are two qualities belonging to syllables which claim our special attention—*accent* and *quantity*.

By **accent** is meant the vocal stress put upon a syllable when pronouncing the word in which it occurs. Every German word of more than one syllable has an accent invariably attached to one of its syllables. Monosyllables are accented or not according to their grammatical importance.

By **quantity** is meant the time occupied in pronouncing a syllable, one long syllable being considered equivalent to two short ones.

The **rhythm** of German verse, as has been already pointed out, is based on accent; that is, upon the measured undulation of accented and unaccented syllables. On the other hand, the rhythm of classical verse is based upon *quantity*, which in Latin and Greek poetry is governed by much more rigid laws than the metrical rules of English verse. Rhythm, in general, is the regular recurrence of long and short, or of accented and unaccented syllables.

20. Foot.—The unit of measurement in verse is a **foot** and not a syllable. A foot, or *meter*, is a group of two or three syllables; hence, the division into dissyllabic and trisyllabic verse. The names given to the different kinds

of feet, both in German and English poetry, are usually those of the classical meters, and the method of marking the accented and unaccented syllables is from the same source. Thus the usual marks for long and short (—) must be taken to indicate accented and unaccented syllables.

21. Different Kinds of Meters.—In German, there are four kinds of dissyllabic feet:

der Jambus (iambus): —, as *Gefang*

der Trochäus (trochee): —, as *Leben*

der Spondeus (spondee): —, as *Schwermet?*

der Pyrrhichius (pyrrhic): —, (seldom used)

Of trisyllabic feet there are also four German kinds:

der Daktylus (dactyl): —, as *Eilende*

der Anapäst (anapest): —, as in *der Hand?*

der Creticus (cretic): —, as *Waterland*

der Choriambus (choriambus): —, *Jubelgefang*

22. Measures of Verse.—Each of the eight kinds of feet enumerated above may be variously combined according to the requirements of the metrical effect sought to be produced. The number of feet in each verse may vary from one to six, or even to eight. Verses are described according to the number of feet they contain, and are known as monometer (verse of one foot), dimeter (verse of two feet), trimeter, tetrameter, pentameter, hexameter, heptameter, octameter.

23. Poetic Pauses.—The rhythm of verse depends not only on the arrangement of accented and unaccented syllables, but also on the breaks, or pauses, that divide it into phrases of different length. These pauses are identical in many instances with the grammatical stops, but they may also be independent of them and frequently do occur where there are no grammatical pauses. Metrical pauses must

therefore be clearly distinguished from sentential stops. The one is as essential to the melody as the other is to the sense.

Metrical pauses may occur either at the end of a verse (that is, a line), or in the midst of the verse itself. This stop is known as the *cesura*; the pause as the *cesural pause*. When the verse is rhymed, the final pause acquires unusual prominence and adds greatly to the force of the rhyme.

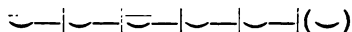
24. Cesura.—The **cesural pause** is the natural rest, or halt, made by the voice in reading verse aloud. It is independent of the line and may occur almost anywhere—even in the midst of a foot. Sometimes there are two or even three metrical pauses in a line, one more marked than the other; occasionally there are verses with no marked break in their midst. The strongest accent in the line often immediately precedes the pause. When both pause and chief accent are combined on the most important word, the emphasis thus produced gives the keynote to the rhythm.

25. Rime is uniformity of sound in the endings of two or more verses or verse phrases. There are two kinds of rime: the masculine (männlicher Reim) and the feminine rime (weiblicher Reim). In the former, the uniformity of sound is confined to the last accented syllable of the line; while in the latter, there is a uniform sound in more than one syllable.

26. Alliteration is the frequent recurrence of the same letter or sound at the beginning of words in a verse, forming a kind of initial rhyme.

27. Different Kinds of Verses.—There are two kinds of verses, in German, the simple and the compound verse; the former is composed of homogeneous meters, while the latter consists of different kinds of feet. The most important verses are:

1. Der fünffüßige Jambus (iambic pentameter). Its form is



EXAMPLE:

Gestern in einer Schenke, unge Sitze!
 Das Alter, das'ger, mangelhafter Gaiet,
 Sie in der Schenke in der Gegenwart.
 Jetzt ist noch jetzt mit überlappendem Gefühl.
 Als wenn ich sie zum erstenmal beträfe.
 Und es gemüht sich nicht mein Geist hierher.

(Goethe)

The iambic pentameter has become the verse of the German drama, and has been used by Lessing in his „Nathan der Weise.“

2. Der sechshüfige Rhythmus (iambic hexameter). Its form is:

— — — — —

EXAMPLE:

Ausdrück ist deine Rede, doch dein Bild ist sanft.
 Nicht schrecklich bist du in der Nähe anzusehen;
 Es sieht das Herz mich zu der lieblichen Gestalt.
 O, bei der Milde deines zärtlichen Geschlechts
 Lieb' ich dich an. Erbarme meiner Jugend dich.

The iambic hexameter is the verse of the antique drama. Related to the iambic hexameter is the Alexandriner, so named from an old French poem written in this measure detailing the deeds of Alexander the Great. They are seldom used except with pentameters to vary the monotony of their rhythm.

EXAMPLE:

Spring an, mein Hüftenroß aus Alexandria!
 Mein Wüldling!—Solch ein Tier bewältigt kein Schaf,
 Mein Emir, und was sonst in jenen
 Östlichen Ländern sich in Fürstenthümern wiegt,
 Wo donnert durch den Sand ein solcher Fuß? wo fliegt
 Ein solcher Schweif? wo solche Mähnen?

3. Die trochäische Tripodie (trochaic trimeter). Its form is:

— — — — —

EXAMPLE:

Daß ich wahr, und würdig,
Euch den Lenz beschriebe,
Dieses liebe Leben,
Daß ich leb' in Liebe.

4. Die trochäische Pentapodie (trochaic pentameter). Its form is:

— — — — —

EXAMPLE:

Was ist Weißes dort am grünen Walde?
Ist es Schnee wohl, oder sind es Schwäne?
Wär' es Schnee, er wäre weggeschmolzen;
Wären's Schwäne, wären weggeflogen.

(Goethe)

5. Die trochäische Tetrapodie (trochaic tetrameter). Its form is:

— — — — —

EXAMPLE:

Trauernd tief saß Don Diego
Wohl war keiner je so traurig:
Gramvoll dacht' er Tag und Nächte
Nur an seines Hauses Schmach.

(Serder)

6. Die trochäische Oktopodio (trochaic octameter). Its form is:

— — — — — (—)

EXAMPLE:

Nun zu euch, ihr Bühnendichter, sprech ich, wend' ich mich fortan:
Wollt ihr etwas Großes leisten, setzet euer Leben dran,
Keiner gehe, wenn er einen Lorbeer tragen will, davon,
Morgens zur Kanzlei mit Akten, abends auf den Helikon.

7. Der daktylische Dimeter (dactylic dimeter). Its form is:

— ∪ ∪ | — (∪) (∪)

EXAMPLE:

Tage der Bonne,
Kommt ihr so bald!

Heilige Gluten,
Wen sie umschweben
Fühlt sich im Leben,
Selig mit Guten.

8. Der daktylische Trimeter (dactylic trimeter.) Its form is:

— — — | — — — | — — — | —

EXAMPLE:

(Ebert, mich scheucht ein trüber Gedanke vom blinkenden Weine)
Tief in die Melancholie.

9. Der daktylische Hexameter (dactylic hexameter). Its form is:

— — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | —

EXAMPLE:

Seltamer Mann, dich tödet dein Mut noch; und du erbarmst dich
Nicht des stammelnden Kindes noch mein, des elenden Weibes,
Ach, bald Witwe von dir; denn dich töten gewiß die Achäer,
Alle mit Nacht anstürmend. Allein mir wäre das beste,
Deiner beraubt in die Erde hinab zu sinken; denn weiter
Bleibt kein Trost mir übrig, wenn du dein Schicksal erreicht hast.

From the hexameter originated the pentameter

— — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | —

EXAMPLE:

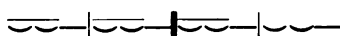
Und die Sonne Homers, siehe, sie lächelt auch uns.

The pentameter is combined with the hexameter in the distichon.

EXAMPLE:

Im Hexameter steigt des Springbrunnns flüssige Säule,
Im Pentameter drauf fällt sie melodisch hinab.

10. Die anapästische Tetrapodie (anapestic tetrameter).
Its form is:



EXAMPLE:

Auf, auf, o Genossen! Er wandelt heran
Lichtschön wie Apollo, der Köcher und Pfeil
Im Gebüsch ablegt und die Veier bezieht
Mit Seiten. Es spült der kastalische Quell
An die Kniechel des Gottes, und es schleicht Sehnsucht
In die liebliche Seele der Mäusen.

(Platen)

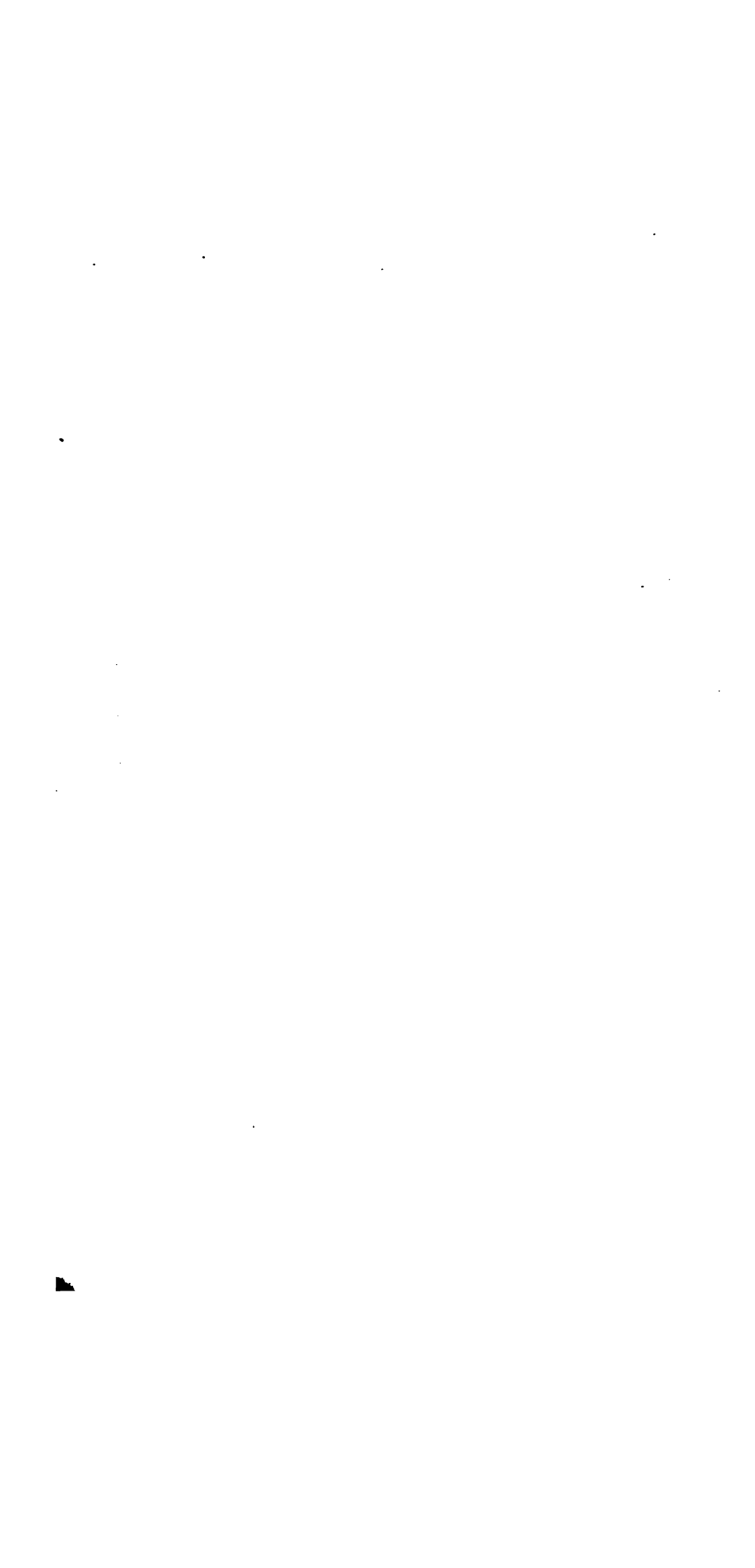
11. Die anapästische Oktopodie (anapestic octometer). Its
form is:



EXAMPLE:

Reusch lehnt Klopstock an dem Lilienstab, und um Goethes
erleuchtete Stirne
Glühn Rosen im Kranz. Kühn wäre der Wunsch zu ersun-
gen verwandte Belohnung.

(Platen)



A SERIES OF QUESTIONS

RELATING TO THE SUBJECTS
TREATED OF IN THIS VOLUME.

It will be noticed that the questions contained in the following pages are divided into sections corresponding to the sections of the text of the preceding pages, so that each section has a headline that is the same as the headline of the section to which the questions refer. No attempt should be made to answer any of the questions until the corresponding part of the text has been carefully studied.

EXAMPLE:

Heraus in eure Schatten, rege Wipfel
 Des alten, heil'gen, dichtbelaubten Hainez,
 Wie in der Göttin stilles Eigentum,
 Tret' ich noch jezt mit schauerndem Gefühl,
 Als wenn ich sie zum erstenmal beträte,
 Und es gewöhnt sich nicht mein Geist hierher.

(Goethe)

The iambic pentameter has become the verse of the German drama, and has been used by Lessing in his „Rathhan der Weise.“

2. Der sechsfüßige Jambus (iambic hexameter). Its form is:

—|—|—|—|—|—

EXAMPLE:

Furchtbar ist deine Rede, doch dein Blick ist sanft,
 Nicht schrecklich bist du in der Nähe anzuschau'n;
 Es zieht das Herz mich zu der lieblichen Gestalt.
 O, bei der Milde deines zärtlichen Geschlechts
 Fleh' ich dich an. Erbarme meiner Jugend dich.

The iambic hexameter is the verse of the antique drama. Related to the iambic hexameter is the Alexandriner, so named from an old French poem written in this measure detailing the deeds of Alexander the Great. They are seldom used except with pentameters to vary the monotony of their rhythm.

EXAMPLE:

Spring an, mein Wüstenroß aus Alexandria!
 Mein Wildling!—Solch ein Tier bewältigt kein Schaf,
 Kein Emir, und was sonst in jenen
 Östlichen Ländern sich in Fürstensätteln wiegt,
 Wo donnert durch den Sand ein solcher Fuß? wo fliegt
 Ein solcher Schweiß? wo solche Mähnen?

3. Die trochäische Tripodie (trochaic trimeter). Its form is:

—|—|—|—

EXAMPLE:

Daß ich wahr, und würdig,
 Euch den Venz beschriebe,
 Dieses liebe Leben,
 Daß ich leb' in Liebe.

4. Die trochäische Pentapodie (trochaic pentameter). Its form is:

— — | — — | — — | — — | — —

EXAMPLE:

Was ist Weißes dort am grünen Walde?
 Ist es Schnee wohl, oder sind es Schwäne?
 Wär' es Schnee, er wäre weggeschmolzen;
 Wären's Schwäne, wären weggeflogen.

(Goethe)

5. Die trochäische Tetrapodie (trochaic tetrameter). Its form is:

— — | — — | — — | — —

EXAMPLE:

Trauernd tief saß Don Diego
 Wohl war keiner je so traurig:
 Gramvoll dacht' er Tag und Nächte
 Nur an seines Hauses Schmach.

(Herder)

6. Die trochäische Octopodie (trochaic octameter). Its form is:

— — | — — | — — | — — | — — | — — | — — (—)

EXAMPLE:

Nun zu euch, ihr Bühnendichter, sprech ich, wend' ich mich fortan:
 Vollt ihr etwas Großes leisten, sehet euer Leben dran,
 Keiner gehe, wenn er einen Lorbeer tragen will, davon,
 Morgens zur Kanzlei mit Akten, abends auf den Helikon.

7. Der daktylische Dimeter (dactylic dimeter). Its form is:

— — — | — — (—) (—)

EXAMPLE:

Tage der Bonne,
Kommt ihr so bald!

Heilige Glutten,
Wen sie umschweben
Fühlt sich im Leben,
Selig mit Guten.

8. Der daktylische Trimeter (dactylic trimeter.) Its form is:

— — — | — — — | — — — | —

EXAMPLE:

(Ebert, mich scheucht ein trüber Gedanke vom blinkenden Weine)
Tief in die Melancholie.

9. Der daktylische Hexameter (dactylic hexameter). Its form is:

— — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | —

EXAMPLE:

Seltamer Mann, dich tödet dein Mut noch; und du erbarmst dich
Nicht des stammelnden Kindes noch mein, des elenden Weibes,
Ach, bald Witve von dir; denn dich töten gewiß die Achäer,
Alle mit Macht anstürmend. Allein mir wäre das beste,
Deiner beraubt in die Erde hinab zu sinken; denn weiter
Bleibt kein Trost mir übrig, wenn du dein Schicksal erreicht hast.

From the hexameter originated the pentameter

— — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | —

EXAMPLE:

Und die Sonne Homers, siehe, sie lächelt auch uns.

The pentameter is combined with the hexameter in the distichon.

EXAMPLE:

Im Hexameter steigt des Springbrunnns flüssige Säule,
Im Pentameter drauf fällt sie melodisch hinab.

10. Die anapästische Tetrapodie (anapestic tetrameter).
Its form is:



EXAMPLE:

Auf, auf, o Genossen! Er wandelt heran
Lichtschön wie Apollo, der Köcher und Pfeil
Im Gebüsch ablegt und die Leier bezieht
Mit Seiten. Es spült der kastalische Quell
An die Knöchel des Gottes, und es schleicht Sehnsucht
In die liebliche Seele der Nusen.

(Platen)

11. Die anapästische Oktopodie (anapestic octometer). Its
form is:



EXAMPLE:

Reusch lehnt Klopstock an dem Lilienstab, und um Goethes
erleuchtete Stirne
Glühn Rosen im Kranz. Kühn wäre der Wunsch zu ersun-
gen verwandte Belohnung.

(Platen)

(11) Decline, in the singular and plural, *der Bruder, der Garten, das Gebäude, die Tochter*.

(12) What are the declensional characteristics of nouns of the second class?

(13) Decline, in the singular and plural, *der Sohn, der Fuß, die Stadt*.

(14) Translate into German: the houses of the village, the rivers of the country, the inhabitants of the city.

(15) Decline, in the singular and plural, *der Herr, der Knabe*.

(16) State the rules for the declension of proper names when connected with one or more titles.

(17) Translate into German: the horses of the count, the garden of the mother, the duchies of Germany, the sons of Professor Brown, the books of Professor Doctor Smith.

(18) (a) Define the pronoun. (b) How many classes of pronouns are there?

(19) What is the personal pronoun?

(20) Decline the pronoun „ich.“

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 3)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

(1) What is a pronominal adjective? In what several ways may it be used in the construction of sentences?

(2) How many sets of endings are used for the inflection of pronouns and pronominal adjectives?

(3) Define the possessive pronoun.

(4) Decline in the singular and plural: *mein Pferd, meine Tochter*.

(5) Translate into German:

(a) Have you my books?—No, your friends have them.

(b) Has the scholar her books and her pencils?—Yes, she has them in her desk. (c) Have you his pens?—Yes, I have them. (d) This is my book, yours is on the table.

(e) Your father is a painter, mine is a teacher.

(6) What do you know about the different uses of possessives, when they are a part of the predicate?

(7) Define the demonstrative pronoun.

(8) Decline in the singular and plural: (a) *dieser, diese, dieses*; (b) *jener Mann*.

(9) Translate into German:

(a) This weather is very pleasant. (b) This man is tall, that one is small. (c) Are these the same scholars that

were in school with us? (*d*) He is such a diligent scholar.
(*e*) Such boys do not learn anything.

(10) Define the interrogative pronoun.

(11) Decline the interrogative pronouns *wer*, *was*.

(12) Which words are used as relative pronouns?

(13) Translate into German:

(*a*) Who is this? (*b*) Whom did you see? (*c*) Whose pencils are these? (*d*) Which of these men is your father? (*e*) What are you talking about? (*f*) Which cane do you wish to buy? (*g*) What kind of flowers are these? (*h*) This is the boy whose father died yesterday. (*i*) The garden we are in belongs to my father.

(14) What is an indefinite pronoun?

(15) Give six indefinite pronouns which can be used also as pronominal adjectives; illustrate their use by examples.

(16) Translate into German:

(*a*) Everybody hears you. (*b*) Nobody has been here. (*c*) Did not somebody knock? (*d*) People say that the prince is here. (*e*) They say you will go to Europe. (*f*) Some salt, some pepper, something magnificent, something new, nothing good. (*g*) I have lived several years in Paris. (*h*) Much patience, little liberty.

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 4)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

(1) Define the adjective and give the derivation of the term.

(2) Explain the different uses of the adjective and illustrate them.

(3) Decline: (a) der gute Hut, (b) unser alter Vater, (c) sein neues Buch.

(4) Translate into German:

The houses of the large cities are high. My old father is ill. We have been on the high mountains of America. He reads fast; he speaks slowly. This old tree has only a few leaves. This famous painter has been in all the countries of Europe.

(5) Translate into English:

Ganz Europa ist einig. Gib mir einen halben Dollar. Die ganze Stadt war auf dem Versammlungsplatze. Wir haben ein großes Haus und ein kleines. Ganz Frankreich war voller Begeisterung für den Krieg. Wir können das Gute und das Böse unterscheiden. Dieses Rot ist nicht so grell wie jenes. Die hohen Berge der Schweiz sind mit ewigem Schnee bedeckt. Die armen Bauern haben kleine Häuser.

(6) How many degrees of comparison have adjectives that denote variable qualities, and what are they?

(7) What is said of adjectives not admitting comparison?

(8) (a) How is the comparative expressed? (b) How is the superlative expressed?

(9) Give four instances of irregular comparison.

(10) Translate into German:

The other book is on the table. I have only a few hours' time. Good old wine. Clear cold water. That pretty new building. He speaks a broken English. He has many beautiful flowers. All Germany was united. A sweet apple and a sour one.

(11) (a) What do numerals express? (b) How are they divided?

(12) Write the cardinals up to *zwanzig*.

(13) (a) What do the ordinal numerals denote? and (b) what question do they answer?

(14) What is said about the declension of the cardinal *ein*?

(15) Translate into German:

This girl is prettier than that one. That river is deeper than this one. That mountain is high, that one there is higher, and this one here is the highest. You are taller than I. This man is as old as that one. An older gentleman. The light is best here. In winter the days are shortest. Berlin, December 5, 1902. New York, November 27, 1903.

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 5)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

- (1) Give the general definition of a verb.
- (2) Explain and illustrate the meaning of transitive and intransitive as applied to verbs.
- (3) What are meant by the active and the passive forms of transitive verbs? Illustrate by examples.
- (4) (a) What inflections have verbs? (b) Define conjugation.
- (5) (a) Define mode. (b) How many modes has the German verb? (c) What are their names?
- (6) (a) What is tense? (b) How many and what tenses are there in German?
- (7) What classes of tenses are there in German with respect to their formation?
- (8) How many persons are there in German verbs? With what do they correspond? What sign or signs are there of person?
- (9) (a) How is the stem of a verb found? (b) What are the principal parts of a verb?
- (10) (a) Into what two great classes are German verbs divided? (b) Define weak verbs. (c) Define strong verbs.

(11) (a) Give the principal parts of the three German auxiliaries. (b) Why are they called auxiliaries?

(12) Translate into German:

(a) They had had. (b) We shall have. (c) You will have had. (d) He had been. (e) Thou wilt have. (f) I would have been. (g) They have become. (h) We should have become. (i) You would be. (j) He became.

(13) Give all imperatives and infinitives of the German auxiliaries.

(14) What German verbs form their perfect and pluperfect tenses with the help of the auxiliary *haben*? Illustrate by three examples.

(15) What German verbs form their perfect and pluperfect tenses with the help of the auxiliary *sein*? Illustrate by two examples.

(16) What compound tenses of all German verbs are formed with the help of the auxiliary *werden*?

(17) Translate into German:

(a) He would have had more pleasure, if he had had more patience. (b) Have patience, my child! (c) Be diligent, boys! (d) This woman says that her old uncle is very sick. (e) Honor be to the king. (f) Here is my old hat; dear father, be so good and give me a new (one) for it. (g) The trees become green. (h) What has become of my brother? (i) Your father is older than mine. (j) The man became rich. (k) The leaves of the trees become yellow in autumn. (l) In (the) spring the days become longer, but in autumn they become shorter.

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 6)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

- (1) Define the weak verb.
- (2) Give the principal parts of *loben*, *reden*, *handeln*.
- (3) Conjugate the verb *holen* in the present indicative.
- (4) Give the imperative of the verb *zeigen*.
- (5) What is said about the past participle of verbs ending in *ieren*?
- (6) Form the past participles of the following verbs: *bedienen*, *bezeichnen*, *bezahlen*, *entführen*, *versagen*, *verwünschen*, *gehören*, *erweichen*, *erzählen*, *zersetzen*.
- (7) Conjugate the verb *kaufen* in the past, perfect, and pluperfect tenses.
- (8) Give the principal parts of all modal auxiliaries.
- (9) Conjugate the verbs *dürfen*, *können*, *mögen*, in the present tense.
- (10) What is said about the meanings of the modal auxiliaries *sollen* and *wollen*?
- (11) Translate into German:
 - (a) The teacher praises the diligent boy.
 - (b) Good children love their parents.
 - (c) I played with the same boys.
 - (d) You have bought two houses.
 - (e) We hear his

voice. (*f*) They will learn German. (*g*) He had opened the door. (*h*) They smiled at (*über*) him. (*i*) The man led his son by (*an, with dat.*) the hand. (*j*) The mother will blame the daughter.

(12) What is said about the mixed conjugation?

(13) Translate into English:

(*a*) Ich darf den Brief lesen. (*b*) Warum dürfen wir das nicht thun? (*c*) Wollen Sie mit mir spazieren gehen? (*d*) Ich möchte gern mit Ihnen sprechen. (*e*) Er hätte es thun sollen. (*f*) Können die Kinder mit uns gehen? (*g*) Man muß zu frieden sein, um glücklich sein zu können. (*h*) Ich habe ihm arbeiten helfen. (*i*) Wir haben ihn kommen hören. (*j*) Sie hatten uns kommen lassen.

(14) What is said about the perfect participle of a modal auxiliary when used in connection with a dependent infinitive?

(15) In what do the verbs of the mixed conjugation differ from the verbs of the strong conjugation?

(16) Give the principal parts of the following verbs: helfen, schlagen, blasen, heben, weben, trinken, essen, fangen.

(17) Conjugate the verb *helfen* in the present indicative.

(18) Give the imperatives of the verbs *sehen*, *helfen*, *lesen*, *trinken*.

(19) Conjugate the verb *sehen* in the indicative mode.

(20) Translate into German:

(*a*) This scholar reads more distinctly than that one. (*b*) My father gave me three dollars. (*c*) Have you seen the king? (*d*) We have forgotten the matter. (*e*) The blind sees no one. (*f*) We should read more, if we had more time. (*g*) My father suffered from (*an*) toothache. (*h*) The wind tore the leaves from the tree. (*i*) We ate a roast hare. (*j*) The coat hangs on (*an*) the wall.

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 7)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

- (1) How is the passive voice of verbs formed?
- (2) Give the entire indicative of the passive voice of the verb *sehen*.
- (3) Translate into English:
(a) Die Mädchen wurden von ihrer Mutter getadelt. (b) Die Knaben sind von ihrem Lehrer gelobt worden. (c) Die Stadt wird zerstört. (d) Der Feind wird die Stadt zerstören. (e) Zwei Briefe wurden geschrieben. (f) Das Kind wird von seinen Eltern geliebt. (g) Der Mann ist von einem Hunde gebissen worden. (h) Wir würden nicht genannt worden sein. (i) Das Feld wird vom Landmanne bebaut. (j) Es wird getanzt.
- (4) What do you know about the passive voice of intransitive verbs?
- (5) Give the different substitutes for the passive. Illustrate each case.
- (6) Translate into German:
(a) The field is plowed by the farmer. (b) The paper is sold. (c) There was much singing. (d) Yesterday the boy was dismissed. (e) The glove has been found. (f) That is understood. (g) The author of this book will be rewarded by (von) the king. (h) I have not been asked. (i) The books have been found. (j) This house will be bought by my uncle.
- (7) Explain the reflexive verb. Give illustrations.

(8) Conjugate the present and past indicative of the verb *ſich wundern*.

(9) Give the perfect and pluperfect indicative of the verb *ſich vornehmen*.

(10) What is an impersonal verb? Give four illustrations of impersonal verbs.

(11) Translate into German:

(a) Our parents will rejoice at us. (b) How are you, my friend? (c) She has left her books at home. (d) We are afraid of treachery. (e) He is ashamed of his brother. (f) We will rely on you. (g) It rains. (h) I feel ill. (i) There is something new. (j) It thunders; it snows; it lightens; it freezes; it hails; it dawns.

(12) Give the inseparable prefixes. Illustrate each by an example.

(13) Explain the different meanings of the prefixes *er-* and *ver-*.

(14) Conjugate the verb *ber wundern* in the present and past indicative.

(15) What are the meanings of *hin* and *her*?

(16) In separable compounds, when does the separation of the prefix from the verb take place?

(17) Give the entire indicative of the verb *aufhören*.

(18) Give the prefixes that may be either separable or inseparable.

(19) Explain the function of the adverb.

(20) Translate into German:

(a) The Americans fought more bravely than the Spaniards. (b) We took our hats off. (c) He was still asleep, when I got up. (d) The boy has opened the book. (e) The boys translated Cicero's orations. (f) Entertain the ladies. (g) This book is extremely tedious. (h) It is, at the most, half past two.

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 8)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

(1) Describe the functions of the preposition and state what cases it may govern.

(2) Give five examples of prepositional phrases, with the preposition governing the genitive case.

(3) Translate into German:

(a) He lives near the sea. (b) He writes to (an) his friend. (c) We go across the bridge. (d) He lives in the country. (e) The boys come from (the) school. (f) The girl is going into the garden. (g) The girls are walking up and down in the garden. (h) I put the chair against (an) the wall. (i) The teacher is in the garden with his pupils. (j) What have you against my father? (k) The dog ran behind the house. (l) He stepped behind me. (m) The paper lies between the books. (n) The lamp hangs over the table. (o) Our friends are around us. (p) The father has gone about town with his children.

(4) Define and classify the conjunctions.

(5) Explain the difference between a coordinating and a subordinating conjunction.

(6) Explain the difference between the pure conjunctions *aber* and *sondern*.

(7) State what has been said about the adverbial conjunctions.

(8) Translate into German:

(a) We are not rich, but we are happy. (b) We have slept and you have worked. (c) Either he is coming or he will write soon. (d) I went to bed early, for I was very tired. (e) We could neither hear nor see. (f) All that (was) we had is lost. (g) He read, while I was sleeping. (h) This is not my father but my uncle. (i) This is not blue but green. (j) My mother is still ill, but she will soon be able to go out. (k) The train has not arrived yet, but it will come soon. (l) I could not come, for I was ill. (m) It rained, therefore I would not come. (n) I was in church before I came here.

(9) Explain the function of the interjection.

(10) State what you know about word formation in general.

(11) Translate into English.

(a) Endlich griffen die Bürger zu den Waffen und fingen an, sich zu verteidigen. (b) Warten Sie, bis ich den Brief gelesen habe. (c) Je mehr Gott dir gegeben hat, desto mehr sollst du den Armen geben. (d) Sie wissen nicht, wann ich das gesagt habe. (e) Weil Sie krank sind, so können Sie nicht ausgehen. (f) Obgleich er arm ist, ist er doch glücklich. (g) Seitdem sein Vater hier ist, ist er viel zufriedener. (h) Ich weiß nicht, ob er da ist. (i) Wir wissen, daß er morgen kommen wird. (j) Er hat seine Pflicht erfüllt und seine Freunde haben ihn belohnt. (k) Ich habe einen Brief von einem meiner Freunde erhalten, worin er seine Reise beschrieben hat. (l) Hat der arme Mann sein Geld erhalten oder nur einen Teil davon?

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 9)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

(1) Define a simple sentence. Write a simple German sentence that is (*a*) declarative; (*b*) interrogative; (*c*) imperative.

(2) Give five sentences with verbs that take a predicate adjective or noun.

(3) Write three German sentences with different kinds of objects.

(4) Define the compound sentence, and give three German examples.

(5) Define the complex sentence, and give three German examples.

(6) State the different classes of subordinate clauses.

(7) State the three different arrangements of words in German sentences. Illustrate each order by two examples.

(8) Translate into German:

- (*a*) After I had taken my breakfast, I went to school. (*b*) Wait a minute until I have written this letter. (*c*) The sun had set before we arrived in the village. (*d*) I had almost forgotten it. (*e*) He is by no means so rich as you think. (*f*) Which of these boys sings most beautiful? (*g*) It struck two when we arrived at Potsdam. (*h*) You will find the lady either in the dining room or in the sitting room. (*i*) It is raining; therefore, I shall not go out.

(j) Whom did you see? (k) Why do you not answer him? I have answered him, but he has not answered me. (l) Will no one render them this service? (m) Tomorrow I shall go to Chicago and the next day to Milwaukee.

(9) State the general principle governing the arrangement of the adjuncts of the verb.

(10) State what you know about the position of dependent clauses.

(11) Translate into German:

(a) The storm raged furiously. (b) He drives out every day. (c) I am exceedingly sorry. (d) He reported that the king had died. (e) I have lost the book that you gave me. (f) He is not liked because he is very arrogant. (g) My father has built a house on yonder mountain. (h) The king will come to Berlin today. (i) What happened here yesterday? (j) Tomorrow we will go to New York. (k) The cold season will soon begin here. (l) Soon a messenger arrived and announced the defeat of the king. (m) Even kings must die. (n) When I arrived at nine o'clock, the door was closed.

(12) Translate into German:

I will tell you one of the short stories which we read a few days ago in school. An old lion lay in front of his den (die Höhle) and was on the point of death (to the death near). Many of the animals whose king he had been for many years were standing around him: there one could see the fox, the wolf, the bear, the ox, the horse, and many others. As long as the lion had been strong, they had all feared him; but since he was now almost dead, they knew that he could harm (schaden, dative) them no longer, and so they felt themselves safe (sicher). Some of the bolder (verwegen) animals even (sogar) went up to (auf zu) the dying king and taunted (verpöten) him and several kicked (schlagen) or bit him.

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 10)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

(1) State the different uses of the nominative case in German and illustrate each by an example.

(2) Translate into German:

(*a*) During the cold weather we remained at home. (*b*) We are sure of his innocence, for we know he is not capable of such a crime. (*c*) Men often become guilty of a crime when they owe much money. (*d*) It is worth the trouble to hope and to strive. (*e*) She remembers her promise. (*f*) Be not ashamed of frugality. (*g*) Can you remember all the words that you have found in this book? (*h*) Who has robbed the traveler of his money? (*i*) Are you of the opinion that he is guilty of this crime? (*j*) He was in good spirits. (*k*) He accuses him of a crime. (*l*) He was boasting of his great strength. (*m*) He is living on the right hand (side).

(3) Write four German examples of the dative used as indirect object with verbs.

(4) Give three German examples of the adverbial accusative.

(5) Translate into German:

(*a*) I thank you for your help. (*b*) It is our duty to obey such men and to help them. (*c*) Do you know what ails those people? (*d*) He anticipated us in everything. (*e*) These things may be useful and agreeable to you, but

they are very unpleasant to me and injurious to my friends. (f) Every good citizen is obedient to the just laws of his country. (g) On the sixteenth of August we were in the city of Cologne. (h) They elected him president. (i) I think it an injustice to punish this child. (j) Translate this for me. (k) Be faithful to your master.

(6) State what you know about the agreement of the gender of the pronouns with that of the noun to which they refer. Give two examples.

(7) Explain the difference in meaning of *dieser*, *diese*, *dieses* and *jener*, *jene*, *jenes*. Illustrate by three examples.

(8) Translate into German:

(a) A gentleman went to the house of a friend. "Is Mr. Smith at home?" said he to the girl who opened the door. "No, he is out," said the girl. "Is Mrs. Smith at home?" "No, she has also gone out," replied the girl. Because it was a cold day, the visitor said: "I will sit down by the fire and wait for them." "The fire has also gone out," said the girl.

(b) The mines that we visited last year were very interesting; besides, we were heartily welcomed by the miners. Every visitor had to be dressed in the attire of the miners, except the leather apron. If one holds fast to the ladders, the descent is not at all dangerous, although some of the ladders are quite long and have more than twenty rounds.

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 11)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

- (1) State the principal uses of the present tense.
- (2) How many and what kinds of the subjunctive are usually distinguished?

(3) Translate into German:

(a) A large number of citizens was assembled. (b) A great multitude of people gathered in front of the palace. (c) Russia and France formed an alliance. (d) Were your brother and his friend here? (e) You and I have lost everything. (f) Yesterday he and I were in the theater. (g) Neither I nor you can overcome this difficulty. (h) Not only you, but he also has made this mistake. (i) Who wrote the drama "William Tell?" (j) The train has arrived. (k) My brother and I, we have traveled much. (l) It is probably known to you, that England possesses many colonies in all parts of the world.

(4) Translate into English:

Auf dem Dache des Hauses standen mehrere schön gekleidete Männer und am Ufer sah Said eine große Menge Diener, und alle schauten nach ihm und schlugen vor Verwunderung die Hände zusammen. An einer Marmortreppe, die vom Wasser nach dem Lustschloß hinaufführte, hielt der Delphin an, und kaum hatte Said einen Fuß auf die Treppe gesetzt, so war auch schon der Fisch spurlos verschwunden. Zugleich eilten einige Diener die Treppe hinab und baten im Namen ihres Herrn, zu ihm hinauf zu kommen und boten ihm trockene Kleider an.

Er keidete sich schnell um und folgte dann den Dienern auf das Dach, wo er drei Männer fand, von welchen der größte und schönste ihm freundlich und huldreich entgegenkam. „Wer bist du, wunderbarer Fremdling,“ sprach er, „der du die Fische des Meeres zähmst und sie links und rechts leitest, wie der beste Reiter sein Streitroß? Bist du ein Zauberer oder ein Mensch wie wir?“

(5) State the use of the conditional mode in German. Illustrate by examples.

(6) With which verbs is the infinitive without *zu* used?

(7) Translate into German:

There is an amusing story that turns on the German word „*ein*.“ As you know that word has two meanings, „*a*“ and „*one*.“ The famous Moses Mendelssohn was once invited to dine with the king Frederic of Prussia. As he did not come at the appointed hour, the king thought that he would punish him. Accordingly he wrote on a piece of paper, „Mendelssohn is an ass. Frederic II.“ He put this paper before Mendelssohn's plate. When Mendelssohn came, he saw the paper, read it, and without saying a word put it into his pocket. „My dear Mendelssohn,“ asked the king, „what letter is that?“ „Oh,“ was the answer, „it is nothing at all, I will read it to you.“ And he read from the paper, „Mendelssohn is *an* ass, Frederic *the second*.“

(8) What do you know about the optative subjunctive? Give three examples.

(9) Illustrate the subjunctive in indirect discourse by three examples.

(10) Translate into German:

(a) Not till then did he confess his fault. (b) I saw him but yesterday. (c) I do not know him either. (d) Just listen to what I say. (e) Is he not yet coming? (f) We have seen it, now we are convinced. (g) Be sure to bring the book with you. (h) Why, that's very natural. (i) I have been waiting these three days. (j) No doubt, you

thought I had nothing to do. (*k*) Have you told him? I have. (*l*) I went straight up to them. (*m*) If I am to die anyway, let it be soon.

(11) Translate into English:

(*a*) Ich hätte bald meinen Hut vergessen. (*b*) Er ist hier als Gast. (*c*) Bald wollte er dies, bald das. (*d*) Sie ging sogleich daran, das Haus zu reinigen. (*e*) Ich habe nichts dagegen, daß du fortgehst. (*f*) Er kann nicht einmal lesen. (*g*) Erzähle uns doch, was geschehen ist. (*h*) Es ist noch nicht lange her, daß er hier war. (*i*) Kaum hatte er das gehört, so lief er nach Hause. (*j*) Uns ist wohl. (*k*) Ich sehe wohl, daß es zu spät ist. (*l*) Zwar langsam, aber sicher. (*m*) Wer nur gehen konnte, ging nach dem Plaze.

GERMAN GRAMMAR

(PART 12)

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

(1) Give ten prepositions governing the dative case, and illustrate each by an example.

(2) Write five sentences each containing a preposition governing the accusative case.

(3) Write all prepositions governing the accusative or dative case and illustrate by eight examples.

(4) Translate into German:

(*a*) Frankfort on the Main is a very industrious city. (*b*) The guests went hunting. (*c*) Under this tree stood a bench. (*d*) My friend will call on me today. (*e*) The citizens complained about the high taxes. (*f*) In spring man delights in nature more than in any other season. (*g*) People laughed at him. (*h*) My friends like to play at cards. (*i*) The teacher blamed the boys for their negligence. (*j*) My father is engaged in writing letters. (*k*) These children are weeping at the death of their mother. (*l*) Your father was very surprised at your arrival. (*m*) These boys are proud of their knowledge. (*n*) Are you hungry? Are you cold? (*o*) There is no hurry about it. (*p*) What objections have you? (*q*) Whose fault is it? It is your own fault. (*r*) Whose turn is it to read? It is yours. (*s*) They are very glad of it.

(5) Translate into German:

NEW YORK, July 15, 1899.

MY DEAR MR. SMITH.

I am glad to learn that you are to remain a few weeks with us this summer in our University town. I am sure you will declare the place quiet enough for study. You write that your sister may accompany you; it will be a great pleasure for us to meet her, especially as we shall now be able ourselves to judge of her voice about which we have heard so much said. Hoping to see you very soon, I remain, with heartiest greetings, Your friend,

(6) Translate into English:

Der Jüngling fühlte sich durchdrungen von Hochachtung gegen den verständigen Mann, und als einen alten Freund seines Vaters gewann er ihn lieb. Er bot ihm nach alter, gastfreundlicher Sitte ein Geschenk zum Abschied an, aber der Gast schützte seine Eilfertigkeit vor. Bei der Rückfahrt aber werde er wiederkommen und dann das Gastgeschenk mitnehmen. Er verschwand darauf plötzlich wie ein Vogel, und jetzt erst ahnte Telemach, daß er mit einem Gotte gesprochen habe. Alles, was der Fremde gesagt hatte, überdachte er noch einmal; sein Entschluß stand fest, die göttlichen Ratschläge genau zu befolgen. Gleich nahm er gegen die Freier einen strengeren Ton an, und sie, die ihn noch nie so männlich hatten reden hören, verwunderten sich hoch seines Mutes. Antinous aber und Eurymachus, die übermühtigsten unter allen, spotteten seines Eifers und brachten es bald dahin, daß er von allen verlacht wurde. Dann feierten sie den Abend mit Tanz und Gesang und als die Nacht herankam, zerstreuten sie sich wie gewöhnlich in ihre Wohnungen.

(7) Translate into German:

(a) Do you remember the poems that we read a short time ago, or have you forgotten them? I remember the one by Schiller, but I have forgotten the little poem by Goethe. (b) Has Henry become a dentist? No, he has become a physician. (c) Can you use the present participle as a predicate in German? Can you say: he is working? No, we

cannot use the present participle thus; we can only say: he works. (*d*) The birds move their wings in order to fly. (*e*) Did you ask him, if he had read Cicero's orations? He said that he had read them. (*f*) We should be sorry not to find you at home. (*g*) That is the highest house in our city, and you see now, that it is much higher than our house. (*h*) An American that does not travel is not an American. (*i*) Goethe and Sir Walter Scott died in the same year, but Scott was not as old as Goethe.

(8) Translate into German:

In that same village, and in one of these very houses (which, to tell the precise truth, was sadly time worn and weather beaten), there lived many years since, while the country was yet a province of Great Britain, a simple, good-natured fellow, of the name of Rip Van Winkle. He was a descendant of the Van Winkles who figured so gallantly in the chivalrous days of Peter Stuyvesant, and accompanied him to the siege of Fort Christina. He inherited, however, but little of the martial character of his ancestors. I have observed that he was a simple, good-natured man; he was moreover a kind neighbor and an obedient henpecked husband. Indeed, to the latter circumstances might be owing that weakness of spirit, which gained him such universal popularity; for those men are most apt to be obsequious and conciliating abroad, who are under the discipline of shrews at home. Their tempers, doubtless, are rendered pliant and malleable in the fiery furnace of domestic tribulation, and a certain lecture is worth all the sermons in the world for teaching the virtues of patience and long suffering. A quarrelsome wife may, therefore, in some respects, be considered a tolerable blessing; and if so, Rip Van Winkle was thrice blessed.

1





MAY 2 11 53 AM

